CÆSAR IN GAUL

DOUGIE AND EASTMAN
SURRENDER OF VERCINGETORIX TO CAESAR

(See page 192)
CAESAR IN GAUL
AND SELECTIONS FROM THE THIRD BOOK OF THE CIVIL WAR

WITH INTRODUCTION, REVIEW OF FIRST-YEAR SYNTAX, NOTES, GRAMMAR, PROSE COMPOSITION, AND VOCABULARIES

BY

BENJAMIN L. D'OOGGE
PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN THE MICHIGAN STATE NORMAL COLLEGE

AND

FREDERICK C. EASTMAN
PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN THE STATE UNIVERSITY OF IOWA

GINN AND COMPANY
BOSTON • NEW YORK • CHICAGO • LONDON
ATLANTA • DALLAS • COLUMBUS • SAN FRANCISCO
THE modern demand for economy and efficiency, which pervades the educational world as well as the world of business, has led to the preparation of this new edition of Cæsar. It comprises in a single volume all of the material needed for the second year of Latin, and, by the elimination of all matter not directly serviceable, aims to promote efficiency in its presentation.

After a brief introduction devoted to historical matters and the Roman art of war, a thorough review of the first year's work in syntax is presented by means of a biography of Cæsar, in ten short chapters, written in simple Latin.

The text, which is Meusel’s with a few minor changes, comprises the first four books of the “Gallic War,” with notes written from the standpoint of the pupil rather than from that of the teacher, and fully adequate to his needs. The long passages of indirect discourse occurring in the first two books are given in direct form, thus removing a real obstacle to progress. The same passages are given later in their unchanged form for purposes of comparison and for the use of such as prefer a more strenuous course. Interesting episodes from the remaining books of the “Gallic War” follow, and the text closes with Cæsar’s account of the battle of Pharsalia, the climax of the “Civil War,” and events that immediately follow. All the selections are provided with notes to serve as helps for sight reading, and the selections from the “Civil War” are provided with special vocabularies of the words not used in the preceding text of the “Gallic War.”
In the Grammar the attempt has been made to present the syntax of Cæsar in the most direct and simple form, and the Latin Composition discusses only such constructions as are fundamental. While the authors have not been at all radical in the matter of nomenclature, such of the new names have been used as seem likely to gain general adoption.

The vocabulary gives the essentials of etymology and contains only such idioms and definitions as are fundamental to the text.

Battle plans, maps, and illustrations of every sort have been inserted with a lavish hand, and it is hoped that these will tend to make the great story more real to the pupil's imagination. Special attention is called to the four colored plates made from paintings and provided for this book.

BENJAMIN L. D'OOGE
FREDERICK C. EASTMAN
GALLIA ANTIQUA

Note: The numbers on the map give the years of the respective battles and campaigns.

[Map of ancient Gaul with various labeled locations and battles depicted.]
# CONTENTS

**INTRODUCTION**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I. The Life of Caius Julius Cæsar</td>
<td>ix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II. Gaul, Britain, and Germany</td>
<td>xxi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III. Roman Military Affairs</td>
<td>xxv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAIUS JULIUS CÆSAR</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**THE GALLIC WAR**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Book I</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book II</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book III</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book IV</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selections from Book V</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selections from Book VI</td>
<td>158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selections from Book VII</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**THE CIVIL WAR**

| Selections from Book III                                             | 193  |

**INDIRECT DISCOURSE FROM BOOKS I AND II OF THE GALLIC WAR**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Selections from Book III</td>
<td>193</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTES**

| Notes       | 238  |

**ESSENTIALS OF GRAMMAR**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A. Declensions and Conjugations</td>
<td>311</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. Syntax</td>
<td>348</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**LATIN COMPOSITION**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
## CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH PRONUNCIATION OF PROPER NAMES</td>
<td>457</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vocabularies</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH-LATIN</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LATIN-ENGLISH</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GRAMMATICAL INDEX</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FULL-PAGE ILLUSTRATIONS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surrender of Vercingetorix to Cæsar (In colors)</td>
<td>Frontispiece</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Chariot Race in the Circus Maximus</td>
<td>xii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gallic Remains</td>
<td>xxii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Roman Legionary Soldier</td>
<td>xxiv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Castra Romana</td>
<td>xxxv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General View of Siege Operations</td>
<td>xxxvii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caius Julius Cæsar</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Assassination of Cæsar, 44 B.C. (In colors)</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caius Julius Cæsar Imperator</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Ita ancipiti proelio diu atque acriter pugnatum est&quot;</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Besançon (Vesontio)</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conference between Cæsar and Ariovistus, King of the Germans</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Iam amplius horis sex continenter pugnatum est&quot;</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Reliquos sub corona vendidit&quot;</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Milites nostri in castra inruperunt&quot;</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Landing of the Romans on the Coast of Britain (In colors)</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Druid Sacrifice</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Early Germans</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caius Julius Cæsar Consul</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus</td>
<td>214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Ides of March (In colors)</td>
<td>311</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# MAPS AND BATTLE PLANS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gallia Antiqua</td>
<td>iv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Campaign Map for 58 B.C.</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Rhone from Geneva to Pas de l'Écluse</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Defeat of the Helvetii</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Campaign against Ariovistus</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Battle with Ariovistus</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Campaign Map for 57 B.C.</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Battle on the Aisne (Axona)</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Defeat of the Nervii</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Siege of the Stronghold of the Aduatuci</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Octodurus and the Surrounding Territory</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Veneti and Neighboring Coast Region</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Campaign Map for 55 B.C.</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Second Invasion of Britain, 54 B.C.</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Campaign Map for 52 B.C.</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Siege of Avaricum</td>
<td>182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Campaign Map for 48 B.C.</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Battle of Pharsalia, 48 B.C.</td>
<td>201</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INTRODUCTION

I. CAIUS JULIUS CÆSAR

THIS is a book of exploration, adventure, and conquest. It tells the story of some of the most thrilling events in the life of one of the greatest men in history—Caius Julius Cæsar, the Roman. It is his own account of his explorations and conquests; his own description of his fierce battles with the half-civilized Gauls who occupied what we now know as France, Switzerland, and Belgium, with the barbarous Britons of England, and with the savage tribes then inhabiting Germany. The curtain of centuries is drawn aside and we see as in a moving picture the dawn of civilization in Europe two thousand years ago. We learn of the strange customs of its inhabitants and of the methods by which they were subdued, reduced to order, and brought under the government of Rome by the extraordinary energy and generalship of one man. The time of this drama is the interval between the years 58 and 49 B.C.

I. ROME, THE RULER OF THE WORLD

Rome in its early history was a monarchy; but four hundred years before Cæsar's birth the last of the kings, Tarquinius Superbus, had been expelled, and a republican form of government had taken the place of the kingly rule. In Cæsar's time Rome was a great commonwealth. To it belonged, as tributary provinces, all the countries surrounding the Mediterranean
INTRODUCTION

Sea, and this meant, practically, all the civilized world. The central power was at Rome, and the provinces were governed by officials sent out from the capital city.

2. Political Conditions and Parties

At the time of Cæsar's birth, 100 B.C., or, according to some authorities, 102 B.C., there were two great political parties at Rome: the nobility, or aristocracy (optimātēs), and the democratic, or popular, party (populārēs). Between these parties there had long been a bitter strife. The optimātēs, for the most part, had the upper hand, exercising their authority through a senate of six hundred men, all optimātēs. The two great political leaders during Cæsar's early years were Sulla for the optimātēs, and Marius for the populārēs. The rivalry between these men and these parties resulted in something far more grave than a mere political contest. They kept Rome in a turmoil of strife and bloodshed.

Both leaders sought the command of the war against Mithridates, king of Pontus, in Asia Minor. Sulla prevailed. During his absence in the east, hundreds of his adherents at Rome, including many leading senators, were put to death by the order of Marius. Sulla, returning, retaliated with similar carnage, the friends of Marius now being the victims. It was the custom of the Romans, in times of peril, to elect a temporary dictator, who had absolute power. Sulla, now in control of the political situation, caused himself to be proclaimed dictator.
for an unlimited period, and reorganized the government wholly in the interests of the *optimatēs*. These events occurred between 88 and 81 B.C., while the boy Cæsar was passing from his twelfth to his nineteenth year.

3. CÆSAR'S POLITICAL AFFILIATIONS

These circumstances attending Cæsar's youth must have had much to do with the shaping of his ideals and career. Cæsar's family belonged distinctly to the nobility, for the Julii traced their ancestry back to the Trojan Æneas, who was reputed to be the son of the goddess Venus. But something of the independence and self-reliance that told for so much in his later military and civic victories is shown by the fact that, in spite of his political inheritance which marked him an aristocrat, he chose, even in his youth, to attach himself to the side of the *populārēs*.

In his seventeenth year he married Cornelia, the daughter of Cinna, one of the most prominent leaders of the party of Marius. Sulla, in the height of his power, ordered him to divorce her. Cæsar, a mere youth, defied the great dictator of Rome, and refused. On this account he was obliged to leave Rome. Sulla at last, through the influence of Cæsar's friends, although against his own judgment, consented to his return. "Let him come back, if so you will," was his remark, "but this same young man will some day overthrow the nobility; for I see in him many a Marius."
4. Caesar's Education and Training

Caesar's early life was, no doubt, like that of the average Roman boy of noble birth. His education probably did not differ materially from that of hundreds of others. Caesar aspired, as did other Roman boys, to a distinguished career. The two chief avenues that were open to advancement were the political and the military. He must be well educated in a general way. Then he must be versed in the law, in statesmanship, and in oratory, or else in the art of war. If he were trained in both disciplines, so much the better. The youthful Caesar devoted himself to the study of Greek, rhetoric, grammar, philosophy, and oratory, studying for several months at Rhodes under Apollonius, the most famous teacher of the time. He also gained some valuable military experience in Asia Minor, and distinguished himself by his valor in saving a comrade's life. His education for the highest offices was ample.

5. Roman Political Offices

The highest office in a political career was the consulship; but there were three successive offices that were usually held as preliminary to this, those of questor, ædile, and prætor.

The questor had to do with the public treasury, the collection of revenues, disbursements, and the like. Under Sulla there were twenty questors, ten being assigned to duties at Rome, and ten attached to the armies of the provincial governors.

The ædile was concerned with the care of streets and public buildings, the superintendence of commerce, and the administration of the great public festivals. The Romans were very
fond of spectacular games, and to gain the favor of the people for future elections the ædiles often incurred enormous personal expense in their presentation. The number of ædiles was four.

The prætor was concerned with the administration of justice, and represented the consul in his absence. Under Sulla the number of prætors was eight.

But it was to the office of consul that the young Roman looked forward as the consummation of his political efforts. There were two of these officers, elected each year, and the guidance of the republic was largely in their hands.

After either the prætorship or the consulship it was customary to appoint the ex-prætor or ex-consul to the governorship of one of the Roman provinces. Such officers were called pro-prætors or proconsuls according to the office which they had held. Such appointments afforded great opportunities to amass wealth, and for this reason were eagerly sought. For the sake of gain unscrupulous methods were often employed in the administration of these offices. The provincials were imposed on in various ways, and extortion was common. Many of the provincial governors returned to Rome with enormous riches. But aside from all unfair means it was quite possible to make this office an unusually profitable one.

6. CAESAR'S POLITICAL CAREER

Cæsar doubtless looked forward to a political rather than to a military career. His military training had been only incidental, but he had made careful preparation for the field of politics and he entered upon it with his customary earnestness.

He was elected quæstor for 68 B.C., when he was thirty-two years old. Three years later, in 65 B.C., he was ædile. In this capacity he played with the highest stakes for securing the favor of the people. As he had little means of his own, he borrowed enormous sums on the strength of his office and his prospects,
and presented the most magnificent games that Rome had ever known. He left the aedileship, as he remarked in jest, with more than a million dollars less than nothing.

In 63 B.C. he was elected pontifex maximus, an office that carried great prestige and dignity, though it was not in the regular course of civil honors. This office he held all his life.

In 62 B.C. he was praeceptor, and during the following year served as propraetor of Spain. But he was now staggering under the load of debt that he had contracted during his aedileship, and was in danger of being detained at Rome by his creditors. To meet these obligations he borrowed a large sum from Crassus, the richest man in Rome.

While engaged in his duties in Spain he gained a military experience that was of great value to him in his future campaigns, and likewise made money enough to pay all his debts. In the year 60 B.C. he returned to Rome and now fixed his attention on the consulship. Pompey had just returned victorious from the Mithridatic War. He had been identified with the optimates, but, because of their jealous efforts to curtail his power, he was becoming estranged. Caesar took advantage of this attitude to form an alliance with him. With them they associated Crassus, who represented the moneyed interests, and thus was formed a most powerful political alliance, commonly called the First Triumvirate. This was one of the shrewdest of Caesar's moves, for his individual influence at this time was far less than that of the other two. It is easy to see how unwelcome this alliance was to the optimates. Backed by the triumvirate Caesar gained the consulate without difficulty for 59 B.C. During his year of office he made many valuable and humane reforms, chiefly in the interest of the lower classes, and in general distinguished himself by his wise and good government.
7. CAESAR IN GAUL

Caesar's restless energy and ambition could not, of course, rest satisfied with the consulship. He looked forward eagerly to larger fields of action in which to display his ability. Such an opportunity was now presented to him. The triumvirate, in making up the political "slate," agreed that Caesar should have the governorship of Gaul for five years. This district consisted of what were known as Cisalpine and Transalpine Gaul and Illyricum, and the office presupposed the protection of the northern frontier of Italy. The relative position of these territories may be seen from the map at the beginning of the book. Caesar's term of office as governor of Gaul, beginning in 58 B.C., was afterwards extended to ten years, and it is of the stirring events of these years that Caesar tells us in this book.

8. THE CIVIL WAR

The agreement of the triumvirate by which Caesar became governor of Gaul assigned to Crassus the province of Syria, and to Pompey that of Spain. However, not only the harmony but even the existence of the triumvirate came to a speedy close. Crassus was killed in battle in his province. Pompey,
made sole consul in 52 B.C., began to be intensely jealous of Cæsar’s reputation and influence, and finally laid plans to destroy him. To this end he made an alliance with the senate, with which his former friendly relations had been reëstablished by their common hatred of Cæsar.

Cæsar had laid plans to run for the consulship a second time for the year 48 B.C. He could easily do this, for his term as governor would expire in 49 B.C. The senate, wishing to prevent this, ordered him to disband his army before the regular close of his official term. They knew that if they could once get him to Rome as a private citizen without an army, they could crush him.

This was the most critical time in Cæsar’s career, and one that clearly shows his decision and courage. Instead of complying with the senate’s demand he promptly gathered his devoted men and descended on Rome.

Pompey and the senatorial forces were panic-stricken and fled to Brundisium, whence they sailed across the Adriatic to Epirus. In sixty days Cæsar made himself master of Italy, and, before autumn, had put down all opposition in Spain, where Pompey had numerous adherents and an armed force. Soon thereafter he followed Pompey across the sea, and completely crushed him in a battle near Pharsalia, in Thessaly, on August 9, 48 B.C. Pompey fled to Egypt, and there lost his life by assassination. The remnants of the Pompeian forces were conquered in two battles, one at Thapsus, in Africa, and the other at Munda, in Spain.

9. Cæsar, the Dictator

On his return to Rome Cæsar was master of the world. He was made imperator, which conferred on him complete military authority, and dictator for life, which gave him all political power. This vesting of dominion in one man was the beginning
of the abolition of the republican form of government, and led to the establishment of the empire under Cæsar's grandnephew and adopted son, Octavianus, afterwards called Augustus.

Cæsar continued the beneficent constructive work that he had begun in his consulship. He made many reforms in the interest of good government, and began the construction of many remarkable public works.

10. The Conspiracy and Assassination

In spite of all political disturbances the Romans had always been proud of their republican institutions, and from the time that the Tarquins had been expelled they had repudiated the idea of royalty. Now Cæsar's unlimited power and his readiness in using it began to breed apprehension and suspicion. There were rumors that he wanted to be king in name, as he already was in fact. This resulted in a conspiracy to assassinate him, the leaders of which were Brutus and Cassius. These men and their accomplices, in the name of the republic and liberty, calling themselves in fact liberātōrēs, attacked Cæsar during a session of the senate on the Ides (the fifteenth) of March, 44 B.C., and stabbed him to death with their daggers.

11. Cæsar's Personal Appearance

No one can be interested in the life and writings of Julius Cæsar without the desire of knowing how this great man looked. Suetonius, the historian, who wrote about one hundred and fifty
years later, gives us this graphic picture. He says that Cæsar was tall, slender, and handsome, with sharp, dark eyes, a sallow complexion, a large nose, refined features, and a thick, sinewy neck. He adds that he was partially bald, and, being sensitive to this deformity, used to draw the hair forward to the crown of his head; and that, on account of this baldness, he greatly appreciated the privilege granted him by the senate of wearing a laurel wreath.

But perhaps our most satisfactory knowledge of his form and features is gained from coins and the portrait busts and statues that have come down to us. Some of the best of these are shown at pages 1, 11, and 192.

12. Cæsar's Accomplishments and Character

Cæsar's accomplishments were many and diverse. He was a thorough scholar, well versed in language and literature. He wrote a grammar while in the midst of a campaign; as an orator he might have rivaled even Cicero; his generalship has never been surpassed; in addition, he was without doubt the greatest politician and statesman of Rome. There is no question that he was ambitious, but he exercised his ambition for the good of the state as well as for his own advancement. Strange as it may seem from his life of conflict, he was inclined to peace, and engaged in war only when he deemed it unavoidable.

Cæsar has been accused of cruelty and various vices. Judged by our moral standards he was doubtless far from perfect, but it is certain that he was a man of remarkable self-control. His cruelty must be judged in the light of Roman standards. The Romans, as a people, held human life cheap, and gave little regard to suffering. Further, the thousands who were slain by Cæsar's orders were barbarians—Gauls and Germans—for whom the Romans entertained no respect whatever. He
certainly exhibited a care and anxious solicitude for the welfare of his own soldiers, and a forbearance with their mistakes that is remarkable. Their love for him and their devotion were touching and complete. His readiness to pardon his former enemies when he was master of the world was more than mere diplomacy; it rather shows a large magnanimity and a fine quality of mercy.

He was fond of athletics, a splendid horseman, and in danger without fear. A peerless leader of men, he is considered by many the foremost character in history.

I.3. CAESAR AS A WRITER

Caesar wrote many books, but only two have survived: the "Commentaries on the Gallic War" and the "Civil War." The former consists of eight books, the latter of three. The last book of the "Commentaries" was not written by Caesar, but by Hirtius, one of his officers.

The narration in both works is direct, vigorous, and clear; successive events are presented with dramatic and graphic power. His high literary quality is the more remarkable when we remember that he wrote the "Commentaries" hastily as a sort of journal in the midst of his most strenuous campaigns.

I.4. CONCLUSION

In the following pages are presented such parts of Caesar's works as are most entertaining and inspiring to the general reader. The story will speak for itself. The "Gallic War" has a peculiar interest for us because it treats of the peoples with whom we are most familiar and from whom most of us derive our ancestry. It marks, in a sense, the beginning of modern history. Active, keen-sighted, and truthful, Caesar gives us such insight into these nations as serves to explain many of
INTRODUCTION

their present political and social peculiarities. The selections from the "Civil War" relate the climax of the long struggle for supremacy between Cæsar and Pompey, which culminated in the battle of Pharsalia, Pompey's flight to Egypt, Cæsar's pursuit, and the stirring events that followed his arrival there.

15. IMPORTANT EVENTS IN CÆSAR'S LIFE

100 B.C. Born, July 12th.
83 B.C. Marries Cornelia, the daughter of Cinna.
80–78 B.C. Serves with the army in Asia.
76–75 B.C. Studies oratory at Rhodes.
68 B.C. Quæstor.
65 B.C. Ædile.
63 B.C. Pontifex Maximus.
62 B.C. Prætor.
61 B.C. Proprætor in Spain.
60 B.C. Forms the First Triumvirate.
59 B.C. Consul.
58–49 B.C. Proconsul in Gaul.
50 B.C. The trouble with Pompey begins.
49 B.C. Crosses the Rubicon. Civil War begins.
48 B.C. The battle of Pharsalia.
46 B.C. The battle of Thapsus. Declared dictator for ten years.
45 B.C. The battle of Munda. Appointed imperator for life.
II. GAUL, BRITAIN, AND GERMANY

I. GAUL

The province to which Cæsar was assigned as proconsul in 58 B.C. by the agreement of the triumvirate, comprised Cisalpine Gaul, Transalpine Gaul, and Illyricum (see map at the beginning of the book).

Cisalpine Gaul, or Citerior Prōvincia, had been subdued and reduced to order by the Romans long before Cæsar’s time. The inhabitants were fully in accord with the Roman government, and upon them the governor relied largely for his troops and supplies.

Transalpine Gaul, in its narrower sense called also Ulterior Prōvincia or Narbonnese Gaul, had more recently come under Roman dominion. Its inhabitants, while subservient to Rome, still retained in great part their own customs.

Illyricum had been added to Rome in 168 B.C. It was a fertile country and a considerable source of supplies, but required little of Cæsar’s attention.

The unsubdued territory north of Cæsar’s province, between the Pyrenees and the ocean on the one side and the Rhine and the Alps on the other, was known as Free Gaul (Libera Gallia). It was inhabited by various tribes, wild, warlike, and turbulent, agreeing only in their defiance of Roman rule. Their numbers were great, and the country was savage, dangerous, and unexplored. Although this great territory was not under his authority and was outside of his province, Cæsar undertook its subjugation, a task of formidable proportions.
GALLIC REMAINS

1 and 3, necklaces with amber and coral pendants; 2, military standard; 4, bronze trumpet; 5, iron boss of shield; 6, iron fastening; 7, sword-hilt and belt; 8, iron helmet; 9, iron belt-chain

xxii
The Gauls were not all on the same plane of civilization. Those that were nearest to the Province had become somewhat civilized through contact with the traders, but those in the north were still barbarous. Their houses were huts of clay and wood, thatched with straw and branches. They raised the coarser grains, but knew little about the cultivation of fruits. They kept large herds, and lived to a great extent upon meat.

They understood the art of weaving, and their chief garments were trousers and bright-colored tunics. The coast tribes were skillful sailors and familiar with the building of ships. The Aquitani and some other tribes worked mines. The Gauls in general used a rough sort of coinage.

Their weapons were pikes and lances, bows and slings, and long, two-edged swords hanging from a metal chain. The chief warriors wore a kind of chain armor. They also
used helmets and shields. On the helmets they often wore
great horns and grotesque images of beasts (see ill., p. 180).

2. Britain

Our acquaintance with Britain begins with Cæsar, though
Phœnician traders had visited the island centuries before.
The people that he found there differed but little from those
of northern Gaul. Cæsar gained some victories, but made
no lasting conquests in the short time that he remained
there. Britain was not invaded again by the Romans for
almost a hundred years.

3. Germany

Germany was for the Romans a country wild, unknown,
and full of mystery. They found it necessary constantly to
protect their boundaries against the German tribes along the
Rhine and Danube. Cæsar met them in several battles, but
his chief object was to drive German invaders from Gallic
territory, to defend the Gallic frontier, and to inspire the
Germans with a dread of Roman might.

As in the case of the Gauls and the Britons, Cæsar is
the first writer to give an account of Germany and the
Germans. His description of this country and its inhabi-
ants, in Books IV and VI of the "Commentaries," is full
of interest.
A ROMAN LEGIONARY SOLDIER
III. ROMAN MILITARY AFFAIRS

Caesar, for all his genius, could not have performed his great work of conquest without a well-trained army. His foes were unnumbered; the country was strange, vast, and difficult, with miles of forests and swamps; the perils were great, and the hardships innumerable. Against such odds he had a force of only a few thousand men. To understand the marvelous efficiency of his army we must know how it was organized, the Roman methods of warfare, and the meaning of the frequent military terms that Caesar employs.

I. THE LEGION

The smallest division of the Roman army was the century, which, as its name indicates, was made up of 100 men; two centuries made a maniple of 200 men; three maniples made a cohort of 600 men; and ten cohorts made a legion of 6000 men. This number, however, is only theoretical, for, as the size of the legion was constantly diminished by disease and battle without being replenished, the actual number of soldiers was much smaller than this. Each of Caesar's legions contained, on an average, about 3600 men, and its divisions were as follows:

1 century (centuria) . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 60 men
2 centuries = 1 maniple (manipulus) . . . . . . . . 120 men
3 maniples = 1 cohort (cohors) . . . . . . . . . . 360 men
10 cohorts = 1 legion (legio) . . . . . . . . . . . 3600 men

The legion (of about 3600 men) was the regular unit of the infantry force of the army.
2. THE CAVALRY

Caesar’s cavalry (equitātus, equitēs) was made up chiefly of Gauls, Spaniards, and Germans. It was engaged, for the most part, in skirmishing and scouting, and he relied little upon it in battle. It was divided into ālæ of about 330 horsemen each; these were divided into 10 squadrons (turmae) of 33 horsemen each, and these again into 3 squads (decuriae) of 11 each. The officers of the cavalry were called decurions (decuriōnēs).

3. THE AUXILIARIES

By the word auxilia Caesar means the infantry forces that were enlisted from allied and subject states. A number of these auxilia were enrolled with his regular army. They were the so-called light-armed soldiers (militēs levis armātūrae); some of them were bowmen and slingers, others wore light armor and carried light, round shields (see pp. 61, 64, 65). As they lacked both the training and the trustworthiness of the legions, Caesar did not greatly depend on them in emergencies.

4. THE ARTILLERY

The Romans had no knowledge of gunpowder, siege cannon, or field guns; but the place of modern artillery was supplied by what in general were called tormenta. These were powerful engines for hurling missiles, the propelling force being furnished by the twisting (torqueō, tortus) of rope, sinews, or hair.
They were used in siege operations rather than in ordinary battle. Three kinds are mentioned by Cæsar:

a. The *catapulta* (see pp. 104, 120), which shot great arrows or javelins in a horizontal direction, like a cannon.

b. The *ballista* (see p. xxviii), which hurled huge stones through the air in a high curve, as a mortar throws shells.

c. The *scorpiō* (see p. xxix), which may be described as a mounted crossbow or a small *catapulta*, with the same kind of propelling force. All these *tormenta* were accurate and deadly weapons. The range of the first two was from 1000 to 1500 feet.

5. THE BAGGAGE TRAIN

*Impedimenta* is the name given to all the baggage of the army except that which was carried by the individual soldiers. It was borne on the backs of horses and mules, or, at times, in wagons (*carrī*). Those in charge of this baggage were called *cālōnēs*. 
6. **The Officers**

a. *Imperātor*. The chief officer was the *dux bellī*, who after his first victory was called *imperātor*.

b. *Lēgāti*. The *lēgāti* were a body of men of senatorial rank who acted as a board of advisers to the commander. Cæsar had ten of these officers. They were sometimes put in charge of legions, and sometimes sent as ambassadors, according to the orders of the general. This will account for the twofold use of the word in the "Commentaries."

c. *Quaestōres*. The *quaestōres* were officers elected annually by the people. A *quaestor* attended each *imperātor* in his province and looked after the pay, clothing, equipment, and the like of the soldiers.

da. *Tribūnī*. In each legion were six *tribūnī militum*. Each of them in turn had command of the legion. They were usually young men without experience, some of them from the
nobility, and owed their appointment to family influence. Their inefficiency was such that Caesar transferred their military duties to the légati, and employed them in an administrative capacity.

e. Centuriōnes. The centuriō, as the name indicates, was the commander of the century. Thus there were two centurions in each maniple, six in each cohort, and sixty in each legion. These were the real leaders of the men and were promoted from the ranks for their fighting qualities. The first centurion of the first cohort was called primus, or primipilus, and was always an officer of unusual ability and prowess.

7. The Standards

Signa (see p. 73) is the general word used for all the standards of the army. That of the legion was a bronze or silver eagle, aquila (see pp. 121, 129). Each cohort had its own standard. That of the light-armed troops was called the vexillum, which was also the name given to the flag of the general at headquarters.
INTRODUCTION

The latter was a large white banner, with the name of the general and of the army in red.

8. THE MUSIC

The bucina, or bugle, the shape of which is uncertain, sounded the changes of the night watch and the morning reveille. The tuba, or trumpet, was a straight, deep-toned horn of brass, more than three feet long, which gave the signal for attack or retreat. The same signal was repeated by the cornū, or horn, a circular instrument with a sharp tone. The lituus, a brass trumpet about four feet long with a curved joint at the end, was used by the cavalry.

9. EQUIPMENT OF THE LEGIONARY SOLDIERS

The legion was made up of picked Roman soldiers, and was Caesar’s main reliance in battle. Romans between the ages of seventeen and forty-six might be drafted for the legion. Its discipline was almost perfect. The period of service of a legionary was twenty years.

a. The Clothing. The uniform of the legionary soldiers consisted of a sleeveless or partly sleeved woolen tunic, reaching nearly to the knee. Over this was a coat of leather, reënforced by bands of metal across the breast, back, and shoulders. This was the loricā. In cold weather a heavy cloak was worn, fastened over the right shoulder with a clasp. About the waist was a leather belt, bound with metal, and with strips
of protecting metal hanging in front. The covering for the feet was a low boot (see p. 102).

b. The Armor. The defensive armor, besides the lōrīca, consisted of a helmet and shield. The helmet was made of iron or leather strengthened with brass, open in front, and adorned with a white crest (see p. 74). Adornments of this character were what Cæsar calls insignia. The shield was rectangular, about four feet long and two feet wide. It was made of wood, was slightly curved, with metal around the rim and also in the middle. In the center was a metal knob, the umbō, used both for diverting weapons and for striking blows. The regular name for the shield is scūtum (see p. 128).

c. The Weapons. The weapons of offense were the sword and spear. The sword, gladius, was about two feet long, straight and two-edged. It was hung from a belt passing over the left shoulder to the right hip. The spear, pilum, used for hurling rather than for thrusting, was six or seven feet long. It consisted of a strong iron shank fitted into a wooden shaft about four feet long. The pilum took the place of the rifle in modern warfare. Its weight was about three pounds, and it could be hurled with deadly effect.

Note. For all matters discussed in section 9, see the illustration of the legionary soldier facing page xxiv.
d. Other Equipment. Besides his arms and armor each soldier carried tools for digging, cooking utensils, including a small handmill for grinding his allowance of grain, a supply of grain for two weeks, cibāria, and two stakes, vālli, for fortifying the camp. Most of this equipment was carried in a bundle on a forked stick over the shoulder. This personal baggage of the soldier was called sarcina (see p. 69).

e. Food; Pay; Discipline. The food was coarse flour or unground wheat or barley, for which the general word frūmentum was used. Corn was unknown. The allowance of grain for a day was about two pounds. An allotment of about two pecks was made every fifteen days. This regular diet might be varied by foraging or by purchase from the traders who followed the army.

The soldier was paid at the rate of twelve and a half cents a day, about the usual daily wage of laborers at Rome. Deduction was made from this for food and equipment furnished by the state. The discipline was strict. Punishments for insubordination or neglect of duty consisted in degradation from rank, dismissal from service, withholding of pay, extra assignments of labor, reduction of rations, flogging, or even death. There were also various rewards of merit.
No matter where the army halted for the night or how little was the likelihood of attack, a camp, castra, was always made with the utmost care. The site chosen was, if possible, on high ground and near to wood and water. If the nature of the location permitted, the camp was made in the form of a square. A small force of soldiers under centurions was sent ahead to select a site for the camp and to stake it out. Two bisecting lines were drawn at right angles to each other to mark the position of the four gates: the porta praetória facing the enemy, the porta decumána in the rear, the porta prínci-pális dextra on the right side, and the porta príncipális sinistra on the left. Between the gates on the right and left ran a broad street called the via príncipális. The forward part of the camp was allotted to the soldiers, the rear part to the officers and their
INTRODUCTION

attendants. A vacant space about one hundred feet wide was left all about the inside of the encampment. In an open square near the middle was the tent of the commander (praetorium).

As soon as the legions arrived on the spot selected, the soldiers began the construction of the camp (see p. 52). A ditch, fossa, usually nine feet wide and seven feet deep was dug all around the square, and the earth therefrom, thrown on the inside, was built into an embankment, agger, from six to ten feet high, and wide enough on the top for standing room. On this wall was erected a breastwork, vallum, made with the stakes that the soldiers carried. After the camp was fortified, the quarters of the soldiers were put up, which were leather tents in summer and huts in the winter. Guards were kept constantly at the gates.

II. The March

An ordinary day’s march was about fifteen miles. Caesar, however, made many forced marches, magna itinera, of as many as twenty-five miles a day. When an enemy was near, a vanguard, agmen primum, of cavalry and light-armed infantry and scouts preceded. The rear was also protected by a guard, agmen novissimum. The legions regularly marched one behind another, each followed by its own impedimenta; but if an enemy was near, most of the legions in fighting trim, that is, without packs, went ahead in an unbroken line, followed by the combined baggage train (impedimenta), and one or two legions guarded the rear. When the legions were without encumbrance and hence ready for fighting, they were said to be expeditae. See page 45.

12. The Battle

The usual order of battle was what was called the acies triplex. The first line of the legion was formed of four cohorts and each of the others of three. In each cohort the
CASTRA ROMANA

A, via príncipális  
B, via decumána  
C, portá praetóriá  
D, portá decumána  
E, portá príncipális dextra

F, portá príncipális sinistra  
G, praetórium  
H, forum  
K, K', tribúnf  
L, auxilia

M, ára  
N, tribúnal  
O, equités  
P, pedités  
Q, fossa  
R, via quintána  
S, agger  
T, intervállum  
V, vallum
three maniples stood side by side, and in each maniple the two centuries stood one behind the other. The legions occupied the center of the battle line, media aciès, and the auxiliaries and cavalry the wings, cornua.

When the hostile army was within range (not more than one hundred feet), the soldiers hurled their javelins and then charged with drawn swords. When the first line was weary or in disorder, it was relieved by the second while it recovered for another charge. The third line was constantly held in reserve and only brought into action when the first two were hard pressed, or when it was necessary to repel an attack in the rear or on the flanks. This general method was varied, of course, according to circumstances (see p. 31).

13. The Siege

Caesar often found the towns in Gaul protected by massive stone walls surrounded by a great moat. The taking of these towns usually called for a particular mode of warfare in which the Romans had attained great skill. There were three methods of taking a town:

a. Oppugnātiō Repentīna. If there seemed to be a chance of success, the town was stormed at once, without siege preparations. This was the oppugnātiō repentīna. The tormenta were brought up and trained on the defenders upon the walls. When these were driven off, the moat was filled with brush
GENERAL VIEW OF SIEGE OPERATIONS

ABCD, hostile wall; ss, testūdinēs aggestitiae, protecting those leveling the ground; kk, agger; xx, phuteī, protecting those working on the agger; efg, line of phuteī, manned with archers and slingers; tt, turrēs, also manned with archers and slingers and provided with tormenta; ro, covered way of vineae, giving approach to archers and slingers; lg, covered way of vineae approaching the point of beginning the agger; f'g', position of phuteī covering the beginning of the agger; mn, covered gallery through the agger; mnn, steps and platforms of the several stories

xxxvii
and earth, and the Romans, locking their shields in a testūdo (see the picture below and at page 110), attempted to break open the gates or scale the walls with ladders.

b. Oppugnātiō. If this mode seemed impracticable, a regular siege, oppugnātiō, was begun. A mound of earth and timber, agger, was begun at a distance from the wall nearly out of reach of the missiles of the defenders. This mound was gradually extended in the direction of the wall, its height being constantly increased until it was even with the top of the wall. Connecting galleries ran through its various stories, through which the soldiers could move under cover. Those working on the outside of the agger were protected by lines of large standing shields, pluteī, which were moved forward as the work advanced. Those bringing material for the builders walked under rows of arbor-like sheds called vineae, extending the length of the agger. The workmen were protected also by archers and slingers (see pp. 61, 64) and by tormenta standing
behind *plutei*. As a further protection light-armed soldiers were stationed in large movable towers, *turrēs*, which stood on the *agger* or on either side of it, and advanced with it, being increased in height, story by story, as it advanced. When close to the wall, the besiegers were protected by strong sheds of wood called *testūdinēs* or *mūsculi*, instead of by the *plutei*. When the *agger* reached the moat, this was quickly filled up with brush and wood. The walls of the town were sometimes undermined, or pulled down from the top by means of huge iron hooks called *falcēs mūrālēs*. But the surest engine of destruction was the battering-ram, *ariēs*, a huge swinging beam from sixty to one hundred feet long, with a heavy mass of metal at one end, often shaped like a ram's head. This, swung under a *vīnea*, or in the lowest story of a *turris*, was brought with tremendous force against the opposing masonry. Sometimes the top of the wall was gained by means of the *turris* without the *agger*.

c. *Obsidiō*. When all other means were unavailing, the town was invested on every side (*obsidiō*) and the inhabitants were starved into submission.
14. THE SHIPS

Two kinds of ships were used by Caesar:

a. The war galleys, navēs longae (see pp. 92, 94, 117). These were the vessels used in naval battles, and were made long, low, and narrow. They were armed at the prow with a sharp beak (rōstrum) shod with bronze, for ramming the enemy's ships, and were propelled by both sails and oars. The sails were one or two in number, and the oars were arranged in two or three rows, or banks. When these vessels were under full sail and oarage, they could nearly equal a modern steamship in speed.

b. The freight and transport vessels, navēs onerāriae (see p. 117). These were made shorter, broader, and deeper than the war galleys, and could thus carry heavier burdens and more successfully weather a heavy sea.
CAESAR IN GAUL

CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR

I. HIS EARLY YEARS


Deinde Caesar in urbem Milētum properāvit classemque 15 contrāxit. Hāc classe praeōnēs persecūtus est et superāvit.

NOTE. The syntax used in this biographical sketch is confined to the constructions presented during the first year of the study of Latin. The constructions named below each section are illustrated in the accompanying text, and should be reviewed by a study of the references to the grammar (see pp. 348 ff.).

The special vocabularies contain the words not found in the general vocabulary at the end of the book.
II. HIS POLITICAL CAREER

Caesar creātus quaestor Hispāniam ulteriōrem obtinuit. Quō profectus cum Alpēs trānsīret, parvus quidam vicus cōnspectus est. Tum comitēs inter sē disputābant et rogābant, "Num etiam illis est locus glōriae?" "Mālō," respondit Caesar, "ibi primus esse quam Rōmae secundus."

Aedilis creātus Forum et Capitōlium porticus ōrṇāvit. Etiam multōs et amplōs lūdōs fēcit. His rēbus in grātiam populi vēnit, sed in aes aliēnum magnum incidit.

Cōnsul deinde cum Bibulō creātus, societātem cum Pom-10 pēō et Crassō iūnxit. Lēgem quandam cum tulisset et huic lēgi senātus repugnāret, rem ad populum rēttulit. Bibulus in Forum profectus ut lēgi resisteret, ā populō armīs expulsus est, et ex eō tempore Caesar unus erat cōnsul.

Agreement of Adjectives, § 59
Agreement of Finite Verbs, § 65
Dative with Intransitive Verbs, § 83
Ablative of Means, § 106

aedilis, -is, m., aedile, commissioner of public works
Capitōlium, Capitōlii, n., the Capitol (chief temple of Jupiter at Rome)
praedō, -ōnis, m., robber, pirate
Rhodus, -i, f., Rhodes
sextus, -a, -um, adj., sixth

Ablative of Accompaniment, § 113
Ablative of Place Where; Locative, § 120. a
Clauses of Purpose, § 174

Forum, -i, n., the Roman Forum
lādus, -i, m., game, sport
porticus, -ūs, f., covered walk between columns, colonnade
THE LIFE OF CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR

III. THE CONQUEST OF GAUL


Agreement of Relative Pronouns, § 64. a
Prepositions, §§ 148, 149, 150. a
Partitive Genitive, § 76

abeō, -ire, -ī, -itūrus, go away
fābula, -ae, f. story

nārrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, relate
ōlim, adv. once upon a time, once

IV. CAESAR CROSSES THE RUBICON

Interea Crassus apud Parthōs interfectus erat. Post mortem Iūliae, Caesaris filiae quae Pompēiō nūpta erat, aemulātiō inter socerum et generum ērūpit; nam nec Pompēius parem nec Caesar superiōrem ferre poterat. Caesar adhuc in Galliā dētinēbātur, neque Rōmam redire volēbat ut cōnsulātum alterum peteret. Itaque ad senātum scripsit
sē petere absentem velle. Id senātus, ab amicis Pompēi permōtus, negāvit. Hanc iniūriam ut vindicaret, Caesar in Italiam rediit.

Caesar ad bellum gerendum parāitus, cum exercitu Rubi-
ş cŏnem flūmen, prōvinciae suae finem, trānsiit. Hoc ad
flūmen paulum cŏnstitit, et cōgitāns quantam rem inciperet,
"Etiam nunc," inquit, "reverti possumus; quod si hoc

CÆSAR CROSSING THE RUBICON

parvum flūmen trānsierimus, omnia armīs agī necesse erit." Postrēmō autem cum verbīs "Iacta est ālea" exercitum
trādūcī iussit. Plūrimīs urbibus occupātīs, Brundisium con-
tendīt, quō Pompēius cōnsulēsque cŏnūgerant.

Possessive Genitive, § 73
Accusative as Subject of Infinitive, § 92
Ablative Absolute, § 117
Demonstrative Pronouns hic, ille, § 134. a
Clauses of Purpose, § 174
Indirect Discourse, §§ 202–204, 92, 204. a
Tenses of the Infinitive, Present; Perfect, § 166. a, b
Indirect Questions, § 201
THE LIFE OF CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR

ae*mulati*ō, -onis, f.: rivalry
āle*ā, -ae, f.: a die (used in playing a game of dice)
Brundisi*um, Brundisi*ī, n. Brundisi*um (a port of southern Italy)
gener, -eri, m. son-in-law

Parthi, -orum, m. the Parthians (a people living near the Caspian Sea)
Rubico, -onis, m. the Rubicon (a river in northern Italy)
vindic*ō, -āre, -āvis, -ātus, avenge

V. THE WARS IN THESSALY, PONTUS, AND AFRICA


Agreement of Appositives, § 58
Genitive of Description, § 77
Dative with Compounds, § 84
Aegyptus, -i, f. Egypt
Dyrrachium, Dyrrachī, n. Dyrrachiu(m in Epirus)

ĀEpūrus, -i, f. Epi'rus (in Greece)
fulmen, -inis, n. thunderbolt
quamquam, conj. although
VI. CAESAR IN SPAIN. TRIUMPHANT RETURN TO ROME

VII. THE REFORMS OF CAESAR. HIS AMBITIONS


Ablative of Separation, § 101
Sequence of Tenses, §§ 160–162
Clauses of Result introduced by ut or ut nōn, § 179

Clauses of Description or Characteristic, § 177
Substantive Clauses of Result, § 187.1

adsurgō, -ere, -surrēxi, -surrēctūrus, rise

corrīgō, -ere, -rēxi, -rēctus, correct

diadēma, -atis, n., royal crown
dictātor, -āris, m., dictator (Roman magistrate, appointed for six months in emergencies)

fāstī, -ōrum, m. pl., the calendar Mārtius, -a, -um, adj., of March merx, mercia, f., merchandise peregrinus, -a, -um, adj., foreign repetundae, -ārum, f. pl., extortion sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessūrus, sit senātōrius, -a, -um, adj., senatorial
VIII. THE IDES OF MARCH


Personal Pronouns, §§ 129, 130
Substantive Clauses of Purpose, § 183
Causal Clauses introduced by cum, § 189

coniūrātī, -ōrum, m. pl., conspirators
fātālis, -e, adj., fated, hence dangerous
haruspex, -icis, m. a soothsayer
iste, -a, -ud, dem. adj. and pron. this, that (referring to the person addressed)

Substantive Clauses after Verbs of Fearing, § 184
Temporal Clauses introduced by cum, § 194. 2
Indefinite Pronouns, § 144

prōsiliō,-īre,-ui, ———, leap forward
pugiō, -ōnis, m., short dagger, poniard
toga, -ae, f., toga (the outer garment of the Romans)
umerus, -i, m. the upper arm, the shoulder
visus, -ūs, m. an apparition, vision
THE ASSASSINATION OF CÆSAR, 44 B. C.
IX. THE CHARACTER OF CÆSAR

Caesar, si potestās dēligēndi sibi data esset, tālem mortem optāvisset; nam pridīē quam occisus est, in sermōne cum quibusdam amicīs conlātō, dixit repentinam mortem esse suā quidem sententiā commodissimam.

Temperantia, quō rārior in principibus est, hōc magis laudāri dēbet. Caesar, quamquam studiis belli erat asperrimus, tamen in victoriā erat clēmentissimus. Cum enim dēprehensē dissipet quāsdam litterās ad Pompēium missās ab eis qui sibi restiterant, tamen legere nōluit, sed combussit; nam praetērita condōnāre, nōn novās offēnsiōnis causās reperīre voluit. Haec laudātiō est Cicerōnis: "Nihil oblivisci solet Caesar nisi in-iūriās." Eōs qui inimici sibi fuerant nōn sōlum amicōs fecit, sed etiam honōribus auxit. C. Memmiōm cōnsulem efficere cōnātus est, etsi asperrīmae fuerant eius in ipsum ērātiōnēs.

Predicate Genitive, § 73. a
Two Accusatives, Direct Object and
Adjunct Accusative, with Verbs
of Making, Choosing, etc., § 94

Cicerō, -ōnis, m., Cicero (the orā-
tor)
laudātiō, -ōnis, f., praise, eulogy

Ablative of Measure of Difference,
§ 114
Ablative of Respect, § 115
ConcessiveClauses with cum, § 192

legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus, read
optō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, desire, pray
for

X. PERSONAL APPEARANCE OF CÆSAR

Caesar trāditur fuisse excelsā statūrā, ōre plēnō, nigrīs 15
oculis, capite calvō. Quaīm calvītī défōrmitātem, quod saepe
inīmicas iocō erat, molestē ferēbat. Quā rē īūs laureae per-
petūō gestandae, quod eī senātus décrēverat, libenter recēpit
atque ûsūrpāvit. Tam temperātūs erat in omnibus vitæ
partibus ut Catō diceret ūnum Caesarem ēvertendae rei 20
publicae consilium cepisse sōbrium. Rei militāris et equitandi peritissimus, labōris ultrā fidem patiēns erat. In agmine nōn numquam equō, saepius pedibus antecēdēbat, capite nūdō, seu sōl seu imber erat. Longissima itinera incrēdibilī celeritāte cōnficiēbat, ut persaepe ante nūntiōs perveniret; neque eum morābantur flūmina, quae nandō trāiciēbat. Nihil, ut visum est, eum potuit prohibēre cōnāta sua perficere. Omnīnō Caesar erat vir quem hostēs timērent, amīci amārent, omnēs admirārentur.

Ablative of Description or Quality, § 116
Clauses of Description or Characteristic, § 177

amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, love
calvītium, calvītī, n., baldness
calvus, -a, -um, adj., bald
dēfōrmītās, -ātis, f., disfigurement
equītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, ride (on horseback)
ēvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus, over-throw
gestō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, wear

Gerund (an active verbal noun), § 223. 1–4
Gerundive (a passive verbal adjective), § 224. a–d

locus, -ī, m., jest
laurea, -ae, f., laurel wreath
niger, -gra, -grum, adj., black, dark
nō, nāre, nāvī, ———, swim
persaepe, adv., very often
sōbrius, -a, -um, adj., sober, in one’s senses
ūsūrpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, make use of
THE GALLIC WAR

BOOK I

CAESAR'S FIRST CAMPAIGN, 58 B.C.

THE WAR WITH THE HELVETII

Gaul, its divisions and nations

GALLIA est omnis divisa in partēs trēs; quārum
ūnam, incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitānī, tertiam qui
ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur.
Hi omnēs linguā, institūtis, lēgibus inter sē differunt.
Gallōs ab Aquitānīs Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dividit.

The characters of the nations

Hōrum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae, propterēa quod ā
cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, mini-
mēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant atque ea quae
ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent important; proximique sunt Germānīs qui trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum con-
tinenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētīi quoque
reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotidiānīs
proelīis cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut sui finibus eōs
prohibent aut ipsi in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt.
The boundaries of each

Eorum una pars, quam Gallos obtinere dictum est, initium capiit a flumine Rhodanō; continetur Garumnā flumine, Ōceanō, finibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Séquanis et Helvētiis flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentriōnēs. Belgae ab extrēmis Galliae finibus orientur, pertinent ad inferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēni, spectant in septentriōnem et orientem sōlem. Aquitānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pyrēnæōs montēs et eam partem Ōceanī quae est ad Hispāniam pertinet; spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentriōnēs.

Orgetorix, the Helvētian, plans to invade Gaul


The Helvetii are persuaded because they need more territory

Id hoc facilis ēis persuāsit, quod undique locī nātūrā Helvēti continetur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, qui agrum Helvētiūm ā Germānīs dividit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, qui est inter Séquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, qui prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiis dividit.

Hīs rébus fiēbat ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile finitimis bellum inferre possent; quā ex parte hominēs bellandi cupidi magnō dolōre adficiēbantur. Prō multitūdine autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitūdinis, angustīōs sē finēs habēre arbitrābantur, qui in longitūdinem milia passuum ccxl, in lātitūdinem clxxx patēbant.
They decide on the preparations that must be made

3. His rébus adducti et auctóritáte Orgetorígis permótí constiúerunt ea quae ad profísciscendum pertínérent comparáre: iúmentórum et carrórum quam maximum numerum coëmere, sémentes quam maximás facere, ut in itinere cópia frúmenti suppeteret, cum proximís civítátiús pácem et amicitiam con-fímare. Ad eás rés conñiciendás biennium sibi satis esse dúxërunt; in tertium annum profectionem lège conñírmant.

Orgetoríx is placed in charge, but conspires with neighboring chiefs to seize the sovereignty

Ad eás rés conñiciendás Orgetoríx dux déligitur. Is légátióne ad civítátes succépit. In eó itinere persuádet Cas-ticó, Catamantáloedís fillió, Sèquanó, cuíus pater régnnum in Sèquanís multós annós obtinuerat et á senátú populi Rómáni amicus appellátus erat, ut régnnum in civítáte suá occupáret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorigi Haeduó, frátrí Diviciácí, qui eó tempore principátum in civítáte obtinébat ac maximë plébei acceptus erat, ut idem conñárétur persuádet, éique filiam suam in mátrimónió dat.

Perfacile factú esse illis probat cónata perficere, propereá quad ipse suae civítātis imperium obtentúrus esset: nōn esse dubium quin tōtius Galliae plúrimum Helvética possent; sē suís cópiis suóque exercitú illis régna conciliátiúrum con-fímat. Hác orátione adducti inter sē fidem et iús iúrandum dant, et régnó occupató per trés potentissímos ac firmissi-mós populós tōtius Galliae sēsē potiri posse spérant.

Orgetoríx is brought to trial, but escapes

4. Ea rés est Helvética per indicium ōnúntiátā. Mōribus suís Orgetorígem ex vinculis causam dicem coëgérunt. Dam-25 nātum poenam sequi oportébat ut igni cremárétur.
Diē cōstitūtā causae dictiōnis Orgetorīx ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum milia decem, undique coēgit, et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs nē causam 5 diceret sē ēripuit.

*His death*

Cum cīvitās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur, multitūdinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorīx mortuus est; neque abest suspiciō, ut Helvētii arbitrantur, quin ipse sibi mortem cōnsēverit.

*The Helvetii burn their towns and begin their journey*

5. Post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētii id quod cōnstituerant facere cōnantur, ut cī finibus suis exeat. Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vīcōs ad quadingentōs, reliqua privāta aedificia incendunt; frūmentum omne, praeter quod 15 sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut, domum reditiōnis spē sublātā, parātiōrēs ad omnia pericula subeunda essent; trium mēnsium molita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent.

*They are joined by other tribes*

Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingis et Latobrigis, finitimīs, uti eōdem ūsi cōnsiliō, oppidis suis vicīisque exūstis, ūnā cum 20 eis proficiscantur; Bōlōsque, qui trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant. Nōrēiamque oppugnārant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi adsciscunt.

*The two possible routes are described*

6. Erant omninō itinera duo quibus itineribus domō exīre possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, 25 inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vīx quā singuli carri dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut
THE RHONE FROM GENEVA TO PAS DE L'ÉCLUSE

- Murus fossaque
- Redoubts (Castella)
- Watch Posts with a distant view

The course of the Rhone in certain parts is widened as it is supposed to have been at the time of the war in Gaul.
facile perpauca prohibere possent; alterum per provinciam nostram, multo facilius atque expeditius, propterea quod

THE JURA PASS (PAS DE L'ÉCLUSE)

inter fines Helvetiorum et Allobrogum, qui nuper pacati erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque non nullis locis vadit transitetur.

They decide to go through the Province

Caesar takes measures to stop them

7. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnāri, mātūrat ab urbe proficisci, et, quam maximīs potest itineribus, in Galliām ulterīōrem contendit et ad Genāvam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam maximum potest 5 militum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulterīōre legiō ūna); pontem qui erat ad Genāvam iubet rescindi.

They send an embassy to Caesar to ask his permission

Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētīi certōrēs factī sunt, lēgā-tōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs civitātis, cuius lēgātiōnis Nammēius et Verucloetius principem locum obtinēbant, qui dicerent 'sibi esse in animō sine ūllō maleficīo iter per prōvinciam facere, proptereā quod aliud iter habērent nūllum; rogāre ut eius voluntāte id sibi facere liceat.'

Caesar puts them off to gain time

Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium cōnsulem occi-sum exercitumque eius ab Helvētiīs pulsum et sub iugum 15 missum, concēdendum nōn putābat; neque homīnēs inimicō animō, datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris faciundī, temperātūrōs ab iniūriā et maleficīo existimābat. Tamen, ut spatiōm intercēdere possēt, dum militēs quōs imperāverat convenirent, lēgātis respondit diem sē ad dēliberandum 20 sūmptūrum: sī quid vellent, ad Īd. Apr. reverterentur.

Meanwhile he fortifies the bank of the Rhone to prevent their crossing

8. Interea ēa legiōne quam sēcum habēbat militibusque quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iūram, quī finēs Sēquanōrum
ab Helvētiis dividit, mīlia passuum undēviginti mūrum, in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim, fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō facilius, si sé invitō trānsire cōnārentur, prohibēre posset.

The Helvetii attempt to cross, but are driven back

Ubi ea diēs quam cōnstituerat cum lēgātis vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sé mōre et exemplō populi Rōmānī posse iter ùlli per prōvinciam dare; et, si vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum ostendit. Helvētiī, eā spē dēlectī, nāvibus iūnectis ratibusque complūribus factīs, alīi vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, nōn numquam interdiū, saepius noctū, si perrumpere possent cōnāti, operis mūnitioē et militum concursū et tēlis repulsī, hoc cōnātū dēstīērunt.

Persuaded by Dumnorix, a Hāduan chief, the Sequani permit the Helvetii to pass through their territory

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs invītis propert angustiās ire nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā sponte persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorigem Haeduum mittunt, ut eō dēprecātōre à Sēquanīs impetrērent. Dumnorix grātiā et largitiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat et Helvētiīs erat amicus, quod ex eā civitāte Orgetorigis filiām in mātrimōnium dūxerat; et cupiditāte régni adductus novīs rēbus studēbat et quam plūrimās civitātēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit et à Sēquanis impetrat ut per finēs suōs Helvētiīs ire patiantur, obsidēsque utī inter sēsē dent perficit: Sēquaniī, nē itinere Helvētiīs prohibēant; Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniūriā trānseant. 25
Cæsar deems this movement also a danger to the Province

10. Cæsari renuntiātur Helvētiis esse in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum finēs facere, quī nōn longē à Tolōsātium finibus absunt, quae civitās est in prōvinciā. Id si fieret, intellegēbat magnō cum pe- riculō prōvinciae futūrum ut hominēs bellicōsōs, populī Rōmānī inimicōs, locīs patentibus maximēque frūmentāriīs finitimōs habēret.

He adds to his forces and marches against the Helvetii

Ob eās causās ei mūniōni quam fēcerat T. Labiēnum légātum praeficit; ipse in Italiām magnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscribit, et trēs quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant ex hibernīs ēdūcit, et, quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs erat, cum his quīnque legiōnibus ire contendit.

He meets with resistance, but crosses the Rhone with his army

Ibi Cētronēs et Grāiocēli et Caturīgēs, locīs superiōribus occupātīs, itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Complūribus hīs proelīs pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est citerīoris prōvinciae extrēmum, in finēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum finēs, ab Allobrogibus in Sēgusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciām trāns Rhodanum prīmī.

The Helvetii ravage the country of the Haeduī

11. Helvētiī iam per angustiās et finēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Haeduōrum finēs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Haeduī, cum sē suaque ab eīs défendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt
rogātum auxilium: 'Ita sē omni tempore dē populistō Rō-
mānō meritōs esse ut paene in cōnspectū exercitūs nostrī agri vāstāri, liberī in servītūtem ab dúci, oppida expugnāri nōn dēbuerint.'

The Haeduī and their neighbors ask Caesar for help

Eōdem tempore Ambarri, necessārii et cōnsanguinei ā Haeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt sēsē, dēpopulātis agrīs, nōn facile ab oppidis vim hostium prohibēre. Item Allobrogēs, qui trāns Rhodanum vicōs possessiōnēsque ha-
bēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et dēmōnstrant sibi praeter agri solum nihil esse reliqui. Quibus rēbus adduc-
tus Caesar nōn exspectandum sībi statuit, dum, omnibus for-
tūnis sociōrum cōnsūmpτis, in Santonōs Helvētii pervenirent.

Three cantons of the Helvetii cross the Saōne

12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per finēs Haeduōrum et Sē-
quanōrum in Rhodanum influit, incrēdibili lēnitāte ita ut ocu-
lis, in utram partem fluat, iūdicāri nōn possit. Id Helvētii i5
ratibus ac lintribus iūncīs trānsibant. Ubi per explōrātōrēs
Caesar certior factus est trēs iam partēs cōpiārum Helvētiōs
id flūmen trādūxisse, quārtam fērē partem citrā flūmen
Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertīā vigiliā cum legionibus tribus
ē castris prefectus, ad eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum 20
flūmen trānsierat.

Caesar attacks and destroys the Tigurīni, who had not yet crossed

Eōs impeditōs et inopinantēs adgressus magnam partem eōrum concidit; reliqui sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in pro-
ximās silvās abdiderunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurinus;
nam omnis civitas Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs divisa est.
And thus avenges a former disgraceful defeat

Hic pāgus ūnus, cum domō exisset patrum nostrōrum memoriā, L. Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat et eius exercitum sub iugum miserat. Ita sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum immortālium, quae pars civitātis Helvētiae īnsignem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea princeps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn sōlum pūblicās sed etiam privātās iniūriās ultus est; quod eius sociī L. Pisōnis avum, L. Pisōnem lēgātum, Tigurīnī ēōdem proeliō, quō Cassium, interfēcerat.

Caesar crosses the Sadne and receives a Helvetian embassy

10 13. Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōnsequī posset, pontem in Arāri faciendum cūrat atque ita exercitum trāducit. Helvētiī repentinō eius advēntū commōti, cum id quod ipsi diēbus vigintī aegerrimē cōnfēcerant, ut flūmen trānsirent, illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellegerent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cuius lēgātiōnis Divicō princeps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dux Helvētiōrum fuerat.

Divico begs and threatens

Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: *"Si pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiis faciet, in eam partem ibunt atque ibi erunt Helvētiī, ubi eōs tū, Caesar, cōnstitueīs atque esse volueris; 20 sin bellō persequī perseverābis, reminiscere et veteris incommodi populi Rōmāni et pristinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus es, cum ei quī flūmen trānsierant suīs auxiliōm ferre nōn possent, nōlī ob eam rem aut tuae magnopere virtūtī tribuere, aut nōs dēspicere; nōs

* Passages marked with a star have been changed from indirect to direct discourse. For the indirect form, see pp. 225 ff.
ita à patribus maiōribusque nostris didicimus ut magis virtūte contendāmus quam dolō aut insidiis nitāmur. Quā rē nōll committere ut is locus ubi cōnstitimus ex calamitāte populi Rōmānī et internecionē exercitus nōmen capiat aut memoriam prōdat."

Caesar offers conditions of peace which Divico declines

14. His Caesar ita respondit: *"Eō mihi minus dubitātiōnis datur, quod eās rēs quās lēgāti Helvētii commemorāverunt memoriā teneō, atque eō gravius ferō, quō minus meritō populi Rōmānī accidērunt; quī si alicuius iniūriae sibi cōnscius fuisset, nōn fuit difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptus est, quod neque commissum a sē intellegēbat quā rē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putābat. Quod si veteris contumēliāe obliviscī volō, num etiam recentium iniūriārum, quod mē invitō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāstis, quod Haeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogēs vexāstis, memoriam dēpōnere possum?

"Quod vastrā victoriā tam insolenter glōriāmini, quodque tam diū vōs impūne iniūriās tulisse admirāmini, eōdem pertinet. Čonsuerunt enim di immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commutātiōne rērūm doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcisci volunt, his secundōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere.

"Cum ea ita sint, tamen si obsidēs a vōbīs mihi dabuntur, ut ea quae pollicēmini vōs factūrōs intellegam, et si Haeduī de iniūriis quās ipsīs sociēisque eōrum intulistis, item si Allobrogībus satisfaciētis, vōbiscum pācem faciam."

Divico respondit: *"Ita Helvētii à maiōribus suīs institūti sunt uti obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuērint; eius rei populus Rōmānus est testis." Hōc responsō datō discessit.
Caesar’s cavalry meets with a slight reverse

15. Posterō die castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar, equitātumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor milium, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Haeduīs atque eōrum sociis coāctum habēbat, praemittit qui videant quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. Quī cupidius novissimum agmen īnsecūtī, aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et paucī dē nostrīs cadunt.

The Helvetii march north and Caesar follows

Quō proeliō sublāti Helvētiī, quod quīngentīs equītibus tantam multī tudinēm equitūm prōpulerrant, audācius subsis-
tere nōn numquam et novissimō agmine proeliō nostrōs lacesserē coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat, ac satis habēbat in praeuentiā hostem rapīnis populātiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs circiter quīndecim iter fēcērunt uti inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum primum nōn amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs milibus passuum interesserē.

The Haeduī fail to furnish the grain which they promised

16. Interim cotidiē Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum quod essent publicē pollicitā flāgitāre. Nam propter frīgora, nōn modo frūmenta in agris mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābulī quidem satis magna cópia suppetēbat; eō autem frūmentō quod flūmine Arāri nāvibus subvexerat propterea minus útī poterat, quod iter ab Arāri Helvētiī āverterant, ā quībus discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcē Haeduī: cōnferri, comportāri, adesse dicere.

Caesar is embarrassed and upbraids the Haeduian chiefs

Ubi sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit et diem īnstāre quō diē frūmentum militibus mētīri oportēret, convocātīs eōrum prince-
cipibus, quōrum magnam cópiam in castrīs habēbat, — in
his Diviciáco et Liscó, qui summó magistrátuí praerat, quem vergobretum appellant Haedui, qui créatur annuus et vitae necisque in suús habet potestátem,—graviter eós accúsat, quod, cum neque emí neque ex agrís súmi posset, tam necessaríō tempore, tam propinquís hostibus, ab eis nón sublevétor; præsertim cum magná ex parte eórum precibus adductus bellum suscéperit, multó etiam gravius, quod sit dêstitútus, queritur.

Liscus lays the blame on a faction opposed to the Romans


In private he discloses the power and ambition of Dumnorix, the leader of this faction

Others support the charges of Liscus

Eadem sécrētō ab aliis quaerit; reperit esse vēra: *“Ipse est Dumnorix, summā audāciā, magnā apud plēbem propter liberalitātem grātiā, cupidus rērūm novārum. Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Haeduōrum vectīgālia parvō pretīō redēmpta habet, propterea quod illō licente contra licēri audet nēmō. His rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxit et facultātēs ad largiendum magnās comparāvit; magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptu semper alit et circum sē habet, neque sōlum domi sed etiam apud finitimās civitātēs largiter potest; atque huius potentiae causā mātre in Bitūrigibus homini illic nōbilissimō ac potentissimō conlocāvit, ipse ex Helvētiis uxōrem habet, sorōrem ex mātre et propinquās suās nuptum in aliās civitātēs conlocāvit.

They declare that Dumnorix favors the Helvetii

“Favet et cupit Helvētiis propter eam adfinitātem, ōdit etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia eius dēminūta et Diviciācus frāter in antiquum locum grātiae atque honōris est restitūtus. Si quid accidit Rōmānis, summam in spem per Helvētiōs régni obtinēndī venit; imperiō populi Rōmānī nōn modo dē régno, sed etiam dē eā quam habet grātiā dēspērat.”

Caesar discovers that Dumnorix caused the defeat of the Roman cavalry

Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucis ante diēbus esset factum, initium eius fugae factum ā Dumnorīge atque eius equitibus, — nam equitātūi, quem auxiliō Caesari Haeduī miserant, Dumnorix praeeerat; eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātum perterritum.
Other proofs of the treachery of Dumnonix. Caesar thinks he should be punished, but does not wish to offend Diviciacus

19. Quibus rebus cognitis, cum ad hás suspiciorès certissimae rès accéderent, — quod per finés Séquanórnum Helvétiós tráduxisset, quod obsidēs inter eós dandōs cūrāsset, quod ea omnia nōn modo iniussū suō et cīvitātis sed etiam inscientibus ipsis fēcisset, quod a magistrātū Haeduorūm accūsārētur,—satis esse causae arbitrābātur quā rē in eum aut ipse animadvertet aut cīvitātem animadvertere iūbēret.

His omnibus rēbus ūnum repugnābat, quod Diviciācī frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, summam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, iūstitiam, temperantiam cog. nōverat: nam nē eius suppliciō Diviciācī animum offenderet verēbātur.

He summons Diviciacus, who pleads for his brother’s pardon

Itaque prius quam quicquam cōnārētur, Diviciācum ad sē vocāri iubet, et cotidiānīs interpretibus remotis per C. Valerium Procillum, principem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō conloquitur; simul commonefacit quae ipsō prae sente in conciliō Gallōrum dē Dumnorīge sint dicta; et ostendit quae sēparātim quisque dē eō apud sē dixerit; petit atque hortātur ut sine eius offēnsione animi vel ipse dē eō, causā cognitā, statuat vel cīvitātem statuere iubeat.

posset, per mē crēvit; quibus opibus ac nervis nōn sōlum' ad minuendam grātiam sed paene ad perniciem meam ūtitur; ego tamen et amōre frāternō et existimātiōne volgi com-
moveor. Quod si quid ei abs tē gravius acciderit, cum ego 5 hunc locum amīcitiae apud tē teneō, nēmō existimābit nōn meā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē tōtius Galliae animī a mē āvertentur.”

_Dumnorix is spared, but is closely watched_

Haec cum pluribus verbis flēns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar eius dextram prēndit; consōlātus rogat finem ārandī faciat; 10 tanti eius apud sē grātiam esse ostendit uti et rei publicae iniūriam et suum dolōrem eius voluntāti ac precibus con-
dōnet. Dumnorigem ad sē vocat, frātrem adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat, ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae civitās querātur, prōpōnit; monet ut in reliquum tempus omnēs 15 suspicionēs vitet; praeterita sē Diviciācō frātri condōnāre dicit. Dumnorigi custōdēs pōnit, ut quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, scire possit.

_Caesar prepares for battle_

21. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse milia passuum ab ipsius castris octō, quālis 20 esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēnsum, qui cognō-
cerent misit. Renūntiātum est facīlem esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā 25 T. Labiēnum, lēgātum prō praetōre, cum duābus legiōnibus et eis ducibus qui iter cognōverant, summum iugum montis ascendere iubet; quid suī cōnsili sit, ostendit. Ipsi dē quārtā vigiliā, eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant, ad eōs contendit, equitātumque omnem ante sē mīttit. P. Cōnsidius, qui rei militāris peritissimus habēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et posteā in M. Crassī fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.
The error of Considius prevents the action

22. Primâ lūce, cum summus móns ā Labiĕnō tenĕrētur, ipse ab hostium castris nōn longius mille et quingentis passibus abesse, neque, ut posteā ex captīvis comperit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labiĕnī cognitus esset, Considius equō admissō ad eum accruirit; dicit montem quem ā Labiĕnō occupāri voluerit ab hostibus tenēri; id sē ā Gallicis armis atque insignibus cognōvisse.

Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem subdūcit, aciem ĭnstruit. Labiĕnus, ut erat ei praeceptum ā Caesare nē proelium committeret, nisi ipsius cōpiāe prope hostium castra visae essent, ut undique ſūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret, monte occupātō nostrōs exspectābat proelīōque abstinēbat. Multō dēnique diē per explōrātōrēs Caesar cognōvit et montem ā suis tenēri et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Considium, timōre perterritum, quod nōn vidisset prō visō sibi renūntiāsse. Eō diē, quō consuērat intervāllō, hostēs sequitur et milia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.

Caesar marches toward Bibracte. The Helvetii follow

23. Postridiē eius diēi, quod omnīnō biduum supererat cum exercitūi frūmentum mētīri oportēret, et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Haeduōrum longē maximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius milibus passuum duodēviginti aberat, rei frūmentāriae prōspiciendum existimāvit; itaque iter ab Helvētiōs āvertit ac Bibracte ĩre contendit.

Ea ĭrēs per fugitivōs L. Aemili, decurīōnis equītum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētiī, seu quod timōre per territōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē existimārent, eō magis quod pridiē, superiōribus locīs occupātīs, proelium nōn commisissent, sive eō, quod rē frūmentāriā interclūdī posse
confidenter, committató consiliō atque itinere conversō nostrōs ā novissimō agmine insequī ac lacerare coepērunt.

Both sides prepare for battle

24. Postquam id animum advertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūcit equitātumque qui sustinēret hostium impetum misit. Ipse interim in colle mediō triplex aciem instruxit legionēm quattuor veterānārum; sed in summō iugō duās legiōnēs, quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē conscripsērat, et omnia auxilia conlocāri, sarcinās in ūnum locum cōnferri et eum ab his qui ē superiōre aciē cōnstiterant mūniri iussit. Helvētii, cum omnibus suis carris secūti, impedimenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsi cōnfertissimā aciē, reiectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā, sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt.

The battle begins

25. Caesar primum suō, deinde omnium ex conspectū remōtis equīs, ut aequātō omnium periculō spēm fugae tolleret, cohortātus suōs procium commisit. Militēs, ē locō superiōre pilis missis, facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. Eā disiectā, gladiis dēstrictis ē eōs impetum fēcērunt. Gallīs magnō ad pugnam erat impedimentō, quod, pluribus eōrum scūtis ūnō ictū pilōrum trānsfixīs et conligātīs, cum ferrum sē inflexisset, neque ēvellere neque sinistrā impeditā satis commodē pugnāre poterant, multī ut, diū iactātō bracchiō, praepōtārent scūtum manū ēmittere et nūdō corpore pugnāre:

The Helvetii retreat, but rally

Tandem volneribus dēfessi et pedem referre, et, quod mōns aberat circiter mille passuum, ēō sē recipere coepērunt. Captō monte et succēdentibus nostrīs, Bōiī et Tulingī, quī
hominum milibus circiter quindecim agmen hostium claudē-bant et novissimis praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs ab latere aperto adgressī circumvenire; et id conspicāti Helvētii,

THE DEFEAT OF THE HELVETII

As the battle plan shows, only the third line of the Roman army faced about (conversa signa, l. 5) to meet the advancing Boii and Tulingi. The other two lines continued to face the Helvetii as before. The verb intulērunt (l. 6) refers to the whole Roman force, which made the attack in two divisions as described

qui in montem sēsē recēperant, rūrsus instāre et proelium redintegrāre coeperunt. Rōmāni conversa signa bipartitō 5 intulērunt: prīma et secunda acīēs, ut vīctis ac submōtīs resisteret; tertia, ut venientēs sustineret.
THE GALIC WAR—BOOK I

After a desperate conflict the Helvetii are defeated


The survivors retreat into the territory of the Lingones

Ex eō proelīō circiter hominum mīlia cxxx superfuērunt, eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt: nūllam partem noctis itinere intermissō, in finēs Lingonom diē quārtō pervēnērunt, cum et propter volnera militum et propter sepultūram occisōrum nostrī eōs sequī nōn potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonēs litterās nūntiōsque misit nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent; quī si iūvissent, sē eōdem locō quō Helvētiōs habitūrum. Ipsē triduō intermissō cum omnibus cōpiis eōs'sequi coepit.

The Helvetii negotiate for surrender

27. Helvētiī omnium rērum inopīā adductī légātōs dē dedītiōne ad eum misērunt. Quī cum eum in itinere convĕnissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent suppliciterque locūti flentēs pācem petissent, atque eōs in eō locō quō tum essent suum adventum exspectāre iussisset, pāruērunt. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs qui ad eōs perfūgissent poposcit.
"ITA ANCIPITI PROELIO DIU ATQUE ACRITER PUGNATUM EST"

(See page 30, line 1)
Six thousand of them try to escape, but are captured

Dum ea conquiruntur et conferuntur, circiter hominum milia sex eius pagi qui Verbigenus appellatur, sive timore perterriti, nē armis traditis suppliciō adficerentur, sive spē salūtis inducti, quod in tantā multitudine dediticiōrum suam fugam aut occultāri aut omnīnō ignorāri posse existimārent, primā nocte e castris Helvētiōrum egressi ad Rhēnum finēisque Germānōrum contendērunt.

28. Quod ubi Caesar resciit, quōrum per finēs ierant, his uti conquirerent et reducerent, si sibi purgāti esse vellent, imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs, obsidibus, armis, perfugis traditis, in dēditionem accēpit.

The Helvetii and their allies return home

Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrigōs in finēs suōs, unde erant profecti, reverti iussit; et, quod omnibus frūgibus āmissis domi nihil erat quō famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit ut eis frūmenti cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vicōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere iussit. Id eā maximē ratione fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum unde Helvētiī discesserant vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, qui trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ē suīs finibus in Helvētiōrum finēs trānsirent, et fīnitimi Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent.

The Boii are allowed to settle among the Hædui

Bōiōs petentibus Haeduis, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cogniti, ut in finibus suis conlocārent, concessit; quibus illi agrōs dedērunt, quōsque postea in parem īuris liber-

Digitized by Google
WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS

The number of the Helvetii and their allies

29. In castris Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt litteris Graecis cōnfectae et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus in tabulis nōminātim ratiō cōnfecta erat, qui numerus domō exisset eōrum qui arma ferre possent, et item séparātim quot pueri, senēs mulierēsque. Quārum omnium rērum summa erat 5 capitum Helvētiōrum milium cclxiii, Tulingōrum milium xxxvi, Latobrigōrum xiii, Rauracōrum xxiii, Bōiōrum xxxii; ex his qui arma ferre possent, ad milia xcii. Summa omnium fuērunt ad milia cclxviii. Eōrum qui domum rediērunt, cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est 10 numerus milium c et x.

THE WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS

The Gallic chiefs come to congratulate Caesar

30. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōnfectō totius fērē Galliae lēgāti, principēs civitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt: *"Intellegimus," inquiunt, "tametsi prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniūriis populi Rōmānī ab his poenās bellō repetisti, 15 tamen eam rem non minus ex ūsū Galliae quam populi Rōmānī accidisse; propereā quod eō cōnsiliō flōrentissimiōs rēbus domōs suās Helvētii reliquērunt, uti tōtī Galliae bellum inferrent imperiōque potiērentur locumque domiciliō ex magnā cōpiā dēligerent, quem ex omni Galliā opportūnissimum ac frūctuōsisimum iūdicāssent, reliquāsque civitātēs stipendiāriās habērent."

A day is set for a future council

Petiērunt uti sibi conciliūm totius Galliae in diem certam indicere idque Caesaris voluntāte facere licēret: "Sēsē ha-bēre quāsdam rēs quās ex commūnī cōnsēnsū ab eō petere 25
vellent.' Eā rē permissā diem conciliō cōnstituērunt et iūre iūrando nē quīs ēnūntiāret, nisi quibus cōmmūni cōnsiliō mandātum esset, inter sē sānxērunt.

**Certain chiefs have a private interview with Caesar**

31. Eō conciliō dimissō, idem principēs civitātum qui ante 5 fuerant ad Caesarem revertērunt petiēruntque utī sibi sēcrētō dē suā omniumque salūte cum eō agere licēret. Eā rē impetrātā sēsē omnēs flēntēs Caesarī ad pedēs prōiēcērunt: *"Nōn minus," inquiunt, "nōs id contendimus et labōrāmus, nē ea quae dixerimus ēnūntientur, quam utī ea quae velimus 10 impetrēmus; proptereā quod, si ēnūntiātum erit, summum in cruciātum nōs ventūrōs vidēmus."

**Diviciacus describes the factions in Gaul and the bringing in of the Germans**

Locūtus est prō his Diviciācus Haeduus: *"Galliae tōtius factiōnēs sunt duae; hārum alterius principātum tenent Hae-
dui, alterius Arvernī. Hi cum tantopere dē potentātū inter 15 sē multitōs annōs contenderit, factum est utī ab Arvernīs Sēquanisque Germānī mercēde arcesserentur. Hōrum primō circiter milia quīndecim Rhēnum trānsiērunt; posteāquam agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs ferī ac barbarī adamārunt, trāductī sunt plūrēs; nunc sunt in Galliā ad 20 centum et vigintī milium numerum.

**The subjection of the Hādui**

*Cum his Hādui eōrumque clientēs semel atque iterum armis contendērunt; magnam calamitātem pulsi accēpē-
runt, omnem nōbilitàtem, omnem senātum, omnem equitā-
tum ēmisērunt. Quibus proelīis calamitātibusque frāctī, qui 25 et suā virtūte et populi Rōmānī hospitiō atque amicitīa*
WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS

plūrimum ante in Galliā potuerant, coācti sunt Sēquanīs obsidēs dare nōbilissimōs civitātis, et iūre iūrandō civitātem obstringere sēsē neque obsidēs repetiturōs neque auxilium a populō Rōmānō implōrāturōs, neque recūsāturōs quō minus perpetuō sub illōrum diciōne atque imperiō essent. 5 Ūnus ego sum ex omni civitāte Haeduōrum qui addūcī nōn potuerim ut iūrārem aut liberōs meōs obsidēs darem. Ob eam rem ex civitāte profūgi et Rōmam ad senātum vēni auxilium postulātum, quod sōlus neque iūre iūrandō neque obsidibus tenēbar.

The wretched lot of the Sequani

"Sed peius victōribus Sēquanīs quam Haeduīs victīs accidit, propterea quod Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, in eōrum finibus cōnsēdit tertiamque partem agri Sēquanī, qui est optimus tōtius Galliae, occupāvit, et nunc dē alterā parte tertīā Sēquanōs dēcēdere iubet, propterea quod paucis mēnsibus 15 ante Harūdum milia homīnōm viginti quattuor ad eum vēnērunt, quibus locus ac sēdēs parentur. Paucis annīs omnēs ex Galliae finibus pellentur atque omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsibunt; neque enim cōnferrēndus est Gallicus cum Germānōrum agrō, neque haec cōnsuētūdō victūs cum illā 20 comparanda.

The tyranny and cruelty of Ariovistus

"Ariovistus autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proelīō vicit, quod proelium factum est ad Magetobrigam, superbē et crūdēliter imperat, obsidēs nōbilissimi cuīusque liberōs poscit, et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque ēdit, si qua rēs nōn 25 ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem eius facta est. Homō est barbarus, irācundus, temerārius: nōn possunt eius imperia diūtius sustinēri.
THE GALlic WAR—BOOK I

All Gaul looks to Caesar for deliverance

“Nisi quid in tē populōque Rōmānō erit auxili, omnibus Gallis idem est faciendum quod Helvētii fēcērunt, ut domō ēmigrent, aliud domicилиum, aliās sēdēs remōtās ā Germānīs petant fortūnamque, quaecumque accidat, experiantur. Haec si ēnūntiāta Ariovistō sint, nōn dubitō quin dē omnibus ob-sidibus qui apud eum sint gravissimum supplicium sūmat. Tū vel auctōritāte tua atque exercitūs vel recentī victōriā vel nōmine populī Rōmānī dēterre re potes nē maiōr multitūdō Germānīorum Rhēnum trāduçātur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovistī iniūriā potes dēfendere.”

The silence of the Sequani


Diviciacus explains their desperate plight

Cum ab his saepius quaereret neque ūllam omnīnō vō-cem exprimere posset, idem Diviciācus Haeduus respondit: 20 *“Hōc est miserior et gravior fortūna Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum, quod sōli nē in occultō quidem queri neque auxiliium implōrāre audent; absentisque Ariovistī crūdēlitā-tem, velut si cōram adsit, horrent, propterē quod reliquis tamen fugae facultās datur, Sēquanis vērō, quī intrā finēs 25 suōs Ariovistum recēpērent, quōrum oppida omnia in potes-tāte eius sunt, omnēs cruciātūs sunt perferendī.”
Cæsar promises his assistance and dismisses the chiefs

33. His rēbus cognitis Cæsar Gallōrum animōs verbis confirmavit, pollicitusque est sibi eam rem cūrae futūram; magnam sē habère spem et beneficiō suō et auctōritāte ad-ductum Arioquistum finem iniūriis factūrum. Hāc oratione habitā concilium dimisit.

His reasons for deciding to expel Arioquistus

Et secundum ea multae rēs eum hortābantur quā rē sibi eam rem cogitandum et susciendiām putāret: in primis quod Haeduōs, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque saepenuerō a senātū appellātōs, in servitūte atque in diciōne vidēbat Ger-mānōrum tenēri, ēorumque obsidēs esse apud Arioquistum ac Sēquanōs intellegēbat; quod in tantō imperiō populī Rōmānī turpissimum sibi et rei publicae esse arbitrabātur.

Paulātīm autem Germānōs cōnsuēscere Rhēnum trānsire et in Galliam magnam eōrum multitūdinem venire, populō Rōmānō periculōsum vidēbat; neque sibi hominēs ferōs ac barbarōs temperātūrōs existimābat quin, cum omnem Galliām occupāvissent, ut ante Cimbri Teutonique fēcissent, in prōvinciam exirent atque inde in Itāliam contenderent; quibus rēbus quam māturīmē occurreōndum putābat. Ipsē autem Arioquistus tantōs sibi spiritūs, tantam adrogantiam sūmpserat, ut ferendus nōn vidērētur.

Cæsar asks Arioquistus for an interview, but he declines

34. Quam ob rem placuit ei ut ad Arioquistum lēgātōs mitteret, qui ab eō postulārent uti aliquem locum medium utriusque conloquiō deligeret: velle sēsē dē rē públicā et summīs utriusque rēbus cum eō agere. Eī lēgātiōnī Ario-25 vistus respondit: *"Si quid mihi ā Cæsare opus esset, ego
THE GALLIC WAR—BOOK I

ad eum venirem; sī quid ille mē volt, illum ad mē venire oportet. Praetereā neque sine exercitū in eās partēs Galliae venire audeō quās Caesar possidet, neque exercitum sine magnō comeātū atque mōlimentō in ūnum locum contra-
here possum. Mihi autem mirum vidētur quid in meā Galliā, quam bellō vīcī, aut Caesarī aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negotī sit."

_Cæsar commands Ariovistus to restore the liberties of the Hēduī_

35. His responsis ad Caesarem relātis, iterum ad eum Caesar lēgātōs cum his mandātis mittit: *"Quoniam tantō meō populique Rōmānī beneficiō addictus, cum in cōnsulātū meō rēx atque amicus ā senātū appellātus sit, hanc mihi populōque Rōmānō grātiam refert, ut in conloquium venire invitātūs gravētur neque dē commūnī rē dicendum sībi et cognōscendum putet, haec sunt quae ab eō postulō: primum, nē quam multitūdinem homīnum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūcāt; deinde, obsidēs quōs habet ab Haeduīs reddat, Sēquanīisque permittat ut quōs illīs habent voluntāte eius reddere illīs liceat; nēve Haeduōs iniūriā lacesat, nēve his sociīisque eōrum bellum inferat."

36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: *"Iūs est bellī ut quī vicerint, eis quōs vicerint, quem ad modum velint, imperent; item populus Rōmānus victīs nōn ad alterīus praescriptum,
sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre consuēvit. Si ego populō Rōmānō nōn praescribō quem ad modum suō iūre útātur, nōn oportet mē a populō Rōmānō in meō iūre impediri.

THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST ARIOVISTUS

"Haeduī mihi, quoniam bellī fortūnam temptāvērunt et armīs congressī ac superāti sunt, stipendiāriī sunt factī. 5 Magnam Caesar iniūriam facit qui suō adventū vectigālia mihi dēteriōra faciat. Haeduīs obsidēs nōn reddam, neque
his neque eorum sociis iniuriā bellum inferam, si in eō ma-
nēbunt quod convēnit stipendiumque quotannis pendent; si id nōn fēcerint, longē ēis frāternum nōmen populi Rōmānī aberit. Quod mihi Caesar dēnūntiat sē Haeduōrum iniuriās nōn negligentūrum, nēmō mēcum sine suā perniciē contendit. Cum volet, congeriātur; intellege quid invictī Germānī, exercitātissimi in armis, qui inter annōs quattuordecim tēctum nōn subiērunt, virtūte possint.”

New encroachments of the Germans are reported to Caesar, who hastens against Ariovistus

37. Haec eōdem tempore Caesārī mandāta referēbantur, et lēgātī ab Haeduīs et ā Trēveris veniēbant: Haeduī ques-
tum quod Harūdēs, qui nūper in Galliam ātransportāti essent, finēs eōrum populārentur: ‘Sēsē nē obsidibus quidem datis pācem Ariovisti redimere potuisse; Trēverī autem, pāgōs centum Suēbōrum ad ripam Rhēnī consēdisse, qui Rhēnum trānsire cōnārentur; his praeesse Nasuam et Cim-
berium frātrēs.’ Quibus rēbus Caesār vehementer commōtus māturandum sibi existimāvit, nē, si nova manus Suēbōrum cum veteribus cōpiēs Ariovisti sēsē coniūnxisset, minus facile resistī posset. Itaque rē frūmentāriā quam celerrīmē potuit comparātā, magnis itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

Both strive to reach Vesontio. Caesar arrives there first

38. Cum tridūi viam prōcessisset, nūntiātum est ei Ari-
ovidum cum suis omnibus cōpiēs ad occupandum Vesontiō-
nem, quod est oppidum maximum Sēquanōrum, contendere, tridūique viam ā suīs finibus prōcessisse. Id nē accideret, magnopere sibi praecavendum Caesar existimābat. Namque omnium rērum quae ad bellum ūsui erant summa erat in eō oppidō facultās; idemque nātūrā loci sic mūniēbātur ut
magnam ad ducendum bellum darem facultatem, propterea quod flumen Dubis, ut circino circunductum, paene totum oppidum cingit; reliquum spatium, quod est non amplius pedum sexcentorum, qua flumen intermittit, mons continet magnam altitudine, ita ut radices eius montis ex utraque parte ripae fluminis contingant. Hunc murum circundatus arcem efficit et cum oppido coniungit. Huc Caesar magnis nocturnis diurnisque itineribus contendit, occupatoque oppido ibi praesidium conlocat.

Reports about the Germans frighten Caesar's men

39. Dum paucos dies ad Vesontionem rei frumentariae commeatuque causae moratur, ex percontatione nostrorum vocibusque Gallorum ac mercatuum, qui ingenti magnitudine corporum Germanos, incredibili virtute atque exercitatione in armis esse praedicabant, — saepenumero sese cum his congressos nese volutum quidem atque aciem oculorum dicabant ferre potuisse, — tantus subito timor omnem exercitum occupavit ut non medioctiter omnium mentes animosesque perturbaret.

The inexperienced are panic-stricken

Hic primum ortus est a tribunis militum, praefectis reliquisque, qui ex urbe amicitiae causae Caesarem secuti non magnum in re militari usum habebant; quorum alius alia causae inlatae quam sibi ad proficiscendum necessarium esse diceret, petebat ut eius voluntate discedere liceret; non nulli pusmore adducti, ut timoris suspiciorum vitarent, remanecabant. Hi neque volutum fingere neque interdum lacrimas tenere poterant; abditi in tabernaculis aut suum fatum querebantur aut cum familiarius suis commune periculum miserabantur. Volgo totis castris testamenta obsignabantur.
WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS

Even the veterans are affected and prophesy a mutiny

Hörum vócibus ac timöre paulätim etiam ei qui magnum in castris üsum habëbant, milïtës centuriönësque quique equi-
tätui præerant, perturbäbantur. Qui së ex his minus timidös
existimöri volëbant, nôn së hostem verëri, sed angustiäs iti-
nëris et magnitëdinem silvärum quæ intercëdërent inter ipsös
atque Ariovistum, aut rem frümëntärïam, ut satis commodë
supportäri posset, timëre dicëbant. Nôn nülli etiam Caesarë
nüntäbant, cum castra movëri ac signa ferri iussisset, nôn fore
dictö audientës milïtës neque propter timörem signa lätürös.

Caesar makes light of their fears and recalls the victories of Marius

40. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocätö cõnsiliö, omni-
umque ördinum ad id cõnsiliö adhibïtis centuriönibus,
vehementer eös incüsävit: primum quod, aut quam in partem
aut quô cõnsiliö dúcërentur, sibi quäerendum aut cõgitandum
putärent. *“Ariovistus,” inquit, “më cõnsule cupidissimë
populi Rõmäni amicitiam adpetïit. Cür hunc tam temërë
quisquam ab officiö discessïrum iüdicet? Mihi quidem per-
suädëtur, cognités meis postulätil atque æquitätë condicioñum
perspectä, eum neque meam neque populi Rõmäni grätïam
repubïätürum. Quod si furöre atque ãmenätë impulsus bel-
lum intulerit, quid tamënd vereämiñi? aut cür dë vesträ
virtüte aut dë meä diligentätë ëspëretïis? Factum est eius
hostis perïculum patrum nostrïrum memoriä, cum, Cimbris
et Teutonis æ C. Mariö pulsis, nôn minörem laudem ex-
ercitus quam ipse imperätö meritus vidëbätur; factum est
etiam nüper in Italiä servïli tumultü, quös tamen aliqid
úsus ac disciplïna quam å nóbïs accëperant subleväbant.
Ex quö iüdicäri potest quantum habeat in së boni cõnstantïa,
proptereä quod, quös aliquamdiïi inermës sine causä timuistis,
hös posteä armätös ac victöreä superävisti.
Even the Helvetians and other Gauls have often defeated the Germans

"Dénique hi sunt idem Germānī quibuscum saepenumero Helvētii congressī, nōn sōlum in suis sed etiam in illōrum finibus, plērumque superāvērunt; quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercitūi nōn potuērunt. Si quōs adversum proelīum et fuga Gallōrum commovet, hi, si quaerent, reperire poτe-

runτ, diūturnitāte bellī défatigātīs Gallīs, Ariovistum, cum multōs mēnsēs castrīs sē ac palūdibus tenuisset, neque sui potestātem fēcisset, désprērantēs iam dē pugnā et dispersōs subitō adortum, magis ratiōne et cōnsiliō quam virtūte vicisse. Cui ratiōnī contrā hominēs barbatōs atque imperitōs locus fuit, hāc nē ipse quidem spērat nostrōs exercitus capī posse.

He deprecates their lack of confidence in him

"Quī suum timōrem in rei frūmentāriae simulātiōnem angustiāsque itineris cōnferunt, faciunt adroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperatōris désprērāre aut praecribīre videantur. Haec mihi sunt cūrae; frūmentum Sēquani, Leucī, Lin-

gonēs subministrant, iamque sunt in agris frūmenta mātūra; dē itinere vōs ipsis brevi tempore iūdicābitis.

"Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs neque signa lātūri dicuntur militēs, nihil eā rē commoveor; scīo enim, quibuscumque exercitus dictō audiēns nōn fuerit, aut male rē gestā fortūnam dēfuisse, aut aliqūo facinore compertō avāritiam esse convic-

tam; mea innocentia perpetuā vitā, fēlicitās Helvētiōrum bellō est perspecta.

He proposes an immediate advance

"Itaque quod in longiōrem diem conlātūrus fui, reprae-

sentābō, et proximā nocte dē quārtā vigiliā castra movēbō, ut quam prīnum intellegere possim utrum apud vōs pudor atque officium an timor plūs valeat. Quod si praetereā nēmō
WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS

sequētur, tamen cum sōlā decimā legiōne ībō, dē quā nōn
dubitō, mihiōque ea praetōria cohors erit." Huic legiōni Cae-
sar et indulserat praeципūē et propter virtūtem cōnfidēbat
maximē.

Remarkable effect of Caesar's speech

41. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā mirum in modum conversae sunt 5
omnium mentēs, summaque alacritās et cupiditās belli gerendi

ROMAN ARMY ON THE MARCH

innāta est; princepsque decima legiō per tribūnīs militum
ei grātiās ēgit, quod dē sē optimum iūdicium fēcisset, sēque
esse ad bellum gerendum parātissimam cōnfirmissit. Deinde
reliquae légionēs.cum tribūnīs militum et primōrum ōrdinum 10
centuriōnibus ēgerunt uti Caesari satisfacerent: 'Sē neque
umquam dubitāsse neque timuisse, neque dē summā belli
suum iūdicium, sed imperātōris esse existimāvisse.'
He advances near to the forces of Ariovistus

Eōrum satisfactiōne acceptā et itinere exquisitō per Diviciācum, quod ex Gallis ei maximam fidem habēbat, ut milium amplius quinquāgentā circuitū locis apertis exercitum dūceret, dē quārtā vigiliā, ut dixerat, profectus est. Septimō 5 diē, cum iter nōn intermitteret, ab explorātoribus certior factus est Ariovisti cōpiās ā nostris mīlia passuum quatruo et viginti abesse.

Ariovistus asks for a conference

42. Cognītō Caesaris adventū Ariovistus lēgātōs ad eum mittit: 'Quod anteā dē conloquiō postulāsset, id per sē fieri licēre, quoniam propius accessisset, sēque id sine periculō facere posse existimāret.' Nān respuit condiciōnem Caesar, iamque eum ad sānitātem revertī arbitrābātur, cum id quod anteā petenti dēnegāset ultrō policērētur; magnamque in spem veniēbat, prō suis tantis populique Rōmānī in eum bene-15 ficiis, cognitis suis postulātis, fore uti pertināciā désisteret.

A conference is agreed upon; each party to bring only cavalry

Diēs conloquiō dictus est ex eō diē quintus. Interim saepe cum lēgāti ultrō citrōque inter eōs mitterentur, Ariovistus postulāvit nē quem peditem ad conloquium Caesar addūceret: 'Verēri sē nē per insidiās ab eō circumvenirētur; 20 uterque cum equitātū venīret; aliā ratione sēsē nōn esse ventūrum.'

Caesar takes precaution against treachery

Caesar, quod neque conloquium interpositā causā tollī volēbat neque salūtem suam Gallōrum equitātūi committere audēbat, commodissimum esse statuit, omnibus equis Gallis 25 equitibus dētrāctis, eō legiōnāriōs militēs legiōnis decimae,
cui quam maximē confidēbat, impōnere, ut praesidium quam amīcissimum, si quid opus factō esset, habēret. Quod cum fieret, nōn inridiculē quidam ex militibus decimae legiōnis dixit: 'Plūs quam pollicitus esset Caesarem facere; pollicitum sē in cohortis prætōriæ locō decimam legiōnem habitūrum; ad equum rescribere.'

_Caesar's speech. He pleads for peace, but renews his demands_


Ubi eō ventum est, Caesar initiō orātiōnis sua senātūsque 15 in eum beneficia commemorāvit, quod rēx appellātus esset ā senātū, quod amīcus, quod mūnera amplissimē missa; quam rem et paucis contigisse et prō magnis hominum officiis cōnsuēsse tribuī docēbat; illum, cum neque aditum neque causam postulandi iūstam habēret, beneficiō ac liberālitāte 20 suā ac senātūs ea praemia cōnsecūtum.

Docēbat etiam quam veterēs quamque iūstae causae neccessitūdinis ipsis cum Haeduīs intercēderent, quae senātūs cōnsulta, quotiēns quamque honōrifica in eōs facta essent, ut omni tempore tōtius Galliae principātum Haeduī tenuissent, 25 prius etiam quam nostram amicitiam adpetissent. 'Populi Rōmānī hanc esse cōnsuētūdinem, ut sociōs atque amīcōs nōn modo sui nihil dēperdere, sed grātiā, dignitāte, honōre auctiōrēs vellet esse; quod vērō ad amicitiam populī Rōmānī adtulissent, id eis ēripī quis patī posset?'

30
Postulāvit deinde eadem quae lēgātīs in mandātīs dederat: nē aut Haeduīs aut eōrum sociīs bellum inferret; obsidēs redderet; sī nūllam partem Germānōrum domum remittere posset, at nē quōs amplius Rhēnum trānsire paterētur.

_Ariovistus makes an arrogant reply_

5  **44.** Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris paucā respondit; dē suis virtūtibus multa praedicāvit: ""Trānsii Rhēnum nōn meā sponte, sed rogātus et arcessitus ā Gallīs; nōn sine magnā spē magnisque praemīsiis domum propinquōsque reli- qui; sēdēs habeō in Galliā ab ipsis concessās, obsidēs 10 ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stipendium capiō iūre belli quod victōrēs victis impōnere cōnsuērunt. Nōn ego Gallīs, sed Galli mihi bellum intulērunt; omnēs Galliae civitātēs ad mē oppugnandum vēnērunt ac contrā mē castra habuērunt; eae omnēs cōpiae ā mē ūnō proeliō pulsae ac superātēs 15 sunt. Si iterum experiri volunt, ego iterum parātus sum dēcertāre; si pāce úti volunt, iniquum est dē stipendiō recūsāre quod suā voluntāte ad hoc tempus pepercērunt.

""Amicitiam populi Rōmānī mihi ōrnamentō et praesidiō, nōn dētrimentō esse oportet, atque hāc spē petīi. Si per 20 populum Rōmānum stipendium remittētur et dēditīci sub- trahentur, nōn minus libenter recūsābō populi Rōmānī amicitiam quam adpetīi.

CONFERENCE BETWEEN CESAR AND ARIOVISTUS, KING OF THE GERMANS

"Provincia mea haec est Gallia, sicut illa vestra."

(See page 48, line 29)
nön oporteat, si in vestrōs finēs impetum faciam, sic item vōs estis iniquī quod in meō iūre mē interpellitis.

"Quod frātres à senātū Haeduōs appellātōs dicis, nōn tam barbarus neque tam imperitus sum rērum ut nōn sciam neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Haeduōs Rōmānis auxiliō tulisse, neque ipsōs, in his contentiōnibus quās Haeduī mēcum et cum Sēquanis habuērunt, auxiliō populi Rōmāni ūsēs esse.

"Dēbeō suspiciāri simulātā tē amiciā, quem exercitum in Galliā habēs, mei opprimendī causā habēre. Nisi dēcēdēs atque exercitum dēdūcēs ex his regiōnibus, tē nōn prō amīcō, sed prō hoste habēbō. Quod si tē interfēcerō, multis nōbilibus principibusque populi Rōmāni grātum faciam (id ab ipsis per eōrum nūntiōs compertum habeō), quōrum omnium grātiam atque amicitiam tuā morte redimere poterō. Quod si discesseris et liberam possessionem Galliae mihi trādideris, magnō tē praemīō remūnerābō, et quaecumque bella gerī volēs, sine ūllō tuō labōre et periculō cōnficiam."

Caesar restates his position and disputes the claim of Ariovistus to Gaul

45. Multa ab Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt quà re negotiō dēsistere nōn posset: *Neque mea neque populi Rōmāni consuētūdō patitur uti optimē meritōs sociōs dēseram, neque iūdicō Galliam potius esse tuam quam populi Rōmāni. Bellō superātī sunt Arvernī et Rutēnī ab Q. Fabiō Maximō, quibus populus Rōmānus ignōvit neque in prōvinciam redēgit neque stipendium imposuit. Quod si antiquissimum quodque tempus spectāri oportet, populi Rōmāni iūstissīmum est in Galliā imperium; si iūdicium senātūs observāri oportet, libera dēbet esse Gallia, quam bellō victam suis légibus ūti voluerit.*
A treacherous attack of the Germans puts an end to the conference

46. Dum haec in conloquiō geruntur, Caesari nūntiātum est equītēs Ariovisti propius tumulum accēdere, et ad nos-
trōs adequitāre, lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs conicere. Caesar
loquendi finem fēcit, sēque ad suōs recēpit suisque imperā-
vit nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostēs reicerent. Nam etsī
sine ullō periculō legiōnis dēlēctae cum equitātū proelium
fore vidēbat, tamen committendum nōn putābat ut pulsīs
hostibus dīci posset eōs ab sē per fidem in conloquiō cir-
cumventōs. Posteāquam in volgus militum ēlātum est quà
adrogantīā in conloquiō Ariovistus ūsus omni Gallīā Rōmānīs
interdixisset, impetumque ut in nostrōs eius equītēs fēcis-
sent, eaque rēs conloquium dirēmisset, multō maior alacritās
studiumque pugnandi maius exercitūi iniectum est.

Caesar declines a renewal of the conference

47. Bīduō post Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs mittit:
‘Velle sē dē his rēbus, quae inter eōs agī coeptae neque
perfectae essent, agere cum eō; utī aut iterum conloquiō
diem cōnstitueret, aut, si id minus vēllet, ē suīs lēgātīs
aliquem ad sē mitteret.’ Conloquendi Caesari causa visa
nōn est; et eō magis, quod prīdīē eius diēi Germānī reti-
nēri nōn poterant quīn tēla in nostrōs conicerent. Lēgātum
sēsē magnō cum periculō ad eum missūrum et hominibus
feris obiectūrum existimābat.

Two of Caesar’s envoys are seized by Ariovistus

Commodissimum visum est C. Valerium Procilium, C. Va-
lerī Caburi filium, summā virtūte et hūmānitāte adulēscentem,
— cuīs pater ā C. Valēriō Flaccō cīvitāte dōnātus erat, et prop-
ter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae scientiam, quā multā iam
WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS


**Ariovistus moves his camp. Cavalry skirmishes**


**The German method of fighting**

Genus hoc erat pugnae quō sē Gērmānī exercuerant. Equitum milia erant sex, totidem numerō pēditēs vēlōcissimī ac fortissimī, quōs ex omni cōpiā singulī singulōs suae salūtis causā dēlēgerant; cum his in proeliōs versābantur. Ad eōs sē equitēs recipiēbant; hi, si quid erat dūrius, concurrebant; si quī graviōre volnere acceptō equō déciderat, circumsistēbant; si quō erat longius prōdeundum aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat hōrum exercitātiōne celeritās ut iūbis sublevātī equōrum cursum adaequārent.
Caesar fortifies another camp and divides his forces

49. Ubi eum castris sē tenēre Caesar intellēxit, nē diūtius commeātū prohibērētur, ultrā eum locum quō in locō Ger-
mānī cōnsēderant, circiter passūs sexcentōs ab his, castrīs
idōneum locum délēgit, aciēque triplici instructā ad eum

FORTIFYING THE CAMP

5 locum vēnit. Primam et secundam aciem in armīs esse,
tertiam castra mūnīre iussit. Hic locus ab hoste circiter
passūs sexcentōs, uti dictum est, aberat. Eō circiter homi-
num sēdecim milia expedita cum omni equitātū Ariovistus
misit, quae cōpiae nostrōs terrērent et mūnitiōne prohibē-
rent. Nīhilō sētius Caesar, ut ante cōnstituerat, duās aciēs
hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam opus perficere iussit. Mūnitis
castrīs duās ibi legiōnēs reliquit et partem auxiliōrum, quat-
tuor reliquās in castra maiōra redūxit.
WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS

ARIOVISTUS ATTACKS THE SMALLER CAMP WITH PART OF HIS FORCES


A GERMAN SUPERSTITION DELAYS A GENERAL ENGAGEMENT

Cum ex captivis quaereret Caesar quam ob rem Arioventus proelīō nōn dēcertāret, hanc reperiēbat causam, quod apud Germanōs ea cōnsuētūdō esset, ut mātrēs familiae eōrum sortībus et vāticīnātiōnibus dēclārarent utrum proelium committī ex ūsū esset necne; eās ita dicere: 'Nōn esse fās Germanōs superāre, si ante novam lūnam proelīō conten· dissent.'

CÆSAR FORCES A DECISIVE BATTLE

51. Postridiē eius diēi Caesar praesidiō utrisque castrīs quod satis esse visum est reliquīt, ālāriōs omnēs in cōnspectū hostium prō castrīs minōribus cōnstituit, quod minus multi-
tūdine militum legiōnāriōrum prō hostium numerō valēbat, ut ad speciem ālāriis āuterētur; ipse triplicī inānsestrāit aciē ēquipe ad castra hostium accessit. Tum dēmum necessāriō Germanī suās cōpiās castrīs ēdūxērunt generātīmque cōn-
stituērunt paribus intervallis, Harūdēs, Marcomannōs, Tribocēs, Vangionēs, Nemētēs, Sedusiōs, Suēbōs, omnemque aciem suam raedis et carrīs cumcudemērunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relinquerētur. Eō mulierēs imposuērunt, quae ad proelium proficiscētēs, passis manibus flentēs, implōrābant nē sē in servitūtem Rōmānīs trāderent.
54 THE GALLIC WAR — BOOK I

Desperate fighting at close quarters

52. Caesar singulìs legiònibus singulòs légátòs et quae-
tòrem praefècit, uti eòs testès suae quisque virtùtis habèret; 5
ipse à dextrò cornū, quod eam partem minimè firmam hos-
tium esse animadverterat, proelium commìsit. Et ita nostrī 10
àcriter in hostès signò datò impetum fècèrunt, itaque hostès
repente celerìterque pròcurrèrunt ut spatiórum pila in hostès
coniendi nòn dàrètur. Reiectis pilis commìnis gladiàs pug-
nàtum est. At Germàni celerìter ex consuètùdine suà pha-
lange factà impetus gladiòrum excèpèrunt. Reperti sunt 15
complùrēs nostrī qui in phalangà insilìrent et scùta manibus
revellèrent et désuper volneràrent. Cum hostium aciès à si-
nistrò cornù pulsa atque in fugam coniectà esset, à dextrò
cornù vehementer multitàdùm suòrum nostrām acièm premè-
bant. Id cum animadvertìssit P. Crassus adulēscēns, qui equi-
15 tātui præerat, quod expeditiòr erat quam eī qui inter acièm
versābantur, tertiam acièm labōrantibus nostrīs subsidiō misit.

The Germans flee. Ariovistus escapes

53. Ita proelium restitūtum est atque omnēs hostēs terga
vertèrunt, neque priùs fugere dēstitèrunt quam ad flūmen
Rhēnum, milia passuum ex eō locō circèr quinque, pervē-
nerunt. Ibi perpauci aut viribus cōnfisì trānāre contendèrunt
aut lintribus inventīs sibi salūtem repperērunt. In his fuit
Ariovistus, qui nāviculam délīgātām ad ripam nactus eā pro-
fūgit; reliquòs omnēs cōnsecūtī equitēs nostrī interfēcērunt.

Duae fuèrunt Ariovistī uxōrēs, ùna Suēba nātìōne, quam 25
domō sēcum dúxerat, altera Nōrica, rēgis Vociōnis soror,
quam in Galliā dúxerat à frātre missām; utraque in eā fugā
periit. Fuèrunt duae filiæ: hārum altera occīsa, altera
capta est.
The Battle with Ariovistus

Caesar's two envoys are rescued

C. Valerius Procillus, cum a custódibus in fugā trinis catēnis vinctus traherētur, in ipsum Caesarem hostēs equitātū insequentem incidit. Quae quidem rēs Caesari nōn
T H E G A L L I C W A R — B O O K I

minorem quam ipsa victoria voluptatem adtulit; quod hominem honestissimum provinciae Galliae, suum familiarem et hospitem, ereptum e manibus hostium, sibi restitutum videbat; neque eius calamitate de tantâ voluptate et gratulatione quicquam fortuna deminuerat. Is se praesente de se ter sortibus consultum dicebat utrum igni statim necaretur an in aliud tempus reservaretur; sortium benefici se esse incollem. Item M. Metius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

The end of the campaign. Caesar goes to Hither Gaul

54. Hoc proelio trans Rhenum nuntiato Suebi, qui ad ripas Rheni venerant, domum reverti coeperunt; quos Ubii, qui proximi Rhenum incolunt, perterritos insecuti magnum ex eis numerum occiderunt. Caesar, una aestate duobus maximis bellis confectis, maeturius paulo quam tempus anni postulabat, in hiberna in Sequanos exercitum deduxit; hi bernis Labienum praeposuit; ipse in citeriorem Galliam ad conventus agendos prefectus est.

WRITING TABLETS WITH LATIN SCRIPT
BOOK II

CAESAR'S SECOND CAMPAIGN, 57 B.C.

THE WAR WITH THE BELGIAN CONFEDERACY

All the Belgian tribes combine against the Romans

Cum esset Caesar in citeriore Galliâ, ita uti supra
démonstrâvimus, crêbri ad eum rûmôres adferê-
bantur, litterisque item Labieni certior fiëbat omnês
Belgâs, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dixerâmus, contrâ
populum Rômânum coniûrâre obsidësque inter së dare.

The reasons for the conspiracy

Coniûrandi hâs esse causâs: primum, quod verërentur nê
omnî pâcâtâ Galliâ ad eös exercitus noster addûcerêtur;
diode, quod ab nôn nûllis Gallis sollicitârentur,—partim
qui, ut Germânös diûtius in Galliâ versâri nôluerant, ita
populi Rômâni exercitum hiemâre atque inveterâtscere in
galliâ molestë ferebant; partim qui mûbilitâtë et levitâtë
animi novis imperiis studëbant,—ab nôn nûllis etiam, quod
in Galliâ a potentioribus atque eis qui ad condûcendös homi-
nès facultâtës habëbant volgò rëgna occupábantur, qui minus
facile eam rem imperiô nostrô cônsequi poteránt.

Caesar moves against them early in the spring

2: His nûntiis litterisque commûtus Caesar duâs legiônës
in citeriore Galliâ novâs cônscripsit, et initâ aestâte, in in-
teriôrem Galliam qui dëdûceret, Q. Pedium lëgâtum misit.
Ipse, cum primum pābuli cōpia esse inciperet, ad exercitum vēnit. Dat negotium Senonibus reliquisque Gallis qui finitimī Belgis erant, utī ea quae apud eōs gerantur cognōscant sēque dē his rēbus certīōrem faciant. Hī cōnstanter omnēs 5 nūntiāvērunt manūs cōgī, exercitum in ūnum locum condūcī. Tum vērō dubitandum nōn existimāvit quīn ad eōs profisciērētur. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā castra movet diēbusque circiter quīndecim ad finēs Belgārum pervenit.

The Remi promise aid and report on the situation

3. Eō cum dē imprōvisō celeriusque omnium opiniōne 10 vēnisset, Rēmī, qui proximī Galliae ex Belgis sunt, ad eum légātōs Iccium et Andēmogium, primōs civitātīs, misērunt qui dicērent: "Nōs nostraque omnia in fidem atque potestātem populi Rōmānī permittimus; neque cum reliquīs Belgīs cōnsēnsimus neque contrā populum Rōmānum con-
15 iūrāvimus, parātique sumus et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidis recipere et frūmentō cēterisque rēbus iuvāre; reliquī omnēs Belgae in armīs sunt, Germānique qui cīs Rēnum incolunt sēsē cum his coniūnxērunt, tantusque est eōrum omnium furor ut nē Sussiōnēs 
20 quidem, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque nostrōs, qui eōdem iūre et isdem légibus ūtuntur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magis-
trātum nōbiscum habent, dēterrēre potuerimus quīn cum 
his cōnsentirent."

The origin and warlike character of the Belgae

4. Cum ab his quaereret quae civitātēs quantaeque in 25 armīs essent et quid in bellō possent, sic reperiēbat: *"Plērique Belgae sunt ortī à Germānīs, Rēnumque antiquitūs trāductī propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōnsēdērunt, 
Gallōsque qui ea loca incolēbant expulērunt, sōlique sunt
qui patrum nostrorum memoria, omni Galliā vexātā, Teutōnōs Cimbrōsque intrā suōs finēs ingredi prohibuerint; quā ex rē fit uti eārum rērum memoria magnam sibi auctōritātem magnōsque spiritūs in rē militāri sūmant.

The strength of the Belgian tribes

"De numerō eorum omnia habēmus explōrāta, propterea quod propinquitātibus adfinitātibusque coniūncti, quantum quisque multitūdinem in commūni Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit cognōvimus. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacī et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō valent; hi possunt cōnficere armāta milia centum, polliciti ex eo numerō ēlēcta milia sexāgintā, tōtiusque bellī imperium sibi postulant. Suessiōnēs nostri sunt finitimi; finēs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possident. Apud eōs fuit rēx nostrā etiam memoria Diviciācus, tōtius Galliāe potentissimus, qui cum magnae partis hārum regionum tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuit; nunc est rēx Galba; ad hunc propter iūstitiam prōdentiamque summa tōtius bellī omnium voluntāte dēfertur; oppida habent numerō xii, pollicentur milia armāta l.; totidem Nervii, qui maximē feri inter ipsōs habentur longissimēque absunt; xv milia Atrebātēs, Ambiānī x milia, Morīnī xxv milia, Menapīi vī milia, Caletī x milia, Veliocassēs et Viromandui totidem, Aduatucī xīx milia; Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs, Caerōsōs, Caemānōs, qui ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur, arbitrāmur cōnficere posse ad xl milia."

Caesar asks the assistance of Diviciācus

5. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus liberāliterque ōrātiōne prōsecūtus, omnem senātum ad sē convenire principumque liberōs obsidēs ad sē adducī iussit. Quae omnia ab his diligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Diviciācūm Haeduum magnopere
cohortātus docet quantō opere rei publicae communisque salūtis inter sit manūs hostium distinēri, nē cum tantā multitūdine ūnō tempore confingendum sit: 'Id fieri posse, si suās cópiās Haedui in finēs Bellovācorum intrōdūxerint et eōrum agrōs 5 populāri coeperint.' His datis mandātis eum ā sē dimittit.

*He crosses the Aisne and there fortifies a camp*

Postquam omnēs Belgārum cópiās in ūnum locum coac-tās ad sē venire vidit neque iam longē abesse ab eis quōs miserat explōrātōribus et ab Rēmīs cognōvit, flūmen Axo-nam, quod est in extrēmis Rēmōrum finibus, exercitum trā-10 dūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae rēs et latus ūnum castrōrum ripis flūminis mūniēbat et post eum quae erant ātāb hostibus reddēbat, et commeātūs ab Rēmīs reliquisque civitātibus ut sine periculō ad eum portāri possent efficiēbat. In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi praesidium pō-15 nit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titūrium Sabinum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit; castra in altitūdinem pedum duodecim vālō fossāque duodēviginti pedum mūnīri iubet.

*The Belgae attack Bibrax, a town of the Remi, eight miles away*

6. Ab his castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax aberat mīlia passuum octō. Id ex itinere magnō impetu 20 Belgae oppugnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō die sustentātum est. Gallōrum eadem atque Belgārum oppugnātiō est haec: ubi circumiectā multitūdine hominum tōtīs moenibus undique in mūrum lapidēs iaci coeptī sunt mūrusque défensōribus nūdātus est, testūdine factā portās succēdunt mūrumque 25 subruunt. Quod tum facile fiēbat. Nam cum tanta multitūdō lapidēs ac tëla conicerent, in mūrō consistendi potestās erat nūllī. Cum finem oppugnandi nox fēcisset,. Iccius Rēmus, summā nōbilitāte et grātiā inter suōs, qui tum
oppidō praerat, īnus ex eis quī lēgāti dē pāce ad Caesa-
rem vēnerant, nūntium ad eum mittit: 'Nisi subsidium sībī
submittātur, sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse.'

Cæsar sends relief to Bibrax. The Belgae advance on his camp

7. Eō dē mediā nocte Cæsar, īsdem ducibus īsus quī
nūntii ab Icclī vēnerant, Numidās et Crētas sagittāriōs et 5
funditōrēs Baleārēs sub-
sidiō oppidānis mittit; quōrum adventū et Rē-
mīs cum spē dēfēnsiōnis
studium prōpugnandi acc-
cessit, et hostibus eādem
dē causā spēs potiundi
oppidi discessit. Itaque
paulisper apud oppi-
dum morātī agrōsque
Rēmōrum dépōpulāti,
 omnibus vicīs aedifici-
isque quō adire potue-
rant incēnsis, ad castra
Caesaris omnibus cōpiis contendērunt et ā milibus passuum 20
minus duōbus castra ā posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque
ignibus significābātur, amplius milibus passuum octō in
lātitūdinem patēbant.

Cavalry skirmishes. Cæsar fortifies his position and draws up his
forces in front of the camp

8. Cæsar prīmō et propter multītūdinem hostium et prop-
ter eximiam opīniōnem virtūtis proelīō supersedēre statuit; 25
cotidiē tamen equestribus proelīs, quid hostis virtūte posset
et quid nostri audērent periclītābātur.
Ubi nostrōs nōn esse inferiōrēs intellēxit, locō prō castris ad aciem instruendam nātūrā opportūnō atque idōneō, — quod is collis ubi castra posita erant paululum ex plānitīē ēditus, tantum adversus in lātitūdinem patēbat quantum locī aciēs instructa occupāre poterat, atque ex utrāque parte late-ris dēiectūs habēbat et in fronte lēniter fastigātus paulātim ad plānitiem redibat, — ab utrōque latere eius collis trāns-versam fossam obdūxit circiter passuum quadringentōrum et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōnstituit ibique tormenta conlo-cāvit, nē, cum aciem instrūxisset, hostēs, quod tantum multi-tūdine poterant, ab lateribus pugnantēs suōs circumvenire possent.

Hoc factō, duābus legiōnibus quās proximē cōnscripserat in castris rēlictis, ut, si quō opus esset, subsidiō dūci pos-15 sent, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castris in aciē cōnstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castris ēductās instrūxērunt.

* A swamp between the two forces prevents a general engagement


* The Belgae attempt an attack in the rear

Hostēs prōtīnus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendē-runt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi vādīs repertis partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnāti sunt, eō cōnsiliō, ut, si possent, castellum cui praerat Q. Titūrius légātus expugnārent pontemque interscinderent; sī
minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur, qui magnō nōbis ūsui ad bellum gerendum erant, commeātūque nostrōs prohibērent.

*Cesar defeats them with great losses*

10. Caesar certior factus ab Titūriō omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae Numidās, funditōrēs sagittāriōsque pontem trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Ācriter in eō locō pugnātum

THE BATTLE ON THE AISNE (AXONA)

est. Hostēs impeditōs nostri in flūmine adgressi magnum eōrum numerum occidērunt; per eōrum corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānsire cōnantēs multitūdine tēlōrum repulērunt, primōsque, qui trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs inter 10 fēcērunt.

*The Belgae, discouraged, decide to disband*

Hostēs ubi et dē expugnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō sperm sē fefellisse intellēxērunt, neque nostrōs in locum iniquīōrem prōgredi pugnandi causā vidērunt,
atque ipsōs rēs frumentāria déficere coepit, conciliō convocātō cōnstituērunt optimum esse domum suam quemque reverti, et, quōrum in finēs primum Rōmāni exercitum 4 intrōdūxissent, ad eōs défendendōs undique convenirent, ut potius in suis quam in aliēnis finibus dēcertārent et domestīcis cōpiis rei frumentāriae üterentur. Ad eam sententiam cum reliquis causis haec quoque ratiō eōs dēdūxit, quod Divi-ciācum atque Haeduōs finibus Bellovacōrum adpropinquāre cognōverant. Hīs persuādēri ut diūtius morārentur neque suis auxiliōm ferrent nōn poterat.

Cæsar pursues them and inflicts great slaughter

11. Eā rē cōnstitūtā, secundā vigiliā magnō cum strepītū ac tumultū castrīs ēgressi nūllo certō ordine neque imperīō, cum sībi quisque primum itinēris locum pēteret et domum pervenire properāret, fēcérunt ut cōnsimilīs fugae profectiō vidērētur. Hāc rē statim Cæsar per speculātōrēs cognitā, insidiās veritus, quod quā dē causā discēderent nōndum per-
25 spexerat, exercitum equitātumque castrīs continuīt. Prīmā lūce cōnfirmātā rē ab explōratōribus, omnem equitātum qui novissimum agmen morārētur praemisit. Hīs Q. Pedium et L. Aurunculēium Cottam légātōs praefēcit; T. Labiēnum légātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequī iussit.
WAR WITH THE BELGIAN CONFEDERACY

Hi novissimós adorti et multa milia passuum prōsecūti magnam multitūdinem eōrum fugientium concidērunt; cum ab extrēmō agmine, ad quōs ventum erat, cōnsisterent fortiterque impetum nostrōrum militum sustinērunt, priōrés, quod 4 abesse à periculō vidērentur neque ullā necessitāte neque imperiō continebantur, exaudītō clāmōre perturbātīs ordinibus omnēs in fugā sibi praesidium pōnerent. Ita sine ullō periculō tantam eōrum multitūdinem nostrī interfēcérunt quantum fuit diēi spatiōm; sub occāsum sōlis sequi dēstitērunt sēque in castra, ut erat imperātum, recēpérunt.

*He leads his army into the territory of the Suessiones*

12. Postridiē eius diēi Caesar, priusquam sē hostēs ex terrōre ac fugā recuperent, in finēs Suessionūm, qui proximi Rēmis erant, exercitum dūxit et magnō itinere ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendīt. Id ex itinere oppugnāre cōnātus, quod vacuum ab dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitūdinem fossae mūrique altitūdinem, paucis dēfendentibus, expugnāre nōn potuit.

*He prepares to storm Noviodunum. The Suessiones surrender*

Castris mūnitis vineās agere quaeque ad oppugnandum ūsui erant comparāre coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā Sues-25 sionum multitūdō in oppidum proxīmā nocte convēnit. Celeriter vineās ad oppidum āctēs, aggere iactō turribusque
cónstitútis, magnitúdo operum, quae neque viderant ante Galli neque audierant, et celeritáte Römánōrum permótii, légátōs ad Caesarem dē dēditióne mittunt et petentibus Rēmis ut cōnservārentur impetrant.

*The Bellovaci beg for mercy*

13. Caesar, obsidibus acceptís prímīs civitātīs atque ipsius Galbae rēgis duōbus filiis, armisque omnibus ex oppidō trāditis, in dēditiónem Suessiōnēs accipit exercitumque in Bellovacoās dūcit. Quī cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter mília passuum quinque abesset, omnēs maiōrēs nātū ex oppidō ēgressī manūs ad Caèsarem tendere et vōce significāre coepērunt sēsē in eius fidem ac potestātem venire neque contrā populum Rōmānum armis contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, pueri mulierēisque ex mūrō passis manibus suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānis petiērunt.

*Diviciacus, the Hauduan, pleads for them*

14. Prō hīs Diviciācus—nam post discessum Belgārum dimissis Haeduōrum cōpiis ad eum reverterat—facit verba:

"Bellovaci omnī tempore in fidē atque amicitā civitātīs Haeduae fuērunt; impulsī ab suis principibus, quī dicēbant Haeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs omnēs indignitātēs contumeliāsque perferre, et ab Haeduīs dēfēcērunt et populō Rōmānō bellum intulērunt. Quī eius cōnsiliā principēs fuerant, quod intellegēbant quantam calamitātem civitātī intulissent, in Britanniam profugērunt. Petunt nōn sōlum Bellovaci sed etiam prō hīs Haeduī ut tuā clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine in eōs útāris. Quod si fēceris, Haeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās amplificābis, quōrum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella incidērunt, sustentāre cōnsuērunt."
WAR WITH THE BELGIAN CONFEDERACY 67

Caesar spares the Bellovaci and receives the Ambiani in surrender

15. Caesar honóris Diviciáci atque Haeduórum causá sésé eós in fidem receptúrum et cónservátúrum dixit; et quod erat civitáes magná inter Belgáes auctóritáte atque hominum multitúdine praestábat, sexcentóss.obsídées poposcit. His trádítis omnibusque armis ex oppidó conlátis, ab eó locó in 5 finés Ambiáñórum pervénit, quí sé suaque omnia sine morá dédiderunt.

He hears that the Nervii are defiant

Eórum finés Nervii attingébant; quórum dé nátúra móribusque Caesar cum quaceret, sic reperiébat: *Núllus aditus est ad eós mercatóribus; nihil patiuntur víní reliquárumque rérum ad luxuriam pertinentium ínferrí, quod his rébus relanguéscere animós et remitti virtútem existimant; sunt homínés feri magnaqué virtús; increpitant atque incúsant reliquós Belgáes, qui sé populó Rómanó dédiderint patriamque virtútem prólécerint; cónfirmant sésé neque lé- 15 gátós missúros neque úllam condicíonem pácis acceptúros.*

He marches against the Nervii and their allies

16. Cum per eórum finés triduum iter fécisset, inveniébat ex captivís Sabim flúmen à castrís suis nón amplius milia passuum x abesse; tráns id flúmen omnés Nervióss cónsédisse adventumque ibi Rómanórum exspectáre úná cum 20 Atrebátibus et Viromanduis, fíntimís suís (nam his utriqué persuáséran uti eandem bellí fortúnam experírentur); exspectári etiam ab eís Aduatúcorum cópiás atque esse in itinere; muliéres quíque per aetátem ad pugnam inútiles vidérentur in eum locum coniécisse quó propter palüdés 25 exercitúi aditus nón esset.
The Nervii decide to attack Caesar while he is pitching camp

17. His rebus cognitis explóratórēs centuriōnēsque praemittit qui locum castris idōneum deligant. Cum ex dēditiciis Belgis reliquisque Gallis complūrēs Caesarem secūtī ēnā iter facerent, quidam ex his, ut posteā ex captīvis cognitum est, eōrum diērum cōnsuētūdine itineris nostri exercitus perspectā, nocte ad Nerviōs pervēnērunt; atque his dēmōnstrārunt inter singulās legiōnēs impedimentōrum magnum numerum intercēdere, neque esse quicquam negoti, cum prima legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaque legiōnēs magnum spatiōm abesi sent, hanc sub sarcinis adorīt; quā pulsā impedimentisque direptis futūrum ut reliquae contrā cōnsistere nōn audērunt.

The hedges of the Nervii

Adiuvābat etiam eōrum cōnsilium qui rem dēferēbant, quod Nervii antiquitus, cum equitātū nihil possent (neque enim ad hoc tempus eī rei student, sed quicquid possunt pedestri-bus valent cōpiis), quō facilius fīnitimōrum equitātum, sī praedandi causā ad eōs vēnissent, impedirent, teneris arboribus incisis atque inflexis, crēbrisque in lātitūdinēm rāmis ēnātis, et rubis sentibusque interiectīs, effecerant ut īnstar mūri hae saepēs mūnimenta praebērent, quō nōn modo nōn intrāri sed nē perspicī quidem posset. His rebus cum iter agminis nostri impedīrētur, nōn ommittendum sibi cōnsilium Nervii existimāvērunt.

The Romans choose a hill for their camp. The Nervii hide on a hill opposite

18. Loci nātūra erat haec quem locum nostri castris dēlēgerant. Collis ab summō aequāliter dēclivis ad flūmen Šabim, quod suprā nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine pari acclivitāte collis nāscēbātur, adversus huic et contrārius,
passūs circiter ducentōs infimus apertus, ab superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset. Intrā ēās silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secundum flūmen paucae statīōnēs equitūm vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō pedum circiter trium.

SOLDIERS MARCHING WITH PACKS (SUB SARCINIS)

The Romans begin to fortify their camp

19. Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiis; sed ratiō ārdōque agminis aliter sē habēbat ac Belgae ad Nerviōs dētulerant. Nam quod hostibus adpropinquābat,
cōnsuētūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expeditās dūcēbat; post eās tōtius exercitūs impedimenta conlocārat; inde duae legiōnēs quae proximē cōnscriptae erant tōtum agmen claudēbant praeſidiōque impedimentis erant. Equītēs nostri cum funditōribus sagittāriisque flūmen trāngressi cum hostium equitātū proelium commisērunt. Cum sē illi identidem in silvās ad suōs recipērent ac rūrsus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent, neque nostri longius quam quem ad finem porrecta loca aperta pertinēbant cēdentēs insequī audērent, interim legiōnēs sex quae primae vēnerant opere dimēnsō castra mūnire coepeīrunt.

The Nervii make a sudden and furious attack

Ubi prima impedimenta nostri exercitūs ab eis qui in silvis abdītī latēbant visa sunt, quod tempus inter eōs committendi proeli convēnerat, ita ut intrā silvās aciem ōrdinēsque cōnstituerant atque ipsi sēsē cōnfirmaeōrunt, subitō omnibus cōpiis prōvolāvērunt impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. His facile pulsīs ac prōturbātīs, incrēdibili celeritāte ad flūmen dēcucurrērunt, ut paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine et iam in manibus nostrīs hostēs vidērentur. Eādem autem celeritāte adversō colle ad nostra castra atque eōs qui in opere occupāti erant contendeōrunt.

The situation of the Romans is critical

20. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: vēxillum prōpōnendum (quod erat insigne cum ad arma concurri oportēret), signum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandi militēs, qui paulō longius aggeris petendi causā prōcesserant arcessendi, aciēs instruenda, militēs cohotandī, signum dandum. Quārum rērum magnam partem temporis brevitās et successus hostium impediēbat.
THE DEFEAT OF THE NERVII

Plan I shows the positions of the contending forces before the attack. Plan II shows their positions at the crisis of the battle.
THE GALLIC WAR — BOOK II

Their skill and training serve them well

His difficultātibus duae rēs erant subsidiō, — scientia atque ūsus militum, quod superiōribus proelis exercitāti quid fieri oportēret nōn minus commodē ipsī sībi praescribere quam ab aliīs docēri poterant; et quod ab opere singulīisque legiōni-bus singulōs lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi mūnitīs castrīs vetuerat. Hi propter propinquitātem et celeritātem hostium nihil iam Caesaris imperium exspectābant, sed per sē quae vidēbantur administrābant.

Lack of time compels the omission of all formalities and of some of the usual preparations for battle

21. Caesar, necessāriis rēbus imperātīs, ad cohortandōs mī-litēs quam in partem fors obtulit dēcucurrit, et ad legiōnem decimam dēvēnit. Mīlitēs nōn longiōre ōrātiōne cohortātus quam utī suae pristīnae virtūtīs memoriam retinērent neu perturbārentur animō hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinērent, quod nōn longius hostēs aberant quam quō tēlum adici posset, proelī committendī signum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandī causā prefectus, pugnantibus occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās hostiumque tam parātus ad dimicandum animus ut nōn modo ad insignia accommo-danda, sed etiam ad galeās induendās scūtīisque tegimenta dētrahenda tempus défuerit. Quam quisque ab opere in partem cāsū dēvēnit, quaeque prima signa cónspexit, ad haec cōnstitit, nē in quaerendis suis pugnandī tempus dimiteret.

They fight as necessity demands

22. Įnstrūctō exercitū magis ut locī nātūra dēiectusque collis et necessitās temporis quam ut rei militāris ratiō atque ōrdō postulābat, cum diversae legiōnēs aliae aliā in
parte hostibus resisterent, saepibusque dēnsissimis (ut ante dēmōnstrāvimus) interiectis prōspectus impedirētur, neque certa subsidia conlocāri neque quid in quāque parte opus esset prōviděri neque ab ūnō omnia imperia administrāri poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum iniquitāte fortūnae quoque 5 ēventūs variī sequēbantur.

*The Atrebates and Viromandui are defeated, but the Nervii gain the camp*

23. Legiōnis nōnae et decimae militēs, ut in sinistrā parte acīē cōnstiterant, pilis ēmissis, cursī ac lassitūdine ex-animātōs volneribusque cōnfectōs Atrebātēs — nam his ea pars obvēnerat — celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen com- 10 pulērunt, et trānsire cōnantēs insecūti gladiis magnam partem eōrum impeditam interfēcērunt. Ipsi trānsire flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt, et in locum inīquum prōgressi rūrsus resis-tentēs hostēs redintegrātō proeliō in fugam coniēcērunt. Item aliā in parte diversae duae legiōnēs, ūndecima et octāva, 15 prōfligātīs Viromanduīs, quibuscum erant congressi, ex locō superiōre in ipsis flūminis ripis proeliābantur. At tōtis ferē castris ā fronte et ā sinistrā parte nūdātis, cum in dextrō
cornū legiō duodecima et nōn magnō ab eā intervāllō septima cōnstitisset, omnēs Nerviī cōnfertissimō agmine duce Boduōgnātō, qui summam imperī tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt; quōrum pars apērtō latere legiōnēs circum-venire, pars summum castrōrum locum petere coepit.

**Panic prevails in the Roman camp**

24. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostri levisque armātūrae peditēs, qui cum eīs ūnā fuerant, quōs prīmō hostium impetū pulsōs dixeram, cum sē in castra recipērent, adversis hostibus occurrēbant ac rūrsus aliam in partem fugam petēbant; et cālōnēs, quī ab decumānā portā ac summō iugō collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsisse cōnspexerant, praedandi causā egressī, cum respexissent et hostēs in nostrīs castrīs versārī vidissent, praecipitēs fugae sēsē mandābant. Simul eōrum qui cum impedimentis veniēbant clāmor fremitusque 15 oriēbātur, aliīque aliam in partem perterritī ferēbantur.

**The Treveri think all is lost and hasten home**

Quibus omnibus rēbus permōtī equitēs Trēverī, quōrum inter Gallōs virtūtis opinīō est singulāris, qui auxili causā ā civitāte missī ad Caesarem vēnerant, cum multitūdine hostium
castra complērī, legiōnēs premi et paene circumventās tenēri, cālōnēs, equitēs, funditōrēs, Numidās dispersōs dissipātōsque in omnēs partēs fugere vidissent, déspērātīs nostrīs rēbus do-
mum contendērunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castrīs 4
impedimentisique eōrum hostēs poti-
tōs, civitāti renūntiāvērunt.

_Cesar snatches a shield and rushes to the front_

25. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis
cohortātiōne ad dextrum cornū pro-
fectus, ubi suōs urgēri signisque in
ūnum locum conlātīs duodecimae le-
giōnis cōnfertōs militēs sibi ipsōs ad
pugnam esse impedimentō vidit, —
quārtae cohortis omnibus centuri-
ōnibus occisis, signiferō interfectō,
signō āmissō, reliquārum cohortium
omnibus fere centuriōnibus aut vol-
nerātis aut occisis, in his prīmīpīlō
P. Sextīō Baculō, fortissimō virō,
multis gravibusque volneribus cōn-
fectō, ut iam sē sustinēre nōn posset,
reliquōs esse tardiōrēs et nōn nūllos
ab novissimīs désertō locō proelīō
excĕdere ac tēla vitāre, hostēs neque ā fronte ex inferiōre locō
subeuntes intermittere et ab utrōque latere instāre, et rem esse
in angustō vidit, neque ūllum esse subsidium quod submittī 25
posset, — scūtō ab novissimīs militī dētrāctō, quod ipse eō sine
scūtō vēnerat, in prīmam aciem prōcessit; centuriōnibusque
nōminātim appellātīs reliquōs cohortātus militēs signa inferre
et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō facilius gladiīs ūtī possent.
THE GALLIC WAR—BOOK II

His presence inspires his men

Cuius adventū spē inlātā militibus ac redintegrātō animō, cum prō sē quisque in cōnspectū imperātōris etiam in extrēmis suis rēbus operam nāvāre cuperet, paulum hostium impetus tardātus est.

Caesar effectively combines two of his legions

5 26. Caesar cum septimam légionem, quae iūxtā cōnstite-rat, item urgēri ab hoste vidisset, tribūnōs militum monuit ut paulātim sēsē legiōnēs coniungerent et conversa signa in hostēs inferrent. Quō factō, cum alius alii subsidium ferret neque timērent nē āversi ab hoste circumvenirentur, audācius resistere ac fortius pugnāre coeperunt.

He receives reënforcements

Interim militēs legiōnēm duārum quae in novissimō ag-mine praesidiō impedimentis fuerant, proelīō nūntiātō, cursū incitātō, in summō colle ab hostibus cōnspicieiabantur; et T. Labiēnus castris hostium potitus et ex locō superiore quae rēs in nostris castris gererentur cōnsicātus, decimam legiōnem subsidiiō nostris misit. Quī, cum ex equitum et cālōnum fugā quō in locō rēs esset quantōque in perículō et castra et legiōnēs et imperātor versārētur cognōvisserent, nihil ad celeritātem sibi reliqui fecerunt.

The tide of battle turns in Caesar's favor

20 27. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtātiō est facta ut nostri, etiam qui volneribus cōnfecti prōcubuisserent, scūtis innixi proelium redintegrārent, cālōnēs perterritōs hostēs cōnspicāti etiam inermēs armātis occurrerent; equitēs vērō, ut turpitudinem fugae virtūte dēlērent, omnibus in locis pug-25 nandō sē legiōnāriis militibus praeferrent.
War with the Belgian Confederacy

Cæsar praises the valor of the enemy

At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salūtis tantam virtūtem praestitērunt ut, cum primī eōrum ce cidissent, proximi iacentibus insisterent atque ex eōrum corporibus pugnārent; his diēictis et coacervātis cadāveribus, qui superessent, ut ex tumulō, tēla in nostrōs conicerent et pilae intercepta remitterent; ut nōn nēquiquam tantae virtūtis hominēs iūdicāri débēret ausōs esse trānsire lātissimum flūmen, ascendere altissimās rīpās, subīre iniquissimum locum; quae facilia ex difficilimīs animī magnitūdō redēgerat.

The Nervii are almost completely destroyed

28. Hoc proeliō factō et prope ad internecionem gente ac nōmine Nerviōrum redāctō, maiōrēs nātū, quōs ūnā cum pueris mulieribusque in aestuāria ac palūdēs coniectōs dixerāmus, hāc pugnā nūntiātā, cum victōribus nihil impeditum, victis nihil tūtum arbitrārentur, omnium qui supererant cōnsēnsū légātōs ad Caesarem misērunt sēque ei dēdiderunt; et, in commemorandā civitātis calamitāte, ex sexcentīs ad tres senātōrēs, ex hominum milibus sexāgintā vix ad quīngentōs qui arma ferre possent sēsē redāctōs esse dixerunt. Quōs Caesar, ut in miserōs ac supplicēs úsus misericordiā vidērētur, diligentissimē cūnservāvit, suisque finibus atque oppidis 20 üti iussit, et fīnitimīs imperāvit ut ab iniūriā et maleficiō sē suōsque prohibērent.

The Aduatuci, allies of the Nervii, withdraw to their stronghold

29. Aduatuci, dē quibus supra diximus, cum omnibus cōpiis auxiliō Nerviīs venīrent, hāc pugnā nūntiātā ex itinere domum revertērunt; cūnectis oppidis castellisque désertis sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā mūnītum contulērunt. Quod cum ex omnibus in circūtū partibus altissimās
rūpēs dēspectūsque habēret, ūnā ex parte lēniter acclīvis
aditus in lātitūdinem nōn amplius pēdum cc relinquēbātur;
quem locum duplici altissimō mūrō mūnīrunt; tum magnī
ponderis saxa et praeacūtās trabēs in mūrō conlocābant.

**Origin of the Aduatuci**

5 Ipsi erant ex Cimbrīs Teutonisque prōgnātī, qui, cum iter
in prōvinciam nostram atque Italiam facerent, eis impedi-
mentīs quae sēcum agere ac portāre nōn poterant citrā flū-
men Rhēnum dēpositīs, custōdīam ex suis ac praeсидium sex
milīa hominum ūnā reliquerant. Hi post eōrum obitum mul-
tōs annōs à finitimis exagitāti, cum aliās bellum inferrent
aliās inlātum dēfenderent, cōnsēnsū eōrum omnium pāce
factā hunc sibi domiciliō locum dēlēgerant.

**They ridicule Caesar’s siege works**

30. Ac primō adventū exercitūs nostrī crēbrās ex oppidō
excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulisque proelīs cum nostrīs conten-
15 dēbant; posteā vāllō pedum xii, in circītū xv milīum, crē-
brīsque castellīs circummūnītī oppidō sēsē continēbant. Ubi
vineis āctīs aggere extrūctō turrim procul cōnstitūi vidērunt,
primum inrīdēre ex mūrō atque increpitāre vōcibus, quod
 tanta māchinātiō ab tantō spatiō instituerētur: *“Quibusnam
20 manibus aut quibus viribus praeṣertim hominēs tantulae statū-
rae” — nam plērumque hominibus Gallīs prae magnītūdine
corporum suōrum brevītās nostra contemptūi est — “tanti
onēris turrim in mūrō sēsē posse conlocāre cōnfidunt?”

**But, becoming alarmed, they offer to surrender if allowed**
**to keep their arms**

31. Ubi vērō movērī et adpropinquāre mūris vidērunt, novā
25 atque inūsitātā speciē commōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce
misērunt, qui ad hunc modum locūtī sunt: *“Nōn existimāmus
vōs sine ope dīvinā bellum gerere, quī tantae altitūdinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritāte prōmovēre possitis; nōs nostraque omnia tuae potestāti permittimus. Ųnum petimus ac dēprecāmur: si forte prō tua clėmentiā ac mānsuētūdine,

SIEGE OF THE STRONGHOLD OF THE ADUATUCI

quam ab aliis audimus, statueris Aduatucōs esse cōnservan-
dōs, nōli nōs armis dēspoliāre. Nōbis omnēs fērē finitimi sunt inimīci ac nostrae virtūtī invident; ā quibus nōs dē-
fendere trādītīs armīs nōn poterimus. Nōbis prae
tat, si in eum cāsum dēdūcāmur, quamvis fortūnam ā populō Rōmānō patī, quam ab his per cruciātum interfici inter quōs domināri 10 cōnsuēvīmus.”
Caesar demands their arms. They yield, but treacherously keep part of them

32. Ad haec Caesar respondit: *"Magis consuetudine mea quam meritō vestrō civitātem conservābō, si, prius quam mūrum ariēs attigerit, vōs dēdideritis; sed dēditionis nulla est condiciō nisi armīs trāditis. Id quod in Nerviis fēci 5 faciam, finitimīsque imperābō nē quam dēditicīs populi Rōmānī iniūriam inferant." Rē nūntiātā ad suōs, quae imperārentur facere dīxērunt. Armōrum magnā multitūdine dē mūrō in fossam quae erat ante oppidum iactā, sic ut prope summam mūri aggerisque altitūdinem acervi armōrum 10 adaequārent, et tamen circiter parte tertīā, ut postea perspectum est, cēlātā atque in oppidō retentā, portis patefactis eō die pāce sunt ūsi.

They make a night attack, but are defeated

33. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī militēsque ex oppidō exire iussit, nē quam noctū oppidānī ā militibus 15 iniūriam acciperent. Illī ante initiō (ut intellectum est) consiliō, quod dēditione factā nostrōs praeidia dēductūrōs aut dēnique indiligentius servātūrōs crēdiderant, — partim cum eis quae retinuerant et cēlāverant armīs, partim scūtīs ex cortice factīs aut viminibus intentīs, quae subitō, ut temporis 20 exiguitās postulābat, pellibus indūxerant, — tertīā vigiliā, quā minimē arduus ad nostrās mūnitionēs ascendūs vidēbātur, omnibus cōpiis repente ex oppidō eruptiōnem fēcērunt.

Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperārat, ignibus significātiōne factā, ex proximīs castellīs eō concursum est, pugnātūmque 25 ab hostibus ita ācriter est ut ā viris fortibus in extremā spē salūtis iniquō locō, contrā eōs qui ex vāllō turribusque tēla iacerent, pugnāri débuit, cum in ūnā virtūte omnis spēs consisteret.
WAR WITH THE BELGIAN CONFEDERACY

Over fifty thousand of them are sold as slaves

Occisis ad hominum miliibus quattuor reliqui in oppidum reiecti sunt. Postridiē eius diēi refrāctis portis, cum iam

LATIN MANUSCRIPT

The text of Book 11, chapter 35, as it appears in a Latin manuscript of the ninth century. For many years the manuscript was in the monastery of St. Benedict at Fleury-sur-Loire. It is now in Paris and is known as Codex Parisinus Latinus, 5763
défenderet nēmō, atque intrōmissis militibus nostrīs, sectiōnem eius oppidi üniversam Caesar vēndidit. Ab eis qui ēmerant capitum numerus ad eum relātus est milium quīn- 5 quāgintā trium.

The tribes on the coast surrender to Crassus

34. Eōdem tempore ā P. Crassō, quem cum legiōne ūnā miserat ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs Coriosolitas, Esu- viōs, Aulercōs, Redonēs, quae sunt maritimae civitātēs Ōceanumque attingunt, certior factus est omnēs eās civitātēs in 10 dicīōnem potestātemque populi Rōmānī esse redāctās.
The army goes into winter quarters. Caesar returns to Italy
A thanksgiving is decreed at Rome

35. His rebus gestis, omni Galliā pācāta, tanta huīus belli ad barbarōs opinīō perlāta est uti ab eis nātiōnibus quae trāns Rhēnum incolērent lēgātī ad Caesarem mitteren
tur qui sē obsidēs datūrās, imperāta factūrās pollicērentur. 5 Quās lēgātīōnēs Caesar, quod in Italiam Ἰλλυρίκαμque pro-
perābat, initā proximā aestāte ad sē revertī iussit. Ipse in Carnutēs, Andēs, Turōnōs, quaeque civitātēs propinquae eis locis erant ubi bellum gesserat, legiōnibus in hiberna dēductīs in Italiam profectus est. Ob eāisque rēs ex litterīs 10 Caesāris diēs quīndecim supplicātiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nūlli.
BOOK III

CAESAR'S THIRD CAMPAIGN, 56 B.C.

THE WAR WITH THE ALPINE TRIBES

Galba is sent with one legion to guard a pass of the Alps

Cum in Italiam proficisceretur Caesar, Ser. Galbam cum legione duodecimae et parte equitatis in Nantuätis, Veragrös Sedünösque misit, qui a finibus Allobrogum et lacu Lemannō et flumine Rhodanō ad summās Alpēs pertinent. Causa mittendi fuit quod iter per 5 Alpēs, quō magnō cum periculō magnisque cum portoribus mercātōrēs ire cōnsuērant, patescēri volēbat. Huic permisit, si opus esse arbitrārētur, utī in his locis legiōnem hiemandi causā conlocāret.

He makes his winter quarters at Octodurus

Galba, secundis aliquot proeliis factis castellisque con-10 plūribus eōrum expugnātis, missis ad eum undique lēgātis obsidibusque datis et pāce factā, constituit cohortēs duās in Nantuätibus conlocāre et ipse cum reliquis eius legiōnis cohortibus in vicō Veragrōrum, quī appellātur Octodūrus, hiemāre; quī vicus positus in valle, nōn magnā adiectā 15 plānitiē, altissimis montibus undique continētur. Cum hic in duās partēs flūmine dividerētur, alteram partem eius vici Gallis concessit, alteram vacuam ab his relictam cohortibus attribuit. Eum locum vāllō fossāque mūnivit.
An army of Gauls seizes the heights above the town and threatens his camp

2. Cum diēs hibernorum complūrēs trānsissent frūmentumque eō comportāri iussisset, subitō per explōrātōrēs certior factus est ex ea parte vīci quam Gallis conserverat omnēs noctū discississe, montēisque qui impendērent a 5 maximā multitūdine Sedūnōrum et Veragrōrum tenēri.

Id aliquot dē causis acciderat ut subitō Galli belli renovandi legiōnisque opprimendae cōnsilium caperent: primum quod legiōnem—neque eam plēnissimam, dētrāctis cohortibus duābus et complūribus singillātim, quī commeātūs petendi causā missi erant—propter paucitātem dēspiciēbant; tum etiam quod propter iniquitātem locī, cum ipsī ex montibus in vallem dēcurrerent et tēla conicerent, nē primum quidem
WAR WITH THE ALPINE TRIBES

posse impetum suum sustinēri existimābant. Accēdēbat quod suōs ab sē liberōs abstrāctōs obsidum nōmine dolēbant, et Rōmānōs nōn sōlum itinerum causā sed etiam perpetuae possessionis culmina Alpium occupāre cōnāri et ea loca finitimae prōvinciae adiungere sibi persuāsum habēbant. 5

Conditions are unfavorable, but the Romans decide to defend the camp

3. His nūntiis acceptis Galba, cum neque opus hibernōrum munitionēsque plēnē essent perfectae neque dē frūmentō reliquōque commeātū satis esset prōvisum, quod dēditione factā obsidibusque acceptis nihil dē bellō timendum existimāverat, cōnsiliō celeriter convocātō sententiās exquirere coepit. Quō in cōnsiliō, cum tantum repertuī periculi prae- 
ter opiniōnem accidisset, ac iam omnia ferē superiōra loca multitudine armātōrum complēta cōnsipicerentur, neque subsidiō veniri neque commeātūs supportāri interclūsis itineribus possent, prope iam dēspērātā salūte nōn nūllae eius modi sententiae dicēbantur, ut, impedimentis relictīs ēruptiōne factā, isdem itineribus quibus eō pervēnissent ad salūtem contende- 
rent. Maiōri tamen partī placuit, hoc reservātō ad extrēmum cōnsiliō, interim rei ēventum experiri et castra dēfendere.

The Gauls make a violent attack with superior numbers

4. Brevī spatiō interiectō, vix ut eis rēbus quās cōnstituś 20 issent conlocandīs atque administrandīs tempus darētur, hostēs ex omnibus partibus signō datō dēcurrere, lapidēs gaesaeque in vāllum concere. Nostrī primō integrīs viribus fortiter prōpugnāre neque ūllum frūstrā tēlum ex locō superiōre mittere, et quaelcumque pars castrōrum nūdāta dēfēn- 25 sōrībus premī videbātur, eō occurrere et auxiliūm ferre; sed hoc superāri, quod diūturnitāte pugnae hostēs dēfessi proeliō excēdēbant, aliī integrīs viribus succēdēbant: quārum rērum
After fighting six hours, the Romans decide to make a sally

5. Cum iam amplius hōris sex continenter pugnārētur ac nōn sōlum virēs sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēficerent, atque hostēs ācrius instārent languidiōribusque nostrīs vāllum scindere et fossās complēre coeipissent, rēsque esset iam ad extrēmum perducta cāsum, P. Sextius Baculus, prīmi pīlī centurīō, quem Nervicō proeliō complūribus cōnfectum vol-
neribus diximus, et item C. Volusēnus, tribūnus militum, vir et cōnsili magnī et virtūtis, ad Galbam accurrunt atque ūnam esse spem salūtis docent, si ēruptiōne factā extrēmum auxilium experīentur. Itaque convocātis centurīōnibus cele-
rīter militēs certiōrēs facit paulisper intermitterent proelium,
15 ac tantummodo tēla missa exciperent sēque ex labōre refi-
cerent; post datō signō ex castris ērumpenter atque omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnerent.

The Gauls are disastrously defeated

6. Quod iussī sunt faciunt ac, subitō omnibus portīs ērup-
tiōne factā, neque cognōscendī quid fieret neque sui conli-
20 gendī hostibus facultātem relinquunt. Ita commūtātā fortūnā
eōs qui in spem potiundōrum castrōrum vēnerant undique circumventōs interficiunt; et ex hominum milibus amplius
xxx, quem numerum barbarōrum ad castra vēnisse cōnstā-
bat, plūs tertiā parte interfectā reliquōs perterritōs in fugam
25 coniciunt ac nē in locis quidem superiōribus cōnsistere
patiuntur. Sic omnibus hostium cōpiis fūsis armisque exūtis
sē intrā mūnitiōnēs suās recipiunt.
IAM AMPLIUS HORIS SEX CONTINENTER PUGNATUM EST
Galba withdraws to the Province

Quō proelīō factō, quod saepius fortūnam temptāre Galba nōlēbat, atque aliō sē in hiberna cōnsiliō vēnisse meminerat, aliis occurrisset rebus viderat, maximē frūmentī commeātūsque inopīa permōtus, posterō diē omnibus eius vici aedificiis incēnsis in prōvinciam revertī contendit, ac nūllō hoste prohibente aut iter dēmorante incolumnem legiōnem in Nantuātēs, inde in Allobrogēs perdūxit ibique hiemāvit.

THE WAR WITH THE VENETI

The coast tribes revolt against Roman rule


The Veneti seize the Roman messengers

8. Huius est civitātis longē amplissima auctōritās omnis ōrae maritimae regionum eārum, quod et nāvēs habent Veneti 20 plūrīmas, quibus in Britanniam navigāre cōnsuērunt, et scientiā atque ūṣū rērum nautīcārum cēterōs antecēdunt, et in magnō ἵμπετο μαρίς vās tī atque aperti paucis portibus interiectis, quōs tenent ipsi, omnēs fērē qui eō mari ūtī
consuerunt habent vectigalēs. Ab his fit initium retinendi Sili atque Velāni, quod per eōs suōs sē obsidēs quōs Crassō dedissent recuperātūrōs existimābant.

Other states do the same and demand back their hostages

Hōrum auctōritāte finitimī adductī (ut sunt Gallōrum subita et repentina cōnsilia), eādem dē causā Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent; et celeriter missis lēgātis per suōs principēs inter sē coniūrant nihil nisi commūni cōnsiliō āctūrōs eundemque omnis fortūnae exitum esse lātūrōs; reliquāsque civitātēs sollicitant ut in eā libertāte quam ā maiōribus accēperint permanēre quam Rōmānōrum servitūtem perferre mālint. Omni ōrā maritimā celeriter ad suam sententiam perductā, commūnem lēgātiōnem ad P. Crassum mittunt: 'Si velit suōs recipere, obsidēs sibi remittat.'

Caesar orders a fleet to be built and hastens to the scene

Quibus dē rēbus Caesar ab Crassō certior factus, quod ipse aberat longius, nāvēs interim longās aedificāri in flūmine Ligerī, quod infuit in Ōceanum, rēmigēs ex prōvinciā insti-
tui, nautās gubernātōrēsque comparāri iubet. His rēbus celeriter administrātis, ipse, cum primum per anni tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit.

The Veneti and their neighbors prepare for war

Veneti reliquaeque item civitātēs cognitō Caesaris adventū, simul quod quantum in sē facinus admīsissent intellegēbant, lēgātōs — quod nōmen ad omnēs nātiōnēs sāntum inviolā-
tumque semper fuisset — retentōs ab sē et in vincula coniec-
tōs, prō magnitudine periculī bellum parāre, et maximē ea quae ad ūsum nāvium pertinent prōvidēre instituunt, hōc maiōre spē quod multum nātūrā locī cōnfidēbant.
They have great confidence in their natural advantages

Pedestria esse itinera concisa aestuâris, nâvigâtioinem impeditam propter inscientiam locôrum paucitâtemque portuam sciëbant, neque nostrôs exercitûs propter frûmenti inopiam diütius apud sê morâri posse cônfidêbant; ac iam ut omnia contra opiniônem acciderent, tamen sê plûrimum nâvibus posse, Rômânôs neque ûllam facultâtem habère nàviûm, neque eôrum locôrum ubi bellum gestûri essent, vada, portûs, însulâs nôvisse; ac longê aliam esse nâvigâtìonem in conclûsô mari atque in vâstissimô atque apertissimô Òceanô perspiciëbant. His initis cônsiliis oppida mûniunt, frûmenta ex agris in oppida comportant, nàvës in Venetiam, ubi Caesarem prînum bellum gestûrum cônstâbat, quam plûrîmâs possunt côgunt. Sociôs sibi ad id bellum Osismôs, Lexoviôs, Namnetês, Ambiliâtôs, Morinôs, Diablîntês, Menapiôs adsciscunt; auxilia ex Britannìa, quae contra càs r5 regiônës posita est, arcessunt.

Caesar has good reasons for undertaking this war

10. Erant hae difficultâtês belli gerendi quâs supra ostendimus, sed tamen multa Caesarem ad id bellum incitábant: iniûria retentôrum equitum Rômânôrum, rebellió facta post dëditioinem, dëfectió datís obsidibus, tot civítâtum coniûrâtîo, in prîmîs nè hác parte neglêctâ reliquaë nâtîonës sibi idem licère arbitrârentur. Itaque cum intellegeñer omnês ferë Gallôs novis rebus studère et ad bellum môbiliter celeriterque excitári, omnês autem hominës nâtûrà libertàti studère et condicionem servitûtis ôdisse, priusquam plûrës civitâtês cônspirârent, partiendum sibi ac lâtius distribuen-dum exercitum putâvit.
11. Itaque T. Labienum legatum in Treveros, qui proximi flumini Rheno sunt, cum equitatu mittit. Huic mandat Remos reliquosque Belgas adeat atque in officio contineat; Germanosque, qui auxili o Gallis arcessiti dicabantur, si per vim navebus flumen tranisire cœnentur, prohibeat. P. Crassum cum cohortibus legionariis xii et magni numeri equitatus in Aquitania proficisci iubet, ne ex his nationibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur ac tantae nationes coniungantur. Q. Tituri-rium Sabinum legatum cum legionibus tribus in Venellos, Coriosolitas Lexovicisque mittit, qui eam manum distinen-dam curat.

Brutus is placed in command of the fleet

D. Brutum aduléscentem classi Gallicisque navebus, quas ex Pictonibus et Santonis reliquisque pactatis regionibus convenire iusserat, praeficit, et cum primum possit in Venetos proficisci iubet. Ipse eodem pedestribus cópiis contendit.

The town sites of the Veneti are described

12. Erant eius modi ferè situs oppidorum ut posita in extrémis lingulis prömunturisque neque pedibus aditum habérent cum ex altó sé aestus incitavisset (quod accidit semper hórârum xili spatió), neque navebus, quod rúrsus minuente aestū návēs in vadis afflictârentur.

The difficulty of storming them

Itaque utrâque ré oppidorum oppugnatiò impediébatur; ac si quandó — magnitudine operis forte superâti, extrúsō mari aggere ac molibus atque his oppidi moenibus adaequatis — dēspérâre fortūnis suis coeperant, magni numeri návium
adpulsō, cuius rei summam facultātem habēbant, sua dēportā-
bant omnia sēque in proxima oppida recipiēbant; ibi sē rūrsus
isdem opportūnitātibus loci dēfendēbant. Haec eō facilius
magnam partem aestātis faciēbant, quod nostrae nāvēs tem-
pestātibus dētinēbantur summaque erat vāstō atque apertō 5
mari, magnis aestibus, rāris ac prope nūllis portibus, diffi-
cultās nāvigandi.

The ships of the Veneti

13. Namque ipsōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum factae armā-
taeque erant: carinae aliquidō plāniōrēs quam nostrārum
nāvium, quō facilius vada ac dēcessum aestūs excipere pos-
10 sent; prōrae admodum ērēctae atque item puppēs ad mag-
nitūdinem fluctuum tempestātumque accommodātae; nāvēs
tōtae factae ex rōbere ad quamvis vim et contumēliam per-
ferendam; trānstra ex pedālibus in altitūdinem trabibus, cōn-
fixa clāvis ferreis digiti pollicis crassitūdine; ancorae prō 15
fūnibus ferreis catēnis revinctae; pellēs prō vēlis alūtaeque
tenuiter cōnfectae, sive propter inopiam līni atque eius ūsūs
inscientiam sive eō (quod est magis vērisimile) quod tantās
tempestātēs Ōceani tantōsque impetūs ventōrum sustinēri ac
tanta onera nāvium regi vēlis nōn satis commodē posse 20
arbitrābantur.

They are better adapted to existing conditions than those
of the Romans

Cum his nāvibus nostrae classi eius modi congressus erat ut
ūnā celeritāte et pulsū rēmōrum praestāret; reliqua prō loci
nātūrā, prō vi tempestātum, illis essent aptōra et accommoda-
tōra. Neque enim eis nostrae rōstrō nocēre poterant — tanta 25
in eis erat fīrmitūdō — neque propter altitūdinem facile tēllum
adigēbātur, et eādem dē causā minus commodē cōpulis continē-
bantur. Accēdēbat ut, cum saevire ventus coepisset et sē ventō
dedissent, et tempestātem ferrent facilius et in vadis cōnsisterent tūtius et ab aestū relictae nihil saxa et cōtēs timērent; quārum rērum omnium nostrīs nāvibus cāsus erat extimēscendus.

The Roman fleet arrives and is attacked by the Veneti

14. Complūribus expugnātīs oppidis Caesar, ubi intellēxit frustrā tantum labōrem sūmi, neque hostium fugam captīs oppidis reprimi neque eis nocēri posse, statuit exspectāndam classem. Quae ubi convēnit ac primum ab hostibus visa est, circiter ccxx nāvēs eōrum, parātissimae atque omni genere armōrum ornātissimae, profectae ex portū nostrīs adversae cōnstitērunt; neque satis Brūtō, qui classī praērāt, vel tribūnīs militum centūriōnibusque, quibus singulae nāvēs erant attribūtae, cōnstabat quid agerent aut quam rātīōnem pugnae insisterent. Rōstrō enim nocēri nōn posse cognōverant; turribus autem excitātīs, tamen hās altitūdō
puppium ex barbaris nāvibus superābat; ut neque ex infe-
riōre locō satis commodē tēla adigi possent et missa ā
Gallis gravius acciderent.

* A Roman device disables the ships of the enemy*

Ūna erat magnō ūsui rēs praeparāta ā nostris,—falcēs
praecāūtae insertae adfixaeque longuriis, nōn absimili fōrmā 5
mūrālium falcium. His cum fūnēs qui antennās ad mālōs
dēstinābant comprehēnsī adductique erant, nāvigō rēmis
incitātō praerumpēbantur. Quibus abscisis antennae neces-
sāriō concidēbant; ut, cum omnis Gallicis nāvibus spēs in
vēlis armāmentisque cōnsisteret, his ēreptis omnis ūsus 10
nāvium ūnō tempore ēripērētur. Rēliquum erat certāmen
positum in virtūte, quā nostri militēs facile superābant atque
eō magis quod in cōnspectū Caesaris atque omnis exercitus
rēs gerēbātur, ut nūllum paulō fortius factum latēre posset;
omnēs enim collēs ac loca superiōra, unde erat propinquus 15
dēspectus in mare, ab exercitu tenēbantur.

* The Romans win the victory and capture the hostile ships*

15. Disiectis (ut diximus) antennis, cum singulās binae
ac ternaē nāvēs circumsteterant, militēs summā vi trānsce-
dere in hostium nāvēs contendēbant. Quod postquam bar-
bari fieri animadvertērunt, expugnātis complūribus nāvibus, 20
cum ei rei nūllum reperīrētur auxilium, fugā salūtem petere
contendērunt. Ac iam conversis in eam partem nāvibus quō
ventus ferēbat, tanta subitō malacia ac tranquillitās exstītit
ut sē ex locō movēre nōn possent. Quae quidem rēs ad
negōtium cōnſiciendum maximē fuit opportūna; nam sin- 25
gulās nostri cōnſectāti expugnāvērunt, ut perpaucae ex omni
numerosō noctis interventū ad terram pervēnerint, cum ab
hōrā ferē quārtā ūsque ad sōlis occāsum pugnārētur.
The Veneti surrender and are punished

16. Quō proelīō bellum Venetōrum tōtiusque ōrae maritimae cōnfectum est. Nam cum omnis iuventūs, omnēs etiam graviōris aetātis in quibus alíquid cōnsili aut dignitātis fuit, eō convēnerant, tum nāvium quod ubique fuerat in ōnum locum cōegerant; quibus āmissis reliquī neque quō sē reciperept neque quem ad modum oppida défenderent habēbant. Itaque sē suaque omnia Caesarī dēdiderunt. In quōs eō gravius Caesar vindicandum statuit quō diligentius in reliquum tempus ā barbarīs iūs lēgātōrum cōnservārētur. Itaque omni senātū necātō reliquōs sub corōnā vēndidit.
"RELIQUOS SUB CORONA VENDIDIT"

(See page 94, line 10)
WAR WITH THE VENELLI

THE WAR WITH THE VENELLI

Sabinus, arriving among the Venelli, finds them hostile

17. Dum haec in Venetis geruntur, Q. Titurius Sabinus, cum eis cöpiis quäs à Caesare accéperat, in finés Venellorum pervénit. His praeerat Viridovix ac summam imperi tenēbat eārum omnium civitātum quae défēcerant, ex quibus exercitum magnāsque cöpias coēgerat; atque his paucis diēbus Aulerci Eburonicēs Lexovīque senātū suō interfecērō, quod auctōrēs belli esse nōlēbant, portās clausērunt sēque cum Viridovice coniùnxērunt; magnaque praetereā multitūdō undique ex Galliā perditōrum hominum latrōnumque convēnerat, et quōs spēs praedandi studiumque bel-10 landī ab agri cultūrā et cotidiānō labōre sévocābat.

He leads the Gauls to the belief that he is afraid

Sabinus idōneō omnibus rêbus locō castris sēsē tenēbat, cum Viridovix contrā eum duōrum milīum spatīō consēdisset cotidiēque prōductis cöpiis pugnandi potestātem faceret, ut iam nōn sōlum hostibus in contemptūnem Sabinus veniret 15 sed etiam nostrōrum milītum vōcibus nōn nihil carperētur; tantamque opiniōnem timōris praebuit ut iam ad vāllum castrōrum hostēs accēdere audērent. Id eā dē causā faciēbat quod cum tantā multitūdine hostium, prāsērtim eō absente qui summam imperi tenēret, nisi aequō locō aut op-20 portūnitātē aliquā datā, lēgātō dimicandum nōn existimābat.

He strengthens this belief by a stratagem

18. Hāc cōnfīrmātā opiniōne timōris, idōneum quendam hominem et callidum dēlēgit, Gallum, ex eīs quōs auxili causā sēcum habēbat. Huic magnīs praemīs policitiātiōni-ibusque persuādet utī ad hostēs trānseeat et quid. fierī velit 25
Thoroughly convinced, they prepare an immediate attack

Multae rēs ad hoc cōnsilium Gallōs hortābantur: superiōrum diērum Sabinī cunctātiō, per fugae cōnfīrmātiō, inopia cibāriōrum, cui rei parum diligentem ab eis erat prōvisum, spēs Veneticī belli, et quod ferē libenter hominēs id quod volunt crēdunt. His rēbus adducti nōn prius Viridovicem reliquōisque ducēs ex conciliō dīmittunt quam ab eis sit concessum, arma uti capiant et ad castra contendant. Quā rē concessā laeti, ut explōrātā victoriā, sarmentis virgultūisque conlēctis quibus fossās Rōmānōrum compleant, ad castra pergunt.

They rush to the camp, where they arrive exhausted


Sabinus suddenly sallies forth and defeats them

Sabinus suōs hortātus cupientibus signum dat. Impeditīs hostibus propter ea quae ferēbant onera, subitō duābus portis ēruptiōnem fierī iubet. Factum est opportūnitāte loci, hos-tium inscientiā ac dēfatigatiōne, virtūte militum et superiōrum pugnārum exercitātiōne, ut nē primum quidem nostrōrum impetum ferrent ac statim terga vererent. Quōs integrīs
viribus militēs nostri cōnsecūti magnum numerum eōrum occidērunt; reliquōs equitēs cōnsectāti, paucōs, qui ex fugā ēvāserant, reliquērunt.

Sic ūnō tempore et dē nāvāli pugnā Sābīnus et dē Sabīnī victōriā Caesar est certior factus; cīvitātēsque omnēs sē statim Titūriō dēdidērunt. Nam ut ad bella suscipienda Gallōrum alacer ac prōmptus est animus, sic mollis ac minimē resistēns ad calamitātēs perferendās mēns eōrum est.

THE WAR IN AQUITANIA

Crassus is attacked by the Sōtiates

21. Pugnātum est diū atque ācriter, cum Sōtiātēs superiō-
ribus victōriis frētī in suā virtūte tōtius Aquitāniae salūtem
positam putārent; nostri autem quid sine imperātōre et sine
reliquis legiōnibus, adulēscentulō duce, efficere possent per-
spicī cuperent; tandem cōnfectī volneribus hostēs terga
vertērunt. Quōrum magnō numerō interfectō Crassus ex
itinere oppidum Sōtiātium oppugnāre coepit. Quibus fortiter
resistentibus vineās turresque ēgit. Illī, aliās ēruptiōne temp-
tātā, aliās cuniculis ad aggerem vineāsque āctīs (cuius rei
sunt longē peritissimi Aquitānī, propterēa quod multis locis
apud eōs aerāriae sectūraeque sunt), ubi diligentiā nostrōrum
nihil his rēbus prōfici posse intellēxērunt, lēgātōs ad Cras-
sum mittunt, sēque in dēditiōnem ut recipiat petunt. Quā
rē impetrātā, arma trādere iussi, faciunt.

Adiatunnus and his brothers in arms

22. Atque in eam rem omnium nostrōrum intentīs animis,
aliā ex parte oppidi Adiatunnus, qui summam imperī tenē-
bat, cum dēvōtis, quōs illī solduriōs appellant,—quōrum
haec est condiciō, uti omnibus in vitā commodis ūnā cum
eis fruantur quōrum sē amicitiae dēdiderint; si quid his per
vīm accidat, aut eundem cāsum ūnā ferant aut sībi mortem
cōnsciscant; neque adhūc hominum memoria repertus est
quisquam qui, eō interfectō cuius sē amicitiae dēvōvisset,
mortem recūsāret,—cum his Adiatunnus ēruptiōnem facere
cōnātus, clāmōre ab eā parte mūnitiōnis sublātō, cum ad
25 arma militēs concurrissent vehementerque ibi pugnātum
esst, repulsus in oppidum, tamen utī eādem dēditiōnis con-
diciōne ūterētur ā Crassō impetrāvit.
THE WAR IN AQUITANIA

Other hostile tribes gather their armies against Crassus


Crassus believes that conditions demand an immediate action

Quod ubi Crassus animadvertit,—suās cópiās propter 15 exiguitātem nōn facile didūci, hostem et vagāri et viās obsidēre et castrīs satis praesidi relinquere, ob eam causam minus commodē frūmentum commeātumque sibi supportāri, in diēs hostium numerum augēri,—nōn cunctandum existimāvit quīn pugnā dēcertāret. Hāc rē ad cōnsilium dēlātā, 20 ubi omnēs idem sentire intellēxit, posterum diem pugnae cōnstituit.

Crassus offers battle, but the enemy declines

24. Prīmā lūce prōductis omnibus cópiis, duplici aciē insti- tūtā, auxiliis in medium aciem coniectis, quid hostēs cōnsili caperent exspectābat. Illī, etsi propter multitūdinem et vete- 25 rem belli glōrium paucitātemque nostrōrum sē tūtō dimićātūrōs existimābant, tamen tūtius esse arbitrābantur, obsessis
viis, commeatū interclūsō, sine volnere victōriā potiri; et, si propter inopiam rel frūmentāriae Rōmāni sēsē recipere coeppissent, impeditōs in agmine et sub sarcinis infirmiōrēs animō adorīri cōgitābant. Hoc cōnsiliō probātō, ab ducibus prōductīs Rōmānorum cópiis, sēsē castris tenēbant.

Hāc rē perspectā Crassus, cum suā cunctātiōne atque opinīōne timōris hostēs nostrōs militēs alacriōrēs ad pugnandum effēcissent, atque omnium vōcēs audirentur exspectāri diūtius nōn oportēre quin ad castra irētur, cohortātus suōs omnibus cupientibus ad hostium castra contendit.

Crassus attacks the enemy's camp

25. Ibi cum alii fossās complērent, alii multis tēlis coniectis dēfēnsōrēs vāllō mūnitōnibusque dépellerent, auxiliārēsque (quibus ad pugnam nōn multum Crassus cōnfidēbat) lapidibus tēlīisque subministrandis et ad aggerem caespitibus compor-

15 tandis speciem atque opinīōnem pugnantium praeberent; cum item ab hostibus cōnstanter ac nōn timidē pugnārētur tēlāque ex locō superiōre missa nōn frūstrā acciderent, equitēs circum-

20 itis hostium castrīs Crassō renūntiāvērunt nōn eādem esse diligentia ab decumānā portā castra mūnīta facilēmque aditum habēre.

A Roman force surprises the camp in the rear

26. Crassus equītum praefectōs cohortātus ut magnis pra-

miis pollicitātiōnibusque suōs excitārent, quid fieri velit os-
tendit. Illi, ut erat imperātum, dēvectīs eis cohortibus quae praesidiō castrīs relictae intrītae ab labōre erant, et longiōre

25 itinere circumductīs, nē ex hostium castris cōnspici possent, omnium oculis mentibusque ad pugnam intentīs, celeriter ad eās quās diximus mūnitōnēs pervēnērunt, atque his prōrūtis prius in hostium castrīs cōnstitērunt quam plānē ab his vidērī aut quid rei gererētur cognōsci possēt.
Caesar's Expedition to the North

The enemy abandon their camp and flee

Tum vērō clāmōre ab ea parte auditō nostri redintegrātis viribus, quod plērumque in spē victōriae accidere consuēvit, ācrius impugnāre coepērunt. Hostēs undique circumventi, dēspērātis omnibus rébus, sē per munitōnēs déicere et fugā salutem petere contendērunt. Quōs equitātus apertissimis 5 campis cōnsectātus, ex milium L numerō, quae ex Aquitānīā Cantabrisque convēnisse cōnstäbat, vix quartā parte relictā, multā nocte sē in castra recēpit.

Most of the other Aquitanian tribes now surrender

27. Hāc auditā pugnā maxima pars Aquitāniae sēsē Crassō dēdidit obsidēsque ultrō misit; quō in numerō fuērunt Tar· 10 belli, Bigerriōnēs, Ptīnii, Vocātēs, Tarusātēs, Elusātēs, Gātēs, Ausci, Garumnī, Sibusātēs, Cocosātēs; paucae ultimae nātiōnēs anni tempore cōnśīae, quod hiems suberat, id facere neglēxērunt.

Caesar's Expedition to the North

Caesar marches against the Morini and Menapii

28. Eōdem fērē tempore Caesar, etsi prope exācta iam aëstās erat, tamen quod omni Galliā pācātā Morini Menapīque supererant quī in armīs essent neque ad eum umquam lēgātōs dē pāce misissent, arbitrātus id bellum celeriter cōnści posse, eō exercitum dūxit; quī longē aliā ratiōne ac reliquit Galli bellum gerere coepērunt. 20

They hide in the forests and swamps

Nam quod intellegēbant maximās nātiōnēs quae proelīō contendissent pulsās superātāsque esse, continentēsque silvās ac palūdēs habēbant, eō sē suaque omnia contulērunt. Ad quàrum initium silvārum cum Caesar pervēnisset castraque mūnīre
institutione neque hostis interim visus esset, dispersis in opere nostris, subitō ex omnibus partibus silvae évolāvērunt et in nostrōs impetum fēcērunt. Nostri celeriter arma cēpērunt eōsque in silvās repulērunt, et complūribus interfectis longius impulsīōribus locis secūti paucōs ex suis dēperdidērunt.

Violent storms put an end to further action

29. Reliquis deinceps diēbus Caesar silvās caedere instituit, et, nē quis inermibus imprudentibusque militibus ab latere impetus fieri posset, omnem eam māteriam quae erat caesa conversam ad hostem conlocābat et prō vāllō ad utruncque latus extruēbat. Incrēdibili celeritāte magnō spatiō paucīs diēbus cōnfectō, cum iam pecus atque extrēma impedimenta ā nostrīs tenērentur, ipsī densiōrēs silvās peterent, eius modi sunt tempestātēs cōnsecūtae uti opus necessāriō intermitterētur, et continuātiōne imbrīum diūtius sub pelibus militēs continērī nōn possent. Itaque vāstātīs omnibus eōrum agrīs, vicīs aedificiisque incēnsīs, Caesar exercitum redūxit et in Aulercīs Lexoviīisque, reliquis item civitātibus quae proxīmē bellum fēcerant, in hibernīs conlocāvit.
CAMPAIGN MAP FOR 55 B.C.

This map shows also the location of the various camps where the divisions of Caesar's forces were quartered after the campaign of 54 B.C. (see Book V, chapters 24 and 25)
BOOK IV
CAESAR'S FOURTH CAMPAIGN, 55 B.C.

THE WAR WITH THE GERMANS IN GAUL

_Harassed by the Suebi, two German tribes invade Gaul_

E A QUÆ secûta est hieme, qui fuit annus Cn. Pompeiō, M. Crassō cōnsulibus, Usipetēs Germānī et item Tencterī magnā cum multitūdine hominum flūmen Rhēnum trànsiērunt, nōn longē ā mari quō Rhēnus influit. Causa trànsseundi fuit quod ab Suēbis complūrēs annōs exagitāti bellō premēbantur et agrī cultūrā prohibēbantur.

_Strength and customs of the Suebi_

Suēbōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium. Hi centum pāgōs habēre dicuntur, ex quibus quotannis singula milia armātōrum bellandi causā ex finibus ēdūcunt. Reliqui, qui domi mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt. Hi rūrsus in vicem annō post in armīs sunt, illi domī remanēnt. Sic neque agrī cultūrā nec ratiō atque ēsus bellī intermittitur. Sed privātī ac sēparātī agri apud eōs nihil est, neque longius annō remanēre ūnō in locō colendī causā licet. Neque multum frūmentō, sed maximam partem lacte atque pecore vivunt, multumque sunt in vēnātōnibus; quae rēs et cibi genere et cotidiānā exercitātiōne et libertātē vitae, quod ā pueris nūllō officiō aut disciplīnā adsuēfacti nihil omnīnō contrā voluntātem faciunt, et virēs alīt et
immāni corporum magnītūdine hominēs efficit. Atque in eam sē consuētūdinem addūxerunt ut locis frigidissimīs neque vestītūs praeter pellēs habērent quicquam, quārum propter exiguitātem magna est corporis pars aperta, et lavārentur in flūminibus.

Their relations with traders

2. Mercātoribus est aditus magis eō ut quae bellō cēperint quibus vēndant habeant, quam quō ullam rem ad sē importāri désiderent. Quin etiam iūmentīs, quibus maximē Gallī délectantur quaeque impēnsō parant pretiō, Germāni impo

A CATAPULT (TORMENTUM)

rēs sunt apud eōs nāta, parva atque déformia, haec cotidiānā exercitātiōne, summī ut sint labōris, efficiunt.

Their horsemanship. Their sobriety

Equestribus proeliis saepe ex equīs dēsiliunt ac pedibus proeliantur, equōsque eōdem remanēre vēstīgiō adsuēfēcē-runt, ad quōs sē celeriter, cum ūsus est, recipiunt; neque eōrum mōribus turpĭus quicquam aut inertius habētur quam ephippiis ūti. Itaque ad quemvis numerum ephippiātōrum equitum quamvis pauci adire audent.
WAR WITH THE GERMANS

Vinum omninō ad sē importāri nōn patiuntur, quod eā rē ad labōrem ferendum remollēscere hominēs atque effe-
mināri arbitrantur.

They destroy and oppress their neighbors

3. Públicē maximam putant esse laudem quam lātissimē
ā suis finibus vacāre agrōs: hāc rē significāri magnum 5
numerum civitātum suam vim sustinēre nōn posse. Itaque
ūnā ex parte ā Suēbis circiter milia passuum centum agrī
vacāre dicuntur. Ad alteram partem succēdunt Ubii, quōrum
fuit civitās ampla atque flōrēns, ut est captus Germānōrum;
ei paulō, quamquam sunt eiusdem generis, sunt cēteris hū-
māniōrēs, propterea quod Rhēnum attingunt, multumque
ad eōs mercātōrēs ventitant, et ipsi propter propinquitātem
Gallicis sunt mōribus adsuēfactī. Hōs cum Suēbi multī
saepe bellis expertī propter amplitūdinem gravitātemque
civitātis finibus expellere nōn potuisset, tamen vectīgālēs 15
sibi fēcērunt ac multō humiliōrēs infirmiōrēsque redēgērunt.

The Usipetes and Tencteri are checked at the Rhine
by the Menapii

4. In eādem causā fuērunt Usipetēs et Tencteri, quōs
suprā diximus, qui complūrēs annōs Suēbōrum vim sustinu-
ērunt; ad extrērum tamen agrī expulsī et multis locīs
Germānīae triennium vagāti ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt, quās 20
regiōnēs Menapiī incolēbant. Hī ad utramque ripam flūm-
nīs agrōs aedificia vicōsque habēbant; sed tantae multitūdinis
adītū perterriti, ex eīs aedificiīs quae trāns flūmen habuerant
dēmigrāverant, et cīs Rhēnum dispositīs praeсидīis Ger-
mānōs trānsire prohibēbant.
By a ruse they succeed in crossing into Gaul

Illī omnia experti, cum neque vi contendere propter
inopiam nāvium neque clam trānsire propter custōdiās
Menapiōrum possent, revertī sē in suās sēdēs regiōnēsque
simulāvērunt, et tridui viam prōgressī rūrscēs revertērunt,
atque, omni hōc itinere ūnā nocte equitātū cōnfectō, insciōs
inopinantēsque Menapiōs oppressērunt; qui, dē Germānōrum
diessē per explōrātōrēs certiōrēs factī, sine metū trāns
Rhēnum in suōs vicōs remigrāverant. His interfectis nāvi-
busque eōrum occupātis, priusquam ea pars Menapiōrum
quae citrā Rhēnum erat certior fieret, flūmen trānsiērunt
atque omnibus eōrum aedificiis occupātīs reliquam partem
hiemis sē eōrum cōpiis aluērunt.

Caesar distrusts the Gauls because of their fickle character

5. His dē rēbus Caesar certior factus et infirmitātem
Gallōrum veritus, quod sunt in cōnsiliis capiendis mōbilēs
et novis plērumque rēbus student, nihil his committendum
existimāvit. Est enim hoc Gallicae cōnsuētūdinis, uti et
viātōrēs etiam invitōs cōnsistere cōgant, et quid quisque
eōrum dē quāque rē audierit aut cognōverit quaeant; et
mercātōrēs in oppidīs volgus circumsistat, quibusque ex
20 regiōnibus veniant quāque ibi rēs cognōverint prōnūntiāre
cōgat. His rēbus atque auditīōnibus permōti, dē summīs
saepe rēbus cōnsilia ineunt, quōrum eōs in vēstigīō paenitēre
necessē est, cum incertis rūmōribus serviant et plērīque ad
voluntātem eōrum ficta respondeant.

He finds proof of Gallic disloyalty and resolves on war with Germany

25 6. Quā cōnsuētūdine cognitā, Caesar, nē graviōri bellō
occurret, mātūrius quam cōnsuērat ad exercitum proficisci-
tur. Eō cum vēnisset, ea, quae fore suspicātus erat, facta
cognōvit: missās lēgātiōnēs ab nōn nūllis civitātibus ad 
Germānōs invitātōisque eōs uti ab Rhēnō discēderent, omnia 
quae postulāssent ab sē fore parāta. Quā spē adducti 
Germānī lātius iam vagābantur et in finēs Eburōnum et 
Condōrusōrum, qui sunt Trēverōrum clientēs, pervēnerant. 5 
Principibus Galliae ēvocātis Caesar ea quae cognōverat dis-
simulanda sibi existimāvit, eōrumque animis permulsis et 
cōnfīrmātis, equitātūque imperātō, bellum cum Germānīs 
gerere cōnstituit.

The German envoys ask Cæsar for lands in Gaul

7. Ré frūmentāriā comparātā equitibusque dēlectis, iter in 10 
ea loca facere coepit quibus in locis esse Germānōs audiēbat. 
Ā quibus cum paucōrum diērum iter abesset, lēgāti ab eis 
vēnērunt, quōrum haec fuit ōrātiō: 'Germānōs neque 
priōrēs-populō Rōmānō bellum inferre neque tamen recūsāre, 
si laccērantur, quin armis contendant, quod Germānōrum cōn- 15 
suētūdō sit ā maiōribus trādita, quicumque bellum inferant, 
resistere neque dēprecāri. Haec tamen dicere: vēnisse invi-
tōs, ēiectōs domō; si suam grātiam Rōmānī velint, posse 
eis ūtīlēs esse amīcōs; vel sībi agrōs attribuant vel patian-
tur eōs tenēre quōs armīs possēderint: sēsē ūnis Suēbis 20 
concēdere, quibus nē dī quidem immortālēs parēs esse 
possint; reliquum quidem in terrīs esse nēminem quem nōn 
superāre possint.'

Cæsar refuses and orders them to leave the country

8. Ad haec Cæsar quae visum est respondit; sed exitus 
fuit ōrātiōnis: 'Sībī nūllam cum his amīcitiam esse posse, 25 
si in Galliā remanērent; neque vērum esse, quī suōs finēs 
tuēri nōn potuerint, aliēnōs occupāre; neque ūllōs in Galliā 
vacāre agrōs qui dāri tantae praesertim multītūdīni sine
iniúriā possint; sed licère, si velint, in Ubiórum finibus
cōnsidere, quōrum sint lēgāti apud sē et dē Suēbōrum
iniūriis querantur et ā sē auxilium petant; hoc sē Ubiis
imperātūrum.’

The envoys seek delay

5 9. Lēgāti haec sē ad suōs relātūrōs dixerunt et ré déliber-
rātā post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversūrōs; intercā nē
propius sē castra movēret, petiērunt. Nē id quidem Caesar
ab sē impetrāri posse dixit. Cognōverat enim magnam
partem equitātūs ab eis aliquot diēbus ante praedandi
10 frūmentandique causā ad Ambivaritōs trāns Mosam missam;
hōs exspectāri equitēs atque eius rei causā moram interpōni
arbitrabātur.

The Meuse and the Rhine

10. Mosa prōfluit ex monte Vosegō, qui est in finibus
Lingonum, et parte quādam ex Rhēnō receptā quae appel-
lātur Vacalus, insulam efficit Batavōrum, neque longius inde
milibus passuum lxxx in Ōceanum influit. Rhēnus autem
oritur ex Lepontiis, qui Alpēs incolunt, et longē spatiō per
finēs Nantuātium, Helvētiōrum, Sēquanōrum, Mediam-
tricum, Tribocōrum, Trēverōrum citātūs fertur; et ubi
20 Ōceanō adpropinquāvit, in plūrēs défluit partēs multīs in-
genibusque insulis effectis, quārum pars magna a fēris
barbarisque natiōnibus incollitur,—ex quibus sunt qui piscibus
atque āvīs avium vivere existimantur,—multīsque capitibus
in Ōceanum influit.

The envoys return. More parleying to gain time

25 11. Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum xii mili-
bus abesset, ut erat cōnstitūtum, ad eum lēgāti revertuntur;
quī in itinere congressī magnopere nē longius prōgrederētur
WAR WITH THE GERMAN

órābant. Cum id nōn impetrāssent, petēbant uti ad eōs equitēs qui agmen antecessissent praemitteret, eōsque pugnā prohibēret, sibique ut potestātem faceret in Ubiōs lēgātōs mittendi; quōrum si principēs ac senātus sibi iūre iūrandō fidem fēcisset, eā condiciōne quae ā Caesare ferrētur sē 5 ūsūrōs ostendēbant; ad hās rēs cōnfiendiās sibi trīdui spatium darent.

Haec omnia Caesar ēodem illō pertinēre arbitrābatur, ut trīdui morā interpositā equitēs eōrum qui abessent reverteren-
tur; tamen sēsē nōn longius mīlibus passuum iiiī aquātiōnis 10 causā prōcessūrum eō dīē dixit; hūc posterō dīē quam frequ-
entissimi convenirent, ut dē eōrum postulātis cognōsceret. Interim ad praefectōs quī cum omni equitātū antecesserant mittit quī nūntiārent nē hostēs proeliō lαesseractent; et, si ipsi lαesseractentur, sustinērent quoad ipse cum exercitū proprio 15 accessisset.

A treacherous attack is made on the Roman cavalry

12. At hostēs, ubi primum nostrōs equitēs cōnspexērunt, quōrum erat v milium numerus, cum ipsi nōn amplius dccc
equitēs habērent, quod ei qui frūmentandi causā ierant trāns Mosam nōndum redierant, nihil timentibus nostrīs, quod 20 lēgāti eōrum paulō ante ā Caesare discesserant atque is diēs indūtiīs erat ab his petitus, impetū factō celeriter nostrōs perturbāvērunt; rūrsus his resistantibus, cōnsueūtūdine suā ad pedēs désiluērunt, subfossisque equīs complūribusque nostrīs dēiectis, reliquōs in fugam coniēcērunt, atque ita 25 perterrītōs ēgērunt ut nōn prius fugā désisterent quam in cōnspectum agminis nostrī vēnissent.
In eo proelio ex equitibus nostris interficiuntur III et LXX; in his vir fortissimus, Piso Aquitanus, amplissimo genere natus, cuius avus in civitate sua regnum obtinerat, amicus ab senatu nostro appellatus. Hic cum fratri intercluso ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex periculō eripuit, ipse equō volneratō dēiectus, quoad potuit, fortissimē restitit; cum circumventus multis volneribus acceptis cecidisset, atque id frater, qui iam proelio exsserat, procul animadvertisset, incitātō equō sē hostibus obtulit atque interfecerat est.

Caesar decides that the situation demands stern measures

10 13. Hoc factō proelio, Caesar neque iam sibi lægātōs audiendōs neque condicionēs accipiendas arbitrabatur ab eis qui, per dolum atque insidiās petīta pāce, ultrō bellum intulissent: exspectāre vērō, dum hostium cópiae augērentur equitātusque reverterētur, summae dēmentiae esse iūdicābat; et cognitā Gallōrum infirmitāte, quantum iam apud eōs hostēs únō proelīo auctōritātis essent cōnsecūti, sentiēbat; quibus ad cōnsilia capienda nihil spati dandum existimābat.

He arrests the German chiefs who come asking a truce

His cōstitūtis rébus et cōnsiliō cum lægātīs et quaeātōre communicātō, nē quem diem pugnae praeferentissimae, oppor-tūnissima rēs accidit, quod postridēius dieī māne eādem et perfidiā et simulātiōne īsi Germānī frequentēs, omnibus principibus maioribusque nātū adhībitis, ad eum in castra vēnērunt: simul, ut dicēbatūr, pūrgandī sui causā, quod, contrā atque esset dictum et ipsi petissent, proelium pridiē commi-sissent; simul ut, si quid possent, dē indūtīs fallendō impe-trārent. Quōs sibi Caesar oblātōs gāvisus illōs retinērī iussit;
"MILITES NOSTRI IN CASTRA INRUPERUNT"

(See page 111, line 10)
ipse omnēs cōpiās castrīs ēdūxit equitātumque, quod recenti proelīō perterritum esse existimābat, agmen subsequi iussit.

He then makes a quick march on the German camp and surprises it


The Germans are thoroughly demoralized and many perish

THE FIRST INVASION OF GERMANY

Caesar's reasons for believing that he ought to cross the Rhine


Accessit etiam quod illa pars equitātūs Usipetum et Tenc-terōrum, quam suprā commemorāvi praedaṃi frūmentandique causā Mosam trānsisse neque proeliō interfuisse, post fugam suōrum sē trāns Rhēnum in finēs Sugambrōrum recēperat sēque cum eis coniūnxerat. Ad quōs cum Caesar nūntiōs misisset qui postulārent eōs qui sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent sibi dēderent, respondērunt: 'Populi Rōmāni imperium Rhēnum finire; si sē invitō Germānōs in Galliam trānsire nōn aequum existimāret, cūr suī quīcumque esse imperi aut potestātis trāns Rhēnum postulāret?'

Ubī autem, qui ūnī ex Trānsrhēnānis ad Caesarem lēgā-tōs miserant, amicitiam fēcerant, obsidēs dederant, magnopere ōrābant ut sībi auxiliūm ferret, quod graviter ab Suēbis premerentur; vel, si id facere occupātiōnibus rei publicae prohibērētur, exercitum modo Rhēnum trānsportāret; id sībi ad auxiliūm spemque reliqui temporis satis futūrum. Tantum esse nōmen atque opinōnem eius exercitūs, Ariovistō pulsō et hōc novissimō proeliō factō, etiam ad ultimās Germānōrum nātiōnēs, uti opinīoetur at amicitīa populi Rōmāni tūtī esse possent. Nāvium magnam cōpiam ad trānsportandum exercitum pollicēbantur.
He decides to bridge the river

17. Caesar his de causis quās commemorāvī Rhēnum trānsire décrēverat; sed nāvibus trānsire neque satis tūtum

esse arbitrābātur, neque suae neque populi Rōmāni dignitātis esse statuēbat. Itaque, etsi summa difficultās faciendī pontis prōpōnēbātur propter lātitūdinem, rapiditātem, s
altitūdinemque flūminis, tamen id sibi contendendum aut aliter nōn trādūcendum exercitum existimābat.

The plan of the bridge

Ratiōnem pontis hanc instituit. Tigna bina sēsquipedālia paulum ab imō praeacūta, dimēnsa ad altitudinem flūminis, intervāllo pedum duōrum inter sē iungēbat. Haec cum māchinātiōnibus immissa in flūmen dēfixerat fistūcisque adėgerat,—nōn sublicae modō dērēctē ad perpendiculum, sed prōnē ac fastigātē, ut secundum nātūram flūminis prōcumberent,—eis item contrāria duo ad eundem modum iūncta intervāllo pedum quadrāgēnum ab inferioriōre parte contrā vim atque impetum flūminis conversa statuēbat. Haec utraque insuper bipedālibus trabibus immissīs, quantum eōrum tignōrum iūnctūra distābat, binis utrimque fibulis ab extrēmā parte distinēbantur; quibus disclūsis atque in contrāriam partem revinctis, tanta erat operis firmitūdō atque ea rērum nātūra ut, quō maior vis aquae sē incitāvisset, hōc artius iniligāta tenērentur. Haec dērēctā māteriā iniectā contextēbantur ac longuriis crātibusque cōsternēbantur; ac nihilō sētius sublicae et ad inferioriōrem partem flūminis oblique agēbantur, quae prō ariete subjectae et cum omni opera coniūnctae vim flūminis exciperent; et aliae item suprā pontem mediocrī spatiō, ut, si arborum trunci sive nāvēs deiciendi operis causā essent à barbarīs immissae, his deēnsōribus eārum rērum vis minuerētur, neu ponti nocērent.

Caesar crosses the bridge and invades Germany

25 18. Diēbus x quibus māteriā coepta erat comportāri, omni opere effectō, exercitus trādūcitur. Caesar ad utramque partem pontis firmō praesidiō relictō in finēs Sugambrōrum contendit. Interim ā complūribus civitātibus ad eum lēgāti
veniunt; quibus pācem atque amicitiam petentibus liberā-liter respondet obsidēsque ad sē addūci iubet. At Sugambri, ex eō tempore quō pōns institui coeptus est fugā comparātā, hortantibus eis quōs ex Tencteris atque Usipetibus apud sē habēbant, finibus suis exsererant suaque omnia exportā-5 verant sēque in sōlitudinem ac silvās abdiderant.

The invasion fills the Germans with terror

19. Caesar paucōs diēs in eōrum finibus morātus, omnibus vicīs aedificiisque incēnsis frūmentisque succisis, sē in finēs Ubiōrum recēpit; atque his auxiliōm suōm pollicitus,
si ab Suēbis premerentur, haec ab eis cognōvit: 'Suēbōs, 10
posteāquam per explōrātōrēs pontem fieri comperissent,
mōre suō conciliō habitō, nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dimisisse,
uti dē oppidis dēmigrārent, liberōs, uxōrēs, suaque omnia
in silvis dépōnerent, atque omnēs qui arma ferre possent
ūnum in locum convenīrent; hunc esse dēlēctum medium 15
ferē regiōnum eārum quās Suēbi obtinērent; hic Rōmānō-
rum adventum exspectāre, atque ibi dēcertāre cōstituisse.'

Caesar returns to Gaul and destroys the bridge

Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus eis rēbus cōnfectis
quārum rērum causā trādūcere exercitum cōnstituerat, ut Ger-
mānis metum iniceret, ut Sugambrōs ulciscerētur, ut Ubiōs 20
obsidiōne liberāret, diēbus omnīnō xviii trāns Rhēnum cōn-
sūmpitis, satis et ad laudem et ad utilitātem prōfectum
arbitrātus, sē in Galliam recēpit pontemque rescidit.
THE FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN

Caesar decides to invade Britain

20. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā Caesar, etsi in his locis (quod omnis Gallia ad septentrionēs vergit) mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit: quod omnibus ferē Gallicis bellis hostibus nostris inde subministrāta auxilia intellegēbat; et, si tempus ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen magnō sibi īsuī fore arbitrābatur, si modo īnsulam adīsset, genus hominum perspecisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cognōvisset; quae omnia ferē Gallis erant incognita. Neque enim temerē praeter mercātōrēs illō adīt quisquam, neque eis ipsis quicquam praeter ōram maritimam atque eās regionēs quae sunt contrā Galliās nōtum est.

Itaque vocātis ad sē undique mercātōribus, neque quanta esset īnsulae magnītūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incoherent, neque quem īsum bellī habērent aut quibus institūtīs ūterentur, neque qui essent ad maiōrem nāvium multitūdinem idōneī portūs, reperire poterat.

He sends Volusenus to reconnoiter and Commius as a peace envoy


25 Interim cōnsiliō eius cognitō et per mercātōrēs perlātō ad Britannōs, ā complūribus īnsulae civitātibus ad eum lēgāti veniunt qui polliceantur obsidēs dare atque imperiō populi
Römāni obtemperāre. Quibus auditis, liberālīter pollicitus hortātusque ut in ea sententiā permanērent, eōs domum remittit; et cum eis ūnā Commium, quem ipse Atrebātibus superātis rēgem ibi cōnstituerat, cuius et virtūtem et cōnsilium probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābatur cuiusque auctō-ritās in his regiōnibus magnī habēbātur, mittit. Huic imperat quās possit adeat civitātēs, hortēturque ut populi Römāni fidem sequantur sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet. Volu-sēnus perspectis regiōnibus quantum ei facultātis dari potuit, qui nāvi ēgredi ac sē barbaris committere nōn audēret, quintō diē ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspexisset renūntiat.

While the ships are gathering, the Morini surrender

22. Dum in his locis Caesar nāvium parandārum causā morātur, ex magnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgāti vēnē-runt qui sē dē superiōris temporis cōnsiliō excūsārent, quod
hominēs barbarī et nostrae cōnsuētūdinis imperiti bellum populō Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque ea quae imperāset factūrōs pollicērentur. Hoc sibi Caesar satis opportūnē accidisse arbitrātus, quod neque post.tergum hostem relinquere volēbat neque belli gerendi propter annī tempus facultātem habēbat neque hās tantulārum rērum occupātiōnēs Britanniae antepōnendās iūdicābat, magnum eis numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus adductis eōs in fidem recipit.

The muster of the fleet and disposition of the forces

Nāvibus circiter lxxx onerāriīs coāctis, quot satis esse ad duās trānsportandās legiōnēs existimābat, quod praeterea nāvium longārum habēbat quaestōri, lēgātis praefectisque distribuit. Hūc accēdēbant xviii onerāriāe nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ā milibus passuum viii ventō tenēbantur quō minus in eundem portum venire possent; hās equītibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Titūriō Sabinō et Aurunculēiō Cottaē lēgātis in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum ā quibus ad eum lēgāti nōn vēnerant dūcendum dedit. Sulpicium Rūfum lēgātum cum eō praesidiō quot satis esse arbitrābātur portum tenēre iussit.

Caesar crosses the channel and seeks a good landing place

20 23. His cōnstitūtis rēbus, nactus idōneam ad nāvigandum tempestātem, tertīā ferē vigiliā solvit, equītēsque in ulteriōrem portum prōgredi et nāvēs cōnscendere et sē sequi iussit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius esset administrātum, ipse hōrā diēi circiter quārtā cum prīmis nāvibus Britanniam attigit, atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōnspexit. Cuius loci haec erat nātūra atque ita montibus angustē mare continēbātur uti ex locis superiōribus in
litus tēlum adigi posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō conveni- rent, ad hōram nōnam in ancorīs exspectāvit.

Interim lēgātis tribūnīisque militum convocātīs et quae ex Volusēnō cognōvisset et quae fieri vellet ostendīt, monuitque, ut rei militāris ratiō, maximē ut maritimae rēs postulārent

THE CLIFFS OF DOVER

(ut quae celerem atque instabilem mōtum habērent), ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs rēs ab eīs administrārentur. His dimissīs et ventum et aestum ūnō tempore nactus secundum, datō signō et sublātīs ancorīs, circiter milia pas- suum vii ab eō locō prōgressus, apertō ac plānō litore nāvēs cōnstituit.
24. At barbari, consilio Römanorum cognitō, praemissō
equitātū et essedāriis, quō plērumque genere in proeliis útī
cōnsuērunt, reliquis cōpiis subsecūti nostrōs nāvibus ēgredī
prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās, quod

A LARGE CATAPULT (TORMENTUM)

nāvēs propter magnitūdinem nisi in altō cōnstituī nōn pote-
rant; militibus autem, ignōtis locis, impeditīs manibus, magnō
et gravi onere armōrum pressis, simul et dē nāvibus dēsili-
endum et in fluctibus cōnsistendum et cum hostibus erat pug-
nandum; cum illī aut ex āridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressi,
omnia membris expeditīs, nōtissimis locis, audācter tēla con-
icerent et equōs insuēfactōs incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostri
LANDING OF THE ROMANS ON THE COAST OF BRITAIN
FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN

perterriti atque huius omnino generis pugnae imperit in ea
dem alacritate ac studio quo in pedestibus uti proelius consue-
rant utebantur.

_Casar tries to drive them away_

25. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, naves longas, quarum
et specieis erat barbaris inusitator et motus ad usum expeditior, paulum removeri ab
onerarius navibus et remis incitari et ad latus apertum hostium consti-
tuit, atque inde fundis, sagittis, tormentis hostes pröpelli ac sub-
moveri iussit; quae res magni
usui nostris fuit. Nam et navium
figura et remorum motus et inusi-
tatö genere tormentorum permotæ,
barbari constiterunt ac paulum
etiam pedem retulérunt.

Valor of a Roman standard bearer

Atque nostris militibus cunctan-
tibus, maximé propter altitudinem
maris, qui decimae legioinis aqui-
lam feröbat, obtestatus deös ut ea
res legioni feliciter eveniret, “Dé-
silite,” inquit, “commilitönes, nisi
voltis aquilam hostibus prödere; ego certe meum rei publi-
cae atque imperatöri officium praestiterö.” Hoc cum voce
magna dixisset, se ex navi proiecit atque in hostes aquilam 25
ferre coepit. Tum nostri cohortati inter se ne tantum deöecus
admitteretur, universi ex navio desiluerunt. Hos item
ex proximis navibus cum conspexissent, subsecuti hostibus
adpropinquaverunt,
The Romans land and the Britons flee

26. Pugnatum est ab utrisque acrier. Nostrī tamen, quod neque ordīnēs servāre neque firmiter insistere neque signa subsequi poterant, atque alīus aliā ex nāvi quibuscumque signis occurrerat sē adgregābat, magnopere perturbābantur; hostēs vērō, nōtis omnibus vadis, ubi ex litore aliquōs singularēs ex nāvi ēgredientēs cōnspexerant, incitātis equīs impeditōs adorīēbantur, plūrēs paucōs circumstībant, alīī ab latere aperto in ūniversōs tēla coniciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārum nāvium, item speculātōria nāvigia militibus complēri iussit, et quōs labōrantēs cōnspexerat, his subsidia submittēbat. Nostrī, simul in āridō cōnstitērunt, suīs omnibus cōnsecūtis in hostēs impe-tum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt; neque longius prósequi potuērunt, quod equītēs cursum tenēre atque insulam capere non potuerant. Hoc ūnum ad pristinam fortūnam Caesari dēfuit.

British envoys sue for peace. Caesar grants it

27. Hostēs proeliō superāti, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce misērunt; obsidēs datūrōs quaeque imperāssēt factūrōs esse polliciti sunt. Unā cum his lēgātīs Commius Atrebās vēnit, quem suprā dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam praemissum. Hunc illī ē nāvi ēgressum, cum ad eōs ōrātōris modō Caeso-ris mandāta dēferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula coniēcerant; tum proeliō factō remisērunt, et in petendā pāce eius rei culpam in multitūdinem contulērunt, et propter imprūdentiam ut ignōscerētur petivērunt.

Caesar questus quod, cum ultrō in continentem lēgātis missis pācem āb sē petisset, bellum sine causā intulissent,
A storm drives back the cavalry transports

28. His rebus pāce cōnfīrmātā, post diem quārtum quam est in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs xviii, dē quibus supra dēmōnstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex superiōre portū lēni ventō solvērunt. Quae cum adpropinquārent Britanniae et ex castris vidēruntur, tanta tempestās subitō coūrta est ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre possē; sed aliae eōdem unde erant profectae referrentur, aliae ad inferiōrem partem insulae, quae est proprius sōlis occāsum, magnō suō cum periculō dēicerentur; quae tamen ancoris iactīs cum fluctibus complērentur, necessāriō adversā nocte in altum prōvectae continentem petiērunt.

Wind and tide dash the fleet on the British coast

29. Eādem nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna, quī dīēs maritimōs aēstūs maximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōnsuēvit, nostrīisque id erat incognito. Ita ūnō tempore et longās nāvēs, quās Caesar in āridum subdūxerat, aēstus complēbat, et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligātāe, tempestās adflīctābat, neque ūlla nostrīs facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandī dābātur. Complūribus nāvibus frāctīs, reliquae cum essent — ēnibus, ancoris reliquisque armāmentīs āmis-sis — ad nāvigandum inūtilēs, magna (id quod necesse erat accidere) tōtius exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae quibus reportāri possent, et omnia deērant
These disasters encourage the Britons to renew hostilities

30. Quibus rēbus cognītīs principēs Britanniae, qui post
proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē conlocūtī, cum
et equītēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānis deēsse intellege-
rent, et paucitātem militum ex castrōrum exiguitāte cognōs-
cerent,—quae hōc erant etiam angustiōra quod sine
impedimentis Caesar legiōnēs trānsportāverat,—optimum
factū esse dūxérunt, rebeltiōne factā, frūmentō commeātūque
nostros prohibēre et rem in hiemem prōducere; quod, his
superātis aut reditū interclūsis, nēminem posteā bellī infe-
rendi causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum cōnfidēbant. Itaque
rūrsus coniūrātiōne factā paulātim ex castrīs discēdēre et
suōs clam ex agrīs dēducere coepērunt.

Caesar suspects their design and prepares accordingly

31. At Caesar, etsī nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cognōverat,
tamen, et ex ēventū nāvium suārum et ex eō, quod obsidēs
dare intermiserant, fore id quod accidit suspicābatur. Itaque
ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et frūmentum
20 ex agrīs cotidiē in castra cōnferēbat, et quae gravissimē
adflictae erant nāvēs, eārum māteriā atque aere ad reliquās
reficiendās ūtēbātur, et quae ad eās rés erant usūi ex conti-
nenti comportāri iubēbat. Itaque cum summō studiō ā
militibus administrārētur, xii nāvibus āmissis, reliquis ut
25 nāvigāri satis commodē posset effēcit.
FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN

Part of his men gather grain, others guard the camp

32. Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōnsuētūdine ūnā frū-
mentātum missā, quae appellābātur septima, neque ūlla ad
id tempus belli suspiciōne interpositā, — cum pars hominum
in agrīs remanēret, pars etiam in castra ventitāret, — ei qui
prō portis castrōrum in stātiōne erant Caesari nūntiāvērunt 5
pulverem maiōrem quam cōnsuētūdō ferret in eā parte
vidēri quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset.

The Britons attack a foraging party

Caesar id quod erat suspicātus, aliquid novī ā barbarīs
initum cōnsilī, cohortēs quae in stātiōnibus erant sēcum in
eam partem proficiscī, ex reliquis duās in stātiōnem succē-
dere, reliquās armāri et cōnfestim sēsē subsequī iussit. Ĉum
paulō longius ā castrīs prōcessisset, suōs ab hostibus premī
atque aegrē sustinēre et cōnfertā legiōne ex omnibus partibus
tēla conici animadvertit. Nam quod, omni ex reliquis partī-
bus dēmessō frūmentō, pars ūna erat reliqua, suspicāti hostēs 15
hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs noctū in silvās dēlituerant; tum
dispersōs dēpositīs armīs in metendo occupātōs subitō adortī,
paucīs interfectīs reliquōs incertīs ārdinibus perturbāverant,
simul equitātū atque essēdis circumเดderant.

The Britons' mode of fighting with war chariots

33. Genus hoc est ex essēdis pugnae. Primō per omnēs 20
partēs perequant et tēla coniciunt atque ipsō terrōre equō-
rum et strepitū rotārum ārdinēs plērumque perturbant; et
cum sē inter equitūm turmās īnsinuāvērunt, ex essēdis dē-
siliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurigae interim paulātīm
ex proelīō excēdunt atque ita currūs conlocant utī, sī illī ā 25
multitūdine hostium presēntur, expeditum ad suōs receptum
habeant. Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabilitātem peditum in proelii praestant; ac tantum ūsū cotidiānō et exercitātiōne efficiunt uti in dēclivi ac praecipiti locō incitātōs equōs sustinēre et brevi moderāri ac flectere, et per tēmōnem per-
currere et in iugō insistere et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere cōnsuērint.

The foragers are rescued. The Britons gather a great army

34. Quibus rēbus perturbātīs nostrīs novitāte pugnae
 tempore opportūnissimō Caesar auxilium tulit; namque eius
 adventū hostēs cōnstitērunt, nostri sē ex timōre recēpērunt.
 Quō factō ad lacessendum hostem et committendum proe-
 lium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus, suō sē locō continuit
 et brevi tempore intermissō in castra legiōnēs redūxit. Dum
 haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupātīs, qui erant in agrīs
 reliqui discesserunt.

15 Secūtae sunt continuōs complūrēs diēs tempestātēs, quae
 et nostrōs in castrīs continērent et hostem ā pugnā prohibē-
 rent. Interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dimisērunt
 paucitātemque nostrōrum militum suīs praedicāverunt, et,
 quanta praedae facienda atque in perpetuum suī liberandi
 facultās darētur, si Rōmānōs castrīs expulissent, dēmōnstrā-
 vērunt. His rēbus celeriter magnā multitūdine peditātūs
 equitātūsque coāctā, ad castra vēnērunt.

They are defeated and their country is laid waste

35. Caesar, etsī idem quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat
 fore vidēbat, — ut, si essent hostēs pulsi, celeritāte periculum
 effugerent, — tamen nactus equītēs circiter xxx, quōs Com-
mius Atrebās (dē quō ante dictum est) sēcum trānsportāverat,
 legiōnēs in aciē prō castrīs cōnstituit. Commissō proelīō diū-
tius nostrōrum militum impetum hostēs fere nōn potuērunt
ac terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spatiō secūti quantum cursū et viribus efficere potuērunt, complūrēs ex eis occidērunt; deinde, omnibus longē lātēque aedificiis incēnsis, sē in castra recēpērunt.

*Cæsar demands hostages and returns to Gaul*

36. Eōdem die lēgāti ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē 5 pāce vēnērunt. His Caesar numerum obsidum quem anteā imperāverat duplicāvit, eōsque in continentem addūci iussit; quod, propinquā die aequinocīti, infirmis nāvibus hiemī nāvigationem subiciendam nōn existimābat. Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus paulō post medium noctem nāvēs solvit; quae omnēs in-columēs ad continentem per-vēnērunt; sed ex eis onerāriae duae eōsdem portūs quōs reliquae capere nōn potuērunt et paulō infrā délātae sunt.

THE REVOLT OF THE MORINI AND THE MENAPIII

*The Morini attack Caesar’s troops*

37. Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositi militēs circiter cccc atque in castra contenderent, Morīni, quōs Caesar in Britanniam proficiscēns pācātōs reliquerat, spē praedaē ad-ductī primō nōn ita magnō suōrum numerō circumstetērunt ac, si sēsē interfici nōllent, arma pōnere iussērunt. Cum
illi orbe factō sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter ad clāmōrem hominum circiter milia vī convēnērunt. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnem ex castrīs equītārum suīs auxiliō misit. Interim

noster militēs impetum hostium sustinuērunt atque amplius hōris IIII fortissimē pugnāvērunt, et paucis volneribus acceptīs complūrēs ex hīs occiderunt. Postea vērō quam equitātus noster in cōnspectum vēnit, hostēs abiectīs armīs tergā vertērunt magnusque eōrum numerus est occisus.
REVOLT OF THE MORINI AND MENAPII  129

They are subdued. The Menapii hide away

38. Caesar posterō die T. Labiēnum légātum cum eis legiōnibus quās ex Britannia redūxerat in Morinōs, qui rebellionem fecerant, misit. Qui cum propter siccitātēs palūdum quō sē reciperent nōn habērent (quō perfugiō superiore annō erant īsi), omnēs ferē in potestātem Labiēnī pervēnērunt. 5 At Q. Titūrius et L. Cotta légāti, qui in Menapiōrum finēs legiōnēs dūxerant, omnibus eōrum agrīs vāstātis, frūmentis succisis, aedificiis incēnsis, quod Menapiī sē omnēs in densissimās silvās abiderant, sē ad Caesarem recēpērunt.

Close of the campaign

Caesar in Belgis omnium legiōnum hiberna cōnstituit. 10 Eō duae omnīnō civitātēs ex Britannia obsidēs misērunt, reliquae nēglēxērunt. His rēbus gestīs, ex litterīs Caesarīs diērum xx supplicātiō ā senātū dēcrēta est.
BOOK V

CAESAR'S FIFTH CAMPAIGN, 54 B.C.

THE SECOND INVASION OF BRITAIN

Summary of Chapters 1–4

Caesar spent the winter following his first invasion of Britain in northern Italy and Illyricum, having left orders that, during his absence, a large fleet should be built for a second invasion in the spring (54 B.C.). On returning to his army, which had passed the winter among the Belgae, he found that twenty-eight war galleys had been constructed, and about six hundred ships of transport.

While the fleet was assembling at Portus Itius, whence the journey across is only thirty miles, Caesar, with four legions and a force of cavalry, made a rapid expedition to the country of the Treveri, who had shown an inclination to be unfriendly to him. His appearance among them with an army quickly brought the hostile faction and their chief, Indutiomarus, to terms, and after receiving a large number of hostages from them he returned to the coast.

The troops assemble at Portus Itius

His rebus constítuitis Caesar ad portum Itium cum legiônibus pervenit. Ibi cognósxit lx návēs, quae 1 in Meldis factae erant, tempestāte reiectās currsum tenēre nōn potuisse atque eōdem unde erant profectae revertīsse; reliquās parātās ad nāvigandum atque omnibus

**Note.** A superior figure *after* a word refers to that word alone; when placed *before* a word it refers to two or more words.

1 in Meldis: the Meldi were a people on the Marne near its confluence with the Seine.

130
THE SECOND INVASION OF BRITAIN, 54 B.C.
rēbus instructās invent. Eōdem equitātus tōtius Galliae convenerit, numerō mīlia IIII, principēsque ex omnibus civitātibus; ex quibus perpaucōs, quōrum in sē fidem perspexerat, reliquēre in Galliā, reliquis 1 obsidium locō sēcum dūcere dēcrēverat, quod, cum ipse abesset, mōtum Galliae verēbātur.

**Dumnorix, the crafty and ambitious Hæduan, again appears**

6. Erat ūnā cum cēterīs Dumnorīx 2 Haeduus, dē quō ante ab nōbīs dictum est. Hunc sēcum habēre in primīs cōnstituerat, quod eum cupidum rērum novārum, cupidum imperī, magnī animī, magnae inter Gallōs auctōritātīs cognōverat. Accēdēbat hūc quod in conciliō Hæduōrum Dumnorīx dixerat sībī à Caesare rēgnum civitātīs dēferri; 3 quod dictum Hæduī graviter ferēbant neque recūsandī aut dēprecandī 4 causā lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere audēbant. Id factum ex suīs hospitibus Caesar cognōverat.

**He tries to make trouble for Caesar**

Ille omnibus prīmō precibus petere contendit ut in Galliā 15 relinquerētur; partim quod 5 insuētus nāvigandi mare timēret, partim quod religiōnibus impediri sēsē diceret. Posteaquam id obstinātē sībī negārī vidit, omni spē impetrandi adēmpāt, principēs Galliae sollicitāre, sēvocāre singulōs hortāriquē coepit utī in continentī remanērunt; metū territāre 6: 'Nōn 20 sine causā fieri ut Gallia omnī nōbilitāte spoliārētur; id esse cōnsilium Caesaris ut, quōs in cōnspectū Galliae interficere

---

1 obsidum locō: 'in the condition of hostages.'  
2 Dumnorīx: the Hæduan whose treachery was recounted in Book I, chaps. 16–20, and who had been kept under scrutiny for four years.  
3 quod dictum: 'this declaration.'  
4 dēprecandī: 'of begging off.'  
5 insuētus nāvigandi: 'unused to sailing.'  
6 territāre: historical infinitive; the idea of 'saying' suggested by this accounts for the following indirect discourse.
verēretur, hōs omnēs in Britanniam trāductōs necāret"; 1 fidem reliquis interpōnere, iūs iūrandum poscere ut, quod esse ex ūsū Galliae intellēxissent, commūni cōnsiliō administrārent. Haec ā complūribus ad Caesarem dēferēbantur.

_Caesar is on his guard against him_

5 7. Quā rē cognitā Caesar, quod tantum civitātī Haeduæ dignitātīs tribuēbat, coērcendum atque dēterrendum, quibus-cumque rēbus posset, Dumnorīgem statuēbat; quod longius 2 eius āmentiam prōgredi vidēbat, prōspiciendum 3 nē quid 4 sibi ac rei pūblicae nocēre posset. Itaque diēs circiter xxv in eō locō commorātus, quod Čōrus ventus nāvigātiōnem impediē-bat, qui magnam partem omnīs temporīs in his locīs flāre consuēvit, 5 dabat operam ut in officīō Dumnorīgem continēret; nihilō tamen sætius omnia eius cōnsilia cognōsceret. Tandem idōneam nactus tempestātem mīlitēs equītēisque cōnscendere 15 nāvēs iuβet.

_Dumnorix flees, but is captured and killed_

6 At omnium impeditīs animīs Dumnorīx cum equītibus Haeduōrum ā castrīs inscīente Caesare domum discēdere coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar, intermissā profectiōne atque omnibus rēbus postpositīs, magnam partem equitātūs ad eum insequendum mittit retrahīisque imperat; 7 si vim faciēt neque pāreat, interfici iuβet; 8 nihil hunc sē absente prō sānō factūrum arbitrātus 9 qui praesentis imperium

1 fidem... ut: 'he gave a pledge to the rest and demanded their oaths that' etc.; interpōnere and poscere are historical infinitives. 2 longius: 'too far.' 3 prōspiciendum (esse): 'that precautions must be taken'; depends upon statuēbat. 4 quid: acc. of kindred meaning with nocēre. 5 dabat... continēret: 'he took pains to keep Dumnorix loyal.' 6 At... animīs: 'but while the attention of all was otherwise engaged.' 7 si... faciēt... pāreat: implied indirect discourse (G. § 208. 6). 8 nihil... prō sānō: 'nothing prudent.' 9 qui... neglēxisset: descriptive clause of cause, also indir. disc.
SECOND INVASION OF BRITAIN

negléxisset. Ille autem revocatus resistere ac sé manū défendere suōrumque fidem implōrāre coepit, saepe clāmitāns liberum sē liberaequē esse civitātis.\footnote{1} Illī, ut erat imperātum, circumsistunt hominem atque interficiunt; at equītēs Haedui ad Caesarem omnēs revertuntur.

_Cesar sails for Britain with more than eight hundred ships_

8. His rêbus gestīs, Labiēnō in continente cum tribus legiōnibus et equitum milibus duōbus relictō, ut portūs tuērētur et rei frūmentāriae prōvidēret, quaeque in Galliā gerentur cognōsceret, cōnsiliumque prō tempore et prō rē caperet, ipse cum v legiōnibus et \footnote{2} pari numerō equitum \footnote{10} quem in continentī reliquerat ad sōlis occāsum nāvēs solvit; et lēni Africō prōvectus,\footnote{3} mediā circiter nocte ventō intermissō, cursum nōn tenuit; et longīus dēlātus aestū ortā lūce sub sinistrā Britanniam relictam cōnspexit. Tum rūrsus aestūs commūtātiōnem secūtus rēmis contendit ut eam par- \footnote{15} tem insulae caperet quā optimum esse egressum superiōre aestāte cognōverat. Quā in rē admodum fuit militum virtūs laudanda, qui \footnote{4} vectōriis gravibusque nāvigiis, nōn intermissō rēmigandi labōre, longārum nāvium cursum \footnote{5} adaequārunt.

_He lands about noon without resistance_

Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus nāvibus merīdiānō \footnote{20} ferē tempore; neque in eō locō hostis est visus, sed, ut posteā Caesar ex captīvis cognōvit, cum magnae manūs

\footnote{1} civitātis: predicate genitive. \footnote{2} pari numerō . . . quem: 'the same number . . . as' etc.; i.e. 2000, see l. 7. \footnote{3} prōvectus: concessive idea (G.§ 220.d); for although the southwest breeze was favorable, yet the tide prevented them from holding a true course. \footnote{4} vectōriis gravibusque nāvigiis: 'with transport ships, heavy with lading besides.' \footnote{5} cursum: the speed of a war galley under oars and sails was nearly equal to that of a modern steamship.
eō convēnissent, multitūdine nāvium perterritae, quae cum annōtinis privātisque, quās sui quisque commodi causā fēcerat, amplius dccc ūnō erant visae tempore, à litore discesserant ac sē in superiōra loca abdiderant.

*Leaving a guard at the sea, he advances against the foe*

5 9. Caesar expositō exercitū et locō castris idōneō captō, ubi ex captivis cognōvit quō in locō hostium cōpiāe consē-dissent, cohortibus x ad mare relictis et equitibus ccc quī praesidiō nāvibus essent, dē tertiā vigiliā ad hostēs contendit, eō minus veritus nāvibus, quod in litore mollī atque aperto delīgātās ad ancorās relinquebat. Ei praesidiō nāvibusque Q. Ātrium praefecit. Ipse noctū prōgressus mīlia passuum circiter xii hostium cōpiās conspicātus est.

*The Britons are driven out of their stronghold*

Illī equitātū atque essedis ad flūmen prōgressī ex locō superiōre nostrōs prohibēre et proelium committere coept-15 runt. Repulsi ab equitātū sē in silvās abdidērunt, locum nactī ēgregiē et nātūrā et opere mūnītum, quem domestici belli (ut vidēbatur) causā iam ante praeeparāverant; nam crēbris arboribus succisis omnēs introitūs erant praeclūsī. Ipsi ex silvis rāri prōpugnābant nostrōsque intrā mūnī tōnēs ingredi prohibēbant. At militēs legiōnis septimae, testūdine factā et aggere ad mūnitiōnēs adiectō, locum cēpērunt eōsque ex silvis expulērunt, paucis volneribus acceptis. Sed eōs fugientēs longius Caesar prōsequī vetuit,

1 quae . . . amplius dccc: 'more than 800 of which'; quae is subject of erant visae. 2 quās: the antecedent is privōtīs (nāvibus). 3 sui . . . causā: 'for his own accommodation'; these were for rich members of Ĉæsar's staff. 4 nāvibus: dative; 'for the ships.' 5 rāri: 'here and there,' or 'in small parties.' 6 testūdine . . . aggere: see Introd. III. 13.
et quod loci nātūram ignōrābat, et quod, magnā parte diēi cōnsūmpτā, mūnītiōni castrōrum tempus relinqui volēbat.

The fleet is cast upon the beach by a great storm

10. Postridiē eius diēi māne trīpartītō militēs equitēsque in expeditiōnem mīsit, ut eōs qui fūgerant perse- querentur. His aliquan- tum itineris prōgressis, cum iam extrēmi¹ essent in prōspectū, equitēs à Q. Ātriō ad Caesarem vēnērunt qui nūntiārent, superiōre nocte maximā coörtā tempestāte, prope omnēs nāvēs adflīctās atque in litus ēiectās esse; quod neque anco- rae fūnēsque sustinērent neque nautae gubernātorēsque vim tempestātis patī possent. Itaque ex eō concursū² nāvium magnum esse incommodum acceptum.

Caesar hastily repairs his ships and sends for more

11. His rēbus cognītis Caesar legiōnēs equitātumque revocāri atque in itinere resistere³ iubet, ipse ad nāvēs revertitur; eadem ferē quae ex nūntiis cognōverat cōram perspicit, sic ut āmissīs circiter XL nāvibus reliquae tamen refici posse magnō negotiō vidērentur. Itaque ex legiōni- ²⁵ bus fabrōs déligit et ex continentī aliōs arcessi iubet;

¹ extrēmi: ‘the hindmost’ in the flight. ² concursū: ‘the dashing together’ of the ships. ³ resistere: ‘to halt.’
Labienō scribit ut quam plūrimās possit eīs legiōnibus quae sunt apud eum nāvēs instiuat. Īpse, etsī rēs erat multae operae ac labōris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit omnēs nāvēs subdūci et cum castris ūnā mūnitiōne coniungi. In his rēbus circiter diēs x cōnsūmit nē nocturnīs quidem temporibus ad labōrem militum intermissis.

_He resumes the struggle with the Britons_

Subductīs nāvibus castrisque ēgregiē mūnitis, ēāsdem cōpiās quās ante praesidiō nāvibus relinquit; ipse eōdem

---

1 Labienō: dative of indirect object. 2 legiōnibus: ablative, the legions being considered as a _means_. 3 subdūci: 'to be hauled up' on the beach, as was usual when ships were to be repaired or were not in use. 4 ēāsdem ... quās: 'the same as.' 5 eōdem: the place described on p. 134, ll. 15–17.
SECOND INVASION OF BRITAIN

unde redierat proficiscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, maiōrēs iam undique in eum locum cópiae Britannōrum convēnerant, summā imperi bellique administrandi commūni cōnsiliō permīssā Cassivellaunō; cuius finēs ā maritimis civitātibus flūmen dividit, quod appellātūr Tamesis, ā mari circiter milia 5 passuum lxxx. Huic superiōre tempore cum reliquis civitātibus continentia1 bella intercesserant; sed nostrō adventū permōti Britanni hunc tōtī bellō imperiōque praefēcerant.

The inhabitants of Britain and its resources

12. Britanniae pars interior ab eis incolitur quōs2 nātōs in insulā ipsā memoria prōditum dicunt; maritima pars ab 10 eis qui praedae ac bellī inferendi causā ex Belgīō trànsiērunt (quī omnēs ferē 3eisdem nōminibus civitātum appellantur quibus ortī ex civitātibus eō pervēnērunt) et bellō inlātō ibi remānsērunt atque agrōs colere coepērunt. Hominum est infinita multitudō crēberrimaque aedificia ferē Gallicīs cōn- 15 similia, pecoris magnus numerus. Útuntur aut 4nummō aureō aut tāleis6 ferreis ad certum pondus exāminātis 6 prō nummō.

Nāscitur ibi 7 plumbum album in mediterrāneis regionibus, in maritimis ferrum, sed eis exigua est cópia; aere útuntur 20 importātō. 8 Māteria cuiusque generis, ut in Gallīa, est praeter fāgum atque abietem. 9 Leporem et gallinam et

1 continentia: adjective from participle continēns, 'incessant.' 2 quōs: this with its predicate nātōs (esse) is the subject of prōditum (esse); the whole expression is the object of dīcunt. Translate freely, 'who according to tradition are said to have been born on the island itself.' 3 eisdem nōminibus: for example, Atrebātēs and Belgae. 4 nummō aureō: 'money of gold.' 5 tāleis: 'bars.' 6 exāminātis: 'weighed.' 7 plumbum album: 'tin.' Cāesar is in error in several particulars: the tin mines were on the coast and the iron mines inland; and the beech (fāgum) and fir (abietem) are both native to Britain. 8 Māteria cuiusque generis: 'timber of every kind.' 9 Leporem . . . ānserem: 'the hare and hen and goose.'
ānserem gustāre fās nōn putant; haec tamen alunt animi voluptātisque causā. Loca sunt temperātiōra quam in Galliā, remissīribus frigoribus.

The shape and size of the island

13. Īnsula nātūrā triquetra,1 cuius ūnum latus est contrā Galliam. Huius lateris alter angulus, qui est ad Cantium, quō ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs adpelluntur, ad orientem sōlem, inferior ad meridiem2 spectat. Hoc latus pertinet circiter milia passuum quingenta.

Alterum vergit 3 ad Hispāniam atque occidentem sōlem; quā ex parte est Hibernia, īnsula dimidiō minor (ut existimātur) quam Britannia, sed 4 pari spatiō trānsmissūs atque5 ex Galliā est in Britanniam. 6 In hoc mediō cursū est īnsula quae appellātur Mona7; complūrēs praetereā minōrēs obiectae īnsulae existimantur, dē quibus īnsulis nōn nūlli 15 scripsērunt diēs continuōs xxx 8 sub brūmam esse noctem. Nōs nihil dē eō percontātiōnibus 9 reperiēbāmus, nisi certis 10 ex aquā mēnsūris breviōrēs esse quam in continenti noctēs vidēbāmus. Huius est longūdō lateris, ut fert illōrum opiniō, septingentōrum milium. Tertium est contrā septen- 20 triōnēs, cui parti nūlla est obiecta terra; sed eius angulus

1 triquetra: 'triangular.' 2 meridiem: 'south.' 3 ad Hispāniam etc.: Cæsar shows ignorance of the geography of Britain, particularly in placing Spain too far west. He had neither time nor means to make an accurate survey, and evidently depended on his impressions and on hearsay. The historian Tacitus, a hundred and fifty years later, makes the same mistake regarding the position of Spain. 4 pari spatiō trānsmissūs: 'with the same distance across.' 5 atque: 'as'; i.e. the distance from Britain to Ireland is the same as that from Gaul to Britain. 6 In . . . cursū: 'in the middle of this stretch.' 7 Mona: probably the island of Anglesey rather than the Isle of Man. 8 sub brūmam: 'at the time of the winter solstice.' 9 percontātiōnibus: 'by inquiries.' 10 ex aquā: the water clock measured time on the principle of the sandglass, drops of water taking the place of grains of sand.
alter maximē ad Germāniam spectat. Hoc milium passuum octingentōrum in longitudinem esse existimātur. Ita omnis insula est in circuitū viciēs centum milium passuum.

The customs of the Britons

14. Ex his omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimi qui Cantium incolunt (quae regiō est maritima omnis), neque multum ā Gallicā differunt consuētūdine. Interiōrēs plērique frūmenta nōn serunt, sed lacte et carne vivunt pellibusque sunt vestīti. Omnēs vērō sē Britannī vitrō inficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colōrem, atque hōc horribiliōrēs sunt in pugnā adspectū; capillōque sunt prōmissō atque omni parte corporis rāsā praeter caput et labrum superius. Uxōrēs habent déni duodēnique inter sē commūnēs, et maximē frātrēs cum frātribus parentēsque cum liberis; sed qui sunt ex eis nātī eōrum habentur liberi quō primum virgō quaeque dēducta est.

The Britons attack the Romans, but are repulsed

15. Equītēs hostium essēdāriīque ācriter proelīō cum equitātū nostrō in itinere cōnflīxērunt, ita tamen ut nostri omnibus partibus superiōrēs fuerint atque eōs in silvās collēsque compulerint; sed complūribus interfectis cupidius insecūti nōn nōllōs ex suis āmisērunt. At illī intermissō spatiō, imprūdentibus nostris atque occupātis in mūnitiōne castrōrum, subitō sē ex silvis eīēcērunt, impetūque in eōs

1 serunt: 'sow.' 2 carne: 'meat.' 3 vitrō: 'woad.' 4 inficiunt: 'stain.' 5 caeruleum: 'dark blue.' 6 capillōque . . . superius: 'they let their hair grow long and shave every part of the body except the head and the upper lip.' The ablatives are descriptive. 7 quō: adverb, equal to ad quōs. Translate the passage from sed qui, 'but the children of these wives are regarded as belonging to the man to whom each maiden was first married.' 8 essēdāriī: 'chariot fighters'; cf. Book IV, chap. 33.
factō qui erant in statione prō castris conlocāti, ācriter pug- 
nāvērunt; duābusque missis subsidiō cohortibus ā Caesare, 
1 atque his primis legionum duārum, cum eae perexiguō 2 
intermissō loci spatiō inter sē cōnstitissent, novō genere 

5 pugnae perterritis nostris, 3 per mediōs audācissimē perrū- 
pērunt 4 sēque inde incolumēs recēpērunt. Eō diē Q. La- 
berius Dūrus, tribūnus militum, interficitur. Illī plūribus 
submissis cohortibus repelluntur.

1 atque his primis: 'and these, too, the first.' The strongest soldiers 
were in the first cohort. 2 perexiguō: 'very narrow.' 3 per mediōs: 
i.e. between the two cohorts. 4 perrūpērunt: 'broke through.'
The Romans find difficulty in meeting the Britons' mode of fighting

16. Tōtō hoc in genere pugnae, cum sub oculis omnium ac prō castris dimicārētur,1 intellectum est nostrōs propter gravitātem armōrum, quod neque insequi cēdentēs possent neque ab signīs discēdere audērent, minus aptōs esse ad huius generis hostem; equītēs autem magnō cum periculō 5 proeliō dimicāre, proptereā 2 quod illī etiam cōnsultō plērumque cēderent, et cum paulum ab legiōnibus nostrōs remōvissent, ex essēdis dēsilīrent 8 et pedibus disparī proeliō contendarīent. Accēdēbat hūc ut numquam cōnfertī 4 sed rāri 5 magnīisque intervāllis proeliārentur, statīōnēsque 6 dis- 10 positās habērent, atque aliōs aliī deinceps exciperent, integrique et recentēs dēfatigātīs succēderent.

The Britons again attack, but are badly defeated

17. Posterō diē procul ā castris hostēs in collibus cōn- stītērunτ, rārique sē ostendere et lēnius quam prīdiē nostrōs equitēs proeliō lacesserē coepērunτ. Sed meridiē, cum 15 Caesar pābulandi causā trēs legiōnēs atque omnem equitātum cum C. Trebōniō lēgātō misisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad pābulātōrēs advolāvērunτ, sic uti ab signīs legiōnibusque nōn absisterent. 7

Nostri ācriter in eōs impetū factō reppulērunτ, neque 20 finem sequendī fēcērunτ quoad subsidiō 8 cōnsī equitēs, cum post sē legiōnēs vidērent, praecipitēs hostēs ēgērunτ; magnōque eōrum numerō interfecτō neque 9 suī conligendi

1 dimicārētur: 'the contest was fought.' 2 quod ... cēderent: 'because generally they even retreated on purpose.' 3 dēsilīrent: 'leaped down.' 4 cōnfertī: 'in close formation.' 5 rāri: 'in small groups.' 6 statīōnēs: 'supports, or reserves.' 7 absisterent: 'keep aloof from'; the subject refers to the Britons. 8 subsidiō: i.e. the support of the legions. 9 suī conligendi: see G. § 224. c.
neque cōnsistendī aut ex essedit dēsiliendī facultātem dedērunt. Ex hāc fugā prōtinus quae undique convēnerant auxilia discessērunt; neque post id tempus umquam summīs nōbiscum cōpiis hostēs contendērunt.

_Cæsar crosses the Thames, against strong opposition, and advances into the country of Cassivellaunus_

5 18. Caesar, cognitō cōnsiliō eōrum, ad flūmen Tamesim in finēs Cassivellaunī exercitum dūxit; quod flūmen 1ūnō omninō locō pedibus, atque hōc aegrē, trānsiri potest. Eō cum vēnisset, animadvertit ad alteram flūminis ripam mag-nās esse cōpiās hostium instrūctās. 2 Ripā autem erat acūtis 10 sudibus praefixīisque mūnīta, eiusdemque generis sub aquā dēfixae sudēs flūmine tegēbantur. His rēbus cognitis ā captīvis perfugīisque Cæsar praemissō equitātū cōnfestim legiōnēs subsequi iussit. Sed eā celeritātē atque eō imperī militēs iērunt, 3 cum capite sōlō ex aquā extārent, ut hostēs 15 impetum legiōnum atque equitum sustinēre nōn possent ripāsque dimitterent ac sē fugae mandārent.

_Cassivellaunus harasses Cæsar’s progress by attacking his foraging parties_

19. Cassivellaunus, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, omni dēpo-sītā spē contentiōnis, dimissīs ampliōribus cōpiis, milibus circiter IIII essedāriōrum relictis itinera nostra servābat; 20 paulumque ex viā excēdēbat locisque impeditīs 4 ac silvestri-bus sēsē occultābat atque eis regiōnibus quibus nōs iter factūrōs cognōverat pecora atque hominēs ex agrīs in silvās

1 ūnō... aegrē: 'in only one place, and in that with great difficulty.'
2 Ripa... mūnīta: 'the bank too was defended by sharp stakes fastened in its edge.'
3 cum... extārent: 'though only their heads were above water.'
4 impeditīs: 'difficult of passage.'
SECOND INVASION OF BRITAIN

compellēbat; et 1 cum equitātus noster liberius praedandi vāstandique causā sē in agrōs eiēcerat, omnibus viis sēmitisque 2 essedāriōs ex silvis emittēbat; et magnō cum periculō 3 nostrōrum equitum cum his cōnfigēbat atque hoc metū lātius vagāri prohibēbat. Relinquēbātur 4 ut neque longius ab agmine legionum discēdi 5 Caesar paterētur, et tantum agris vāstandis incendiisque faciendis hostibus 6 nocērētur quantum in labōre atque itinere legionāriī militēs efficere poterant.

The Trinovantes surrender and send grain and hostages

20. Interim Trinovantēs, prope fīrmissima eārum regiōnum civitās, ex quā Mandubracius adulēscēns Caesaris fidem secūtus ad eum in continentem vēnerat,—cuius pater in eā civitātē rēgnum obtinuerat interfectusque erat ā Cassivellaunō, ipse fugā mortem vitāverat,—lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt pollicenturque sēsē ei dēditūrōs atque imperāta facētur tūrōs: petunt ut Mandubracium ab iniūriā Cassivellaunī dēfendat, atque in civitātem mittat qui 7 praesit imperiumque obtineat. His Caesar imperat obsidēs XL frūmentumque exercitu, Mandubraciumque ad ēōs mittit. Illi imperāta celeriter fēcérunt, obsidēs ad numerum frūmentumque misērunt.

Other tribes submit. Caesar takes the stronghold of Cassivellaunus

21. Trinovantibus dēfēnsis atque ab omnī militum iniūriā prohibitis, Cēnimagnī, Segontiācī, Ancalītēs, Bibroci,
Cassī lēgātiōnibus missis sēsē Caesarī dēdunt. Ab his cognōscit nōn longē ex eō locō oppidum Cassivellauni abesse silvis palūdibusque mūnitum, quō satis magnus hominum pecorisque numeros convēnerit.

5 Oppidum autem Britannī vocant cum silvās impeditās vāllō atque fossā mūniērunt, quō incursiōnis hostium vitandae causā convenire cōnsuērunt. Eō proficiscitur cum legiōnibus. Locum reperit ēgregiē nāūrā atque opere mūnitum; tamen hunc duābus ex partibus oppugnāre contendit. Hostēs paulisper morāti militum nostrōrum impetum nōn tulērunt sēsēque aliā ex parte oppidi ēīcērunt. Magnus ibi numeros pecoris repertus, multique in fugā sunt comprehēnsi atque interfecit.

The Britons try to take the naval camp

22. Dum haec in his locis geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, quibus regiōnibus III rēgēs praerant, Cingetorix, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segonax, nūntiōs mittit atque his imperat utī coāctis omnibus cōpiis castra nāvālia dē imprōvisō adoriantur atque oppugnet. Hī cum ad castra vēnissent, nostri ēruptiōne factā multīs eōrum interfectis, captō etiam nōbili duce Lugotorīge, suōs incolūmēs redūxērunt.

Cassivellaunus surrenders

Cassivellaunus hoc proeliō nūntiātō, tot dētrimentis acceptīs, vāstātīs finibus, maximē etiam permōtus dēfectione civitātum, lēgātōs per Atrebātem Commium dē dēditōne ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar cum cōnstituīisset hiēmāre in continentī propter repentinōs Galliae mōtūs, neque multum

1 Oppidum... cum: 'the Britons call it a town when' etc. 2 multī: i.e. people, not cattle. 3 castra nāvālia: i.e. the fortified camp on the beach, surrounding the beached ships. 4 multum aēstātis: Caesar had now been in Britain about two months.
aestātis superesset, atque id facile extrahī posse intellegeret, obsidēs imperat, et quid in annōs singulōs vectigālis populō Rōmānō Britannia penderet cōnstituit. Interdicit atque imperat Cassivellaunō nē Mandubracio neu Trinovantibus noceat.

_Caesar conveys his army back to Gaul in two trips_

23. Obsidibus acceptis exercitum redūcit ad mare, nāvēs invenit refectās. Hīs dēductīs, quod et captivōrum magnum numerum habēbat et non nūllae tempestāte dēperierant nāvēs, duōbus commeātibus exercitum repōrtāre instituit. Ac sic accidit utī ex tantō nāvium numerō, tot nāvigationēnibus, neque hōc neque superiōre annō ūlla omnīnō nāvis quae militēs portāret dēsiderārētur; at ex eīs quae inānēs ex continentī ad eum remitterentur, priōris commeātūs expositis militibus, et quās postea Labiēnus faciendās cūrāverat numerō 'LX-', perpaucae locum caperent; reliquae fērē omnēs reicerentur. Quās cum aliquamdiū Caesar frūstrā exspectāsset, nē annī tempore ā nāvigationōne exclūderētur, quod aequinoctium suberat, necessāriō angustius militēs conlocāvit, ac summā tranquillitāte cōnsecūtā, secundā initiā cum solvisset vigiliā, primā lūce terram attigit omnēsque incolūmēs nāvēs perduīxit.

1 id ... intellegeret: 'he perceived that even that might be easily wasted.'
2 dēductīs: 'launched'; lit. 'drawn down.'
3 duōbus commeātibus: 'in two trips.'
4 quās: refers back to ex eīs.
5 faciendās cūrāverat: 'had had made'; G. § 224, d.
6 aequinoctium suberat: this shows that Caesar left Britain about the middle of September.
7 angustius ... conlocāvit: 'crowded his soldiers somewhat closely.'—This marks the end of Caesar's attempts on Britain. The Romans did not visit the island again for nearly one hundred years.
Summary of Chapters 24 and 25

Upon his return to Gaul Cæsar began his arrangements for quartering his troops for the winter. As the crops had been very poor, it seemed best to distribute his legions. Accordingly he divided his forces and located the several divisions among the surrounding tribes within a radius of about a hundred miles (see map facing page 103). Among the officers placed in charge was Quintus Cicero, the orator’s brother, who had joined the army that very year. Cæsar himself, contrary to his usual custom, decided to spend the winter in Gaul.

But the Gals were not disposed to be quiet. Tasgetius, a chief of the Carnutes, who had been particularly friendly to the Romans, and had been placed in authority by Cæsar three years before, was put to death by the Carnutes. Cæsar straightway ordered Plancus, who was wintering among the Bellovaci, to camp in their country for a time with one legion, and to seize and send to him those who were responsible for the death of Tasgetius.

Rebellion in Northern Gaul

Ambiorix and Catuvolcus attack the camp of Sabinus

26. Diēbus circiter xv quibus in hiberna ventum est, initium repentini 1 tumultūs ac dēfectiōnis ortum est ab Ambiorīge et Catuvolcō; qui, 2 cum ad finēs rēgni sui 3 Sabinō Cottaque praestō fuissent frūmentumque in hiberna comportāvissent, Indūtiomāri Trēverī 4 nūntiis impulsī suōs concitāvērunt subitōque oppressis lignātōribus magnā manū ad castra oppugnānda vēnērunt.

Cum celeriter nostri arma cēpissent vāllumque adscendissent, atque ūnā ex parte Hispānis equītibus ēmissīs equestri proeliō superiōrēs fuissent, dēspērātā rē hostēs suōs ab oppugnātiōne redūxērunt. Tum suō móre conclāmāvērunt

1 tumultūs ac dēfectiōnis: ‘uprising and revolt.’ 2 cum ... praestō fuissent: concessive, ‘though they had met.’ 3 Sabinō Cottaque: dative; praestō esse = adesse. 4 Trēverī: ‘one of the Treveri’
uti aliqui\(^1\) ex nostris ad conloquium prōdiret: habère sēsē quae dē rē commūni dīcere vellent, quibus rēbus contrōversiās minui posse spērārent.

Ambiorix and envoys from Sabinus hold a conference

27. Mittitur ad eōs conloquendi causā C. Arpīnēius, eques Rōmānus, familiāris Q. Titūrī,\(^2\) et Q. Iūnius ex 5 Hispāniā quidam, qui iam ante missū Caesaris ad Ambiori-gem ventitāre cōnsuērat. 3 Apud quōs Ambiorīx ad hunc modum locūtus est: 'Sēsē prō Caesaris in sē beneficiis plūrimum ei\(^4\) cōnfērī dēbēre, quod eius operā stipendiō liberātus esset quod Aduatucis, fīnitimis suīs, pendere cōn- 10 suēsset, quodque ei\(^5\) et filius et frātris filius ab Caesarē remissī essent quōs Aduatucī obsidum numerō missōs apud sē\(^6\) in servitūte et catēnis tenuissent; neque id quod fēcerit dē oppugnatiōne castrōrum aut iūdiciō aut voluntāte suā fēcisse, sed coāctū civitātīs; 7 suaque esse eius modi imperia 15 ut nōn minus habēret iūris\(^8\) in sē multītūdō quam ipse in multītūdinem.

Ambiorīx says that all Caesar’s winter quarters are to be attacked

'Civitātē porrō hanc fuisse belli causam, quod repentinae Gallōrum coniūratiōni resistere nōn potuerit. Id sē facile ex humilitāte suā probāre posse, quod nōn adeō sit imperi- 20 tus rērum ut suis cōpiis populum Rōmānum superāri posse cōnfidat. Sed esse Galliae commune cōnsilium: omnibus hibernis Caesaris oppugnandis hunc esse dictum diem, nē

\(^{1}\) aliqui: the usual substantive form of the nominative singular is alīquis.  
\(^{2}\) Q. Titūrī: i.e. Sabinus.  
\(^{3}\) Apūd quōs: 'in the presence of these men.'  
\(^{4}\) ei: Caesar.  
\(^{5}\) ei: i.e. Ambiorīx.  
\(^{6}\) sē: i.e. the Aduatuci.  
\(^{7}\) suaque . . . imperia: 'and that his own sovereignty was of such a nature.'  
\(^{8}\) iūris: 'power.'  
\(^{9}\) omnibus . . . oppugnandis: 'for storming all'; dative of the gerundive expressing purpose.
qua legiō alteri legiōni subsidiō venire posset. Nōn facile Gal-
lōs Gallis negāre potuisse, praesertim cum dē recuperandā
commūni libertāte cōnsi-
lum initum vidērētur.

He treacherously urges Sabi-
nus to leave his camp and
join Cicero or Labienus

1 Quibus quoniam prō
pietāte satisfēcerit, 2 ha-
bēre nunc sē ratiōnem
 offici prō beneficiis Caes-
saris: monēre, ōrāre Titū-
rium prō hospitiō ut suae
ac militum salūti cōnsulat.
Magnam manum Germā-
nōrum conductam 8 Rhe-
num trānsisse; hanc
adfore bidūō. 4 Ipsōrum
esse cōnsilium, velintne,
privationē quam fīnitiimi senti-
ant, ēductōs ex hibernis
militēs aut 5 ad Cicerō-
nem aut ad Labiēnum
dēdūcere, quōrum alter
milia passuum circiter L, alter paulō amplius ab eis absit.
Illud sē pollicēri et iūre iūrando cōnfīrmāre tūtum sē ître

1 Quibus ... satisfēcerit: 'since he had performed his duty to them
(i.e. the Gauls) on the score of patriotism.' 2 habēre nunc ... Caesaria:
'he now contemplated a service in return for the favors of Caesar.'
8 conductam: 'hired.' 4 Ipsōrum esse cōnsilium: 'it was for them (the
Romans) to consider whether they wished' (velintne).
6 ad Cicerōnem:
among the Nervii. Labienus was among the Remi.
per suōs finēs datūrum. 1 Quod cum faciat, et civitāti sēsē cōnsulere, 2 quod hibernis levētur, et Caesari prō eius meritis grātiam referre.’ Hāc ōrātiōne habitā discēdit Ambiorix.

Sabinus and Cotta are greatly alarmed

28. Arpinēius et Iūnius quae audierant ad lēgātōs dēferunt. Illi repentinā rē perturbātī, etsi ab hoste ea dicē 5 bantur, tamen nōn neglegenda existimābant; maximēque hāc rē permovēbantur, quod civitātem ignōbilem atque humilem Eburōnum suā sponte populō Rōmānō bellum facere ausam 8 vix erat crēdendum.

They call a council of war. Cotta and several officers oppose abandoning the camp

Itaque ad cōnsilium rem dēferunt magnaque inter eōs 10 existit contrōversia. L. Aurunculēius 4 complūrēsque tribūnī militum et primŏrum ērdinum centuriōnēs nihil temerē agendum, neque ex hibernis iniussū Caesaris discēdendum existimābant; 5quantāsvis cōpiās etiam Germānōrum sustinērī posse mūnitis hibernis docēbant; rem 6 esse tes- 15 timōniō, quod primum hostium impetum multitūs ultrō 7 volneribus inlātis fortissimē sustinuerint; 8 rē frūmentāriā nōn premī; interēa et ex proximis hibernis et ā Caesare conventūra subsidia; postrēmō, quid esse 9 levius aut turpius quam 10 auctōre hoste dē summīs rēbus capere cōnsilium?

1 Quod cum faciat: equivalent to ‘in doing this.’ 2 quod . . . levētur: ‘because it would be relieved of the winter quarters,’ i.e. the quartering of the troops during the winter. 3ausam: sc. esse. Its subject is civitātem. 4 L. Aurunculēius: i.e. Cotta. 5quantāsvis . . . Germānōrum etc.: ‘forces however great, even of the Germans.’ 6 rem: explained by the appositional clause quod . . . sustinuerint. 7ultrō: ‘besides.’ 8 rē . . . premī: ‘they were not distressed by (the lack of) grain.’ 9 esse: a rhetorical question in indirect discourse (G. § 207.11.a). 10 auctōre hoste: ‘on the advice of the enemy.’
But Sabinus is strongly in favor of doing so

29. Contrā ea Titūrius 1 Sērō factūrōs' clāmitābat, 'cum maiōrēs manūs hostium adiūnctis Germaniās convēnissent, aut cum aliqvid calamitātis in proximīs hibernis esset acceptum. Breve mōnsulendi esse occasiōnem. Caesarem 8 sé arbitrārī profectum in Italiam; neque aliter Carnutēs interficiendi Tasgeti cōnsilium fuisse captūrōs, neque Eburōnēs, sī ille adesset, tantā contemptiōne nostrī ad castra ventūrōs. 6 Sēsē nōn hostem auctōrem sed rem spectāre: subesse Rhēnum; magnō esse Germaniās dolorī Ariovisti mortem et superiōrēs nostrās victoriās; ārdēre Galliām tot contumēliis acceptis sub populi Rōmāni imperium redāctam, superiōre gloriā rei militāris extinctā.

Postrēmō, quis hoc sibi persuādēret 8 sine certā spē Ambo-origem ad eius modi cōnsilium dēscendisse? 9 Suam sententiam in utramque partem esse tūtam: 10 sī nihil esset dūrius, nūllō cum periculō ad proximam legiōnem perventūrōs; sī Gallia omnis cum Germaniās cōnsentiret, ūnam esse in celeritāte positam salūtem. Cottae 11 quidem atque eōrum quī dissentiērent cōnsilium quem habēre 12 exitum? in quō sī nōn praesēns periculum, at certē longinquā obsidiōne famēs esset timenda.'

1 Sērō factūrōs: 'that they would do this too late.' Titurius is of course Sabinus. 2 proximīs: 'nearest'; this camp was farthest from the main body, and hence, if the nearest camps should be taken, the forces could not easily withdraw in safety. 8 Caesarem: subject of profectum (esse); sē refers to Titurius. He was of course mistaken in his supposition. 4 cōnsilium fuisse captūrōs: 'would have adopted the plan'; the conclusion in indirect discourse of a condition contrary to fact (G. § 213. a). 6 nostrī: 'for us,' genitive plural of ego, used objectively (G. § 75. b). 8 ventūrōs: 'would have come'; supply fuisse. 7 Sēsē . . . spectāre: 'he did not regard the fact that an enemy was the adviser, but the situation itself.' 8 persuādēret: in the direct discourse persuādeat; a deliberative question (G. § 172. d). 9 Suam . . . tūtam: 'his own advice was sound in either case.' 10 sī . . . salūtem: future conditions in indirect discourse. 11 Cottae: i.e. L. Aurunculeius Cotta; cf. p. 149, l. 11. 12 habēre: cf. esse, p. 149, l. 19.
And says that if they remain, Cotta will have to bear the blame of any future disaster

30. Hâc in utramque partem disputâtioâne habitâ, cum à Cottâ primisque ordinibus âcriter resisterâtur, "Vincite," inquit, "si ita voltis," Sabinus, et id clâriore vox, ut magna pars militum exaudiret; "neque is sum," inquit, "qui gravissimè ex vobis mortis periculò terrear. Hi sapient; si gravius quid acciderit, abs tè rationem reposcent; quì, si per tè liceat, perendìo diè cum proximis hibernís conniunctì commùnem cum reliquis bellì càsum sustineant, non reiecì et relégâtì longè à cêteris aut ferrò aut famè intereant."

After a long debate Cotta yields and the army leaves the camp

31. Cónsurgitur ex cónsilió; comprehendunt utramque et òrant nè suà dissensióne et pertinacià rem in summum periculum déduçant: 'Facilem esse rem, seu maneant seu profisciscantur, si modo unum omnès sentiant ac probent; contrà in dissensióne nùllam sè salûtem perspicere.' Rès disputatioâne ad median noctem perdûcitur. Tandem dat Cotta permòtus manús: superat sententia Sabini.

Prônúntiâtur primâ lûce itùròs. Cónsúmitur vigiliâs reliqua pars noctis, cum suà quisque miles circumspeceret, quìd sècum portàre posset, quìd ex instrumentò hibernòrum relinquere cògerêtur. Omnia excògitantur quà rē nec...
sine periculō maneātur et languōre militum et vigiliis periculum augeātur. Primā lūce sic ex castris proficiscuntur ut quibus esset persuāsum nōn ab hoste sed ab homine amicissimō cōnsilium datum, longissimō agmine maximīsque impedimentis.

The Romans are ambushed by the enemy and attacked on all sides

32. At hostēs, posteā quam ex nocturnō fremitū vigiliisque de profectione eōrum sēnsērunt, conlocātīs insidiis bipartītō in silvis opportūnō atque occultō locō ā milibus passuum circiter duōbus Rōmānōrum adventum exspectābant; et cum sē maius pars agminis in magnam convallem dēmississet, ex utrāque parte eius vallis subitō sē ostendērunt novissimōsque premere et primōs prohibēre ascensū atque iniquissimō nostris locō proelium committere coepērunt.

Sabinus fails in the crisis. Cotta shows himself a hero

33. Tum dēmum Titūrius, qui nihil ante prōvidisset, trepidāre et concursāre cohortēisque dispōnere, haec tamen ipsa timidē atque ut eum omnia dēficere vidērentur; quod plērumque eis accidere cōnsuēvit qui in ipsō negotiō cōnsilium capere cōguntur. At Cotta, qui cōgitāsset haec posse in itinere accidere atque ob eam causam profectionis auctōr

1 ut ... persuāsum: 'like men who had been convinced.' 2 At: introduces a new scene and a new subject. 3 ā: adverb, 'off,' 'away.' 4 milibus: ablative of degree of difference. 5 ex utrāque etc.: 'at each end,' attacking the advance which was coming up out of the glen, and the rear from the heights at the other end. 6 Tum dēmum: 'then, and not until then'; notice how Cæsar indicates indirectly his disapproval of the policy and conduct of Sabinus. 7 qui ... prōvidisset: causal clause of description. 8 trepidāre ... dispōnere: 'hurried about and ran to and fro and arranged the troops.' The infinitives are historical (G. § 218). 9 atque ut: 'and in such a way that.'
nōn fuisset, nūllā in rē commūnī salūtī deerat, et in appellandis cohortandisque militibus imperātōris et in pugnā militis officia praestābat.

The Romans form a circle, a move which turns out badly

Cum propter longitūdinem agminis nōn facile per sē omnia obire et quid quōque locō faciendum esset prōvidēre 5 possent, 2 iussērun  prōnūntiāri ut impedimenta relinquerent atque 3 in orbem cōnsisterent. Quod cōnsilium, etsi in eius modi cāsū reprehendendum nōn est, tamen incommodē cecidit; nam et nostrīs militibus spem minuit et hostēs ad pugnam alacrōrēs effecit, quod nōn sine summō timōre et 10 dēspērātiōne id factum vidēbātur. Praetereā accidit, quod fieri necesse erat, ut 4 volgō militēs ab signis discēderent, quaeque quisque eōrum cārissima habēret ab impedimentis petere atque abripere properāret; clāmōre et flētū 5 omnia complērentur.

The Gauls show skill and good judgment

34. At barbarīs cōnsilium nōn dēfuit. Nam ducēs eōrum 15 tōtā aciē prōnūntiāri iussērun nē quis ab locō discēderet; illōrum esse praedam atque illīs reservāri quaecumque Rōmānī reliquissent; proinde omnia in victōriā posita existimārent. 6 Nostri tametsi 7 ab duce et ā fortūnā dēserē-bantur, tamen omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnēbant; et 20 quotiēns quaeque cohors prōcurrerat, ab eā parte magnus

1 praestābat: 'in calling upon and exhorting the soldiers he gave an exhibition of the duties of a commander; in fighting, of those of a soldier (of the ranks).' Caesar's approval of Cotta's conduct is equal to his disgust for that of Sabinus. 2 possent: the subject is 'Cotta and Sabinus.' 3 in orbem: see p. 128, l. 1. 4 ut: followed by three clauses, the first two of which are connected by the -que in quaeque. 5 flētū: from exasperation rather than from cowardice. 6 existimārent: imperative in indirect discourse (G. § 205). 7 ab duce: i. e. Sabinus.
The Romans fight on under great difficulties

5  35. Quō praecoptō ab eis diligentissimē observātō, 1 cum quaepiam co hors ex orbe excesserat atque impetum fēcerat, hostēs vēlocissimē refugiēbant. Interim  2 eam partem nūdāri necesse erat et ab latere apertō tēla recipere. Rūrsus, cum in eum locum unde erant prōgressī revertī coeperant, 3 et ab eis qui cesserant et ab eis qui proximi steterant circumveniēbantur; sin autem locum tenēre vellent, nec virtūti locus relinqueātur neque ab tantā multitūdine coniecta tēla confertī vitāre poterant.

The battle rages for hours. Cotta is badly wounded

Tamen tot incommodis conīlictāti, multis volneribus accepitis resistēbant 4; et magnā parte diēi consūmptā, cum ā primā lūce ad hōram octāvam pugnārētur, nihil quod ipsis esset indignum committēbant. Tum T. Balventiō, 5 qui superiore annō 6 prīmum pīlum dūxerat, virō fortī et magnae auctōriātās, utrumque femur trāgulā trāicitur; Q. Lūcānius, eiusdem ērdinis, fortissimē pugnāns, dum circumventō filiō subvenit, interficitur; L. Cotta lēgātus omnēs cohortēs ordinēsque adhortāns  7 in adversum ōs fundā volnerātur.

1 cum . . . excesserat: 'as often as' etc.; so too in l. 8 2 eam partem etc.: when the soldiers from one side of the orbis made a sally, that side of course had no defenders. 3 et . . . et: 'both . . . and.' 4 resistēbant: 'they kept on fighting.' 5 Balventiō: dative of reference instead of a genitive with femur. 6 prīmum . . . dūxerat: 'had been first centurion.' 7 in adversum ōs: 'right in the mouth.'
Ambiorix, at the request of Sabinus, grants an interview

36. His rebus permótus Q. Titûrius, cum procul Ambiorigem suós cohortantem cônspexisset, interpretem suum Cn. Pompéium ad eum mittit rogátum 1 ut sibi militibusque parcat. Ille appellátus respondet: 'Si velit sècum conloqui, licère; spéráre à multitudine impeétrări posse quod ad militum salútem pertineat; 2 ipsi vèrò nihil nocitum íri, inque eam rem sè suam fidem interpóneres.'

Cotta refuses to go to an armed enemy

Ille 8 cum Cottá saució communicat, si videátur, pugná ut excéndat et cum Ambiorige úná conloquantur: 4 spéráre sè ab eò dè suá ac militum salúte impeétrări posse. Cotta sè 10 ad armátum hostem itúrum negat atque in eò persevérat.

Sabinus is treacherously slain

37. Sabinus quós inpraesentìa tribùnós militum circum sè habèbat et primórum órdinum centuriónès sè sequi iubet; et, cum propius Ambiorigem 6 accessisset, iussus arma abicere, imperátum facit suisque ut idem faciant imperat. Interim, 15 dum dè condiciónibus 6 inter sè agunt longiorque cónsultò ab Ambiorige instituitur sermò, paulátim circumventus interficitur.

A terrible tragedy follows

Tum vèrò suó móre victóriam conclámant atque ululátum tollunt, impetuque in nostrós factò órdinès perturbant. Ibi 20

---

1 rogátum: supine. 2 ipsí... nocitum íri: 'that to him, certainly, no harm will be done'; ipsí refers to Titurius; nihil is accusative of specification. Note the rarely used future passive infinitive, for which we should expect fore ut noceátur. 3 Ille: Titurius. 4 spéráre sè etc.: 'that he hopes to be able to prevail upon him so far as pertains to their own safety and that of the soldiers.' 5 Ambiorigem: governed by propius used as a preposition; cf. p. 50, l. 2; p. 56, l. 11. 6 condiciónibus: i.e. of surrender.
L. Cotta pugnāns interficitur cum maximā parte militum. Reliqui sē in castra recipiunt unde erant ēgressi. Ex quibus L. Petrosidius aquilifer, 1cum magnā multitūdine hostium premerētur, 2aquilam intrā vāllum prōicit; ipse prō castris fortissimē pugnāns occiditur. Illi aegrē ad noctem oppugnātiōnem sustinent; nocte ad ūnum omnēs dēspērātā salūte sē ipsi interficiunt. Pauci ex proeliō ēlāpsi incertis itineribus per silvās ad T. Labiēnum lēgātum in hiberna perveniunt atque eum dē rebus gestis certiōrem faciunt.

SUMMARY OF CHAPTERS 38–58

Ambiorix, elated by his victory, lost no time in stirring up the other nations to make the most of the opportunity now presented of throwing off the Roman yoke. The Aduatuci and Nervii were easily persuaded to join in the undertaking. It will be remembered that Quintus Cicero, with one legion, was wintering among the latter people. The Nervii, summoning the aid of the surrounding states, assailed his camp, taking him completely by surprise. Cicero displayed the utmost energy and courage. By night the ramparts were strengthened, towers were built, and engines of war prepared; by day the Romans repulsed the repeated assaults of the enemy. Certain chiefs of the Nervii, professing great friendship for Cicero, tried to persuade him to leave his camp, promising him a safe conduct out of the country. But Cicero, unlike Sabinus, was not for a moment beguiled by their faithless words, and replied sternly that Romans were not in the habit of accepting favors from their enemies. Then followed a still more furious and desperate assault. But all their efforts were in vain, and they finally invested the camp, believing that starvation would succeed where other means had failed.

1 cum . . . premerētur: causal. 2 aquilam . . . prōicit: Cæsar takes pains to record such acts of heroism on the part of his men.—Cæsar's grief and chagrin over this annihilation of a legion and more of his veterans must have been great. The historian Suetonius says that after he heard of the disaster he neither cut his hair nor shaved his beard until he had his revenge. From this time on he followed up the Eburones pitilessly until they were exterminated.
After many days, when Cicero’s forces were reduced almost to the last extremity, a message finally reached Caesar through a slave. Caesar immediately set out with two legions for Cicero’s relief. When the Nervii learned of Caesar’s approach, they withdrew from the siege and tried to lure him to combat in an unfavorable place. But Caesar, craftily giving the enemy the impression that he was afraid, led them to a battle ground of his own choosing. A desperate fight followed, in which the Nervii were beaten with great loss. On reaching the camp of Cicero, Caesar found such evidence of their desperate resistance (not one man in ten being without wounds) that he warmly praised the legion and its commander.

In the meantime reports were spread that the Romans were in hard straits. The disaster to Sabinus in particular encouraged the Gauls to hope for freedom, and all the states, with the exception of the Haedui and the Remi, gave evidence of being on the verge of a revolt. Indutiomarus of the Treveri was particularly active. Supported by a large rebellious element, he prepared to attack the camp of Labienus and to devastate the fields of the Remi. But being caught off his guard by Labienus, he was killed. After the loss of their leader the enemy were quickly overwhelmed.
BOOK VI

CÆSAR’S SIXTH CAMPAIGN, 53 B.C.

The campaign of 54 B.C. had been a series of disappointments and reverses. The expedition to Britain had been only moderately successful and led to no permanent results. On his return Cæsar had found Gaul in a condition of revolt. In spite of some successes the advantage had been, on the whole, with the Gauls, and they had gained fresh hope in their struggle for independence. The strength of their resistance was in the north and east, where they received support from across the Rhine—a danger which it was especially the business of Cæsar to check. His plans therefore included not only an invasion of the territory of the northern states, but also a second expedition into Germany.

SUMMARY OF CHAPTERS 1–8

On account of the critical situation in Gaul, Cæsar sent recruiting officers to Italy to raise fresh levies, and also requested Pompey, his fellow triumvir, to send him the forces which had been enlisted during his consulship in Cisalpine Gaul. He particularly desired these reënforcements in order to impress the Gauls with the strength and resources of Rome. In response to his request three more legions were added to his forces in Gaul.

His first move was a swift inroad into the territory of the Nervii, whose fields he laid waste. Then he set out against the Senones and Carnutes, and received the submission of both states without a battle. He next made a swift march without baggage into the country of the Menapii, the most northerly of the Gallic peoples, and the ones who alone had failed to send ambassadors to him. They withdrew into their swamps and forests, but Cæsar followed them, ravaging their country, until messengers were sent to make peace with him.

While Cæsar was thus engaged, the Treveri made preparation to attack Labienus, who was wintering in their territories. Timely reënforcements permitted Labienus to assume the offensive himself. He attacked the Treveri, while they were waiting for promised help from the Germans, and after destroying their forces took possession of their country.
CAESAR postquam ex Menapiis in Trèverös vēnit, duābus dē causis Rhēnum trānsire cōnstituit: quārum ūna erat quod Germāni auxilia contra sē Trēveris miserant; altera, nē ad eós Ambiorix 1 receptum habēret. His cōnstitūtīs rēbus paulō suprā eum locum quō ante exercitum trādūxerat facere pontem iōnituit. 2 Nōtā atque institūtā ratiōne, magnō militum studiō, paucīs diēbus opus efficitur.

He crosses, and spares the Ubii

Firmō in Trēveris ad pontem praesidiō relictō, nē quis ab his subītō mōtus orerētur, reliquās cōpiās equitātumque

1 Ambiorix: the treacherous chief of the Eburones, whom Cæsar had vowed to destroy. 2 Nōtā atque institūtā ratiōne: 'on the plan already tried and approved'; cf. Book IV, chap. 17.
10. Interim paucis post diebus fit ab Ubiis certior Suëbös omnès in unum locum cõpiás cógere, atque eis nátiônibus quae sub eōrüm sint imperiō déñuntiäre ut auxilia peditátüs equitátüsque mittant. Hís cognítís rébus rem frúmentáriam próvidet, castris ídóneum locum déligit, Ubiis imperá ut pecora déducant suaque omnia ex agrís in oppida cónsérant, — spërâns barbarös atque imperítös homínês, inopíá cíbâriórüm adductös, ad iniquam pugnandi condiçiónom posse déducí; mandat ut crébrös exploratórës in Suëbös mittant quaeque apud eós gerantar cognósçant.

Scouts report that the Suebi have retreated to the Bacenis forest

41 Suëbös omnès, posteáquam certiorës nûntii dē exercitû Rômânórüm vénerint, cum omnibus suis sociórümque cópiís quâs cogissent, penitus ad extrémös finës sê recèpisse; silvam esse ibi infinitâ magnitúdine, quae appellètur Bâ-

25 cenis; hanc longë intròrsus pertinèrë, et prô nàtivô mûrò
SECOND INVASION OF GERMANY

obiectam Chêruscôs ab Suêbôrum Suêbôsque ab Chêruscôrum iniûriis incursiônisibusque prohibère; ad eius silvae iniûtium Suêbôs adventum Rômânôrum exspectâre cônstituissen.

A digression on the Gauls and Germans is announced

11. Quoniam 1 ad hunc locum perventum est, non aliênum esse vidêtur dê Galliae Germâniaeque môribus et quô 2 5 differant hae nätõnës inter sêsê prôpônere.

The political organization of the Gauls

In Galliâ non sôlum in omnibus civitâtibus atque in omnibus pâgis partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulis domibus factiônës sunt; eàrumque factiônëm principês sunt qui summam auctôritàtem eorum iûdiciô habère existimantur, quorum ad arbitrium iûdiciumque summa omnium régum cônsiliôrumque redeat. 3 Idque eius reî causâ antiquitús institûtum 4 vidêtur, 5 nê quis ex plèbe contrâ potentiôrem auxili egérët; suós enim quisque opprimi et circumveniri non patitur, neque, aliter si faciat, üllam inter suós habeat auctô- 15 ritàtem. 6 Haec eadem ratiô est in summâ tôtiús Galliae; namque omnês civitâtës divisae sunt in duás partës.

The factional struggle between the Hadui and Sequani

12. Cum Caesar in Galliam vënît, alterius factiônis principês erant Haeduî, alterius Sêquani. Hi, 7 cum per së minus valërent (quod summâ auctôritâs antiquitús erat in 20 Haeduîs magnaeque eorum erant clientelae), Germânôs atque Arioivistum sibi adiûnxerant, eòsque ad së magnís iactûris 8

1 ad hunc locum: 'to this point' (of the narrative). 2 quô: 'by how much.' 3 redeat: 'is referred.' 4 institûtum: sc. esse. 5 nê quis . . . egérët: substantive clause in apposition with eius reî. 6 Haec . . . Galliae: 'this same state of affairs exists in general throughout all Gaul.' 7 Hi: 'the latter.' 8 iactûris: 'sacrifices.'
pollicitationibusque perdüxerant. Proeliiis vērō complūribus
factīs secundis atque omni nōbilità Haeðuorum interfec-tā,
tantum potentīā antecesserant ut magnum partem clientium
ab Haeðuis ad sē trādūcerent obsidēsque ab his principum
5 filiōs acciperent, et públicē iūrāre cōgerent nihil sē contrā
Sēquanōs cōnsili initūrōs, et partem finitimi agri per vim
occupatam possidērent, Galliaeque tōtius principātum obtinē-
rent. Quā necessitāte adductus, Diviciācus auxili petendi
causā Rōmam ad senātum proiectus 1 infectā rê redierat.

The favor of Cæsar gives the Haeðui the supremacy

10 Adventū Cæsaris factā commūtātiōne rērum, obsidibus
Haeðuīs redditis, veteribus clientēlis restitūtīs, novīs 2 per
Caesarem comparātīs, quod ei, qui sē ad eōrum amicitiam
adgregāverant, meliōre condiciōne atque aequōre imperiō
sē ā ti vidēbant, reliquis rêbus eōrum grātiā dignitāteque
15 amplificātā, Sēquanī principātum dimiserant.

The Remi hold the second place

In eōrum locum Rēmi successerant; 3 quōs quod adae-
quāre apud Cæsarem grātiā intellegēbātur, ei qui propter
eveterēs inimicitias nūlō modō cum Haeðuis coniungi poter-
rant sē Rēmis in clientēlam dicēbant. 4 Hōs illi diligenter
20 tuēbantur; ita et novam et repente conlēctam auctōritā-
tem tenēbant. Eō tamen statū rês erat ut longē princi-
pēs habērentur Haeðui, secundum locum dignitātīs Rēmi
obtinērent.

1 infectā rê: 'without accomplishing his purpose.'
2 novīs: sc. cli-
3 quōs . . . intellegēbātur: 'because it was perceived that these
entēlis. 4 dicē-
(the Remi) were equal (to the Haeðui) in the favor of Cæsar.'
bant: 'gave up'; distinguish from dicēbant.
The Gallic nobility and the common people

13. In omni Galliā eōrum hominum qui aliquō sunt numerō atque honōre genera sunt duo. Nam plēbēs paene servōrum habētur locō, quae nihil audet per sē, nūlli adhibētur cōnsiliō. Plērique, cum aut aere aliēnō aut magnitūdine tribūtōrum aut iniūriā potentiōrum premuntur, sēsē in servitūtem dicant nō bilibus; quibus in hōs eadem omnia sunt iūra quae dominis in servōs. Sed dē his duōbus generibus alterum est druidum, alterum equitum.

The druids hold the religious and judicial power

Illī rēbus divīnis intersunt, sacrificia pública ac privāta prōcūrant, religiōnēs interpretantur. Ad eōs magnum adulēscentium numerus disciplīnae causā concurrit, magnōque hi sunt apud eōs honōre. Nam ferē dē omnibus contrōversiis publicis privātisque cōnstituunt; et, si quod est admissum facinus, si caedēs facta, si dē hērēditāte, dē finibus contrōversiā est, īdem dēcernunt, praemia poenāsque cōnstituunt; si quī aut privātus aut populus eōrum dēcrētō nōn stetit, sacrificiis interdictum. Haec poena apud eōs est gravisissima. Quibus ita est interdictum, hi numerō impiōrum ac scelerātōrum habentur, his omnēs dēcedunt, aditum eōrum sermōnemque dēfugiunt, nē quid ex contāgiōne incommodi accipiant, neque eis petentibus iūs redditur neque honōs ūllus commūnicātur.

1 cum: 'whenever;' 'as often as.' 2 quibus: dative of possession, as is also dominīs, l. 7. Translate, 'who possess over them all the same rights that masters have over their slaves.' 3 his . . . generibus: i.e. the genera duo in l. 2. 4 intersunt: 'participate in,' 'occupy themselves with.' 5 hi: i.e. the druids; in the next line eōs refers to the Gauls. 6 idem: 'they also.' 7 sī qui: 'if any.' 8 eōrum . . . stetit: 'has not abided by their decision.' 9 incommodi: partitive genitive with quid.
Their organization and their meetings

His autem omnibus druidibus praeest unus, qui summam inter eōs habet auctōritātem. Hoc mortuō, aut si qui ex reliquis excellit dignitāte, succēdit, aut, si sunt plurēs parēs, suffrāgiō druidum, non numquam etiam armis, de principātū contendunt. Hī certō anni tempore in finibus Carnutum, quae regiō totius Galliae media habētur, consīdent in locō consecrātō. Hūc omnēs undique, qui contrōversiās habent, conveniunt eōrumque dēcrētis iūdiciisque pārent. Disciplīna in Britannīā reperta atque inde in Galliam trānslāta existimātur; et nunc, qui diligentius eam rem cognōscere volunt, plērumque illō discendi causā proficiscuntur.

Their special prerogatives

14. Druidēs a bellō abesse cōnsuērunt neque tribūta ūnā cum reliquis pendent. Tantis excitāti praemiis et suā sponte multi in disciplīnam conveniunt et a parentibus propinquisque mittuntur.

Their system of education

Magnum ibi numerum versuum ēdiscere dicuntur. Itaque annōs non nulli vicēnōs in disciplīnā permanent. Neque fās esse existimant ea litterīs mandāre, cum in reliquis ferē rēbus, publicīs privātīisque ratiōnibus, Graecīs litterīs ātūtantur. Id mihi duābus dē causīs instituisse videntur: quod neque in volgus disciplīnam efferri velint neque eōs

1 si qui: 'whoever.' 2 Disciplina: 'system of instruction.' 3 illō: adverb, 'there.' 4 disciplīnā: 'training.' 5 ea: neuter plural referring to numerum versuum. 6 cum... ātūtantur: concessive. 7 ratiōnibus: 'transactions.' 8 neque... studēre: 'nor do they wish those who learn to give less attention to memory through dependence on written words.'
A DRUID SACRIFICE
Their beliefs

In primum hoc volunt persuadere, non interire animas, sed ab aliis post mortem transire ad alios; atque hoc maxime ad virtutem excitari putant metu mortis neglecto. Multa praeterea de sideribus atque eorum motu, de mundi ac terrarum magnitudine, de rerum natura, de deorum immortali in ac potestate disputant et iuventutis tradunt.

The knights do the fighting

15. Alterum genus est equitum. Hi, cum est usus atque aliquid bellum incidit (quod feret ante Caesaris adventum quotannis accidere solerat, uti aut ipsi inuiriis inferrent aut inlatas prouulsarent), omnis in bellae versantur; atque eorum ut quisque est genere coepisque amplissimus, ita plurimos circum se ambactos clientesque habet. Hanc unam gratiam potentiamque novurent.

The Gauls are superstitious and offer human sacrifices

16. Natio est omnis Gallorum admodum dedita religioibus; atque ob eam causam qui sunt adepti graviobus morbis quiue in proeliis periculosisque versantur, aut pro victimis hominis immolant aut se immolaturis vovent, administrisque ad ea sacrificia druidibus utuntur; quod, pro vita hominis nisi hominis vita reddatur, non posse deorum

1 praesidio litterarum: 'because of reliance on the written form.' 2 metu mortis negligit: 'by disregarding the fear of death.' 3 Alterum genus: cf. alterum equitum, p. 163, l. 8. 4 usus: a noun. 5 ut... amplissimus, ita plurimos: 'the more powerful... the greater number.'
THE GALLIC WAR — BOOK VI

immortalium numen placari arbitrantur; publiceque eiusdem
generis habent instituta sacrificia. Alii immami magnitudine
simulacra habent, quorum contexta viminibus membra vivis
hominibus complent; quibus succensis circumventi flamma
exanimantur homines. Supplicia eorum qui in furto aut
latrocinio aut aliis noxia sint comprehensi, gratiora dis
immortalibus esse arbitrantur; sed, cum eius generis copia
deficit, etiam ad innocentium supplicia descendunt.

The gods whom the Gauls worship

17. Deorum maximè Mercurium colunt. Huius sunt
plurima simulacra; hunc omnium inventorem artium ferunt,
hunc viarium atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad quaestus pecuniae mercaturasque habère vim maximam arbitrantur. Post
hunc Apollinem et Mārtem et Iovem et Minervam. Dē
his eadem fere quam reliquae gentes habent opinione:
Apollinem morbos dépellere, Minervam operum atque artificiorum initia trādere, Iovem imperium caelestium tenère,
Mārtem bella regere.

To Mars they give the spoils of war

Huic, cum proelio dimicāre cōnstituērunt, ea quae bellō
cēperint plērumque dévovent. Cum superāvērunt, animālia
capta immolant, reliquās rēs in unum locum cōnferunt. Multis in civitātibus hārum rērum exstruētōs cumulōs locis

1 habent instituta: differs from instituerunt in that it denotes that
the custom, established in the past, still continues; cf. p. 49, l. 14.
2 simulacra: wooden figures, or forms, of the general appearance of
human beings. 3 descendunt: ‘resort to’ (lit. ‘descend to’). 4 Mercurium: ‘a Mercury.’ Cæsar does not mean that these gods had actually
the same names as those of the Romans; he discovers rather a similarity
in their attributes and functions. 5 ferunt: ‘they call.’
cōnsecrātis cōspicāri licet. Neque saepe accidit ut neg-
lēctā quispiam religiōne 1 aut capta apud sē occultāre aut
posita tollere audēret, gravissimumque ei rei supplicium
cum cruciātū cōnstitūtum est.

Time is measured by the number of nights

18. Gallī sē omnēs ab Dite patre prōgnātōs praedicant 5
idque ab druidībus prōditum dīcunt. Ob eam causam
spatia omnis temporis nōn numerō diērum sed noctium
finiunt; 6 dīēs nātālēs et mēnsium et annōrum initia sic
observant ut noctem dīēs subsequātur.

There is no open association between boys and their fathers

In reliquis vitae institūtis hōc ferē ab reliquis differunt, 10
quod suōs liberōs, nisi cum adolēvērunt ut mūnus mili-
tiae sustinēre possint, palam ad sē adire nōn patiuntur;
filiumque puerili aetāte in pūblicō in cōnspectū patris
adsistere turpe dūcunt.

Marriage customs and funeral rites

19. 5 Virī, quantās pecūniās ab uxōribus dōtis nōmine 15
accēpērunt, tantās ex suīs bonis aestimātiōne factā cum
dōtibus commūnicant. Huius omnis pecūniae coniūntim
ratīō habētur frūctūsque 6 servavit; uter eōrum vitā 7

1 aut capta . . . aut . . . audēret: 'has dared either to conceal booty at his
home or to carry it away when consecrated' (lit. 'laid down'). 2 spatia . . .
finiunt: as emblematical of the darkness of the underworld, the home of
Dis, or Pluto; cf. English 'fortnight.' 6 dīēs . . . subsequātur: i.e. they
count from the first night instead of the first day. 4 filiumque . . . dūcunt:
'they consider it disgraceful' etc. 6 Virī . . . commūnicant: i.e. they set
aside from their own resources a sum equal to the dower brought by the
wife, and the total amount is maintained as a common fund. 6 frūctūs:
'revenues,' or 'profits.' 7 vitā: ablative of respect.
superavit, ad eum pars utriusque cum fructibus superiorem temporum pervenit. Viri in uxores, sicut in liberos, vitae necisque habent potestatem; et cum pater familiae inlustriore loco natus decessit, eius propinqui conveniunt et dē morte, si re in suspicionem venit, dē uxoribus in servilem modum quaestionem habent, et si compertum est, igni atque omnibus tormentis excruciatas interficiunt.

Funera sunt prō cultū Gallorum magnifica et sümptuosa; omniumque quae vivis cordi fuisses arbitrantur in ignem inferunt, etiam animalia, ac paulo suprad hanc memoriam servi et clientes, quos ab eis dilictos esse constabat, iūstis funebrisbus confectis una cremabantur.

All news is first reported to the magistrates

20. Quae civitātēs commodius suam rem publicam administrāre existimantur habent légibus sānc tum, si quis quid dē re publica a finitimis rūmōre aut fāmā accēperit, uti ad magistrātum dēferat nēve cum quō aliō commūnicet; quod saepe hominēs temerāriōs atque imperitōs falsis rūmōribus terrērit et ad facinus impelli et dē summis rēbus cōnsilium capere cognitum est. Magistrātūs quae visa sunt occultant; quae esse ex usū iūdicāvērunt, multitūdini prōdunt. Dē re publica nisi per concilium loqui nōn concēditur.

1 si . . . vēnit: i.e. if there are suspicious circumstances. 2 in servilem modum: among the Romans slaves were tortured to extort confession of crime. 3 compertum est: i.e. that there has been foul play. 4 prō cultū: 'considering the degree of civilization.' 5 cordi: 'dear,' dative of cor, 'heart.' 6 suprad hanc memoriam: 'before our time.' 7 iūstis: 'regular.' 8 Quae civitātēs: equivalent to eae civitātēs quae. 9 habent . . . sānc tum: 'have it established by law.' 10 nēve: 'and that . . . not'; quō is indefinite. 11 quae visa sunt: 'what seems best' (to conceal).
EARLY GERMANS

"Vita omnis in vénationibus aequque in studiis rel militaris consistit"

(See page 169, line 5)

Agriculture is discouraged. Land is held in common and apportioned yearly by the magistrates and leading men.

22. Agri cultūrae nōn student, maiorque pars eōrum victūs in lacte, cāseō, carne cōnsistit. Neque quisquam agrī modum certum aut finēs habet propriōs; sed magistrātūs ac prūcipēs in annōs singulōs gentibus cognātiōnibusque hominum, quique ūnā coīrunt, quantum et quō locō visum est agrī attribuunt, atque annō post aliō trānsire cōgunt. Eius rei multās adferunt causās: nē adsidūa cōnsuētūdine captī studium belli gerendi agrī cultūrā commūtent; nē lātōs finēs parāre student potentīorēs atque humiliōrēs possessiōnibus expellant; nē accūrātius ad frīgora atque aestūs vitandōs aedificent; nē qua oriātur pecūniāe cupīditās, quā ex rē factiōnēs dissēniōnēsque nāscuntur; ut animī aequitāte plēbem contineant, cum suās quisque opēs cum potentissimīs aequārī videat.

1 ā parvis: 'from childhood.' 2 finēs . . . propriōs: 'private lands.' 3 in annōs singulōs: 'each year.' 4 agri: partitive genitive with quantum. 5 aliō: adverb. 6 nē . . . commūtent: this and the following clauses are in apposition with causās. 7 ut . . . contineant: 'that they may keep the common people in a contented frame of mind.'
They glory in wide frontiers of deserted land


They give great power to their chiefs

Cum bellum civitās aut inlātum dēfendit aut īnfert, magistrātūs qui eī bellō praeśint, et vitae necisque habeant potestātem, dēliguntur. In pāce nūllus est communistis magistrātus, sed principēs regiōnum atque pāgōrum inter suōs iūs dicunt contrōversiāsque minuunt.

They rob outsiders, but respect guests

Latrōcinia nūllam habent īnfāmiam quae extrā finēs cuiusque civitātis fiunt, atque ea iuventūtis exercendae ac dēsidae minuendae causā fīeri praedicant. Atque ubi quis ex principibus in conciliō dixit sē ducem fore, qui sequi velint profiteantur, cōnsurgunt ei qui et causam et hominem probant suumque auxilium pollicentur, atque ā multitūdine conlaudantur; qui ex his secūtī nōn sunt in dēsertōrum ac prōditōrum numerō dūcuntur omniumque his rērum postēa fidēs dērogātur. Hospitem violāre fās nōn putant; quī quācumque dē causā ad eōs vēnērunt ab iniūriā prohibitā nāctōsque habent; hisque omnium domūs patent victusque communīcātur.

1 proprium virtūtis: 'significant of their valor.' 2 iūs dicunt: 'administer justice.' 3 ea: refers to latrōcinia. 4 quī ... profiteantur: 'that those who are willing to follow are to give in their names.' Profiteantur represents an imperative in the direct discourse. 5 omniumque ... dē-rogātur: 'and confidence is withdrawn from them in everything thereafter.'
The Gauls formerly excelled the Germans in prowess, but are now much inferior

24. Ac fuit anteā tempus cum Germānōs Gallī virtūte superārent, ultrō bella inferrent, propter hominum multitūdinem agrique inopiam trāns Rhēnum colōniās mitterent. Itaque ea quae fertilissima Germāniae sunt loca, circum Hercyniam silvam (quam Eratosthenī et quibusdam Graecīs fāmā nōtam esse videō, quam illi Orcyniam appellant), Volcae Tectosagēs occupāvērunt atque ibi cōnsēdērunt. Quae gēns ad hoc tempus his sēdibus sēsē continet summamque habet iūstitiae et bellicae laudis opinīōnem.1 Nunc quidem in eādem inopīa, egestāte, patientiāque Germāni permanent, 10 eōdem victū et cultū corporis ētuntur; Gallī2 autem prōvin-ciārum propinquītās et trānsmarīnārum rērum nōtītia multa ad cōpiam atque ēsum largitur. Paulātīm adsuēfacti superāri multisque victi proelīs, nē sē quidem ipsī3 cum illis virtūte comparant.

The Hercynian forest and its boundaries

25. Huius Hercyniae silvae, quae suprā dēmōnstrātā est, lātitūdō VIII diērum iter4 expeditō5 patet; nōn enim aliter finiri potest, neque mēnsūrās itinerum nōvērunt. Oritur ab Helvētiōrum et Nemetum et Rauracōrum finibus,6 réctāque flūminis Dānūvī regiōne pertinet ad finēs Dācōrum et Anar- 20 tium; hinc sē flectit sinistrōrsus7 diversis ab flūmine regiōnibus multārumque gentium finēs propter magnītūdinem

1 opinīōnem: 'reputation.' 2 Gallī: indirect object, and multa direct object, of largītūr. 3 ipsī: i.e. the Gauls; illīs means the Germans. 4 iter: accusative of extent. 5 expeditō: 'for an active (traveler),' i.e. one not 'encumbered' with baggage; dative of reference. 6 réctāque... regiōne: i.e. in a course parallel with the Danube. 7 sinistrōrsus: i.e. to the north.
THE GALLIC WAR — BOOK VI

attingit. Neque quisquam est huius Germâniae qui sè aut adisse ad initium eius silvae dicit, cum dièrum iter lx processerit, aut quò ex locò orïätur accëperit.

This forest contains many strange animals

Multaque in eà genera feràrum nàscì cónstat quae reli-quis in locis visa nóñ sint; ex quibus quae maximè differant ab cèteris et memoriae pròdenda videäntur haec sunt.

The ox with a single branching horn


The elk with short horns and jointless legs

27. Sunt item quae appellantur alcès. Hárum est consí-milis capris figurà et variétás pellium; sed magnitúdo paulò antecédunt mutilaeque sunt cornibus et crûra sine nòdis articulisque habent; neque quiëtis causâ pròcumbunt neque, si quò adflictae cásù concidèrunt, érigere sèsè ac sublevàre possunt. Hís sunt arborès prò cubilibus; ad eàs sè adaptic atque ita paulum modo reclinâtae quiëtem capiunt. Quárum ex vèstigiis cum est animadversum à

1 initium: as we should say, 'the end' eastward. 2 cum . . . processerit: concessive. 3 nàscì: we should say 'live.' 4 bòs . . . figurâ: 'an ox of the shape of a stag.' Bòs is a name given loosely to any large-horned, unfamiliar beast; here, perhaps, the reindeer. 5 palmæ ràmique: 'antlers branching like the fingers of a hand' (lit. 'palms and branches'). 6 mutilaeque . . . cornibus: 'short-horned'; cornibus is the ablative of respect. 7 Hís: dative of possession. 8 ad eàs etc.: 'they lean themselves against these, and so reclining only a little' etc.
SECOND INVASION OF GERMANY

vēnātōribus quō sē recipere cōnsuērunt, omnēs eō locō aut ab rādiciibus subruunt aut accident arborēs, tantum ut summa speciēs eārum stantium relinquātur. Hūc cum sē cōnsuētū-dine reclināvērunt, infirmās arborēs pondere adfligunt atque ūnā ipsae concidunt.

The aurochs, which spares neither man nor beast


Summary of Chapters 29–44

Cāesar, deeming it unwise, because of a possible scarcity of grain, to follow the Suebi into their forest retreats, destroyed the farther end of the bridge, and, leaving a strong guard on the Gallic side, set forth against Ambiorīrix, whom he had vowed to destroy (cf. p. 159, footnote 1).

1 omnēs: with arborēs. 2 tantum ut... relinquātur: 'so that to all appearances they (the trees) are standing firmly.' — Chapter 27 is full of absurdities. Cāesar is evidently only repeating marvelous tales of travelers. It seems unlikely that he believed them all. 3 foveis: 'with pitfalls.' 4 quae sint testimōniō: 'to serve as evidence'; a purpose clause. 5 nē parvulī... exceptī: 'not even when caught young.' 6 ab labrīs... circumclūdunt: 'they trim with silver about the rims.'
Hoping to catch him unawares, he sent ahead a force of cavalry. Ambiorix was surprised, but, disbanding his army, managed to escape. Caesar, gathering all his baggage at Aduatuca, left Cicero there with one legion to guard it, and, dividing his army into three parts, started in pursuit of Ambiorix. At the same time he invited the neighboring tribes to assist him in laying waste the land of Ambiorix and in destroying the Eburones, his people. Hearing of this, the Sugambri came from across the Rhine to share in the pillage; but deeming the baggage of the Romans stored at Aduatuca a richer prize, they attacked Cicero instead, and almost succeeded in overwhelming him and his small force. Caesar's opportune return frightened the Sugambri away. He then resumed his relentless pursuit of Ambiorix. Again and again the barbarian chieftain was almost in his grasp, but each time he eluded him, and was never captured. Late in the fall Caesar distributed his legions in winter quarters and returned to Italy.
CAMPAIGN MAP FOR 52 B.C.
BOOK VII
CAESAR'S SEVENTH CAMPAIGN, 52 B.C.

THE WAR WITH VERCINGETORIX

SUMMARY OF CHAPTERS 1–3

While Cæsar was in Italy, serious riots occurred at Rome. A rumor straightway spread among the Gauls that Cæsar was likely to be detained, and that this was the time to strike a blow for freedom. Following a general council, the Carnutes began to revolt by massing at Cenabum and killing Roman citizens who had settled there. The news of this traveled so rapidly that in a few hours it reached the Arverni, one hundred and sixty miles away.

Vercingetorix, chief of the Arverni, takes the lead

SIMILI ratione ibi Vercingetorix, Celtilli filius, Arvernus, summae potentiae aduléscens, — cuius pater principatum totius Galliae obtinerat, et ob eam causam, quod régnum adpetebat, á civitáte erat interfectus, — convocátis suis clientibus facile incendit. Cognitó eius cónsilió ad arma concurrítur. Prohibétur a Gobannitióne, patruó suó, reliquisque principibus, qui hanc temptandum fortúnam non existimabant; expellit ex oppidó Gergoviá; nón dēstitit tamen atque in agrís habet délēctum egentium ac perditórum. Hác coáctá manū quōscumque adit ex civitáte ad suam sentiam perdúcit; hortátur ut commūnis libertātis causā arma

1 totius Galliae: i.e. Celtic Gaul. 2 incendit: sc. cōs. 3 Prohibétur: 'an attempt is made to prevent him.'
capiant; magnisque coãctis cõpis admirariöis suös, ã quibus paulö ante erat ëiectus, expellit ex civitate. Rex ab sui appellåtur. Dimittit quõqueversus legatiönës; obteståtur ut in fide maneat.

Many tribes join his standard

Celeriter sibi Senonis, Parisiöis, Pictonës, Cadûrcës, Turonës, Aurelçës, Lemovícës, Andës, reliquòque omnës qui Òceanum attingunt adiungit; omnium cônssënsü ad eum défertur imperium. Quä oblåtä poteståte omnibus his civitâtibus obsidës impe- rat; certum numerum militum ad sé celeriter 21 addüci iubet; armorum quantum quaeque civitäs domi, 2 quodque ante tempus efficiat, cõstituit; in prëmis equitåtiui studet.

He maintains severe discipline

Summae diligentiae summam imperi sevëritätëm addit; magnitüdine supplici dubitëtës cõgit: nam maiöre com- 25 missö délictö igni atque omnibus tormentis necat; leviöre

1 quõqueversus: 'in every direction.' 2 quodque ante tempus: 'and before what time'; quod is interrogative. 3 dubitëtës: 'those who hesitated.'
dē causā auribus désectis aut singulis effossis oculis domum remittit, ut sint reliquis documentō et magnitudine poenae perterreant aliōs.

He invades the country of the Bituriges, who ask the Hādui to send them assistance

5. His suppliciis celeriter coāctō exercitū Lucterium Cadūrcum, summæ hominem audāciae, cum parte cōpiārum in Rutēnōs mittit; ipsē in Biturīgēs proficiscitur. Eius adventū Biturīgēs ad Haeduōs (quōrum erant in fidē) légātōs mittunt subsidium rogātum, quō facilius hostium cōpiās sustinēre possint.

The Hādui fail them, and so, unable to resist, they join Vercingetorix

Haeduī dē cōnsiliō légātōrum, quōs Caesar ad exercitum reliquerat, cōpiās equitātūs peditātūsque subsidīō Biturīgibus mittunt. Qui cum ad flūmen Ligerim vēnissent, quod Biturīgēs ab Haeduīs dividit, paucōs diēs ibi morātī neque flūmen trānsire ausī, domum revertuntur, légātūsque nostrīs renūntiānt sē Biturīgum perfidiam verītōs revertisse, quibus id cōnsiliōtūs cognōverint ut, si flūmen trānsissent, ūnā ex parte ipsī, alterā Arvernī sē circumsisterent. Id eaēn dē causā quam légātīs prōnūntiārunt an perfidiā adductī fēcerint, quod nihil nōbis cōnstat, nōn vidētur prō certō esse pōnendum. Biturīgēs eōrum discersū statim sē cum Arvernīs iungunt.

1 dē cōnsiliō: 'on the advice.' 2 Qui: meaning the equitātūs peditātūsque. 3 quibus id etc.: 'who they knew had this plan.' 4 ipsī: the Bituriges. 5 Id eaēn etc.: 'whether they did this for the reason which' etc. 6 nihil...cōnstat: 'is not at all clear.'
Caesar leaves Italy and hastens to Gaul

6. His rēbus in Italiam Caesari nūntiātis, cum iam ille urbānās rēs virtūte Cn. Pompēī commodōrem in statum pervēnisse intellegēret, in Trānsalpīnam Galliam profectus est. Eō cum vēnisset, magnā difficultāte adficiēbatur, quā ratiōne ad exercitum pervenire posset. Nam si legiōnēs in prōvinciam arcesseret, sē absente in itinere proeliō dimicāturās intellegēbat; si ipse ad exercitum contenderet, nē eis quidem eō tempore quī quiēti vidērentur suam salūtem rectē committi vidēbat.

Summary of Chapters 7–12

Lucterius, a commander under Vercingetorix, made plans to assail Narbo. Cæsar checked these plans, and then, pushing his way through deep snow, crossed the Cévennes Mountains and entered the borders of the Arverni. Leaving Brutus in command there, he hastened north and gathered all his forces into one place. Vercingetorix thereupon hastened to storm Gorgobina, a town of the Boii, friendly to the Romans. Cæsar, in spite of difficulties, hurried to its relief. When he arrived at Noviodunum in the country of the Bituriges, and its inhabitants had accepted and partially carried out his terms of surrender, the approach of a cavalry force sent by Vercingetorix, who had heard of Cæsar’s advance, caused them to change their plans and to prepare for resistance. But the cavalry of Vercingetorix was dispersed with great slaughter, and the submission of Noviodunum followed.

Caesar sets out for Avaricum, the stronghold of the Bituriges

13. Quibus rēbus cōnfectis Caesar ad oppidum Avaricum, quod erat maximum mūnitissimumque in finibus Biturīgum atque agrī fertilissimā regione, profectus est; quod eō oppidō receptō civitātem Biturīgum sē in potestātem redāctūrum cōnfidēbat.

1 virtūte Cn. Pompēī etc.: the disturbances at Rome had been quieted by Pompey, who had been made dictator. 2 quā . . . possēt: indirect question depending on the idea of doubt in difficultāte.
WAR WITH VERCINGETORIX

Vercingetorix advises the Gauls to lay waste their country and thus deprive the Romans of their supplies

14. Vercingetorix tot continuís incommodiis Vellaunodûini, Cênabî, Noviodûini acceptis suós ad concilium convocat. Docet longē aliā ratiōne esse bellum gerendum atque anteā gestum sit; omnibus modis huic rei studendum ut pābulātiōne et commeātū Rōmānī prohibeantur; id esse facile, quod equitātū ipsī abundant et quod anni tempore sublevetur; pābulum secāri nōn posse; necessāriō dispersōs hostēs ex aedificiis petere; hōs omnēs cotidiē ad equitibus dēlēri posse. Praetereā, salūtis causā rei familiāris commoda neglegenda; vicīs atque aedificia incendi oportēre hoc spatiō quōqueversus, quō pābulandi causā adire posse videantur. Hārum ipsīs rērum cōpiam suppeterē, quod quōrum in finibus bellum gērātur eōrum opibus sublevetur: Rōmānōs aut inopiam nōn lātūrōs aut magnō cum periculō longius ā castris processūrōs; neque interesse ipsōsne interficiant an impedimentīs exuant, quibus āmissī bellum gēri nōn possit.

He urges them to burn their towns

Praetereā, oppida incendi oportēre quae nōn mūnitiōne et locī nātūrā ab omni sint periculō tūta; nē suīs sint ad detreactandam militiam receptācula, neu Rōmānīs prōposita ad cōpiam commeātūs praedamque tollendam. Haec si gravia aut acerba videantur, multō illā gravius aestimāri debebere, liberōs, coniugēs in servitūtem abstrahi, ipsōs interfici; quae sit necesse accidere victis.

1 atque: 'than.' 2 equitātū ipsī abundant: 'they themselves (the Gauls) are well supplied with cavalry.' 3 aedificiis: i.e. 'granaries.' 4 rei familiāris commoda: 'the interests of private property.' 5 hoc spatiō: correlative with quō. 6 neque interesse . . . -ne . . . an: 'nor does it make any difference whether . . . or . . . etc.' 7 prōposita: 'offered' (to be captured by the Romans). 8 Haec: 'the foregoing.' 9 illa: 'the following.'
They burn more than twenty in a single day

15. Omnium consensū hāc sententiā probātā únō diē amplius xx urbēs Biturigum incenduntur. Hoc idem fit in reliquis civitātibus. In omnibus partibus incendia conspicuuntur; quae etsi magnō cum dolore omnēs ferēbant, tamen

VERCINGETORIX AND OTHER GALIC CHIEFTAINS

5 hoc sibi sōlācī prōpōnēbant, quod sē prope explōrātā victōriā celeriter āmissa recuperātūrōs confidēbant.

But they spare Avaricum

Dēliberātur dē Avaricō in commūnī conciliō, incendi plēceat an dēfendi. Prōcumbunt omnibus Gallis ad pedēs Biturīgēs, nē pulcherrimam prope tōtius Galliae urbem,

1 āmissa: 'what they had lost'; object of recuperātūrōs. 2 Gallis: dative of reference; see G. § 85.
quae et præsidiō et ornamentiō sit civitāti, suis manibus succedere cōgantur; facile sē loci nātūrā defēnsūrōs dicunt, quod, prope ex omnibus partibus flūmine et palūde circum-data, ūnum habet et perangustum aditum. Datur petentibus venia, dissuādente primō Vercingetorie, post concèdente, et precibus ipsōrum et misericordiā volgi.\(^1\) Defēnsōrēs oppidō idōnei dēliguntur.

Vercingetorix follows Caesar and attacks his foraging parties

16. Vercingetorix minōribus Caesarem itineribus subse-quitur, et locum castris dēligit palūdibus silvisque mūnītum, ab Avaricō longē milia passuum xvi. Ibi per certōs explō- rātōrēs \(^2\) in singula diēi tempora quae ad Avaricum gerentur cognōscēbat, et quid fieri vellet imperābat. Omnēs nostrās pābulātiōnēs frūmentātiōnēsque observābat, dispersōsque, cum longius necessāriō prōcēderent, adoriēbātur magnōque incommodō adficiēbat; \(^3\) etsi, quantum ratiōne prōvidēri poterat, ab nostris occurrēbātur, ut incertīs temporibus diversisque itineribus irētur.

Caesar, though greatly harassed, begins the siege of Avaricum

17. Castris ad eam partem oppidī positīs Caesar quae intermissa flūmine et palūde aditum, ut suprā \(^4\) dīximus, angustum habēbat, aggerem adparāre, vineās agere, turrēs \(^5\) duās cōnstituere coepit; nam circumvāllāre locī nātūra prohibēbat. De rē frūmentāriā Bōiōs atque Haeduōs adhor-tāri nōn dēstitit quōrum alterī,\(^6\) quod nūllō studiō agēbant.

\(^1\) volgī: objective genitive: i.e. his compassion 'for the poor people,' who would be turned out of house and home in the winter if the towns should be burned.  
\(^2\) in . . . tempora: 'from hour to hour.'  
\(^3\) etsi . . . irētur: 'although so far as skillful planning (ratiōne) could provide (against this danger), our men took the precaution of going at uncertain times and in different directions.'  
\(^4\) suprā: see ll. 3 and 4.  
\(^5\) alterī: i.e. the Hædui; alterī (next line), the Boii.
nōn multum adiuvābant; alterī nōn magnis facultātibus, quod civitās erat exigua et infirma, celeriter quod habueruntō consūmpserunt.

*The soldiers show a heroic spirit*

Summā difficultāte rei frūmentāriae adfectō exercitū, tenuitāte¹ Bōiōrum, indulgentiā Haeduōrum, incendiīs aedificiōrum,

---

1. *tenuitāte* : 'scanty resources.'
2. *maiestāte . . . victōriis* : after *indigna* (the ablative is regularly used with *dignus* and *indignus*).
3. *si . . . ferrent* : conditional clause of *sē dimissūrum.*
acerbius inopiam ferrent, sē dimissūrum oppugnātiōnem diceret, universi ab eō nē id faceret petēbant:

'Sic sē complūrēs annōs illō imperante meruisse ut nūllum ignōminiam accipерent, numquam infectā rē discēderent; hoc sē ignōminiae lātūrōs locō, si inceptam oppugnātiōnem reliquissernt: praestārē omnēs perferre acerbitātēs quam nōn civibus Rōmānis qui Cēnabi perfidiā Gallōrum interissent parentārent.'

Haec eadem centuriōnibus tribūnisque militum mandābant, ut per eōs ad Caesarem dēferrentur.

Caesar hears that Vercingetorix is near and marches against him

18. Cum iam mūrō turrēs adpropinquāsset, ex captīvis Caesar cognōvit Vercingetorigem cōnsūmpō pābulō castra mōvisse propius Avaricum, atque ipsum cum equitātū expe- ditisque qui inter equitēs proeliāri cōnsuēssent, īnsidiandī causā eō profectum quō nostrōs posterō die pābulātum ventū rōs arbitrarētur. Quibus rēbus cognitis mediā nocte silentiō profectus ad hostium castra māne pervēnit. Illī, celeriter per explōrātōrēs adventū Caesaris cognītō, carrōs impedimenta que sua in artiōrēs silvās abdiderunt, cōpiās omnēs in locō ēditō atque apertō instruxērunt. Quā rē nūntiātā Caes- sar celeriter sarcinās cōnferri, arma expedīrī iussit.

But finds him too strongly entrenched to warrant an attack

19. Collis erat lēniter ab īnfirmō acclivis. Hunc ex omnibus ferē partibus palūs difficilis atque impedita cingēbat, nōn lātior pedibus L. Hoc sē colle interruptis pontibus Galli fidūciā locī continēbant, generātimque distribūti omnia 25

1 ignōminiae . . . locō: 'as a disgrace.' 2 parentārent: sc. ut before nōn. 3 qui . . . cōnsuēssent: see Book I, chap. 48. 4 fidūciā locī: 'trusting to the strength of the position.'
vada eius palūdis obtinēbant, sic animō parāti ut, si eam palūdem Rōmānī perrumpere cōnārentur, haesitantēs praemere rent ex locō superiōre; ut, qui propinquitātem loci vidēret, parātōs prope aequō Mārte ad dimicandum existimāret; qui iniquitātem condiciōnis perspiceret, ināni simulātiōne sēsē ostentāre cognōsceret. Indignantēs militēs Caesar, quod cōnspectum suum hostēs ferre possent tantulō spatiō interiectō, et signum proeli exposcentēs, ēdocet quantō dētrimentō et quot virōrum fortium morte necesse sit cōnstāre victoriam; quōs cum sic animō parātōs videat ut nūllum prō suā laude periculum recūsent, summæ sē iniquitātis condemnāri dēbēre, nisi eōrum vitam laude suā habeat cāriōrem. Sic militēs cōnsūlātus eōdem diē redūcit in castra; reliquaque quae ad oppugnātiōnem oppidi pertinēbant administrāre instituit.

The Gauls accuse Vercingetorix of treason

20. Vercingetorix cum ad suōs redisset, prōditionis insimulātus,—'Quod castra propius Rōmānōs mōvisset, quod cum omnī equitātū dismississet, quod sine imperio tantās cōpiās reliquisset, quod eius dissipū Rōmānī tantā opportūnitāte et celeritāte vēnissent; nōn haec omnia fortuitō aut sine cōnsiliō accidere potuisse; rēgnum illum Galliae mālle Caesaris concessū quam ipsōrum habēre beneficiō,—tāli modō accūsātus ad haec respondit:

1 haesitantēs: 'struggling' (in the mud of the marsh). 2 vidēret: 'whoever saw the nearness of the position'; vidēret, of casual observation; perspiceret (l. 5), of careful inspection. 3 ināni . . . ostentāre: 'that they were making an empty display of courage'; because they saw that they were in a safe position and that an attack by the Romans would be folly. 4 summæ etc.: 'that he ought to be condemned for extreme injustice'; verbs of accusing, condemning, etc. take the genitive of the charge or penalty; prōditionis (l. 16) is in the same construction. 5 mōvisset: this and the following subjunctives refer to the actions in chap. 18.
WAR WITH VERCINGETORIX

However, he makes a successful defense

'Quod castra mövisset, factum inopiä pambil, etiam ipsis hortantibus; quod propius Römānōs accessisset, persuāsum loci opportuinitāte, quī sē ipse sine munitioñe dēfenderet; equitum vērō operam neque in locō palūstri désiderāri dē-buisse, et illic fuisse útilem quō sint profecti. Summam imperi sē cōnsultō nullī discēdentem trādīdisse, nē is multītūdinis studiō ad dimicandum impellerētur; cui rei propter animi mollitiem studēre omnēs vidēret, quod diūtius labōrem ferre nōn possent. Römāni si cāsū intervēnerint, fortūnae; si alicuius indiciō vocāti, huic habendam grātiam, quod et paucitātem eōrum ex locō superiōre cognōscere et virtūtem déspicere potuerint, qui dīmicāre nōn ausi turpiter sē in castra recēverint. Imperium sē ā Caesare per prōditiōnem nūllum désiderāre, quod habēre victōriā posset, quae iam esset sibi atque omnibus Gallis explōrāta: quin etiam ipsis remittere, sī sibi magis honōrem tribuere quam ab sē salūtem accipere videantur. ' Haec ut intellegātis,' inquit, 'ā mē sincērē prōnūntiāri, audite Römānōs militēs.' Prōdūcit servōs, quōs in pābulātiōne paucis ante diēbus excēperat, et famē vinculisque excruciāverat. Hi, iam ante édocti quae interrogāti prōnūntiārent, militēs sē esse legiōnāriōs dicunt; famē et inopiā adductōs clam ex castris exisse, sī quid frumenti aut pecoris in agris reperire possent; simili omnem exercitum inopiā premi, nec iam virēs sufficere ciusquam nec ferre operis labōrem posse: itaque statuisset imperātōrem, sī nihil in oppugnātiōne oppidi prōfēcissent, tridūo.

1 persuāsum (esse): impersonal; sc. sibi. 2 quī sē . . . dēfenderet: 'which was its own defense.' 3 fortūnae: this, as well as huic, with habendam grātiam, 'they ought to be grateful.' 4 ipsis remittere: 'that he was ready to resign to them.' 5 sī . . . possent: 'to discover) whether they could,' etc. 6 nec iam virēs etc.: 'that no one any longer had sufficient strength,'
exercitum dēducere. “Haec,” inquit, “ā mē,” Vercingetorīx, “beneficia habētis, quem prōditiōnis insimulātis; cuius operā sine vestrō sanguine tantum exercitum victōrem famē cōnsūmptum vidētis; quem 1 turpiter sē ex hāc fugā recipien-

tem nē qua civitās suīs finibus recipiat, ā mē prōvisum est.”

The Gauls are filled with new determination

21. Conclāmat omnis multitudō et suō mōre armīs con-
crepat,—quod facere 2 in eō cōnsuērunt cuius ērātiōnem
adprobant: ‘Summum esse Vercingetorīgēm ducem, nec
dē eius fidē dubitandum, nec maiōre ratiōne bellum admi-
nistrāri posse.’

Statuunt ut x milia homīnum dēlēcta ex omnibus cōpiis
in oppidum submittantur, nec sōlis Biturīgibus commūnem
salūtem committendam cēnsent; quod paene in eō, 3 si id oppi-
dum retinuissent, summam victōriae cōnstāre intellegēbant.

They show great skill in the defense of the town

22. Singulāri militum nostrōrum virtūtī cōnsilia cuiusque
modi Gallōrum occurrēbant, 4 ut est summae genus sollertiae,
atque 5 ad omnia imitanda et efficienda quae ā quōque trā-
duntur aptissimum. Nam et laqueis falcēs 6 āvertēbant, quās,
cum dēstināverant, tormentis intrōrsus reducēbant; et ag-
gerem cuniculis subtrahēbant, 7 eō scientius quod apud eōs
magnae sunt ferrāriae, atque omne genus cuniculōrum nōtum

1 quem: construe with nē . . . recipiat, which is subject of prōvisum est.
2 in eō: ‘in the case of one.’ 3 eō: ‘that condition’; explained by si . . .
retinuissent. 4 ut est etc.: ‘as they are a people of the utmost ingenuity
and most skillful in imitating and making everything which is brought to
them by any one.’ 5 atque: connects sollertiae (descriptive genitive) and
aptissimum, both modifying genus. 6 falcēs: see Introd. III. 13. 6. Translate,
‘for they turned aside the hooks with nooses, and when they had
captured them firmly, they drew them inside with engines.’ 7 subtrahē-
bant: ‘undermined.’
atque īsitātum est. Tōtum autem múrum ex omni parte tum turribus contabulāverant atque hās coriis intēxerant. Tum crēbris diurnis nocturnisque ēruptiōnibus aut aggeri ignem inferēbant aut militēs occupātōs in opere adoriēbantur; et nostrārum turrium altitūdinem, quantum hās cotidiānus agger expresserat, commissis suārum turrium mālis adaequābant; et apertōs cuniculōs praeūstā et praeacūtā māteriā et pice fervefactā et maximī ponderis saxis morābantur moenibusque adpropinquāre prohibēbant.

Description of a Gallic wall

23. Mūri autem omnēs Gallicī hāc ferē fōrmā sunt. Tra- bēs dērēctae, perpetuae in longitūdinem paribus intervallīs, distantēs inter sē binōs pedēs, in solō conlocantur. Hae revinciuntur intrōrus et multō aggere vestiuntur; ea autem quae diximus intervallā grandibus in fronte saxis effariuntur. Hīs conlocātīs et coagentātīs alius insuper ōrdō additur, ut idem illud intervallum servētur neque inter sē contingant trabēs, sed, paribus intermissis spatiis, singulae

1 coriis intēxerant: i.e. to protect them from fire. 2 et nostrārum expresserat: they increased the height of their own turres from day to day to match the increased height of those of the Romans. 3 commissis... mālis: by splicing the upright timbers. 4 apertōs... prohibēbant: they hurled these obstructions into the open passageways of the agger and thus ‘blocked’ (morābantur) the Roman mines leading to the walls. 5 dērēctae: ‘at right angles’ (with the course of the wall). 6 perpetuae in longitūdinem: ‘continuously along its length.’ 7 alius insuper ōrdō etc.: the foundation timbers are laid two feet apart with the ends in the face of the wall, the intervening spaces being filled with earth (agger), except at the ends, where stones (saxiō) were used. Inside (intrōrus) the wall, and running lengthwise, timbers forty feet long are mortised into these foundation beams so as to form a continuous binding (perpetuis trabibus). The whole system is duplicated in a second row, but in such a way that the timbers rest upon the intervening stones and earth; and this plan is continued until the desired height is reached. The face of the wall thus shows stone facings and timber ends in alternation.
singulis saxis intèrictis artê contineantur. Sic deinceps omne opus cóntextit dum iústa múri altítúdó expleátur. Hoc cum¹ in speciem varietátemque opus défórne nòn est, alternís trabibus ac saxis, quae rēctis līneis suōs ördinēs 5 servant, tum ad utilitātem et défēnsionem urbiùm summam habet opportūnītātem; quod et ab incendiō lapis et ab ariete māteria défendit, quae perpetuis trabibus pedum quadrā- gēnum plērumque intrōrsus revīncæ neque perrumpī neque distrahī potest.

The Gauls set fire to the Roman works and make a sally

10 24. His tot rēbus impeditā oppugnātiōne militēs, cum tōtō tempore frigore et adsiduis imbribus tardārentur, tamen continentī labōre omnia haec superāvērunt, et diēbus xxv aggerem lātum pedēs cccxxx, altum pedēs lxxx exstrūxē- runt. Cum is mūrum hostium paene contingēret, et Caesar 15 ad opus cōnsuētūdine excubāret militēsque hortārētur nē quod omnīnō tempus ab opere interimmētur, — paulō ante tertiam vigiliam est animadversum fūmāre aggerem, quem cuniculō² hostēs successorēnt; eōdemque tempore, tōtō mūrō clāmōre sublātō, duābus portis ab utrōque latere tur- 20 rium³ ēruptiō fiēbat. Aliī facēs atque āridam māteriam dē mūrō in aggerem ēminus iaciēbant; picem reliquāsque rēs quibus ignis excitāri potest fundēbant; ut, ⁴ quō prīnum oc- currērētur aut cui rei ferrētur auxilium, vix ratiō inīri posset. Tamen, quod institūtō Caesaris duae semper legiōnēs prō 25 castris excubābant, plūrēsque partītis temporibus erant in opere, celeriter factum est ut aliī ēruptionibus resisterent,

¹cum: correlates with tum, l. 5. ²cuniculō: i.e. 'a mine' running under the agger, which was largely made of wood. ³turrium: i.e. the Roman towers flanking the agger. ⁴quō prīnum occurrerētur: 'where resistance should first be made.'
alii turres reducerent¹ aggeremque interscinderent,² omnis vērō ex castris multitudō ad restinguendum concurreret.

Cæsar praises the valor of the enemy

25. Cum in omnibus locis, cōnsumpťa iam reliquā parte noctis, pugnārētur semperque hostibus spēs victōriae redintegrētur, — ea magis quod deūstōs pluteōs³ turrium ⁵ vidēbant, nec facilē adire apertōs⁴ ad auxiliandum animadvertērant, — semperque ipsī⁶ recentēs défessis succēderent, omnenque Galliae salūtem in illō vēstigiō temporis positam arbitrárentur; ⁶ accidit inspexantibus nōbiī quod dignum memoriā visum praetereundum nōn existimāvimus. Quidam ante portam oppidi Gallus⁷ per manūs sēbī ac picis trāditās glēbās in ignem e regiōne turris prōiciēbat; scorpiōne⁸ ab latere dextrō trāiectus examinātusque concidit. Hunc ex proximis ūnus iacentem trāngressus eōdem illō mūnere fungēbatur; eādem ratiōne ictū scorpiōnis examinātō alterō ¹⁵ successit tertius et tertīō quārtus; nec prius ille est a prō-pugnātōribus vacuus relictus locus quam, restinctō aggere atque omni parte submōtis hostibus, finis est pugnandi factus.

The Gauls prepare to abandon the town, but are dissuaded by the women

26. Omnia expertī Galli, quod rēs nūlla successerat, posterō diē cōnsilium cēpērunt ex oppidō profugere hortante ²⁰ et iubente Vercingetorīge. Iō silentiō noctis cōnāti nōn
magnā iactūrā suōrum sēsē effectūrōs spērābant; propterea quod neque longē ab oppidō castra Vercingetorigis aberant, et palūs perpetua, quae intercēdēbat, Rōmānōs ad insequendum tardābat. Iamque hoc facere noctū adparābant, cum mātrēs familiae repente in públicum prōcurrērunt flentēisque, prōiectae ad pedēs suōrum, omnibus precibus petiērunt nē sē et commūnēs liberōs hostibus ad supplicium dēderent, quōs ad capiendam fugam nātūræ et virium infirmitās impediret. Ubi eōs in sententia perstāre vidērunt, quod plērumque in summō periculō timor misericordiam nōn recipit, conclāmāre et significāre dē fugā Rōmānis coepērunt. Quō timōre perterrīti Galli, nē ab equitātū Rōmānōrum viae praeoccupārentur, cōnsiliō dēstītērunt.

Caesar storms the walls

27. Posterō diē Caesar prōmōtā turri dērēctisque operibus quae facere instituerat, magnō coörtō imbri, nōn inūtilem hanc ad capiendum cōnsilium tempestātem arbitrātus, quod paulō incautius custōdiās in mūrō dispositās vidēbat, suōs quoque languidius in opere versārī iussit, et quid fieri vellet ostendit. Legiōnibusque intrā vineās in occultō expeditis, cohortātus ut aliwandō prō tantis labōribus fructum victōriae perciperent, eis qui prīmi mūrum adscendissent praemia prōposuit militibusque signum dedit. Illi subitō ex omnibus partibus ēvolāvērunt mūrumque celeriter complēvērunt.

Avaricum is taken, and most of the inhabitants are killed

28. Hostēs rē novā perterrīti, mūrō turribusque dēiecti, in forō ac locis patentiōribus cuneātīm cōnstitērunt, hoc

1 suōrum: ‘their husbands.’ 2 eōs: i.e. the Gallic men. 3 Quō timōre: caused by the betrayal of their proposed flight. 4 expeditis: ‘having been stationed.’ 5 adscendissent: implied indirect discourse for the future perfect indicative.
animō ut, 1 si quā ex parte obviam venīrētur, aciē instructā dēpu gnārent. Ubi nēminem in aequum locum sēsē dēmittere, sed tōtō undique mūrō circumfundī 2 vidērunt, veritī nē omnīnō spēs fugae tollerētur, abiectis armīs ultīmās oppidi partēs continentī impetū petivērunt; parsque ibi, cum 5 angustō exitū portārum sē ipsī premerent, ā militibus, pars iam ēgressa portis ab equitibus est interfecta; nec fuit quisquam qui praedae studēret. Sic et 8 Cēnābēnsi caede et labōre operis incitātī nōn aetāte cōnfectis, nōn mulieribus, nōn infantibus pepercērunt. Dēnique ex omni numerō, 10 qui fuit circiter milium XL, vix dccc, qui primō clāmōre auditō sē ex oppidō eiēcerant, incolumēs ad Vercingetorīgēm pervēnērunt.

SUMMARY OF CHAPTERS 29–90

The remaining sixty-two chapters of the seventh book continue the account of the mighty struggle between Cæsar and Vercingetorix, a foe man worthy of his steel. The Gallic chief made a heroic effort to liber ate his country, and was so successful in winning the various tribes to his support that even the Hāeduī, Cæsar’s most faithful allies, revolted and enlisted under his banner.

After the loss of Avaricum, Vercingetorix retired to Gergovia. Cæsar followed, but, even after a most desperate assault, was unable to take the town. The Gauls, much encouraged, held a great council at Bibracte to make plans for finally crushing the Romans. Believing that Cæsar was retreating, they attacked him and suffered a great defeat.

Vercingetorix retired with 80,000 men to Alesia, and to this stronghold Cæsar now laid siege. The account is a terrible one. While the town was suffering all the horrors of starvation, the Gauls gathered a great army of a quarter of a million men to bring it relief. After a hard-fought battle the Gauls were defeated, and the city fell. Plutarch describes the surrender as follows:

1 si quā . . . venīrētur: 'if an attack should be made from any side.'  
2 circumfundī: 'that men were pouring in'; impersonal. 8 Cēnābēnsi caede: see summary of chapters 1–3, p. 175.
"Vercingetorix, who was the chief author of all the war, putting on his best armor, came out of the gate and rode round Cæsar, who was seated; then he dismounted from his horse, threw off his armor, and sat quietly at Cæsar’s feet until he was led away to be reserved for the triumph."

The fate remaining for this gallant patriot, who lacked only success to be hailed as the savior of his country, was to be kept in chains for six years, and then, after being led in Cæsar’s triumphal procession, to be put to death. A gigantic statue in his memory stands to-day on the heights of Alesia (see p. 176). Cæsar’s own narration closes with the surrender of Vercingetorix. The remainder of the story of the Gallic War is told in the eighth book by Cæsar’s faithful officer and friend, Aulus Hirtius.

After the fall of Alesia, sporadic attempts at revolt in various parts of Gaul were put down, and a final rally of the patriotic party at the stronghold of Uxellodunum was crushed. Cæsar then invited the chiefs of the tribes to come to him, told them of the great future that lay before them as members of a splendid imperial state, and gave them magnificent presents. He so impressed them by his gracious clemency that they served him faithfully thereafter, and never again made an effort to recover their independence.
CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR CONSUL
THE CIVIL WAR

BOOK III

CHAPTERS 82–112

THE BATTLE OF PHARSALIA AND THE BEGINNING
OF THE ALEXANDRIAN WAR, 48 B.C.

Pompey joins Scipio in Thessaly

POMPÉIUS paucis post diēbus in Thessaliam pervēnit
cōntiōnātusque apud cūncum exercitum suis agit
grātiās, Scipīonis militēs cohortātur ut partā iam
victōriā praedae ac praemiōrum velint esse participēs, re-
ceptisque omnibus in ūna castra legiōnibus suum cum 5
Scipīone honōrem partitur classicumque apud eum canī et
alterum illi iubet praetōrium tendi.

The soldiers are confident of victory

Auctīs cópiis Pompēi duōbusque magnis exercitibus
coniūntis pristina omnium cōnfirmātur opiniō et spēs
victōriae augētur, adeō ut, quicquid intercēderet temporis, 10
id morāri rēditum in Italiam vidērētur, et, si quandō quid
Pompēius tardius aut cōnsiderātius faceret, ūnius esse
negoṭium diēi, sed illum dēlectāri imperiō et cōnsulārēs
praetōriōsque servōrum habēre numerō dicērent.

They quarrel over the division of the expected booty

Iamque inter sē palam dē praemiis ac sacerdōtiis conten- 15
dēbant in annōsque cōnsulātum dēfinībant, alīt domōs
bonaque eōrum quī in castrīs erant Caesaris petēbant;
magnaque inter eōs in cōnsiliō fuit contrōversia, oportērette Lūcili Hirri, quod is ā Pompēiō ad Parthōs missus esset, proximis comitiis praetōriis absentis rationem habēri, cum eius necessārii fidem implōrārent Pompēi, praestāret quod profici transmitted recēpisset, nē per eius auctōritātem dēceptus vidērētur, reliqui, in labōre pari ac periculō nē unus omnēs antecēderet, recūsārent.

canō, -ere, cecinī, cantus, sing; sound
civīlis, -e, civil; of citizens
classicum, -ī, n., signal; trumpet
cōnsiderātus, -a, -um, part. as adj., with deliberation
cōnsulāris, -e, of consular rank
cōntiōnor, -āri, -ātus, harangue, make an address
dēfiniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, determine
Hirrus, -i, m., Lucilius Hirrus, a follower of Pompey

pariō, -ere, peperī, partus, produce; gain
Parthī, -ōrum, m., the Parthians
particeps, -cipis, m., sharer
praetōrium, -ī, n., a general’s tent
praetōrius, -a, -um, adj., praetorian; masc. as noun, ex-praetor
sacērōtium, -ī, n., priesthood
Scipio, -ōnis, m., Quintus Cæcilius Metellus Pius Scipio, colleague of Pompey
Thessalia, -ae, f., Thessaly

3. partā iam victōriā: ‘as if the victory had already been gained.’
6. apuď eum: ‘at his quarters.’ 7. tendī: ‘to be set up’ (lit. ‘stretched’).
16. in annōs: ‘for succeeding years.’ 18. oportērette Lūcili Hirri . . . absentis rationem habēri: ‘whether Lucilius Hirrus ought to be considered in his absence.’
21. prae-stāret . . . recēpisset: ‘that he should fulfill that which he had guaranteed to him at his departure.’
22. eius: i.e. Pompey’s. 24. recūsārent: ‘made objection.’

The officers revile each other

83. Iam dē sacērōtio Caesaris Domitius, Scipio Spintherque Lentulus cotidiānis contentionibus ad gravissimās verbōrum contumēliās palam dēscendērunt, cum Lentulus aetātis honōrem ostentāret, Domitius urbānam grātiam dignitātemque iactāret, Scipio ad finitāte Pompeī cōnfidēret.
Postulāvit etiam L. Afrāniōnum prōditiōnis exercītūs Acūtius Rūfus apud Pompēium, quod gestum in Hispāniā diceret.

Domitius suggests a plan for future vengeance on their enemies

Et L. Domitius in cōnsiliō dixit placēre sibi bellō cōnfectō
ternās tabellās dāri ad iūdicandum eis qui ordinis essent senā-
tōrii bellōque ūnā cum ipsīs interfuissent, sententiāsque dē 10
singulis ferrent quī Rōmae remānsissent quīque intrā praesi-
dia Pompēī fuissent neque operam in rē militāri praestitissent;
ūnam fore tabellam quī liberandōs omni periculō cēnsērent;
alteram quī capitis damnārent; tertiam quī pecūniā multārent.

In their greed for spoils they forget that the victory is yet to be won

Postrēmō omnēs aut dē honōribus suis aut dē praemiis 15
peciniaē aut dē sequendorīs inimicītīs agēbant, nec quibus
ratōnibus superāre possent, sed quem ad modum ūtī victorīā
dēbērent cōgitābant.

Acūtius, -ī, m., Acutius Rufus, mentioned only here

multō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, punish (by
fine)

Afrāniōnum, -ī, m., Lucius Afranius,
a lieutenant of Pompey

senātōrium, -a, -um, senatorial

Spinther, -eris, m., Publius Corne-
lius Lentulus Spinther, one of
Pompey’s officers

Domitius, -ī, m., Lucius Domitius
Ahenobarbus, a supporter of
Pompey

tabella, -ae, f., tablet, ballot

1. sacerdōtīō: Cæsar’s office as pontifex maximus.  3. cum . . . osten-
tāret: ‘Lentulus urging the respect due to his age.’  4. urbānam grātiam
dignitātemque: ‘his influence and standing in the city.’  5. ad finitāte:
Pompey had married Scipio’s daughter.  6. Postulāvit . . . exercītūs;
‘accused of betraying the army.’  9. ad iūdicandum: ‘for voting.’
10. sententiās . . . quī: ‘that they should express their opinions on each
one of those who’ etc. The antecedent of quī is (ēs) singulīs.  13. liber-
randōs: refers to quī Rōmae remānsissent etc.  14. qui capitis damnā-
rent: ‘who would inflict the death penalty.’ With verbs of condemning
etc. the penalty is expressed sometimes by the genitive (as capitis) and
sometimes by the ablative (as pecūniā in the same line).—quī pecūniā
Caesar vainly offers battle several days in succession

84. Rē frumentāriā praeparātā cōnfīrmātīisque militibus et satis longō spatīō temporis a Dyrrachīnīs proeliīs inter-
missō, quō satis perspectum habēre militum animum vidērētur, tentandum Caesar existimāvit quidnam Pompeīus
5 prōpositī aut voluntātis ad dimicandum habēret. Itaque ex castrīs exercitum ēdūxit, aciemque ĭnstrūxit, primō suīs
locīs paulōque ā castrīs Pompeī longius, continentibus vērō
diēbus ut prōgrederētur ā castrīs suīs collibusque Pompeīānis
acie subiceret. Quae rēs in diēs cōnfīrmātiōrem eius
10 exercitum efficiēbat.

Being inferior in cavalry, he trains a mixed force of
light-armed infantry and horse

Superius tamen institūtum in equītibus, quod dēmōnstrā-
vimus, servābat, ut, quoniam numerō multīs partibus esset
inferior, adulēscentēs atque expeditōs ex antesignānīs ēlēctīs
ad pernicītātem armīs inter equītēs proeliāriī iubēret, qui
15 cotidiānā cōnsuētūdine ūsum quoque eīs generīs proeliōrum
perciperent. His erat rēbus effectum ut equītum mille etiam
apertiōribus locīs vīī milīum Pompeīānōrum impetum, cum
adesset ūsus, sustīnēre audērent neque magnopere eōrum
multītūdine terrērentur. Namque etiam per eōs diēs proe-
20 lium secundum equestre fēcit atque ūnum Allobrogem ex
duōbus quōs perfūgisse ad Pompeīum suprā docuimus cum
quibusdam interfēcit.

antesignānus, -ī, m., a soldier fighting
ing in the first line
Dyrrachīnus, -a, -um, of Dyrrachium

pernicītās, -ātis, f., swiftness
Pompeīānus, -a, -um, of Pompey
tentō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, make trial

3. quō . . . vidērētur: a descriptive clause. The antecedent of quō is
spatīō. 4. quidnam . . . habēret: 'what purpose or wish Pompey entertained
for the combat.' 6. suis locis: 'ground of his own choosing.' 7. conti-
mentibus vérō diēbus: 'but during successive days'; contrasting with
primō above. 8. collibus Pompeianis: 'the hills occupied by Pompey's
men.' 11. Superius . . . institūtum: 'the former arrangement.' 12. ut
. . . iubēret: in apposition with institūtum. 13. elēctis ad pernicītātem
armīs: 'equipment chosen with reference to speed' (i.e. light armor).
16. perciperent: 'acquired.' 21. supra docuiam: 'I have said above'
(i.e. in a preceding chapter).

Despairing of a battle, Caesar decides to break camp

85. Pompeius, qui castra in colle habēbat, ad infimās
rādicēs montis aciem instruēbat, semper, ut vidēbātur,
exspectāns, si inīquīs locīs Caesar sē subiceret. Caesar,
nullā ratione ad pugnam ēlici posse Pompeium existimāns,
hanc sibi commodissimam belli rationem iūdicāvit, uti castra 5
ex eō locō movēret semperque esset in itineribus, haec
spectāns, ut movendīs castrīs pluribusque adeundīs locīs
commodiōre rē frumentāriā úterētur, simulque in itinere ut
aliquam occasiōnem dimicandi nanciscerētur et insolitum ad
labōrem Pompeī exercitum cotidiānīs itineribus dēfatigāret.

Pompey unexpectedly offers battle. Caesar addresses his troops
and leads them forth

His cōnstitūtis rēbus signō iam profectionīs datō tabernāculīsque dētēnsīs, animadversum est paulō ante extrā
cotidiānam consuētūdinem longius ā vāllō esse aciem Pompeī
prōgressam, ut nōn inīquō locō posse dimicāri vidērētur.
Tunc Caesar apud suōs, cum iam esset agmen in portīs, 15
"Differendum est," inquit, "iter in praeSENTIā nōbis et dē
proelīō cōgitandum, sicut semper dēposscimus. Animō
simus ad dimicandum parāti; nōn facile occasiōnem posteā
reperiēmus"; cōnfestimque expeditās cōpiās ēdūcit.
THE CIVIL WAR—BOOK III

dētentō, -ere, -tendī, -tēnsus, take

down (a tent) (lit. unstretch)

ēlicēō, -licere, -licēi, -licētus, entice
tunc, adv., then, thereupon, forthwith

dî subicēret: 'would advance' ('would expose himself').

6. semperque... itineribus: 'keep constantly on the move.'

8. commodiōre...

ūterētur: 'avail himself of supplies more advantageously.'

12. extrā: 'contrary to.'

14. nōn iniquō: i.e. to Caesar.

Pompey, relying on his cavalry, is confident of an easy victory.

He explains his plan of attack

86. Pompēius quoque, ut posteā cognitum est, suōrum omnium hortātū statuerat proeliō dēcētāre. Namque etiam in cōnsiliō superiōribus diēbus dixerat, prīusquam concurrerent aciēs, fore uti exercitus Caesaris pellerētur. Id cum essent plēriōque admirāti, "Sciō mē," inquit, "paene incrēdībilem rem policēri; sed ratiōnem cōnsili mei accipite, quō firmōre animō in proelium prōdeātis. Persuāsi equītibus nostrīs, idque mihi factūrōs cōnfirmāvērunt, ut, cum propius sit accessum, dextrum Caesaris cornū ab latere apertō adgrederentur et circumventā ab tergō aciē prium perturbātum exercitum pellerent quam ā nōbis tēlum in hostem iacerētur. Ita sine periculō legiōnum et paene sine volnere bellum cōnficiēmus. Id autem difficīle nōn est, cum tantum equitātū valeāmus." Simul dēnūntiāvit ut essent animō parāti in posterum et, quoniam fieret dimicandi potestās, ut saepe cōgitāvissent, nē ūsū manūque reliquōrum opinīōnem fallerent.

7. quō... prōdeātis: clause of purpose.

9. sit accessum: impersonal.

10. prius: to be construed with quam. 15. in posterum: 'for the future.' — ut: 'as.' 16. ūsū manūque: i.e. in the actual test of their prowess; opposed to cōgitāvissent. — reliquōrum: 'the rest' (of their comrades who were not present).
Labienus follows, and speaks with contempt of Caesar's army


All swear never to return to camp unless victorious

Haec cum dixisset, iürávit sé nisi vícíorem in castra nón reversúrum, reliqüóisque ut idem facerent hortátus est. Hoc 15 laudāns Pompéi ìdem iürávit; nec vérō ex reliquis fuit quisquam qui iüráre dubitáret. Haec cum facta sunt in cónsilió, magná spé et laetitía omnium discersum est; ac iam animó victórìam praecipièbant, quod dè re tantá et à tam perítò imperátore nihil frústrá cónfírmári vidébatur. 20

autumnus, -i, m., autumn
Brundisium, -i, n., Brundisium, a
seaport in southern Italy
laetitia, -ae, f., gladness, joy
pestilencia, -ae, f., scourge, pesti-
Tránspadánus, -a, -um, dwelling
across the Po

1. excépit: 'followed' (in speaking). — cum ... déspiceret (et) efferet: 'while he depreciated ... (and) extolled.' 3. qui ... dévicerit: clause of description. 9. continénti: i.e. Italy. — ex eis: construe with esse factás. 13. quod fuit röboris: 'what strength there was'; röboris, partitive genitive. 18. discersum est: impersonal, but translate, 'they departed,'
Formation of Pompey's line of battle


15 Dextrum cornū eius rīvus quīdam impeditis ripis mūniēbat; quam ob causam cūncum equitātum, sagittāriōs funditōrēsque omnēs sinistrō cornū obiēcerat.

beneficiārius, -i, m., a soldier exempt
Ciliciēnsis, -e, Cilician
from menial duties; a favorite
Syriacus, -a, -um, of Syria

Formation of Caesar's line of battle

89. Caesar superius institūtum servāns decimam legiōnem in dextrō cornū, nōnam in sinistrō conlocāverat, tametsi erat Dyrrachīnis proeliiis vehementer attenuāta, et huic sic adiūn-xit octāvam, ut ūnae ūnam ex duābus efficeret, atque alteram alterī praesiōdō esse iusserat. Cohortēs in aciē lxxx
EXPLANATION

POMPEY'S LINE OF BATTLE

a Two legions turned over to Pompey by Caesar before the Civil War began
b The center, commanded by Scipio
c The right wing, consisting of the Cilician legion in conjunction with the cohorts brought from Spain by Afranius
d The remaining cohorts
e A river
f The left wing, consisting of the cavalry commanded by Labienus, the archers and slingers
g Pompey
h Pompey's camp, guarded by seven cohorts

CAESAR'S LINE OF BATTLE

1 The right wing, consisting of the tenth legion, commanded by Sulla
2 The center, commanded by Domitius
3 The left wing, consisting of the eighth and ninth legions, commanded by Antony
4 The fourth line, of six cohorts, designed to protect the right wing against Pompey's cavalry
5 Caesar, opposite Pompey
6 Caesar's camp, guarded by two cohorts

THE BATTLE OF PHARSALIA, 48 B.C.
201
THE CIVIL WAR — BOOK III

cōnstitūtās habēbat, quae summa erat milium xxii; cohortēs
duās castris praesidiō reliquerat. Sinistrō cornū Antōnium,
dextrō P. Sullam, mediā aciē Cn. Domitianum praeposuerat.
Ipse contrā Pompēium cōnstitit. Simul his rēbus animad-
versis quās dēmōnstrāvimus, timēns nē a multitūdine equitum
dextrum cornū circumvenīretur, celeriter ex tertīa aciē sin-
gulās cohortēs dētrāxit atque ex his quārtam instituit equitā-
tuique opposuit, et quid fieri vellet ostendit, monuitque eius
dieī victōriam in eārum cohortium virtūte cōnstāre. Simul
tertiae aciē tōtique exercituī imperāvit nē iniussū suō con-
curreret; sē, cum id fieri vellet, vēxillō signum datūrum.

Antōnium, -i, m., Marcus Antonius,
the famous triumvir; served in
the Civil War under Cæsar and
was one of his active partisans
attenuō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, make
thin; lessen

cōnstō, -stāre, -stīti, -stātūrus, līt.
stand together; cōnstat, depend
upon (with in)

Sulla, -ae, m., Publius Cornelius
Sulla, an officer of Cæsar; nephew
of Sulla, the great dictator

8. praeposuerat: 'had placed in command.' We should expect datives
with the accusatives. 14. cōnstāre: 'depended upon.'

Cæsar reminds his men of his efforts for peace, then gives the
signal for battle

90. Exercitum cum militāri mōre ad pugnam cohortārētur
suaque in eum perpetui temporis officia praedicāret, imprīmis
commemorāvit 'testibus sē militibus útī posse quantō studiō
pācem petisset; quae per Vatiniōm in conloquiīs, quae per
5 Aulum Clōdium cum Scipīōne ēgisset; quibus modis ad
Ōricum cum Libōne dē mittendis lēgātīs contendisset. Neque
sē umquam abūtī militum sanguine neque rem pūblicam
alterūrō exercitū privāre voluisse.' Hāc habitā ōrātiōne
exposcentibus militibus et studiō pugnae ārdentibus, tubā
10 signum dedit.
CÆSAR AND POMPEY IN GREECE 203

abōtor, -ōtī, -ōsus, sacrifice Öricum, -ī, n., Oricum, a town of Illyricum
alteruter, -tra, -trum, either
Libō, -onis, m., Lucius Scribonius Vatinius, -ī, m., Publius Vatinius,
Libo, father-in-law of Sextus a subordinate of Cæsar
Pompey

2. sua . . . officia: 'his constant services to it.' 3. testibus . . . posse: 'he could call his soldiers to witness.' 4. in conloquiis: 'to gain a conference' (with Labienus). 6. contendisset: 'he had striven.'

Heroism of Crāstinus, a veteran volunteer

tārii eiusdēm centuriae sunt prósecūti.

centuria, -ae, f., century, a company of nominally a hundred men
Crāstinus, -ī, m., Crætins
hodiē, adv., to-day
manipulāris, -īs, m., comrade (of the same maniple)
voluntārius, -ī, m., volunteer

2. prīnum pīlum . . . dúxerat: 'had been primipilus' etc. 5. quam . . . date: 'exert yourselves as you have resolved' (lit. 'give the service which you have resolved upon'). 6. ille: i.e. Cæsar. 8. ut . . . agās: 'that you will thank me whether alive or dead.'

Pompey does not charge, but awaits Caesar's attack

92. Inter duās aciēs tantum erat relictum spati, ut satis esset ad concursum utriusque exercitūs. Sed Pompēius suis praedixerat ut Caesaris impetum exciperent nēve sē locō
204  THE CIVIL WAR — BOOK III

movērent, aciemque eius distrahi paterentur; idque admonītū 5 C. Triārī fēcisse dicēbātur, ut primus excursus visque mili-
tum infringerētur aciēsque distenderētur, atque in suis ōrdi-
nibus dispositi dispersōs adorīrentur; leviusque cāsūra pila
spērābat in locō retentis miliibus quam si ipsi immissis
tēlis occurrissent; simul fore ut duplicātō cursū Caesaris
10 miliēs examinārentur et lassitūdine cōnferīrentur.

He is criticized for so doing

Quod nōbis quidem nūllā ratīōne factum ā Pompeīō vidētur,
propterea quod est quaedam animi incitātiō atque alacrītās
nātūraliter innāta omnibus, quae studiō pugnae incidunt.
Hanc nōn reprimere, sed augēre imperātōrēs dēbent; neque
5 ūstrā antiquitus institūtum est ut signa undique concinrent
clāmōremque universi tollerent; quibus rēbus et hostēs ter-
rērī et suōs incitāri existimāverunt.

admonītus, -ūs, m., advice
concinō, -ere, -ui, ——, sound to-
gether
distendō, -ere, -endi, -entus,
stretch out; break
excursus, -ūs, m., dash
incitātiō, -onis, f., enthusiasm
infringō, -ere, -frēgī, -frōctus, break
innātus, -ā, -um, part. of innāscor,
inborn
nātūraliter, adv., naturally
praedicō, -ere, -dīxi, -dīctus, say
.beforehand; command before-
hand, advise
Triārius, -ī, m., Caius Valerius
Triarius

3. ut . . . exciperent: 'to await Cæsar's attack.' 4. distrahi: 'to be
thrown into disorder.' 6. in . . . dispositi: 'and that they (i. e. the Pom-
peians) remaining in their ranks.' 7. leviusque . . . spērābat: 'he
hoped that the javelins would fall with less effect' (lit. 'more lightly').
8. retentis miliibus: ablative absolute with conditional force. — immissis
. . . occurrissent: 'should charge against the missiles that were hurled
against them.' 11. nōbis: 'to me,' i. e. Cæsar.— nūllā ratīōne: 'with
no good reason.' 13. nātūraliter . . . omnibus: 'implanted by nature
in all.' 14. neque . . . institūtum est: 'nor was it a vain institution of
our ancestors.'
Caesar’s men advance, halt to get breath, then charge

93. Sed nostri militēs datō signō cum infēstis pilis prō-
cucurrissent atque animadvertissent nōn concurri ā Pompēiā-
nis, úsū periti ac superiōribus pugnis exercitāti suā sponte
cursum repressērunt et ad medium ferē spatium cōnstitērunt,
nē cōnsūmpsis viribus adpropinquārent, parvōque intermissō 5
temporis spatiō ac rūrsus renovātō cursū pila misērunt cele-
riterque, ut erat praeeptum ā Caesare, gladiōs strinxērunt.

Pompey’s infantry receives the attack bravely. His cavalry
attempts a flank movement

Neque vērō Pompēiāni huic rei défuērunt. Nam et tēla
missa excēpērunt et impetum legiōnum tulērunt et ōrdinēs
cōnservārunt pilisque missis ad gladiōs rediērunt. Eōdem 10
tempore equitēs ab sinistrō Pompēi cornū, ut erat imperā-
tum, ūniversalē prōcucurrērunt, omnisquē multitūdō sagittā-
riōrum sē prōfūdit; quōrum impetum noster equitātus nōn
tulit, sed paulātim locō mōtus cessit; equitēsque Pompēi
hōc ācrius instāre et sē turmātim explicāre aciemque nostram 15
ā latere apertō circumire coeptērunt.

Caesar’s fourth line stampedes Pompey’s cavalry, destroys the archers
and slingers, and attacks the left wing in the rear

Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, quārtae aciēi, quam įnstitu-
erat sex cohortium, dedit signum. Illī celeriter prōcucurrē-
runt infēstisque signis tantā vi in Pompēi equītēs impetum
fēcērunt ut eōrum nēmō cōnsisteret omnēsque conversī nōn 20
sōlum locō excēderent, sed prōtinus incitāti fugā montēs
altissimēs pterent. Quibus submōtis omnēs sagittāriī fun-
ditōrēsque dēstitūti inermēs sine praesidiō interfectī sunt.
Eōdem impetū cohortēs sinistrum cornū pungantibus etiam
tum ac resistentibus in aciē Pompēiānis circumiērunt eōsque
ā tergō sunt adortī.

explīcō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, unfold; extend
prōfundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsus, with
śe, rush forward

Infēstus, -a, -um, hostile; in hos-
tile array, i.e. with weapons and
standards advanced
stringō, -ere, strīnxi, strictus,
draw
turmātim, adv., by squadrons

1. cum: conjunction. 2. concurrī: impersonal. 3. ēsū . . . exer-
citāti: 'skilled through practice and trained in former battles.' 8. huic
rei défuērunt: 'lack resources to meet these tactics.' 24. etiam tum:
'even under these circumstances.'

Caesar's third line enters the action. Pompey's infantry
breaks and flies

94. Eōdem tempore tertiam aciem Caesar, quae quiēta
fuerat et śe ad id tempus locō tenuerat, prōcurrere iussit.
Ita cum recentēs atque integri dēfessīs successissent, aliī
autem ā tergō adorirentur, sustinēre Pompēiānī nōn potuē-
5 runt atque ūniversi terga vertērunt. Neque vērō Caesarem
fēfellit, quin ab eīs cohortibus quae contrā equītātum in
quārtā aciē conlocātae essent, initium victōriae orīrētur, ut
ipse in cohortandīs militibus prōnūntiāverat. Ab his enim
prīmum equītātus est pulsus, ab eīsdem factae caedēs sagit-
10 tāriōrum ac funditōrum, ab eīsdem aciēs Pompēiāna ā sinistrā
parte circumiēt atque initium fugae factum.

Pompey quits the field, flees to the camp, and retires into his
tent in utter despair

Sed Pompēius, ut equītātum suum pulsum vidit atque
eam partem cui maximē cōnfidēbat perterritum animadvertit,
aliis quoque diffīsus aciē excessit prōtinusque śe in castra
equō contulit et eis centuriōnibus quōs in statione ad praetō-15
riam portam posuerat, clārē, ut militēs exaudirent, "Tuēmini,"
inquit, "castra et défendite diligenter, si quid dúrius acci-
derit. Ego reliquās portās circumeō et castrōrum praesidia
cōnfirmō." Haec cum dixisset, sē in praetōrium contulit
summae rei diffidēns et tamen ēventum exspectāns. 20

clārē, adv., loudly, clearly, dis-
diffidō, -ere, -fīsus sum, distrust,
tinctly not have confidence

3. dēfessis successissent: 'had come to the support of those who were
exhausted.' 5. Caesarem fēfellit: 'escape Cōser's notice.' 7. ut: 'as.'
12. ut: 'when.' 14. aliis ... diffusus: 'having no confidence in the
others.' 17. si quid dúrius acciderit: 'if it goes too hard with us.'
18. circumeō: translate as future; also cōnfirmō. 20. summae rei diffi-
dēns: 'apprehensive of the issue.'

Cesar follows up his advantage and attacks the camp

95. Caesar Pompēiānīs ex fugā intrā vāllum compulsis
nullum spatium perterritus dare oportēre existimāns, militēs
cohortātus est ut beneficiō fortūnae ūterentur castraque
oppugnārent. Quī, etsī magnō aestū (nam ad meridiem rēs
erat perducta), tamen ad omnem labōrem animō parāti 5
imperiō pāruērunτ.

The camp is taken and its defenders flee

Castra ē cohortibus quae ibi praesidiō erant relictae in-
dustriē défendēbantur, multō etiam ācrius a Thrācibus bar-
barisque auxiliis. Nam qui aciē refugerant militēs, et animō
perterriti et lassitūdine cônfecit, missis plērique armis signis-
que militāribus, magis dē reliquā fugā quam dē castrōrum
defēnsione cōgitābant. Neque vērō diūtius qui in vāllō
cōnstiterant multitūdinem tēlōrum sustinēre potuērunt, sed
cōnfecit volneribus locum reliquērunt, prōtinusque omnēs
ducibus ùsi centuriönibus tribünisque militum in altissimós montés, qui ad castra pertinébant, cōnfugérunt.

cōnfugiō, -ere, -fugi, ——, flee, industriē, adv., with energy

take refuge

Thrāx, -ācia, m., a Thracian

3. beneficiō: 'favor.' 4. magnō aestū: ablative absolute. — rēs erat perducta: 'the contest had been prolonged.' 15. ducibus . . . tribünis-
que: 'under the leadership of the centurions and tribunes.'

Luxurious appointments of the camp

96. In castris Pompēi vidēre licuit trichilās struētās, magnum argenti pondus expositum, recentibus caespitibus tabernācula cōnstrāta, Lūci etiam Lentuli et nōn nūllorum tabernācula prōtēcta hederā, multaque praetereā quae nimiam lūxuriam et victōriæ fidūciam désignārent, ut facile existi-
māri posset nihil eōs dē ēventū eius dīēi timuisset, quī nōn necessāriās conquirerent voluptātēs. At hī miserrimō ac patientissimō exercitui Caesaris lūxuriam obiciēbant, cui semper omnia ad necessārium usum défiuissent.

Pompey with thirty horsemen escapes to the coast and embarks

10 Pompēius, iam cum intra vallum nostrī versārentur, equum nactus dētrāctīs insignibus imperātōris decumānā portā sē ex castris ēiecit prōtínusque equō citātō Lārisam contendit. Neque ibi cōnstitit, sed eādem celeritāte paucīs suōs ex fugā nactus, nocturnō itinere nōn intermissō, comitātū
15 equitum xxx ad mare pervēnit nāvemque frūmentāriam cōnscondit, saepe, ut dicēbātur, querēns tantum sē opinīōnem fefellisse, ut, ā quō genere hominum victōriam spērāset, ab eō initiō fugae factō paene prōditus vidērētur.

comitātus, -ūs, m., attendance; cōnstrātus, -a, -um, part. of cōn-

c company sternō, covered over, paved
Cæsar and Pompey in Greece

hedera, -ae, f., ivy
Larisa, -ae, f., Larissa, a town in Thessaly
Lentulus, -i, m., Lucius Cornelius Lentulus
nimius, -a, -um, excessive
protēctus, -a, -um, part. of protēgo, shielded
struō, -ere, struxi, structus, erect, build
trichila, -ae, f., arbor, summer-house


Cæsar, leaving a guard at Pompey's camp and his own, pursues the retreating enemy with four legions

97. Caesar castris potitus, á militibus contendit nē in praedā occupātī reliqui negōti gerendi facultātem dimitterent. Quā rē impertrātā montem opere circummūnire instituit. Pompēiānī, quod is mōns erat sine aquā, diffisi eī locō, relictō monte, ūniversi iugis eius Lārisam versus sē recipere coepērunt. Quā rē animadversā Cæsar cōpiās suās divisit partemque legiōnum in castris Pompēī remanēre iussit, partem in sua castra remisit, IIII sēcūm legiōnēs dūxit commodiō-reque itinere Pompēiānīs occurrere coepit et prōgressus milia passuum VI aciem instrūxit.

He besieges the remnants of Pompey's army on a mountain

Pauci ordinis senatórii, qui sē cum eis coniünxerant, nocte fugā salūtem petivērunt.

agor, -āri, -ātus sum, get water subluō, -ere, —, -lūtus, flow at sēclūdō, -ere, -clūsi, -clūsus, shut off the foot of

1. ā militibus contendit: 'earnestly entreated the soldiers.' 2. reliqui negoti gerendi: 'of finishing the business.' 5. iugis eīus: 'along its ridges.' 9. Pompēianiās occurrere coepit: 'started to intercept the Pompeians.'

They surrender and are pardoned. Caesar goes to Larissa

98. Caesar primā lūce omnēs eōs qui in monte cōnsēderant ex superiōribus locis in plānitium dēscendere atque arma prōicere iussit. Quod ubi sine recūsātiōne fēcērunt passisque palmis prōiecti ad terram flentēs ab eō salūtem petivērunt, cōnsōlātus cōnsurgere iussit et paucus apud eōs dē lēnitāte suā locūtus, quō minōre essent timōre, omnēs cōnservāvit, militibusque suis commendāvit, nē qui eōrum violārētur, neu quid sui désiderārent. Hāc adhibitā diligentiā ex castris sibi legiōnēs aliās occurrere et eās quās sēcum dūxerat in vicem requiēscere atque in castra revertī iussit, eōdemque diē Lārisam pervēnit.

recūsātiō, -onis, f., refusal, objection requiēscō, -ere, -quiēvi, -quiētus, rest

4. passisque palmis: 'and with outstretched hands.' 5. paucā . . . locūtus: 'speaking briefly.' 6. quō . . . timōre: 'to alleviate their fear'; quō being equivalent to ut and timōre being ablative of description. 8. neu quid sui désiderārent: 'and that they should not suffer any loss'; sui, partitive genitive.

Caesar's losses

99. In eō proeliō non amplius cc militēs désiderāvit, sed centurionēs, fortēs virōs, circiter xxx āmisit. Interfectus est etiam fortissimē pugnāns Crāstinus, cuius
mentionem suprā fēcimus, gladiō in ὦς adversum coniectō. Neque id fuit falsum quod ille in pugnam proficiscēns dixerat. Sic enim Caesar existimābat eō proeliō excellen-
tissimam virtūtem Crāstini fuisse, optimēque eum dē sē meritum iūdicābat.

Pompey’s losses

Ex Pompēiānō exercitu circiter milia xv cecidisse vidēbantur, sed in dēditionem vēnērunt amplius milia xxiii 10 (namque etiam cohortēs quae praesidiō in castellis fuerant sēsē Sullae dēdidērunt), multi praeterea in finitimās civitātēs refugērunt; signaque militāria ex proeliō ad Caesarem sunt relāta clxxx et aquilae viii. L. Domitius ex castris in montem refugiēns, cum virēs eum lassitūdine dēfēcissent, ab equitibus est interfactus.

excellēns, -entis, part. of excellō, falsus, -a, -um, untrue
mentiō, -onis, f., mention

1. dēsiderāvit: ‘he suffered the loss of’ (lit. ‘he missed’). 4. gladiō
... coniectō: ‘struck right in the face by a sword.’ 5. quod ... dixerat:
in chapter 91. 7. optimē ... meritum: ‘that he had most excellently
served his (Caesar’s) interests.’

Caesar pursues Pompey into Macedonia, where the latter tries to
raise an army

102.1 Caesar omnibus rēbus relictis perse quendum sibi
Pompēium existimāvit, quāscumque in partēs sē ex fugā
recēpisset, nē rūrsus cōpiās comparāre aliās et bellum
renovāre posset, et, quantumcumque itineris equitātū efficere
poterat, cotidiē prōgrediēbatur, legiōnemque ūnam minōribus 5
itineribus subsequi iussit. Erat ēdictum Pompēi nōmine
Amphipoli prōpositum, uti omnēs eius prōvinciae iūniōrēs,
Graeci civēsque Rōmānī, iūrandī causā convenīrent. Sed

1 Chapters 100 and 101 are omitted.
THE CIVIL WAR — BOOK III

utrum avertendae suspiciōnis causā Pompeius prōposuisset, ut quam diūtissimē longiōris fugae cōnsilium occultāret, an novis dēlectibus, si nēmō premeret, Macedoniam tenēre cōnārētur, existimāri nōn poterat.

At Caesar's approach Pompey sails from Amphipolis

Ipse ad ancoram ūnā nocte cōnstitit et, vocātīs ad sē Amphipoli hospitibus et pecūniā ad necessāriōs sūmptūs corrogātā, cognitō Caesaris adventū, ex eō locō discessit et Mytilēnās paucīs diēbus vēnit. Biduum tempestaē retentus nāvibusque aliis additis āctūāris in Ciliciam atque inde Cyprum pervēnit.

At Cyprus he learns that Antioch is closed against him. Rhodes too is hostile

Ibi cognōscit cōnsēnsū omnium Antiochēnsium civiumque Rōmānōrum quī illic negotiārentur arcem captam esse excludendī sui causā, nūntiōsque dimissōs ad eōs quī sē ex fugā in fīnitīmās cīvitātēs recēpisse dicerentur, nē Antiochiam adirent; id si fēcissent, magnō eōrum capitis periculō futūrum. Idem hoc L. Lentulō, quī superiōre annō cōnsul fuerat, et P. Lentulō cōnsulāri ac nōn nūllis aliis acciderat Rhōdī; quī cum ex fugā Pompēium sequentur atque in insulam vēnissent, oppidō ac portū recepti nōn erant missisque ad eōs nūntiis ut ex his locis discēderent, contra voluntātem suam nāvēs solvērunt. Iamque dē Caesāris adventū fāma ad cīvitātēs perferēbātur.

āctūāris, -a, -um, fast-sailing
Amphipolis, -is, -i, a city of Macedonía
Antiochēnsis, -e, adj., of Antioch; masc. as noun, an inhabitant of Antioch

Antiochia, -ae, f., Antioch, capital of Syria
Cilicia, -ae, f., Cilicia, a district of southeastern Asia Minor
corrogō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, collect, obtain by soliciting
CAESAR'S PURSUIT OF POMPEY

Cyprus, -I, f., Cyprus, an island near Cilicia
quantumcumque, -icumque, n., however much
ecdictum, -I, n., edict
Rhodos, -I, f., Rhodes, an island
Macedonia, -ae, f., Macedonia
in the Aegean Sea, about twelve miles south of Caria in south-
Mytilène, -ārum, f., Mytilene, the chief city of the island of Lesbos
western Asia Minor


Provided with men and money he sails from Cyprus for Pelusium, a city on the easternmost mouth of the Nile

103. Quibus cognitis rēbus Pompēius, dēpositō adeundae Syriae cōnsiliō, pecūniā societātis sublātā et ā quibusdam privatīs sūmptā et aēris magnō pondere ad militārem úsum in nāvēs impositō duōbusque milibus hominum armātis, partim quōs ex familiis societātum dēlēgerat, partim ā 5 negōtiātōribus coēgerat, quōs ex suis quisque ad hanc rem idōneōs existimābat, Pēlusium pervēnit.

Through envoys Pompey begs Ptolemy, king of Egypt, for asylum in Alexandria

Ibi cāsū rēx erat Ptolemaeus, puer aetāte, magnis copiis cum sorōre Cleopatra bellum gerēns, quam paucīs ante mēnsibus per suōs propinquōs atque amīcōs rēgnō expulerat; 10 castraque Cleopatrae nōn longō spatiō ab eius castris distābant. Ad eum Pompēius misit, ut, prō hospitiō atque amīcitiā patris, Alexandriā recipērētur atque illius opibus in calamitāte tegerētur.
The envoys arouse suspicion by talking with the king's troops

15 Sed qui ab eō missī erant, condolētō lēgātiōnis officiō, liberius cum militibus rēgis conloquī coepērunt eōisque hortāri ut suum officium Pompēiō praestārent nēve eius fortūnam déspicerent. In hōc erant numerō complūrēs Pompēi mīlitēs, quōs ex eius exercitū acceptōs in Syriā Gabīnius Alexandriam trāduxerat bellōque condolētō apud Ptolemaeum, patrem puerī, reliquerat.

Alexandria, -ae, f., Alexandria, capital of Egypt
Cleopatra, -ae, f., Cleopatra, the famous Egyptian queen
Gabīnius, -i, m., Aulus Gabīnius, an officer of Cæsar
negōtiātōr, -ōris, m., business man
Pēlúsium, -i, n., Pelusium, a city on the Nile
Ptolemaeus, -i, m., Ptolemy, Egyptian king
societās, -ātīs, f., esp. pūblicānōrum, guild of revenue collectors
Syria, -ae, f., Syria

2. pecūniā . . . sūmptā: 'taking money from the tax collectors' guild and exacting it from certain private citizens.' 5. ex familīis: 'from the slaves.' 6. ex suis: 'of his friends.' 8. aētāte: ablative of respect. 11. spatiō: ablative of measure of difference. 15. qui: the antecedent is the subject understood of coepērunt.—ab eō: i.e. by Pompey.

The king's advisers act treacherously

104. His tunc cognitīs rēbus amīci rēgis, qui propter aetātem eīus in cūrātiōne erant rēgni, sive timōre adductī, ut posteā praedicābant, sollicitātō exercitū rēgiō, nē Pompēiūs Alexandriām Aegyptumque occupāret, sive dēspectā eīus fortūnā, ut plērumque in calamitāte ex amicīs inimīcī existīunt, his qui erant ab eō missī palam liberālīter respondērunt eumque ad rēgem venīre iussērunt; ipsī clam cōnsiliō initō Achillam, praefectum rēgium, singulāri hominem audāciā, et L. Septimium, tribūnūm militūm, ad interficiendum Pompēium misērunt.
Pompey is murdered

Ab his liberāliter ipse appellātus et quādam nōtitiā Septimī prōductus, quod bellō praeđōnum apud eum ōrdinem duξerat, nāviculam parvulam cōnscondit cum paucis suis; ibi ab Achillā et Septimīō interfectur. Item L. Lentulus comprehenditur ab rēge et in custōdiā necātur.

Achillās, -ae, m., Achillas, a pre-fect of the young Ptolemy praeđō, -ōnis, m., robber, pirate rēgius, -a, -um, royal Septimius, -i, m., Lucius Sep-timius

Aegyptus, -i, f., Egypt cūrātiō, -onis, f., management


Caesar arrives in Asia and prevents the pillage of Diana’s temple at Ephesus

105. Caesar, cum in Asian vēnisset, reperiēbat T. Ampium cōnātum esse pecūniās tollere Ephesō ex fānō Diānae eius-que rei causā senātōrēs omnēs ex prōvinciā évocāsse, ut his testibus in summā pecūniās ūterētur, sed interpellātum ad-ventū Caesaris prōfūgisse. Ita duōbus temporibus Ephesiae 5 pecūniāe Caesar auxilium tult.

Strange events occur on the day of Caesar’s victory

Item cōnstābat Élide in templō Minervae, repetitis atque ēnumerātīs diēbus, quō diē proelium secundum Caesar fē-cisset, simulācrum Victōriae, quod ante ipsam Minervam conlocātum esset et ante ad simulacrum Minervae spectāvis-set, ad valvās sē templī limenque convertisse. Eōdemque
diec Antiochiae in Syriā bis tautus exercitūs clāmor et signōrum sonus exauditus est, ut in mūris armāta civitās discurreret. Hoc idem Ptolemāide accidit. Pergami in occultis ac reconditis templī, quō praeter sacerdōtēs adire fās nōn est, quae Graeci ādvra appellant, tympana sonuērunt. Item Trallibus in templō Victōriae, ubi Caesaris statuam cōnsecrāverant, palma per eōs diēs inter coāgmenta lapidum ex pavimentō exstītisse ostendēbātur.

Ampius, -ī, m., Titus Ampius Balbus, a friend of Pompey
Asia, -ae, f., Asia Minor
cōāgmentum, -ī, n., joint
çonsecrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, make sacred
Diāna, -ae, f., Diana, the goddess
discurrō, -ere, -currī, -currūrus, run to and fro
Ēlis, -idis, f., Elis, a city in the Peloponnesus
ēnumerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, count, reckon
Ephesius, -a, -um, Ephesian
Ephesus, -ī, f., Ephesus, a city of Ionia
fānum, -ī, n., temple
limen, -inis, n., threshold

Minerva, -ae, f., Minerva, the goddess
pavimentum, -ī, n., pavement
Pergamum, -ī, n., Pergamum, a city in western Asia Minor
Ptolemāis, -idis, f., Ptolemais, a city of Phœncia
reconditus, -a, -um, deep, hidden
sacerdōs, -ōtis, m., priest
sonō, -āre, sonui, sonitus, sound, ring out
sonus, -i, m., sound
statua, -ae, f., statue, image
templum, -ī, n., temple
Trallēs, -ium, f., Tralles, a city of Caria
tympanum, -ī, n., drum, tambourine
valva, -ae, f., door

Caesar with a small force follows Pompey to Egypt


At Alexandria he hears of Pompey's death. The Alexandrians resent Caesar's display of authority

Alexandriae dē Pompēī morte cognōscit atque ibi prīnum ē nāve ēgrediēns clāmōrem militum audit quōs rēx in oppidō praeсидī causā reliquerat, et concursum ad sē fieri videt, 15 quod fāscēs antēferrentur. In hōc omni multitudō maiestātem rēgiam minui praedicābat. Hōc sēdātō tumultū crēbrae continuēs diēbus ex concursū multitūdinēs concitātiōnēs fiēbant complūrēsque militēs huius urbī omnēs partibus interficiēbantur.

Achāia, -ae, f., Achaea, a Roman province, nearly corresponding to modern Greece
Asiāticus, -a, -um, of, or from, Asia
concitātiō, -ōnis, f., uprisings
coniectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, infer
fāscia, -is, m., a bundle; in the plural, fāscias, the bundle of rods carried before the higher magistrates by a lictor
Fūsiōs, -ī, m., Quintus Fūsiōs Calenus, a lieutenant of Cæsar
Rhodius, -a, -um, of, or from, Rhodes
sēdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, allay, settle
2. Cypri: locative.—Aegyptum: accusative of the place whither. We should expect a preposition. 3. necessitudinēs régni: 'his close relations with the kingdom.' 10. confusus ... gestārum: 'relying on the reputation of his exploits.' 13. Alexandriae: locative. 15. concursum ... videt: 'saw a crowd throng toward him.'

Cesar, detained by contrary winds, sends for more troops

107. Quibus rēbus animadversīs legiōnēs sibi aliās ex Asiā addūci iussit, quās ex Pompēiānis militibus cōnfecerat. Ipse enim necessāriō etēsiis tenēbātur, qui nāvigantibus Alexandriā sunt adversissimi venti.

He decides to act as arbiter between Ptolemy and Cleopatra

5 Interim contrōversiās rēgum ad populum Rōmānum et ad sē, quod esset cōnsul, pertinēre existimāns, atque eō magis officiō suō convenire, quod superiōre cōnsulātū cum patre Ptolemaeō et lēge et senātūs cōnsultō societās erat facta, ostendit sibi placēre rēgem Ptolemaeum atque eius 10 sorōrem Cleopatram exercitūs quōs habērent dimittere, et dē contrōversiis iūre apud sē potius quam inter sē armis disceptāre.

disceptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, contend, etēsiae, -ārum, m., the etesian dispute winds, trade winds

3. etēsiās: these winds prevail more than a month every summer in the eastern part of the Mediterranean. 7. officiō suō convenire: 'it was in accord with his official duty.' 11. iūre apud sē: contrasts with inter sē armīs.

The king's friends, angered, plot to destroy Caesar and his army

108. Erat in prōcūrātiōne rēgni, propter aetātem puerī, nūtricius eius, eunūchus nōmine Pothinus. Is primum inter suōs querī atque indignāri coepit rēgem ad causam dicendām ēvocāri; deinde adiūtōrēs quōsdam cōnsili sui nactus ex
rēgis amicis, exercitum ā Pēlūsiō clam Alexandriam ēvoca-
vit atque eundem Achillam, cuius suprā meminimus, omni-
bus cōpiis praefēcit. Hunc, incitātum suis et rēgis inflātum
pollicitātiōnibus, quae fieri vellet litteris nūntiisque ēdocuit.

The will of Ptolemy, father of Ptolemy and Cleopatra

In testāmentō Ptolemaei patris hērēdēs erant scripti ex
duobus filiis maiore et ex duābus filiābus ea quae aetāte 10
antecedēbat. Haec uti fierent, per omnēs deōs perque foe-
dera quae Rōmae fēcisset, eōdem testāmentō Ptolēmaeus
populum Rōmānum obtestābātur. Tabulae testāmentī ūnae
per lēgātōs eius Rōmam erant adlātae, ut in aerāriō pōne-
rentur (hae, cum propter públicas occupātiōnēs pōnī nōn 15
potuissent, apud Pompeium sunt dēpositaе), alterae eōdem
exemplō relictae atque obsignātae Alexandriae prōferēbantur.

adiūtor, -ōris, m., helper, confed-
erate
aerārium, -ī, n., treasury
dēpōnō, -ere, -posui, -positus, put
down, deposit
eunūchus, -i, m., eunuch
hērēs, -ēdis, c., heir

infātus, -a, -um, part. of infēō,
elated
nūtricius, -a, -um, fostering; masc.
as noun, guardian
prōcūrātiō, -ōnis, f., administration
prōferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, bring
forward, find

3. rēgem . . . ēvocāri: 'that a king should be summoned to defend him-
self.' 13. Tabulae testāmentī ūnae: 'one copy of the will.' 16. alterae:
i.e. tabulae.—eōdem exemplō: 'exactly like it'; ablative of description.

Achillias marches on Alexandria with the king's army

109. Dē his rēbus cum agerētur apud Caesarem, ipse
maximē vellet prō commūnī amicō atque arbitrō contrō-
versiās rēgum compōnere, subitō exercitus rēgius equitātus-
que omnis venire Alexandriam nūntiātur. Caesaris cōpiae
nēquāquam erant tantae, ut eis, extrā oppidum si esset
dimicandum, confideret. Relinquēbatur ut sē suis locis oppidō tenēret consiliumque Achillae cognōsceret. Militēs tamen omnēs in armīs esse iussit, régemque hortātus est ut ex suis necessāriis quōs habēret maxīmae auctōritātis lēgātōs ad Achillam mitteret, et quid esset suae voluntātis ostenderet.

*He kills the king's ambassadors, sent by Caesar's advice*

Ā quō missī Dioscoridēs et Serāpiōn, qui ambō lēgātī Rōmae fuerant magnamque apud patrem Ptolemaeum auctōritātem habuerant, ad Achillam pervēnērunt. Quōs ille, cum in conspectum eius vēnissent, priusquam audīret aut cuius rei causā missī essent cognōsceret, corripī atque interfici iussit; quōrum alter acceptō volumnare occupātus per suōs prō occisō sublātus, alter interfectus est. Quō factō régem ut in suā potestāte habēret Caesar efficit, magnam régium nōmen apud suōs auctōritātem habēre existimāns, et ut potius prīvātō paucōrum et latrōnum quam rēgiō consiliō susceptum bellum vidērētūr.

ambō, ambæae, ambō, both corripio, -ere, -ripui, -reptus, seize, compōnō, -ere, -posui, -positus, settle arrest

2. prō: 'in the capacity of.' 10. quid esset suae voluntātis: 'what his desire was'; voluntātis, partitive genitive. 16. occupātus per suōs etc.: 'was caught up by his friends and carried off for dead.' 20. prīvātō paucōrum et latrōnum... consiliō: 'by the private design of a few men, and brigands at that, than by that of the king.'

*The forces of Achillas, their number and character*

110. Erant cum Achillae cópiæae, ut neque numerō neque genere hominum neque ūsū rei militāris conternendae vide rentur. Milia enim xx in armīs habēbat. Haec constābant ex Gabiniānis militibus, qui iam in cōnsuētūdinem Alexart-s drīnae vitae ac licentiae vēnerant et nōmen disciplinamque
CÆSAR IN EGYPT

populi Römāni dēdidicerant uxorēsque dūxerant ex quibus plērique liberōs habēbant. Huc accēdēbant conlēcti ex prae-
dōnibus latrōnibusque Syriae Ciliciaeque prōvinciae finitimā-
rumque regiōnum. Multi praetereā capitis damnāti exsulēsque 
convēnerant; fugitīvis omnibus nostrīs certus erat Alexand-
driae receptus certaque vitae condiciō, ut datō nōmine militum 
essent numerō; sī quis ā dominō prehenderētur, cōnsēnsū 
militum ēripiēbātur, qui vim suōrum, quod in simili culpā 
versābantur, ipsī prō suō periculō dēfendēbant. Hī rēgum 
amīcōs ad mortem dēposcere, hī bona locuplētum diripere, 15 
stipendi augendi causā rēgis domum obsidēre, rēgnō expel-
lere, aliōs arcessere vetere quōdam Alexandrīnī exercitūs 
īnstitūtō cōnsuērant. Erant praetereā equītum mīlia duo. 
Inveterāverant hi omnēs complūribus Alexandriāe bellis; 
Ptolemæum patrem in rēgnum redūxerant, Bibuli filiōs 20 
duōs interfēcerant, bella cum Aegyptiīs gesserant. Hunc 
ūsum rei militāris habēbant.

Alexandrīnus, -a, -um, of Alex-
andria
Bibulus, -i, m., Marcus Calpurnius
Bibulus, naval commander under 
Pompey
contemnō, -ere, -tempsi, -temptus, 
despise
dēdiscō, -ere, -didici, ——, forget 
exsul, -ulis, m., exile
Gabiniānus, -a, -um, of Gabinius 
licentia, -ae, f., looseness 
locuplēs, -ētis, rich 
prehendō, see prēndō in the vocab-
ulary

3. cōnstābant ex: 'consisted of.' 4. in cōnsuētūdinem . . . vēnerant:
'had become habituated.' 7. conlēcti . . . latrōnibusque: 'a collection 
of robbers and highwaymen.' 9. capitis damnāti: 'who had been con-
demned to death.' 10. fugitīvis: dative of reference (G. § 85). 11. re-
ceptus: 'refuge.' — ut . . . essent: in apposition with condiciō. — mili-
tum essent numerō: 'they should enlist as soldiers.' 12. prehenderētur: 
'was on the point of being seized.' 13. vim suōrum: 'violence offered to 
any of their number.' 14. prō suō periculō: 'at the risk of their lives.' — 
HI: subject of cōnsuērant, l. 18. 15. dēposcere: this and the following 
infinitives depend upon cōnsuērant. 17. vetere quōdam . . . institūtō:
'by an old privilege of the Alexandrian army.'
Achillas seizes the whole city except the part occupied by Caesar

111. His części fidēns Achillās paucitātemque militum Caesaris dēspiciēns occupābat Alexandriam praeter eam oppidi partem quam Caesar cum militibus tenēbat. Primo impetū domum eius inrumpere cōnātus est; sed Caesar dispositis per viās cohortibus impetum eius sustinuit.

At the port, however, Caesar gains the victory

Eōdemque tempore pugnātum est ad portum, ac longē maximam ea rēs adulit dimicātiōnem. Simul enim diductis căopiis pluribus viis pugnābātur, et magnā multitūdine nāvēs longās occupāre hostēs cōnābantur; quārum erant L auxiliō missae ad Pompēium proelīōque in Thessaliā factō domum redierant, illae trirēmēs omnēs et quinquerēmēs aptae in- strūctaeque omnibus rēbus ad nāvigandum, praeter has xxii quae praesidi causā Alexandriae esse cōnsuērant; cōnstrātae omnēs; quās sī occupāvissent, classe Caesari ēreptā portum ac mare tōtum in suā potestāte habērent, commeātū auxiliis- que Caesarem prohibērent. Itaque tantā est contentiōne āctum quantā agī dēbuit, cum illī celerem in eā rē victōriam, hi salūtem suam cōnsistere vidērent. Sed rem obtinuit Caesar omnēsque eās nāvēs et reliquās quae erant in nāvāli- bus incendit, quod tam lātē tuēri parvā manū non poterat, cōnfestīmque ad Pharum nāvibus militēs exposuit.

fidēns, -entis, part. of fidō, relying upon opposite Alexandria, with a
nāvālia, -ium, n., docks, shipyards lighthouse of the same name,
Pharōs, -i, f., Pharos, an island which was one of the seven

10. proelīōque . . . factō: ‘and at the conclusion of the war in Thessaly.’
14. sī occupāvissent: a future condition thrown into past time on the principle of indirect discourse (implied). Their own thought was, ‘if
we shall have seized' etc. 17. áctum: impersonal; 'the contest was carried on with as great a struggle as might have been expected' (lit. 'as it ought to have been carried on'). — quantā: correlative with raptā, ablative of manner. 18. rem obtinuit: 'won the contest.' 21. exposuit: 'landed,' 'set on shore.'

Description of Pharos and its lighthouse

112. Pharus est in insulā turris magnā altitūdine, mirificis operibus exstrūcta; quae nōmen ab insulā accēpit. Haec insula obiecta Alexandriae portum efficit; sed ā superiōribus regionibus in longitūdinem passuum dcccc, in mare iactis mōlibus, angustō itinere et ponte cum oppidō coniungitur. In hāc sunt insulā domicilia Aegyptiōrum et vicus oppidi magnitūdine; quaeque ibi cumque nāvēs imprudentiā aut tempestāte paulum suō cursū dēcessērunt, hās mōre prae- dōnum diripere cōnsuērunt. Eīs autem invītīs ā quibus Pharus tenētur, nōn potest esse propter angustiās nāvibus introitus in portum.

Caesar takes possession of Pharos. Elsewhere the battle is indecisive.

Caesar fortifies his headquarters

Hoc tamen veritus Caesar, hostibus in pugnā occupātīs, militibus expositis Pharum prehendit atque ibi praesidium posuit. Quibus est rēbus effectum ut tūtō frūmentum auxiliaque nāvibus ad eum supportāri possent. Dimisit enim circūm omnēs propinquās prōvinciās atque inde auxilia ēvocāvit. Reliquīs oppidi partibus sic est pugnātum, ut æquō proelīō discēderētur et neutrī pellerentur (id efficiēbat angustiāe locī), paucīisque utrimque interfectīs Caesar loca maximē necessāria complexus noctū praeμūnit. In hoc trāctū oppidi pars erat rēgiae exigua, in quam ipse habitandi causā initīō erat inductus, et theātrum coniūntum domūī, quod arcis tenēbat locum aditusque habēbat ad portum et ad reliqua

The younger daughter of Ptolemy joins Achillas. The Alexandrian War now begins in earnest

Interim filia minor Ptolemaei rēgis, vacuum possessionem rēgni spērāns, ad Achillam sēsē ex rēgiā trāiēcit ūnāque bellum administrāre coepit. Sed celeriter est inter ēōs dē principātū contrōversia orta; quae rēs apud militēs largi-
30 tionēs auxit; magnis enim iactūris sibi quisque eōrum animōs conciliābat. Haec dum apud hostēs geruntur, Pothinus, nū-
tricius pueri et prōcūrātor rēgni, in parte Caesaris, cum ad
Achillam nūntiōs mitteret horārēeturque nē negotiō désisteret nēve animō désceret, indicātis déprehēnsisqve internūntiis,
35 ā Caesare est interfectus. Haec initia belli Alexandrīni fuĕrunt.

habitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, dwell
indicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, discover
internūntius, -i, m., negotiator,
      messenger between (two parties)
mirificus, -a, -um, causing wonder,
      wonderful
praemūniō, -īre, -īvi, -ītus, fortify
prōcūrātor, -ōris, m., governor,
      manager
rēgia, -ae, f., royal palace
theātrum, -i, n., theater
trāctus, -ūs, m., region, district

3. objecta: 'situated opposite,' with the dative. — ā superiōribus
      regiōnis: 'on the upper side.' 4. in mare iactīs mōlibus: 'piles
      being set in the sea.' 7. magnitūdine: ablative of description; 'of the size
      of a town.' — cumque: with quae, equal to quae cumque; 'whatever ships.'
9. Eīs . . . invitis: ablative absolute with conditional force. 10. nōn potest
      esse . . . nāvibus introitus: 'ships cannot enter.' 15. Dimīsit: supply homi-
      nis as object. 22. arcīs tenēbat locum: 'served as a citadel.' 24. ut . . .
      habēret: 'that he might have them before him as a rampart.' 26. vacuum
      . . . spērāns: 'hoping to get possession of the kingdom (now left) vacant.'
29. principātū: 'leadership.' 30. magnus . . . conciliābat: 'for each tried
      by generous gifts to win their allegiance.'
INDIRECT DISCOURSE

BOOK I

13. Is ita cum Caesare égit: 'Si pácem populus Rómānus cum Helvētiis faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs, ubi eōs Caesar cōnstituisset atque esse voluisset; sin bellō persequí perseverāret, reminīscerētur et veteris incommodi populi Rōmānī et pristinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum ei qui flūmen trānsissent suīs auxiliōm ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae magnopere virtūti tribueret, aut ipsōs déspiceret; sē ita ā patribus maiōribusque suīs didicisse ut magis virtūte contenderent quam dolō aut īnsidiis niterentur. Quā rē nē committeret ut is locus ubi cōnstitissent ex calamitāte populi. Rōmānī et internecīone exercītūs nōmen caperet aut memoriam prōderet.'

14. His Caesar ita respondit: 'Eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis dari, quod eās rēs quās lēgāti Helvētiī commemorāssent memoriā tenēret, atque eō gravius ferre, quō minus meritō populi Rōmānī accidissent; quī si alicuius iniūriae sibi cōnscius fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptum, quod neque commissum ā sē intellegeret quā rē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putāret. Quod si veteris con-tumēliae oblivisci vellet, num etiam recentium iniūriārum, quod eō invitō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent, quod Haeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas vexāssent, memoriam dépōnere posse? Quod suā victōriā tam insolenter
gloriārentur, quodque tam diū sē impūne iniūriās intulisse admirārentur, eōdem pertinēre. Cōnsuēsse enim deōs immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commutātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcisci velint, hīs secundīōrēs interdum rēs et diūturnīōrem impūnītātem concēdere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen si obsidēs ab eis sibi dentur, uti ea quae polliceantur factūrōs intellegat, et si Haeduis dē iniūriās quās ipsīs sociisque eōrum intulerint, item si Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sēsē cum eis pācem esse factūrum.

10 Dīvīcō respondit: 'Ita Helvētiōs ā maiōribus suis institūtōs esse, uti obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuērint; eīus rei. populum Rōmānum esse testem.' Hōc responsō datō discussit.


18. Eadem sēcrētō ab aliis quaerit; reperit esse vēra: 'Ipsum esse Dumnonīgēm, summā audāciā, magnā apud plēbem propter liberālītātem grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum. Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Haeduōrum vectigālia parvō pretiō redēmpta habēre, propereā quod illō licentē contra licēri audeat nēmō. Hīs rēbus et suam rem
familiarem auxisse et facultatès ad largiendum magnas comparasse; magnum numerum equitatuès suō sumptu semper alere et circum sē habère, neque sōlum domi sed etiam apud finitimās civitātēs largiter posse; atque huius potentiae causā mātre in Biturigibus homini illic nōbilissimō ac potentiissimō conlocāsse, ipsum ex Helvētiis uxōrem habère, sorōrem ex mātre et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās civitātēs conlocāsse. Favēre et cupere Helvētiis propter eam adfinitātem, ōdisse etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia eius dēminūta et Diviciācus frāter in antiquum locum grātiae atque honōris sit restitūtus. Si quid accidat Rōmānis, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgni obtinendi venire; imperiō populi Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā quam habeat grātiā désperāre.’

20. Diviciācus multis cum lacrimis Caesarem complexus, 15 obsecrāre coepit nē quid gravius in frātrem statueret. ‘Scīre sē illa esse vēra, nec quemquam ex ēō plūs quam sē dolōris capere, propterea quod, cum ipse grātiā plūrimum domi atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adulēscēntiam posset, per sē crēvisset; quibus opibus ac nervis nōn sōlum ad minuendam grātiam sed paene ad perniciem suam ūterētur; sēsē tamen et amōre frāternō et existimātiōne volgi commovēri. Quod si quid eī ā Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amīcitate apud eum tenēret, nēminem existimātiōrum nōn suā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē futūrum 25 utī totius Galliāe animi ā sē āverterentur.’

30. Bellō Helvētiōrum confectō totius ferē Galliāe lēgāti, principēs civitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt: ‘Intellegere sēsē, tametsi prō veteribus Helvētiōrum inīriis populi Rōmānī ab his poenās bellō repetisset, tamen eam rem 30 nōn minus ex ūsū terrae Galliāe quam populi Rōmānī accidisse; propterea quod eō cōnsiliō flōrentissimis rebus domōs suās
Helvētii reliquissent, uti tōtī Galliae bellum inferrent imperiōque potirentūr locumque domiciliō ex magnā copiā deligerent, quem ex omni Galliā opportūnissimum ac fructuōsissimum iūdicāssent, reliquāque civitātēs stipendiāriās habērent.

31. Eā re īmpetrātā sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesari ad pedēs proficīrunt: 'Nōn minus sē id contendere et labōrāre, nē ea quae dixissent ēnūntiārentur, quam uti ea quae vellent īmpetrārent; proptereā quod, si ēnūntiātum esset, summum in cruciātum sē ventūrōs vidērent.'

Locūtus est prō his Divīciācus Haeduus: 'Galliae tōtīs factiōnēs esse duās; hārum alterius principātum tenēre Haeduōs, alterius Arvernōs. Hī cum tantopere dē potentātū inter sē multōs annōs contenderent, factum esse uti ab Arvernīs Sēquanīisque Germānī mercēde arcesserentur. Hōrum primō circiter milia xv Rhēnum trānsisse; posteāquam agrōs et cultum et copiās Gallōrum hominēs feri ac barbarī ada-māssent, trāductōs plūrēs; nunc esse in Galliā ad centum et xx milium numerum. Cum hīs Haeduōs eōrumque clientēs semel atque iterum armīs contendisse; magnam calamitātem pulsōs accēpisse, omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum āmisisse. Quibus proeliis calamitātibusque frāctōs, qui et suā virtūte et populi Rōmānī hospitiō atque amicitia plūrimum ante in Galliā potuissent, coāctōs esse Sēquanīs obsidēs dare nōbilissimōs civitātis, et iūre iūrandō civitātem obstringere sēsē neque obsidēs repetītūrōs neque auxilium à populō Rōmānō implōrātūrōs, neque recūsātūrōs quō minus perpetuō sub illōrum diciōne atque imperiō essent. Ünum sē esse ex omni civitāte Haeduōrum qui addūcī nōn potuerit ut iūrāret aut liberōs suōs obsidēs dare. Ob eam rem sē ex civitāte profūgisse et Rōmam ad senātum vēnisse auxilium postulātum, quod sōlus neque iūre iūrandō neque obsidībus tenērētur.
THE GALLIC WAR — BOOK I

'Sed peius victoribus Sēquanis quam Haeduīs victīs acci-
disse, proptereā quod Arioquistus, rex Germanōrum, in eōrum
finibus consēdisset tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī, qui esset
optimus tōtius Galliae, occupāvisset, et nunc dē alterā parte
tertiā Sēquanōs decedērere iubēret, proptereā quod paucīs
mēnsibus ante Harūdum milia hominum xxiii ad eum vēnis-
sent, quibus locus ac sēdēs parārentur. Futūrum esse paucīs
annis uti omnēs ex Galliae finibus pellerentur atque omnēs
Germanī Rhēnum trānsirent; neque enim cōnferendum esse
Gallicum cum Germanōrum agrō, neque hanc cōnsuētūdinem victūs cum illā comparandam.

'Arioqustum autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō
vicerit, quod proelium factum sit ad Magetobrigam, superbē
et crudēliter imperāre, obsidēs nōbilissimi cuiusque liberōs
poscere, et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque ēdere, si qua
rēs nōn ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem eius facta sit. Homi-
nem esse barbarum, īrācundum, temerārium; nōn posse
eius imperia diūtius sustinēri.

'Nisi quid in Caesare populōque Rōmanō sit auxili, omni-
bus Gallīs idem esse facienda quod Helvētii fēcerint, ut 20
domō ēmigrent, aliud domicilium, aliās sēdēs remōtās ā
Germanīs petant fortūnamque, quaecumque accidat, experi-
antur. Haec sī ēnūntiāta Arioquistō sint, nōn dubitāre quin
dē omnibus obsidibus qui apud eum sint gravissimum sup-
plicium sūmat. Caesarem vel auctōritāte suā atque exercitūs 25
vel recentī victōriā vel nōmine populi Rōmanī déterrēre
posse nē maior multitūdō Germanōrum Rhēnum trādūcatur,
Galliamque omnem ab Arioqvisti iniūriā posse defendere.'

32. Diviciācūs Haeduus respondit: 'Hūc esse miserīo-
rem et graviōrem fortūnam Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum, 30
quod sōlī nē in occultō quidem querī neque auxilium implō-
rāre audērent; absentisque Arioquisti crudēlitātem, velut si
230

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

cūram adesset, horrērent, proptereā quod reliquis tamen fugae facultās darētur, Sēquanis vērō, qui intra finēs suōs Ariovistum recēpissent, quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte eius essent, omnēs cruciātūs essent perferendi.'

34. Ei lēgātiōni Ariovistus respondit: 'Si quid ipsi ā Caesare opus esset, sēsē ad eum ventūrum fuisset; si quid ille sē velit, illum ad sē venire oportēre. Praetereā sē neque sine exercitiū in eās partēs Galliae venire audēre quās Caesar possidēret, neque exercitum sine magnō commeātū atque mōlimentō in ūnum locum contrahere posse. Sibi autem mīrum vidēri quid in suā Galliā, quam bellō vicisset, aut Caesari aut omnīnō popūlo Rōmānō negotī esset.'

35. His responsis ad Caesarem relātis, iterum ad eum Caesar lēgātōs cum his mandātīs mittit: 'Quoniam tantō suō populique Rōmānī beneficiō adfectus, cum in cōnsulātū suō rēx atque amicus ā senātū appellātū esset, hanc sibi populōque Rōmānō grātiam referret, ut in conloquium venire invitātus gravārētur neque dē commūnī rē dicendum sibi et cognōscendum putāret, haec esse quae ab eō postulāret: primum, nē quam multitūdinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūceret; deinde, obsidēs quōs habēret ab Haeduīs redderet, Sēquanisque permitteret ut quōs illī habērent voluntāte eius reddere illīs licēret; nēve Haeduōs iniūriā lacieseret, nēve his sociisque eōrum bellum inferret. Si id ita fēcisset, sibi populōque Rōmānō perpetuam grātiam atque amicitiam cum eō futūram; si nōn impetrēret, sēsē—quoniam M. Messālā M. Pisōne cōnsulibus senātus cēnsuisset uti quicumque Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret, quod commodō reī publicae facere posset, Haeduōs cēterōs-que amīcōs populi Rōmānī dēfenderet—sē Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum.'
36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: 'Iūs esse belli ut qui vicissent, eis quōs vicissent, quem ad modum vellent, imperārent; item populum Rōmānum victis nōn ad alterius praescrīptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre cōnsuēssē. Si ipse populō Rōmānō nōn praescriberet quem ad modum suō iūre üterētur, nōn oportēre sēsē a populō Rōmānō in suō iūre impediri. Haeduōs sibī, quoniam bellī fortūnam temptāssent et armīs congressī ac superāti essent, stipendia-āriōs esse factōs. Magnam Caesarem iniūriam facere qui suō adventū vectigālia sibī dēteriōra faceret. Haeduīs sé 10 obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse, neque hīs neque eōrum sociis iniūriā bellum inlātūrum, si in eō manērent quod convenisset stipendiumque quotannis penderent; si id nōn fecissent, longē eis frāternum nōmen populi Rōmānī āfutūrum. Quod sībi Caesar dēnūntiāret sē Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn negligētūrum, nēminem sēcum sine suā perniciē contendisse. Cum vellet, congregētur; intellectūrum quid invictī Germānī, exercitātissīmi in armīs, qui inter annōs xiv tēctum nōn subissent, virtūte possent.'

40. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocātō cōnsiliō, omnium-que ōrdinum ad id cōnsilium adhibītis centuriōnibus, vehementer eōs incūsāvit: primum quod aut quam in partem aut quō cōnsiliō dūcerentur sibī quaerendum aut cōgitandum putārent. 'Ariovistum sē cōnsule cupidissimē populī Rōmānī amicitiam adpetisse. Cūr hunc tam temerē quisquam 25 ab officiō discessūrum iūdicāret? Sibī quidem persuādēri, cognitis suis postulātis atque aequitāte condiciōnum perspectā, eum neque suam neque populī Rōmānī grātiam repudiātūrum. Quod si furōre atque ämentiā impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem verērentur? aut cūr dē suā virtūte aut dē 30 ipsius diligentiā dēspērārent? Factum eius hostis periculum
INDIRECT DISCOURSE

patrum nostrorum memoria, cum, Cimbris et Teutonis a C. Mariō pulsis, non minorem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperātor meritus vidēbatur; factum etiam nūper in Italiā servili tumultū, quōs tamen aliquid usus ac disciplina quam a nōbis accēpissent sublevārent. Ex quō iūdicāri posse quantum habēret in sē boni cōnstantia, propterea quod, quōs aliquamdiū inermēs sine causā timuissent, hōs postea armātōs ac victōrēs superāssent.

'Dēnique hōs esse eōsdem Germānōs quibuscum saepe numerō Helvētii congressi, nōn sōlum in suīs sed etiam in illōrum finibus, plērumque superārint; qui tamen parēs esse nostrō exercitu nōn potuerint. Si quōs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum commovēret, hōs, si quaererent, reperire posse, diūturnitāte belli dēfatigātis Gallis, Ariovistum, cum multōs mēnsēs castrīs sē ac palūdibus tenuissent, neque sui potestātem fēcisset, dēspērantēs iam dē pugnā et dispersōs subitō adortum, magis ratiōne et cōnsiliō quam virtūte vicisse. Cui ratiōni contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperītōs locus fuisset, hāc nē ipsum quidem spērāre nostrōs exercitus capi posse.

'Quōm suum tīmōrem in reī frūmentāriae simulātiōnem angustiāsque itineris cōnferrent, facere adroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperātoris dēspērāre aut praescribere vidērentur. Haec sībi esse cūrae; frūmentum Sēquanōs, Leucōs, Lingōnēs subministrāre, iamque esse in agris frūmenta mātūra; dē itinere ipsōs brevi tempore iūdicātūrōs.

'Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs neque signa lātūri dicantur (militēs), nihil sē eā rē commovēri; scire enim, quibuscumque exercitus dictō audiēns nōn fuerit, aut male rē gestā fortūnam dēfuisse, aut aliquō facinore compertō avāritiamesse convictam; suam innocentiam perpetuā vitā, fēlicitātem Helvētiōrum bellō esse perspectam.
'Itaque sē quod in longiorēm diem conlātūrus fuisset, represēntātūrum, et proximā nocte dē quārtā vigiliā castra mortūrum, ut quam primum intellegere posset utrum apud eōs pudor atque officium an timor plus valēret. Quod si praetereā nēmō sequātur, tamen sē cum sōlā decimā legiōne itūrum, dē quā nōn dubitāret, sibique eam praetōriam cohortem futūram.'

44. Ariviustus ad postulāta Caesāris pauca respondit; dē suis virtūtibus multa praedicāvit: 'Trānsisse Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte, sed rogātum et arcessitum ā Gallis; nōn sine magnā spē magnisque praemiīs domum propinquōsque reliquisse; sēdēs habēre in Galliā ab ipsis concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stipendium capere iūre belli quod victorēs victis impōnere cōnsuērint. Nōn sēsē Gallis, sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse; omnēs Galliae cīvitātēs ad sē oppugnandum vēnisse ac contrā sē castra habuisse; eās omnēs cōpiās a sē ūnō proeliō pulsās ac superātās esse. Si iterum experīri velint, sē iterum parātum esse dēcertāre; si pāce ūti velint, inīquum esse dē stipendiō recūsāre quod suā voluntāte ad id tempus pependerint.

'Amicitiam populi Rōmānī sibi ōrnāmentō et præsidiō, nōn dētrimentō esse oportēre, atque sē hāc spē petisse. Si per populum Rōmānum stipendium remittātur et dēditicī subtrahantur, nōn minus libenter sēsē recūsātūrum populi Rōmānī amicitiam quam adpetierit.

'Quod multitudinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcat, id sē suī mūniendi, nōn Galliae impugnandae causā facere; eius rei testimōnium esse quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnerit, et quod bellum nōn intulerit, sed dēfenderit. Sē prius in Galliam vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum. Numquam ante hoc tempus exercitum populi Rōmānī Galliae prōvinciae finibus ēgressum. Quid sibi vellet? Cūr in suās possessiōnēs
veniret? Prōvinciam suam hanc esse Galliam, sicut illum nostram. Ut ipsi concēdi nōn oportēret, si in nostrōs finēs impetum faceret, sic item nōs esse iniōōs quod in suō iūre sē interpellārēmus.

5 'Quod frātrēs ā senātū Haeduōs appellātōs diceret, nōn sē tam barbarum neque tam imperītum esse rērum ut nōn scīret neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Haeduōs Rōmānis auxilium tulisse, neque ipsōs, in his contentiōnibus quās Haeduī sēcum et cum Sēquanis habuisset, auxiliō populi Rōmāni üsōs esse.

10 'Dēbēre sē suspicāri simulātā Caesarem amiciēā, quem exercītum in Galliā habēat, suī opprimendī causā habēre. Qui nisi dēcēdat atque exercītum dēdūcat ex his regiōnibus, sēsē illum nōn prō amicō, sed prō hoste habitūrum. Quod si eum interfēcerit, multis sēsē nōbilībus principībusque populi Rōmāni grātum esse factūrum (id sē ab ipsis per eōrum nūntiōs compertum habēre), quōrum omnium grātiam atque amicitiam eius morte redimere posset. Quod si discussisset et liberam possessiōnem Galliae sibi trādidisset, magnō sē illum praemiō remūnerātūrum, et quae cumque bella geri vellet, sine üllō eius labōre et periculō cōnfectūrum.'

45. Multa ab Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt quā rē negotiō désisterē nōn posset: 'Neque suam neque populi Rōmāni cōnsequantīnum pati utī optimē meritōs sociōs dēsereret, neque sē iūdicāre Galliam potius esse Ariovisti quam populi Rōmāni. Bellō superātōs esse Arvernōs et Rutēnōs ab Q. Fabiō Maximō, quibus populus Rōmānus ignōvisset neque in prōvinciam redēgisset neque stipendium imposuisset. Quod si antiquissimum quodque tempus spectāri oportēret, populi Rōmāni iūstissimum esse in Galliā imperium; si iū-

30 dicium senātūs observārī oportēret, liberam dēbēre esse Galliam, quam bellō victam suis lēgibus üti voluisset.'

47. 'Quid ad sē venirent? an speculandī causā?'
BOOK II

3. Eò cum dè imprövisò celeriusque omnium opinöne vénisset, Rëmi, qui proximí Galliae ex Belgis sunt, ad eum lègätoś Iccium et Andebrogium, primös civitātis, mi-
sērunt, qui dicerent: 'Sè suaque omnia in fidem atque in potestātem populi Römāni permettere; neque sè cum reliquis Belgis cōnsēnsisse neque contrā populum Römānum coniū-
rāsse, parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidis recipere et frūmentō cēterisque rēbus iuvāre; reliquōs omnēs Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque, qui cīs Rhēnum incolant, sēsè cum hīs coniūnxisse, tantumque esse eōrum omnium furōrem ut nē Suessiōnēs quidem, frātrēs cōn-
sanguineōsque suōs, qui eōdem iūre et isdem lēgibus ūtantur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum cum ipsīs habeant, dēterrēre potuerint quin cum hīs consentirent.'

4. Cum ab eīs quaerēret quae civitātēs quantaeque in armīs essent et quid in bellō possent, sic reperiēbat: 'Plē-
rōsque Belgās esse ortōs à Germānīs, Rhēnumque antiquitus trāductōs propter loci fertilītātem ibi cōnsēdisse, Gallōsque qui ea loca incolenter expulsīse, sōlōsque esse qui patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omni Galliā vexātā, Teutōnōs Cimbrōs- que intrā suōs finēs ingredi prohibuerint; quā ex rē fierī uti eārum rērum memoriā magnam sibi auctōritātem magnōs-
que spiritūs in rē militārī sūmerent.

'Dē numerō eōrum omnia sē habēre explōrāta' Rēmi di-
cēbant, 'propterea quod propinquitātibus adfīnitātibusque con-
iunctī, quantam quisque multitūdinem in commūni Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit cognōverint. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō valēre; hōs posse cōnficere armāta milia centum,
pollicitōs ex eō numerō élēcta milia sexāgintā, tōtiusque belli imperium sibi postulāre. Suessiōnēs suōs esse finitimōs; finēs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre. Apud eōs fuisset rēgem nostrā etiam memoriā Diviciācum, tōtius Galliae potentissimum, qui cum magnae partis hārum regionum tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuerit; nunc esse rēgem Galbam; ad hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiamque summam tōtius belli omnium voluntāte dēferrī; oppida habēre numerō xii, pollicērī milia armāta L; totidem Nerviōs, quī maximē feri inter ipsōs habeantur longissimēque absint; xv milia Atrebātēs, Ambiānōs x milia, Morinōs xxv milia, Menapiōs vii milia, Caletōs x milia, Veliocassēs et Viromanduōs totidem, Aduatucōs xix milia; Condrūsēs, Eburōnēs, Caerōsēs, Caemānōs, qui ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur, arbitrāri (cōnficere posse) ad xl milia.'


15. Eōrum finēs Nervīi attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sic reperiēbat: 'Nūllum aditum esse ad eōs mercātoribus; nihil patī vini reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium īnferri, quod his
rēbus relanguēscere animōs et remitti virtūtem existimārent; esse hominēs ferōs magnaeque virtūtis; increpitāre atque incūsāre reliquōs Belgās, qui sē populō Rōmānō dédidissent patriamque virtūtem prōiēcissent; cōnfīrmāre sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condicionem pācis acceptūrōs.’

31. Ubi vērō movērī et adpropinquāre moenibus vidērunt, novā atque inūsitātā speciē commōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce misērunt, qui ad hunc modum locūtī: ‘Nōn existimāre Rōmānōs sine ope divinā bellum gerere, qui tantāe altitū- dinis māchinātionēs tantā celeritāte prōmovēre possent; sē suaque omnia eōrum potestātī permettere’ dīxērunt. ‘Ūnum petere ac dēprecāri: si forte prō suā clēmentiā ac mānsuē- tūdine, quam ipsī ab aliis audirent, statuisset Aduatūcos esse cōnservandōs, nē sē armīs dēspoliāret. Sibi omnēs ferē finitimōs esse inimīcōs ac suae virtūti invidēre; ā quibus sē défendere trāditis armīs nōn possent. Sibi praestāre, si in eum cāsum dēdūcerentur, quamvis fortūnam ā populō Rōmānō patī, quam ab his per cruciātum interfici inter quōs dominārī cōnsuēssent.’

32. Ad haec Caesar respondit: ‘Sē magis cōnsuētūdine suā quam meritorī eōrum civitātem cōnservātūrum, si, prius quam mūrum ariēs attigisset, sē dédidissent; sed dēditīonis nūllam esse condicionem nisi armīs trāditis. Sē id quod in Nerviīs fēcisset factūrum, finitimīsque imperātūrum nē quam dēditiciis populī Rōmānī iniūriam inferrent.’
ABBREVIATIONS

abl. = ablative
abl. abs. = ablative absolute
adv. = adverb
cf. = cōnfer, i.e. compare
dir. = direct
disc. = discourse
f. = feminine
ff. = and following
fig. = figure
fut. = future
gen. = genitive
ill. = illustration
impers. = impersonal
imper. = imperative
ind. = indicative
indef. = indefinite
indir. = indirect
inf. = infinitive
Intro. = Introduction
1., ll. = line, lines
lit. = literally

m. = masculine
n. = neuter
neg. = negative
obj. = object or objective
p., pp. = page, pages
part. = partitive
pass. = passive
past abs. = past absolute
past descr. = past descriptive
perf. = perfect
plur. = plural
pred. = predicate
reflex. = reflexive
rel. = relative
sc. = scilicet, i.e. supply
sing. = singular
subj. = subject or subjective
subjunct. = subjunctive
subord. = subordinate
subst. = substantive
transl. = translate
NOTES

THE LIFE OF CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR

References preceded by a section sign ($) are to the Grammar (pp. 311 ff.)

Page 1, Line 1 Gāius: the regular Latin form, usually written 'Caius' in English.—familīa: abl. of origin ($102).
1 3 Cinnæs: a prominent leader of the popular party.
1 4 Sullæs: the great partisan of the nobility and the opponent of Cinna.
1 6 impetrāvit: distinguish from imperāvit.
1 10 Rhodum: Rhodes, an island near the coast of Asia Minor.
1 11 prōgreditur: historical present ($153. a).
1 18 per pecūniās magnās: 'by a great ransom.' What literally?
2 1 Chap. II. quaestor: an officer appointed as assistant to a consul or praetor in charge of a province; see Introd. I. 5 and 6.
2 6 Aedilis: an officer at Rome, among whose duties was the charge of public buildings and games; see Introd. I. 5 and 6.
2 7 lūdōs: games were presented in the circus in great variety, and often at great expense, by the officials to gain the favor of the people. See p. xii.
2 8 in aēs aliēnum . . . incidit: 'he incurred debt.'
2 9 Cōnsul: the consuls were the highest officers at Rome. Two were elected each year. See Introd. I. 5 and 6.—societātem: the alliance known as the First Triumvirate; see Introd. I. 6.
2 10 Lēgem . . . tulisset: 'he had proposed a law.'
2 11 rem ad populum rettulit: 'he laid the matter before the people.'
3 5 Chap. III. prīmus Rōmānōrum: i.e. he was the first of the Romans to do these things.
3 11 conversum: past participle of convertō modifying aquilīferum; transl. by a clause, 'who had turned' ($220. e).
3 14 quibuscum: for the preposition cum as enclitic with pronouns see § 150. a.
3 15 parātās: past participle modifying legiōnēs; vincī depends on parātās.
3 16 Chap. IV. Parthōs: a warlike people dwelling southeast of the Caspian Sea.
3 21 ut . . . peteret: 'that he might be a candidate for the consulship a second time.'
240 LIFE OF CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR

4 1 sē . . . velle: 'that he wished to be a candidate while absent.'
4 4 Rubicōnem: a small stream between Italy and Cisalpine Gaul, the boundary of Cæsar's province. The crossing of this boundary with an army was equivalent to a declaration of war.
4 6 cōgitānus: see § 167.
4 9 iacta est ālea: 'the die is cast'; i.e. 'the decisive step has been taken.'
4 10 Brundisium: a port of Calabria in southern Italy, whence ships sailed, and still sail, to Greece.
5 1 CHAP. V. Epīrum: Epī'rus, a district in northern Greece. See map, p. 196.
5 2 Dyrrachì: Dyrrach'ium, a town in Illyricum. — dum cōpiāe . . . perversent: 'until the forces . . . should arrive'; for the subjv. mood see § 198. III. b.
5 4 ēgredītur: historical present (§ 153.a); transl. as a past abs. (§ 156.b); so also cōnscentit.
5 8 prius: to be taken with quam; the parts of antequam and priusquam are often separated in this way; for the ind. mood see § 197. a.
5 14 mōre: some ablatives of manner, even when not accompanied by an adjective, are used without cum.
6 1 CHAP. VI. Āfricō: understand bellō.
6 2 Magnī: an honorary name given to Pompey. See ill., p. 214.
6 6 Proeliō quōdam: 'in a certain battle'; proeliō is an abl. of time (§ 119), though the English idiom would lead us to expect in proeliō, an abl. of place where.
6 7 suōrūm: the possessive reflex. adjective (§ 132); sc. miliōrum.— quod . . . servāset: a cause stated on the authority of some one other than the writer (§ 188.b); 'he upbraided Fortune because (as it seemed to him) she had kept him for this disaster.'
6 9 sibi: the dative of reference (§ 85), often used with the dative of purpose or end (§ 89); 'he thought that that war would prove disastrous to him' (lit. 'for a disaster to him').
6 13 omnium: an obj. gen. (§ 75. b); if victor, on which the gen. depends, were a verb, omnium would be the dir. obj. (accusative), vīcit omnēs.
7 2 CHAP. VII. annumque . . . accommodāvit: i.e. he made the number of days in the calendar year accord with that in the solar year. See § 227. a.
7 3 Repetundārum: a gen. used with a verb of convicting; 'those convicted of extortion.'— convictōs: a past participle agreeing with ās understood.
7 4 quae . . . minuerent: a rel. clause of purpose (§ 175).
7 5 exercuit: 'enforced.'
7 7 Dictātor: a Roman magistrate appointed in times of danger and having absolute power. When Cæsar was appointed dictator in perpetuum, that
NOTES

is, for a term extending beyond the period of danger and necessity, it was feared that he was aiming at regal authority. See Introd. I. 9.

7 8 insolentius: 'too arrogantly'; see § 145.
7 13 ùnus et alter rogabant: i.e. people generally were asking etc.
8 Chap. VIII. The dramatic events recorded in this chapter are graphically presented by the colored plates, pp. 8, 311.
8 6 Nönne scis: 'don't you know?' See § 170. a. 2.
8 7 Ídús Mârtiâs: see § 227. d.
8 8 cum . . . vēnisset: note the difference in time between vēnisset and recūsāret (l. 10); 'when he had come . . . when he kept refusing.'
8 11 Caesarem: obj. of volnerat, of which Casca is the subj.
9 1 Chap. IX. si . . . data esset: 'if it had been in his power to choose' (lit. 'if the power of choosing had been given to him'); a condition contrary to fact in past time (§ 199. III. b).
9 2 prōdīē quam occīsus esset: 'on the day before he was killed.' There is a comparative idea in prōdīē ('the day sooner'), which allows the use of the same construction as follows priusquam (§ 197. a).
9 3 conlātō: with sermōne; sermōnem cōnferre, 'to carry on a conversation.'
9 5 quō . . . hoc: these abl. of measure of difference may best be translated by the English correlatives 'the . . . the' (cf. 'the deeper the well, the colder the water'); lit. 'by how much the more infrequent . . . by so much the more praiseworthy.'
9 7 Cum enim dēprehendisset: 'for when he had seized.'
9 8 ab eis . . . restitterant: 'by those who had opposed him'; for the case of sibi, see § 83.
9 15 Chap. X. Caesar . . . statūrā: 'Cæsar is said to have been tall' (lit. 'of high stature'). The abl. of description, statūrā, is in the pred. of the sentence, as are also òre, oculīs, and capite (§ 116. b). See Introd. I. 11.
9 16 Quam: 'and this,' or simply 'this'; see § 143.
9 17 molestē ferēbat: 'he was annoyed at' (lit. 'he bore ill').
9 18 gestandae: the gerundive is to be carefully distinguished from the gerund, which is always governed as a noun, but has an active verbal force and so sometimes, but not generally, has an obj. in the accusative. The gerundive is pass. and agrees with its noun like an adjective. The gerund form corresponding to iūs laurae gestandae would be iūs gestandī lauræm, 'the right of wearing the laurel wreath.' The gerundive is to be translated in the same way, though lit. it means 'the right of the laurel wreath to be worn.'
10 1 Rei militāris . . . perfītissimus: see § 80. See Introd. I. 12.
10 3 equō: 'on horseback.'— pedibus: 'on foot.'
10 5 ut . . . pervenīret: a result clause.
10 7 ut visum est: 'as it seemed.'
THE GALLIC WAR — BOOK I

11 1 Chap. I. Gallia: the whole country of Gaul excepting the Roman Province (Ulterior Pròvinciæ) and Cisalpine Gaul (Cìterior Pròvinciæ, now known as northern Italy). See the map at the beginning of the book, and the Introd. II. 1. — omnis: ‘as a whole.’ — dìvisa: past participle used as an adjective.

11 2 ünam: sc. partem from partēs above. — incolunt: ‘inhabit.’ The words quārum . . . incolunt etc. may be translated freely, ‘one of which is inhabited by the Belgae’ etc. — quī: the antecedent is ei (‘those’) understood, subj. of incolunt.

11 3 ipsōrum: shown to be emphatic by its position (see Composition, Lesson I. 2); ‘in their own language.’

11 4 linguā: abl. of respect (§ 115). — inter sè: ‘from one another’ (lit. ‘among themselves’).

11 5 Gàllōs etc.: trace these boundaries on the map. Use the maps in all cases to locate the names of places and peoples.

11 6 dividit: the verb is sing. because the rivers make one boundary (§ 68).

11 7 Hōrum: part. gen. with fortissimi (§ 76). — propterē quod: ‘because’ (lit. ‘because of this, that’).

11 8 cultū: ‘civilization,’ as shown by outward signs, dress, and habits of life. — hūmānitāte: ‘refinement,’ of mind or feeling. — pròvinciæ: Ulterior Pròvincia, the southeastern part of Transalpine Gaul. See map and Introd. II. 1. This territory was organized as a province, and was under the influence of Roman civilization.

11 9 mercātōrēs: traders, or peddlers. They traveled with mules, pack horses, and wagons.

11 10 effēminandōs: gerundive (§ 224, 6). Distinguish carefully from the gerund.

11 11 Germānīs: dative with an adjective of nearness (§ 90). — Rhēnum: this natural boundary has always been patriotically guarded by the Germans and has inspired their well-known song “Die Wacht am Rhein.”

11 12 Quā dē causā: ‘and for this reason’; for the translation of a rel. pronoun beginning a sentence see § 143.

11 14 cum: ‘while.’ — suis and ipsī: both refer to the Helvetii, ēōs and eōrum to the Germans. For the reflexive suis see § 132.

12 1 quam . . . dictum est: ‘which it has been said (above) the Gauls occupy.’ For the indir. disc. see § 204. The dir. disc. would be Gallī obtinent. Do not transl. obtinēre ‘obtain.’
NOTES

12 3 ab Sēquanis: 'on the side of' etc.
12 4 vergit etc.: 'slopes to the north'; the highlands are along the southern boundary, and most of the rivers in that quarter flow in their main course northerly.
12 5 Galliae: Central (or Celtic) Gaul, the country just described, not Gallia omnis.
12 6 spectant in: 'face,' or 'lie toward.'
12 9 interoccāsum etc.: 'toward the northwest,' i.e. from the Province, the quarter from which this direction and that mentioned in l. 6 are considered.
12 11 Chap. 2. M(arcō) Messālā et M(arcō) Pisōne consulibus: abl. abs. denoting time (§ 117. 6). Transl., 'in the consulship of Marcus Messala' etc. In reading the Latin and in translating always give the names in full. Two consuls were elected annually, and the Romans designated the year by the names of the consuls in office (§ 228). The two named above were consuls in 61 B.C., three years before Cæsar went to Gaul.
12 12 coniūrātiōnem: 'a conspiracy.' The Helvetii had been governed by kings, but were now ruled by chiefs from among the nobles (nōbilēs). Orgetorix, by making himself leader of the emigration, hoped to gain royal power over the Helvetii, and through them to extend his sway over the whole of Gaul.—cīvitātī: dative after persuāsit (§ 83).
12 13 ut... exirent: subst. clause used as the obj. of persuāsit (§ 183).
12 14 perfacile esse etc.: indir. disc. after a verb of saying implied in persuāsit. The dir. words of persuasion used were perfacile est etc., potīrī being the subj. and perfacile in the pred. of est. 'He persuaded them... (saying) that it was very easy.'—cum... praestārent: causal clause (§ 189).— omnibus: dative with a compound verb (§ 84).
12 15 imperiō: see § 107. a.
12 16 hā: dir. obj. of persuāsit. See Composition, Lesson XXVIII. note 1.
12 17 unā ex parte: 'on one side.'
12 22 His rēbus fiēbat: 'from these causes it came about' (§ 109).—ut... vagārentur: 'that they roamed about less widely' etc.; but transl. more freely and naturally, 'from these causes it came about that they were becoming less free to wander.' The clauses ut... vagārentur... possent are the subjs. of fiēbat (§ 187. II).
12 23 finitimis: see § 84. — quā ex parte: 'and for this reason'; for this translation of quā see § 143 and cf. p. 11, l. 12.— hominēs: 'being men,' in apposition with the subj. of adficiēbantur.
12 24 bellandī: gerund (§ 223. a).
12 26 millia passuum: 'miles.' The passus was the stretch from where one heel is raised to where it is set down again, and is reckoned at five
Roman feet. A Roman mile (1000 paces) was about 400 feet less than ours. — milia: accusative of extent (§ 96).

12 27 passuum: part. gen. (§ 76). — CCXL: ducenta quadrāgintā; always give the Latin words for numerals when reading the text. — patēbant: keep in mind the difference in meaning between the past descr. and the perf. (§§ 154. b, 156).

13 1 Chap. 3. His rēbus: 'by these considerations' (§ 109).

13 2 quae . . . pertinērent: dependent clause in indir. disc. (§ 203. a). There is, to be sure, no verb here that expressly means 'say' or 'think,' but from the main verb cōnstituērunt one can see that the clause expresses the thought of the Helvetii, not of Cæsar, and for this reason the subord. verb is in the subjv.

13 3 quam maximum: 'as great as possible.'

13 6 cōnficiendās: 'completing'; gerundive, denoting purpose (§ 225. a).

13 7 in tertium annum . . . cōnfirmant: 'fix . . . for the third year.' For the tense of cōnfirmant see § 153. a.

13 9 Cāsticō: see § 83.

13 10 filīō, Sēquānō: in apposition with Cāsticō (§ 58).

13 12 ut . . . occupāret: subj. clause, obj. of persuādet (§ 183). For the past tense see the rule for sequence of tenses (§§ 162, 164).

13 13 quod: rel. pronoun with rēgnum for antecedent (§ 137). — Dumnōrīgī: indir. obj. of persuādet (l. 15). Dumnōrīgī was a younger brother of Diviciācus (l. 14), a strong representative of the old aristocratic clan-spirit among the Hāedui. He was ambitious for power, a vigorous leader of the anti-Roman faction among his people, and caused Cæsar much trouble for many years.

13 14 Diviciāci: this Hāeduan chief had been in Rome, knew Cicero and other prominent Romans, and was the constant friend and ally of Cæsar in his campaigns. He represented the popular element that was opposed to the old clannish aristocracy, of which such men as Orgetorix and Dumnōrīgī were the leaders.

13 15 ut idem cōnāretūr: 'to make the same attempt.'

13 17 Perfacle: pred. with esse of the sentence of which cōnāta perficere is the subj. (§ 48. I. b); n. gender because the subj. is an inf. Cōnāta is n. plur. accusative, obj. of perficere. — factū: see § 226. b. — illīs probat: 'undertook to show them'; historical present (§ 153. a).

13 19 esse: indir. disc. with a verb of saying understood; '(he told them) there was no doubt that' etc. (§ 203. a). — quīn . . . possent: see § 186. — Galliae: see § 76.

13 20 sē . . . conciliātūrum (esse): the indir. disc. continues; '(he told them) that he would win over' etc. The dir. form was conciliābō. Remember
that the reflexives se and suus in their various forms refer, as a rule, to the subj. of their clause, and in indir. disc. to the subj. of the verb of saying (§ 133).

13 21 oratiōne: do not transl. 'oration'; the meaning is rather a 'plea,' or 'argument.' For the case see § 109. — fidem et iūs iūrandum: transl. freely, 'an assurance confirmed by oath.'

13 22 rēgnō occupātō: abl. abs. expressing time (§ 117. b). Such a construction can generally be expanded in translation into a clause denoting time, cause, condition, or concession, introduced by 'when,' 'since,' 'if,' or 'though,' according to the context. — per trēs . . . populōs: i.e. the Helvetii, Hāedui, and Sequani.

13 23 Galliae: see § 81. d. — posse: equivalent to a fut. inf.; indir. disc. with sēsē as subj. (§ 204).

13 24 Chap. 4. Mōribus: see § 111.

13 25 ex vinculis: lit. 'out of chains'; i.e. '(standing) in chains.' We should say simply 'in chains.' — causam dicere: 'to plead his cause.' — Damnātum: a past participle expressing condition (§ 220. c) and modifying cum understood, which would be the obj. of sequī; the subj. of sequī is poenam, which is explained by the subst. appositive clause ut . . . cremārėtur (§ 183, third example). The whole expression damnātum poenam sequī . . . ut ignī cremārėtur is the subj. of oportēbat. The following diagram will show the relation of these words:

\[
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\text{poenam (ut [is] cremārētur ignī)}' \\
\text{sequī ([eum] damnātum)} \\
\text{oportēbat}
\end{array}\right.
\]

Transl. freely, 'he was doomed, if condemned, to be burned with fire.'

14 1 Diē: see § 119. — causa dictionis: 'for the trial' (lit. 'of the pleading of the case'). Dictionis depends on diē, and causae is the obj. gen. after dictionis (§ 75. b).

14 2 familiaris: 'clansmen.' See the vocabulary for the various meanings of this word. — ad: 'about'; adv. modifying the numeral adjective decem.

14 3 clientēs: 'retainers'; volunteer or adopted followers, the only class of slaves that seems to have been known in Gaul.

14 4 nē . . . dicerēt: neg. clause of purpose (§ 174).


14 9 quin . . . cōnscīverit (from cōnscīscō): 'that he committed suicide' (§ 186). The construction is analogous to that following nōn est dubium.

14 10 Chap. 5. nihilō: 'none the less'; lit. 'less by nothing' (§ 114).

14 11 ut . . . exēant: subst. clause in apposition with id (§ 183).
14 13 numerō: see § 115; ad as above in 1.2.—vicōs: 'villages,' i.e. unfortified groups of houses; oppida, on the other hand, are fortified (walled) towns capable of defense.

14 14 incendunt: 'set on fire.'

14 15 combūrunt: 'burn up.'—domum: see § 97. The verbal idea of 'returning' in the noun rediviōnis allows this construction, which is usual only with verbs.—spē sublātā: equivalent to a temporal clause (§ 117. b). Sublātā is from tollō.

14 16 ad . . . subeunda: see § 225. a.

14 18 uti . . . proficiscantur: subst. clause, dir. obj. of persuādent (§ 183).

In this clause āsī agrees with the omitted subj. of proficiscantur.

14 19 consīliō: abl. with āsī (§ 107. a).—vīcis exstūris: abl. abs.

14 22 receptōs . . . adāsciscunt: transl., 'they receive the Boii into their own number (ad sē) and unite them to themselves as allies.'

14 23 Chap. 6. Erant etc.: 'there were in all (only) two ways' etc.

14 24 possent: the subjv. in a clause of description or characteristic (§ 177. a).

14 25 inter . . . Rhodanum: about nineteen Roman miles from Geneva. The Rhone at this part was the boundary of the Roman Province.—vix quā . . . dūcentur: 'where carts could scarcely be drawn in single file.' Dūce-rentur is a subjv. of description, like possess in l. 24.

15 1 possent: a subjv. of result (§ 179).

15 2 multō: see § 114. While this route was easier, it required them to crush the Roman force at Geneva before they could use it.

15 3 pācāti erant: 'had been subjugated,' three years before. The Roman idea of 'pacifying' a people was to subdue them.

15 4 locīs: see § 120. b.—vadō: 'by ford(ing)' (§ 106).

15 7 persuāsūrōs (esse): indir. disc. Observe that esse is frequently omitted. The dir. expression was persuādeimus (§ 204).

15 8 bonō animō: 'well disposed' (§ 116. b).—vidērentur: subord. clause in indir. disc. (§ 208).

15 9 paterentur: see § 183; suōs and the subj. of paterentur (understood) refer to the Allobroges; ēōs refers to the Helvetii.

15 11 convenient: see § 175.—a. d. v. Kal. Apr.: = ante diem quintum Kalendās Aprilēs; transl. as if it were quintō die ant[e Kalendās Aprilēs, 'on the fifth day before the Calends of April,' i.e. March 28 (§ 227. h, i).

16 1 Chap. 7. Caesāri: almost any word in a Latin sentence may be made emphatic by being placed first. Caesār here makes his first appearance. His dramatic entrance at the critical moment, after the stage has been carefully set by describing how difficult the situation was, is characteristic of his style and of the man. Observe how carefully he has set forth (1) the geography of the
NOTES

country, chap. 1; (2) the situation and plans of the Helvetii, chaps. 2–6; and then (3) how he centers attention on himself, the main figure, as he enters on the scene. Observe that he regularly writes of himself in the third person.

16 2 ab urbe: Cæsar was at this time at Rome, having laid down his consulship preparatory to setting out for his province. See Introd. I. 7. The word urbs in Latin writers regularly means Rome, the city. — quam maximis potest itineribus: 'by the longest possible marches' (§ 124).

16 3 ulteriorem: i.e. beyond the Alps, Ulterior Provincia.

16 5 imperat: here used in the sense 'to make requisition on.' Provinciae is the indir. obj., and numerus the dir. obj.

16 6 legio: this was the tenth legion, which afterwards became so famous.

16 7 certiores facti sunt: 'were informed' (lit. 'made more certain').

16 9 qui dicerent: rel. clause of purpose (§ 175); not 'who said,' but 'who should say,' or, in better English, 'to say.' The construction after dicerent is indir. disc. The direct words of the ambassadors were nōbis est in animō... quod alius iter habēmus nūllum; rogāmus ut tuā voluntāte id nōbis facere liceat.

16 10 sibi: dative of possession (§ 88).

16 12 ut... liceat: subst. clause, obj. of rogāre (§ 183).

16 13 memoriat tenēbat: 'remembered' (lit. 'held by memory'); equivalent to a verb of knowing and so followed by indir. disc.

16 14 sub iugum: the iugum was made by sticking two spears into the ground and laying another across them above. Conquered soldiers were made to pass under this as a sign of sub-jugation; this act was equivalent to the modern 'laying down arms.'

16 15 concēdendum (esse): imper., depending on putābat.—hominēs: subj. of temperātūrōs (esse) depending on existimābat.—inimicō animō: abl. of description (§ 116).

16 16 datā facultāte: abl. abs. expressing condition (§ 117. a).

16 18 dum... convenirent: 'until the men should' etc. (§ 198. III. b).

16 19 diem: the meaning here is 'time,' not 'day.'

16 20 ad Īd. Apr.: 'April 13' (§ 227, d). — revertendentur: 'they should return' (§ 205).

16 21 chap. 8. legiōne: abl. of means (§ 106).

17 1 miliā: accusative of extent (§ 96). Cæsar's diem ad délubandum was used in fortifying the south bank of the river. The whole distance was, as Cæsar says, about nineteen miles, but the banks were so steep that only about three miles in all actually needed defense. Where this was necessary, the bank was cut down so as to be vertical. Then a trench was made a short distance back from the bank and running parallel to it. The earth from the trench was thrown in front of it to increase the height of the river bank. The pedum sédecim is the distance from the top of the wall of earth to the bottom of the ditch.
17 2 pedum: gen. of description ($77).
17 3 quō facilius . . . posset: why is quō used instead of ut? See §176.
17 4 sē invītō: abl. abs.; 'against his will' ($117.e).—cōnārentur . . .
posset: note that these verbs are in secondary sequence after the historical
presents dispōnit and commūnit ($164).
17 6 negat sē . . . posse: 'says he cannot' etc. Do not transl. negat
'deny.'
17 8 cōnentur: subjv. because it is in a subord. clause in indir. disc.
($208).—prohibītūrum (esse): supply sē for subj. and ēōs for obj.
17 10 nōn numquam: 'sometimes'; the two negatives equal an affirmative.
17 11 si . . . possent: indir. question depending on cōnātī; 'having tried
(to see) whether' etc. ($201).
17 12 cōnātū: see §101.
17 14 Chap. 9. īna . . . via: 'only the one way.'
17 16 possent: subjv. in a causal clause ($189).
17 17 ut . . . impetrārēnt: a purpose clause ($174).—ēō dēprecātōre: 'by
his intercession' (lit. 'he being intercessor').
17 18 grātiā: 'personal influence'; abl. of cause ($109).
17 20 novis rēbus: 'revolution'; dative ($83).
17 22 obstrictās: used as a pred. adjective.
17 23 patiēntur . . . dent: subjv. in subst. clauses of result ($187.I).—
obsidēs: these were persons of prominence given by one state to another as
security for fidelity. If the compact was broken, the hostages were held
responsible and punished.
17 24 Sēquani . . . Helvētiī: sc. obsidēs dent; dent is followed by the
purpose clauses nē . . . prohibēant and ut . . . trānseant ($174).
18 4 Chap. 10. fieret: subjv. in a subord. clause in indir. disc. after intellege-
gēbat ($208).
18 5 futūrum (esse) ut . . . habēret: 'it would be to the great peril of the
Province to have' etc.; ut . . . habēret is a subst. clause of result, subj. of
futūrum (esse) ($187.II).
18 6 locīs: abl. of place where ($120. b).
18 7 fīnitimōs: pred., 'have as neighbors' etc.
18 8 mūnitionī: see §84.—Labiēnum: an officer in whom Cæsar had
the greatest confidence, and to whom he generously gives much credit.
18 9 lēgātum: see Introd. III. 6. b. See vocabulary for two meanings of
this word. The context will always tell which is intended.
18 10 duās: the eleventh and twelfth legions.—trēs: the seventh, eighth,
and ninth. These together with ēā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat (p.16, l.21), which
was already on the field of action, made up the six legions of Cæsar's army.
18 16 Complūribus . . . pulsīs: pulsīs agrees with hīs (abl. abs.) ($117. b).
NOTES

18 21 Chap. 11. angustiās: the pass between the Jura Mountains and the Rhone, described in chap. 6.

19 1 rogātum: supine (§ 226. a and note). A word of saying is implied in rogātum which accounts for the following indir. disc. The dir. form was sta omni tempore ... merētī sumus ut paene in conspectū exercitūs vestrī agrī vāstāri, liberī in servitiām abduči, oppida expugnāri nōn dēbuerint (§ 179).

19 6 dēpopulātīs: pass., though from a deponent verb.

19 9 sibi ... nihil esse reliquī: 'that they have nothing left' (lit. 'there was nothing of a remainder to themselves'). For reliquī see § 76; for sibi, § 88.

19 11 exspectandum (esse): imper. transl. by the active, 'he must not' etc.

19 12 pervenīrent: see §§ 198. III. b, 162.

19 13 Chap. 12. Flūmen est Arar: 'there is a river (called) the Saône.'

19 14 lēnitātē: abl. of description (§ 116).

19 15 in ... fluat: indir. question (§ 201). The clause is the subj. of passīt.

19 16 trānsībant: note the continuative force of the past descr. (§ 154. a).

19 17 partēs: obj. of -dūxisse; flūmen is accusative, depending on trāns-
in trādūxisse (§ 95).

19 18 citrā: 'on this side of' (as viewed from Rome).

19 19 dē tertiā vigiliā: 'in the third watch,' i.e. between midnight and 3 A.M. See vocabulary.

19 23 mandārunt: contracted from mandāvērunt.

20 4 quae pars ... intulerat, ea ... persolvēt: the normal order would be ea pars quae etc.; the antecedent of quae is pars, which is drawn into the rel. clause and made a part of it (§ 140).

20 5 princeps poenās persolvēt: 'paid the penalty first'; princeps, though an adjective, is used with the force of an adverb (§ 126).

20 7 eius soceri: 'his father-in-law,' L. Calpurnius Piso, father of Cæsar's wife, Calpurnia, and consul of the present year (see end of chap. 6).

20 11 Chap. 13. pontem ... faciendum cūrat: 'had a bridge made' (§ 224. a).

20 13 cum ... intellegērunt: see § 195. — diēbus vigintī: 'in the course of twenty days' (§ 119).

20 14 ut ... trānsīrent: a result clause in apposition with id (§ 187. I).

20 17 Si ... faciet ... ibunt ... erunt: a future more probable condi-
tion (§ 199. II. a).

20 20 incommodi: for gen. see § 81. a.

20 22 Quod: 'as to the fact that' etc. (§ 182. a).

20 23 suīs: see §§ 82, 132. Suīs is used as a subst. (§ 127).

21 1 ut ... contendāmus ... nitāmur: see § 179.
21 8 sē ... quō: abls. of measure of difference (§ 114); 'I am the more incensed, the less' etc.
21 9 sī ... fuisset: a past condition contrary to fact (§ 199. III. b). Transl. quī sī 'if it.' The subj. of fuisset is quī, which refers to the Roman people. Note the accent of alīc'iús.
21 11 quā ré timēret: quā ré is equivalent to propter quod with quicquām understood for the antecedent; 'the Roman people did not know that anything had been done by them to cause them to fear' (lit. 'on account of which they' etc.). Timēret is thus a subj. of description (§ 177); observe that the collective noun populus Rōmānus takes a singular verb (§ 65. a).
21 12 Quod sī: 'but if' etc.
21 13 contumēliae: see § 81. a. — volō: see § 199. I. a.
21 14 quod ... temptāstis ... vexāstis: 'the fact that' etc. These clauses are in apposition with iniūrārum (§ 182).
21 17 Quod ... glōriāmini ... admirāmini: 'the fact that' etc. These quod clauses are the subjects of pertinet (§ 182); for the singular verb see § 67.
21 19 Cōnsuērunt: emphatic position (see note on p. 11, l. 3); 'it is the custom of the gods to grant' etc. (lit. 'the gods are wont'). — quō gravius ... dolēant: see § 176. Cf. also p. 17, l. 3.
21 20 quōs: the antecedent of this rel. is sī (§ 139).
21 23 Cum ... sint: a concessive clause (§ 192. note). Cum with the subj. may mean 'when,' 'since,' or 'although'; the presence of the word tamen, 'nevertheless,' in the main clause is generally a sure indication of the last meaning. — si ... dabuntur: see § 199. II. a.
21 24 ut ... intellegam: see § 174. — Haeduīs: see § 84. a.
21 25 ipsis sociisque: see § 84.
21 28 uti ... cōnsuērint: a result clause with the antecedent word ita (§ 179 and note). — cōnsuērint: contracted from cōnsuēverint.
21 29 Hōc responsō datō: abl. abs. denoting time (§ 117. b).
22 2 Chap. 15. equitātum: see Introd. III. 2. — quem ... coāctum habēbat: 'which he had, collected'; more strictly 'held (had in hand) after being collected' (§ 156. b. note).
22 4 videant: rel. clause of purpose (§ 175); transl. 'to see' (lit. 'who should see'). It is followed by the indir. question quās ... faciant as object.
22 5 cupidius: 'too eagerly' (§ 145). — aliēnō locō: 'on unfavorable ground' (lit. 'on another's ground'); see § 120. b.
22 10 novissimō agmine: 'at their rear'; abl. of place where (§ 120). When an abl. of place is qualified by an adjective, the preposition is sometimes omitted.
NOTES

22 12 rapinis: see § 101.
22 15 quinis aut sēnis: distributives; 'five or six miles each day.'—
milibus: see § 105.
22 16 CHAP. 16. Haeduōs frumentum . . . flāgitāre: 'demanded grain of
the Hædui' (§ 93).
22 17 essent . . . polllicitā: subjv. because of the implied indir. disc.;
'which (as he said) they had promised' (§ 208. ḷ). If Cæsar had given this as
a fact on his own authority, he would have written erant . . . polllicitā.—
flāgi-
tāre: historical inf. Transl. as if past descr. ind. (§ 218).
22 18 frūmenta: the plur. is regularly used of standing grain. The crops
of grain were not ripe because it was too early in the season (about the last
of June); the green fodder (pābulī) was scarce because Cæsar was following
in the path of the Helvetii, whose thousands of cattle had swept the country
almost bare.—nē . . . quidem: 'not . . . even of green fodder.' A word
standing between nē and quidem is made emphatic.
22 19 frūmentō: abl. with ūtē (§ 107. a).
22 20 fīmīne Ararī: see § 120. ḷ. note 1.
22 22 Diēm: see § 96.—dēcere: historical inf. (§ 218); also dēcerē, l. 23;
cf. flāgitāre, l. 17.—cōnferri, comportāri, addēre: the subj. is frūmentum.
Note the climax, 'they said it was being gathered, it was on the way, it was
already at hand.'
22 24 diūtius: 'too long'; cf. cupidīus, l. 5.—quō diē: abl. of time (§ 119).
Do not transl. diē.
23 1 summō magistrātūi praerat: 'held the chief office.' For the case of
magistrātūi see § 84.
23 2 vergobretum: see § 94.
23 4 posset: the subj. is frūmentum understood. For the mood see
§ 214.
23 5 propinquīs hostibus: 'with the enemy so near'; abl. abs.
23 6 sublevētur: Cæsar is telling why he blamed the Hædui; but, looking
back to that time as he writes, he speaks of himself as some other person
upon whose authority the reason is given; 'he blamed them because (as he
said)' etc. (§ 188. ḷ).
23 7 quod sit dēstitūtus: subjv. on the same principle as sublevētur;
'because (as he said) he had been left in the lurch.'
23 9 CHAP. 17. quod: rel. pronoun, obj. of tacerat. The antecedent is
id understood, obj. of prōpōnit.
23 11 valeat: subjv. of description (§ 177. a).
23 12 improbā ērātiōne: 'shameless talk.'
23 13 nē frūmentum cōnferant: see § 185.
23 14 Praestāre: 'that it is better.'—si . . . possint: see § 199. II. ḷ.
23 16 quin... sint ěreptūrī: see § 186. The verb is an active periphrastic form (§ 222. I).
23 17 Hāedūs: dative of separation (§ 86).
23 19 quod... ěnūntiāvī: 'as to the fact that' etc. (§ 182. a); cf. p. 20, l. 22 and note.
23 20 quantō... fēcerim: indir. question (§ 201).
23 23 CHAP. 18. pluribus praeessentibus: 'in the presence of many' (§ 117. e).
23 24 dimittit: historical present (§ 153. a). A number of others follow.
24 1 esse vēra: 'that the facts are as follows'; explained by the quotation following.—Ipse est Dumnorix: 'Dumnorix is the very man.'
24 2 summā audāciā: 'of the utmost boldness' (§ 116).
24 5 pretiō: abl. of value (§ 108).—redempta habet: see § 156. b. note; cf. p. 22, l. 3.—illō licente: 'when he bid'; the verb is from liceor, not licet.
24 6 rēbus: see § 106.
24 7 ad largiendum: 'for bribery' (to buy political support); see § 223. c.
24 8 sūmpτū: see § 106.
24 9 domi: see § 120. a.
24 10 causā: 'for the sake' etc. This is the regular meaning of the word when following the gen. For the case see § 109 and note.
24 12 sorōrem ex mātre: 'sister on the mother's side,' 'half sister.'
24 15 suō nōmine: 'on his own account' (§ 109).
24 17 Sī quid accidit: see § 199. I. a.
24 19 imperiō: 'under the rule' (§ 112).
24 21 quod: 'as to the fact that' (§ 182. a).
24 22 dīēbus: see § 114; there is a comparative idea in ante (lit. 'before by a few days').
24 24 auxiliō Caesarī: 'as an aid to Cæsar' (§ 89).
25 2 CHAP. 19. accēderent: see § 189; the following quod clauses are in apposition with rēs ('facts'). The verbs are in the subjv. on the principle of implied indir. disc. (§ 208. b); cf. p. 22, l. 17 and note.
25 3 dandōs: see § 224. d; cf. p. 20, l. 11.
25 4 inlusīsū suō etc.: 'without his authority or that of the state.'
25 5 ipsīs: i.e. himself and the Hāedūs. For the case see § 117. e.
25 6 causae: part. gen. depending on satīs, which is used as a noun (§ 76. a).—quā rē... animadverteret: 'should proceed against (or 'punish') him'; subjv. of description (§ 177).
25 8 quod... cognōverat: 'the fact that he knew,' the clause is in apposition with ūnum, 'only one thing, namely' (§§ 181, 182, second example); for the meaning of cognōscō in the perf. tenses see vocabulary.
NOTES

25 9 studium: 'attachment,' as a partisan.
25 10 voluntatem: 'good will,' as a friend.
25 11 nē: 'that' (§ 184). — eius: i.e. of Dumnorix.
25 18 prius quam . . . cōnārētur: 'before he should attempt' (§ 197, b).
25 18 summam . . . fidem: 'full confidence.' — eō: refers to Diviciacus, as does ἐπὶ (l. 17); while apud sē (l. 19), 'in his presence,' refers to Cæsar.
25 20 ipse: i.e. Cæsar (§ 136). The gist of the request is in sine eius offensione animi, referring to the displeasure of Diviciacus, whose friendship he desires to retain. Cæsar's diplomacy is constantly apparent.
25 22 Chap. 20. complexus: i.e. he embraces Cæsar's knees, falling at his feet.
25 23 nē quid gravius: 'that not any too severe measures' (§ 122); gravius is an adjective modifying quid.
25 24 ex eō: 'from that fact,' referring to haec esse vēra.
26 4 cum . . . teneō: 'while I hold.'
26 6 voluntāte: see § 111.
26 10 tanti: 'of so great account,' gen. of value (§ 78). — uti . . . eius voluntātī ac precibus condōnet: 'that in deference to his wish and prayers he would overlook' etc. The clause is one of result (§ 179).
26 13 reprehendat: indir. question (§ 201). Two more instances follow.
26 15 Diviciācō frātī: 'for the sake of his brother, Diviciacus' (§ 85).
26 19 Chap. 21. milīa: see § 96.
26 20 cognōscerent: the subj. is qui, whose antecedent is quōsdam, or some such word, to be supplied as the obj. of misit (§ 142). For the mood of the verb see § 175.
26 22 prō prætōre: the prætor had the power to command an army; a lēgātus might be given such power temporarily, and he was then called lēgātus prō prætōre.
26 24 cōnsili: pred. gen. after quid sit, 'what his plan is' (§ 77, a). — dē quartā vigiliā: the third watch always began at midnight; but the length of the watches varied according to the season, being shorter in the short nights of summer. This was in June, and the fourth watch began about 2.30 A.M.
26 26 rei: see § 80.
26 28 in: sc. exercitūā.
27 2 Chap. 22. ipse: '(and) he himself,' i.e. Cæsar.
27 3 passibus: abl. of measure of difference (§ 114), or of comparison after longius (§ 105, note 2).
27 4 Labiēni: sc. adventus.—equō admīssō: ‘at full speed.’

27 6 arnis: the shields and helmets of the Gauls were distinctly different from those of the Romans, as may be seen by a comparison of the illustrations, pp. 31, 45, 52, 69, 180.

27 7 insignibus: i.e. devices on shields, helmets, etc.—stags’ horns, eagles’ plumes, etc.

27 8 Caesar . . . Instruct: the inference from the report would be that Labienus and his men had been overwhelmed. Cæsar in consequence falls back.

27 9 ut: ‘since,’ ‘inasmuch as.’—erat . . . praecptum: impers.; this verb cannot take a personal pass. construction (§ 83. a). The grammatical subj. is the clause nē . . . committeret, a negative subst. clause of purpose (§ 183).

27 10 Multō . . . diē: abl. of time; ‘late in the day’ (§ 119).

27 16 quod nōn vidīset: ‘what he had not seen’; id understood, the obj. of renūntīāsse, is the antecedent; prō vīsō, ‘as if seen’ (lit. ‘for a thing seen’).

27 16 intervālō: sc. eōdem, ‘at the same interval as usual’; for the case see § 112.

27 21 CHAP. 23. milibus: for the construction cf. note on l. 3.

27 22 prōspiciendum (esse): impers.; sc. sibi, dative of apparent agent (§ 87); ‘he thought he ought to look out for the supply of grain.’

27 23 āvertit: toward the north; the Helvetii were traveling westward; see campaign map, facing p. 12.

27 24 fugītivōs: ‘runaway slaves.’

27 25 quod . . . existimārent . . . confiderent: subjv. because the reason is not given as surely the right one, but merely as the supposed one (§ 188. 6).

27 26 eō magis: ‘all the more’ (lit. ‘more by this’); see § 114.

27 27 rē: abl. of separation (§ 101).—interclūdi: complementary inf. (§ 217. c) after posse, the subj. of which is eōs (Rōmānōs) understood.

28 1 itinere conversō: ‘facing about’ (lit. ‘altering their course completely’); i.e. instead of continuing on their way, by which they might have reached the coast, they returned and gave Cæsar the chance he was waiting for.

28 3 CHAP. 24. id: governed by animum āvertit, as a compound verb.

28 4 qui sustinērēt: rel. clause of purpose (§ 175).

28 5 in colle mediō: ‘halfway up the hill’ (§ 125).—triplicem aciem: see Introd. III. 12.

28 6 legiōnum: gen. of material (§ 79). The four veteran legions (VII–X) stood side by side, each in three lines. Legions XI and XII, which he had last raised (proximē conscripserat), were not as yet sufficiently steady to bear the brunt of a battle and so were set to guard the camp. See battle plan.

28 8 sarcinās: see ill., p. 69, and Introd. III. 9. d.
NOTES

28 10 cum omnibus suis carrīs: i.e. not sending a force of fighting men, but following with their whole train. It seems to have been the custom of migrating peoples to go to battle with their families and carts; the former for encouragement, the latter for defense.

28 12 phalange: great masses of men in close order, like the old Greek phalanx.

28 14 Chap. 25. suō (equō remōtō) etc.: i.e. his own and those of his officers. Cæsar is reported to have said to his men, "I will mount again when the enemy run." Officers and men, sharing danger on equal terms, would be equally brave. Cæsar understood human nature thoroughly.

28 17 pīlis: see Introd. III. 9. c, with the ill., p. xxiv.

28 18 Gallīs . . . impeditōm: dative of purpose and of the person affected (§ 89).

28 19 plūribus: 'several.'

28 20 ferrum: i.e. the long iron shank of the pīlum.

28 21 inflexisset: subjv. in a causal clause (§ 189).—sinistrā impeditā: abl. abs. denoting cause (§ 117. c); transl. 'since the left hand (which carried the shield) was hampered.'

28 22 multī ut: transl. as if it were ut multī; multī is made emphatic by its position. Ut here introduces a clause of result.

28 23 nūdō: 'unprotected.'—corpore: abl. of manner (§ 110).

29 1 agmen . . . claudēbant: 'brought up their rear.' The Boii and Tulingi, with about 15,000 men, had formed the van of the Helvetian line of march, and consequently became the rear when the line faced about (p. 28, l. 1) to attack Cæsar. They now struck at his exposed right flank (latere apertō) as they came on the field from the road (hence ex itinere). The right side is said to be exposed since the protecting shield is carried on the left arm.

29 2 novissimis praesidiō: see § 89, and cf. Gallīs . . . impeditōm, p. 28, l. 18.

29 3 adgressī: 'having attacked.'—circumveniēre: sc. coepērunt from l. 5.

29 5 conversa siga . . . intulērunt: 'faced about (lit. 'bore reversed standards') and charged in two divisions' (bīpartītō). See battle plan.

29 6 victis . . . submōtis: i.e. the Helvetii (§ 83); venientēs refers to the Boii and Tulingi.

29 7 resisteret . . . sustinēret: see § 174.

30 1 Chap. 26. pugnātum est: see § 66; transl. 'the fight was carried on' (lit. 'it was fought').

30 3 alteri . . . alterī: the Helvetii and the Boii and Tulingi respectively (§ 144. d).—ut: as.

30 5 cum: concessive (§ 192).—hōrā septimā: the day from sunrise to
sunset was divided into twelve equal parts (hōrne). The length of the hours varied, therefore, according to the length of the day. As sunset at this time was about eight o’clock, the daylight hours were equal to about an hour and a quarter of our time. This would make ab hōra septimā a little past 1 P.M.

30 6 aversum: ‘in retreat,’ ‘fleeing’ (lit. ‘turned away’).—Ad multam noctem: ‘till late at night.’

30 9 coniciēbant . . . subiciēbant: ‘hurled’ (from above), ‘thrust’ (from below). For the use of the past descr. see § 154. a.

30 11 impedimentis castrisque: see § 107. a.

30 12 captus est: agrees with the nearer subject (§ 67).

30 14 tōtā nocte: see § 119. note.

30 16 cum . . . potuissent: a causal subjv. (§ 189).

30 18 nē . . . iuvārent: ‘(telling them) that they should not’ etc. The subjv. stands for nōtīte iuvāre of dir. disc. (§§ 206, 203. a).

30 19 si iuvissent: the dir. disc. would be sī iūveritis, ‘if you shall have aided.’—locō: ‘estimation.’

30 22 Chap. 27. Qui cum: ‘when they’ etc. (§ 143).

30 26 qui . . . perfugissent: a subord. clause in implied indir. disc.

30 28 quōrum: the antecedent is hī, indir. obj. of imperāvit, which has for its dir. obj. the subst. clause utī . . . redūcerent.

30 5 occultāri: ‘be hid’ from Cæsar.—ignōrāri: ‘be unknown’ to anybody.

30 8 Chap. 28. Quod ubi: a rel. beginning a sentence and followed by a conjunction should be transl. by a personal or a demonstrative pronoun after the conjunction, as here quod ubi = ubi hoc (§ 143). Cf. Quī cum, p. 30, l. 22.—quōrum: the antecedent is hī, indir. obj. of imperāvit, which has for its dir. obj. the subst. clause utī . . . redūcerent.

32 4 quod . . . existimārent: the subjv. is used because the reason is not given by the author as his own, but as the supposed reason of the Helvetii (§ 188. 6).

32 5 occultāri: ‘be hid’ from Cæsar.—ignōrāri: ‘be unknown’ to anybody.

32 8 Chap. 28. Quod ubi: a rel. beginning a sentence and followed by a conjunction should be transl. by a personal or a demonstrative pronoun after the conjunction, as here quod ubi = ubi hoc (§ 143). Cf. Quī cum, p. 30, l. 22.—quōrum: the antecedent is hī, indir. obj. of imperāvit, which has for its dir. obj. the subst. clause utī . . . redūcerent.

32 10 in hostium numerō habuit: ‘he treated as enemies’ (lit. ‘he held in the number of enemies’); i.e. he put them all to death, as a necessity of war and a warning to others.
NOTES

32 16 ipsōs: the Helvetii and their allies, as opposed to the others who were to provide food. — quōs: the rel. agrees with the nearer of the antecedents.
32 22 petentibus Hāeduis: 'to the Hāedui at their request' etc.; dative after concessit, of which the dir. obj. is ut Bōiōs conlocārent. The Boii would be valuable allies to the Hāedui.
32 24 parem . . . atque ipsi erant: 'equal with their own' (lit. 'as they themselves were').

33 1 Chap. 29. tabulae: 'tablets,' of the shape of a folding slate, with wax spread inside, written on with a pointed instrument called stīlus. See illustration, p. 56. — litterīs Graecīs: this refers merely to the letters. There was a Greek colony at Marseilles, from which they had adopted the Greek alphabet, but not the language. The Gauls had no alphabet of their own, and probably written language was not used to any extent.
33 3 ratiō: 'an account.' — qui . . . exisset: an indir. question.
33 4 possēnt: subjv. of description (§ 177). The antecedent of qui is eōrum.
33 8 ad milia xcmii: 'about 92,000.' — Summa: 'the sum'; suērunt agrees with the plur. pred. If we deduct the Boii, who were adopted by the Hāedui, this reckoning would show an actual loss, in slain or captives, of nearly 250,000, including probably about 150,000 women and children or other noncombatants. Probably more escaped than the record shows.

The War with Ariovistus. The occasion of this new campaign was the following: The Hāedui, jealous of the Sequani, who lived a little to the north, had laid excessive tolls on their trade, which consisted chiefly in the export of salted meats for the southern market. This led to a war, in which the Sequani had invited the aid of the Germans, under Ariovistus, about three years before the campaign of Cæsar. The Germans, once in Gaul, had seized a large share of territory, and proved to be grasping and oppressive masters. Meanwhile the Helvetic war began to threaten. The Roman senate, to make safe, passed a decree promising favor and friendship to the Helvetii. At the same time they sent messengers to Ariovistus, saluting him as king and friend (chap. 35), recognizing his claim on Gaul, and, it was said, inviting him to Rome. This occurred the year before, during Cæsar's consulship. However, now that the fear of the Helvetii was past, Cæsar found himself obliged to take sides in the old quarrel.

33 18 Chap. 30. grātulātum: see § 226. a.
33 15 populi Rōmāni: an obj. gen. (§ 75. b).
33 18 eam rem . . . accidisse: 'nevertheless that event has happened not less advantageously (ex ësū) to the land of Gaul than to the Roman people.'
THE GALLIC WAR — BOOK I

33 17 eō cōnsiliō: abl. of cause (§ 109), and explained by the appositive clauses of purpose uti . . . habērent (§ 183, third example). — flōrentissimis rēbus: abl. abs. equivalent to a concessive clause (§ 117. d); ‘although they were in prosperous circumstances.’

33 19 imperiō: see § 107. a. — dōmici lō: dative of purpose (§ 89).

33 24 volūntāte: abl. of accordance (§ 111).

34 1 iūre iūrandō . . . sānxērunt: ‘ordained by oath that no one, except (those) to whom it should have been intrusted by common consent, should make known (their meeting).’

34 4 ChAP. 31. īdem: nominative plur. — ante: adv.

34 6 dē suā omniumque salūte: ‘concerning their own safety and (that) of all.’

34 7 Caesari ad pedēs: dative of reference (§ 85); transl., ‘at Caesar’s feet.’

34 9 nē . . . ēnūntientur . . . uti . . . impetrēmus: subst. clauses in apposition with id, the obj. of contendimus and labōrāmus (§ 183, third example; cf. p. 33, l. 17).

34 12 Galliae tōtīus: this does not include all of the Gallia defined in chap. 1, but only the eastern part of Celtic Gaul.

34 13 alterīus . . . alterīus: ‘the one . . . the other’ (§ 144. d); gens. after principātum.

34 15 uti . . . arcesserentur: a clause of result, subj. of factum est, ‘it came to pass’ (§ 187. II).


34 24 qui: the antecedent is ei understood, subj. of coāctī sunt (§ 142).

35 3 sēī . . . repetītūros (esse) . . . recūsātūros (esse): indir. disc. depending on the idea of saying in cīvitātem obstringere (§ 203. a). The words of their oath were ‘we will neither demand back hostages . . . nor refuse’ etc.

35 4 quō minus . . . essent: a clause following a verb of refusing (§ 185). Transl. by an inf., ‘refuse to be under their dominion’ etc., i.e. to do the bidding of the Sequani.

35 6 Īnus . . . sum: ‘I am the only one.’

35 7 potuerim: see § 177. a. — ut iūrārem: ‘to take an oath.’

35 8 Rōmam ad senātum: note that the preposition is used only with senātum; why not with Rōmam? See § 97.

35 9 postulātum: supine (§ 226. a).

35 11 peīus: n. adjective used as a noun; ‘a worse fate.’

35 14 dē alterā parte tertiā: ‘from a second third.’

35 16 paucīs mēnsibus ante: ‘a few months before’ (lit. ‘before by a few months’). Ante is an adv. followed by an abl. of measure of difference (§ 114).

35 17 Paucīs annīs: abl. of time within which (§ 119).
35 19 neque... agrō: 'neither can the Gallic land be compared with that of the Germans.'
35 20 haec: 'this of ours.'—illā: 'that of the Germans.' The Gauls regarded the Germans as savages.
35 22 ut semel: 'as soon as.'
35 24 nōbilissimī cuiusque: 'of all the noblest'; the sing. form of quisque when used with superlatives has the meaning of 'every,' 'all.'
35 25 omnia exempla cruciātūsque: lit. 'all examples and tortures'; the meaning is that he employed every kind of torture.
35 27 barbarus, irācundus, temerārius: 'savage, passionate, hasty.'
36 1 auxili: part. gen. depending on the indef. pronoun quid, 'anything,' 'something' (§ 76. a).
36 2 Galliōs: dative of agent (§ 87) with est faciendum, the subj. of which is idem, which in turn is explained by the appositive clause ut... experiantur.
36 4 Haec: emphasized by position, as if he said, 'Why! if this very conversation should be reported' etc. (cf. note on p. 11, l. 3).
36 5 quīn... sūmat: see § 186.
36 7 exercitus: gen.; 'that of the army.'
36 8 nē... trādūcātur: see § 185.
36 9 Rhēnum: depending on trāns in trā(ns)dūcātur (§ 95. note).
36 15 CHAP. 32. quae... esset: indir. question (§ 201).
36 16 respondēre: historical inf. (§ 218). Observe that the subj. is nominative. Cf. ēgīritāre, p. 22, l. 17.
36 20 Hōc: abl. of measure of difference (§ 114); freely translated, 'on this account.' It is explained by the appositive clause quod... audent (§ 182).
36 21 nē... quidem: 'not even in secret.' Cf. note on p. 22, l. 18.
36 22 absentis: predicate; 'even when absent' (§ 220. a).
36 23 velut... aedis: see § 200.
36 24 tamen: 'after all' (whatever they might have to suffer).—Sēquanīs: dative of apparent agent (§ 87).
37 2 CHAP. 33. sibi... cūrae etc.: 'that he would see to it' (lit. 'it would be for a care to him'); see § 89.
37 3 et beneficiō suō et auctōrītāte: construe after adductum, 'induced by both his favors and his influence'; beneficiō refers to services that would inspire gratitude, auctōrītāte to the prestige that would inspire fear in Ariovistus.
37 6 secundum ea: 'besides these considerations; secundum is here used as a preposition.—quā rē... putāret: 'on account of which he thought'; a descriptive clause (§ 177).
37 8 quod... vidēbat... intellegēbat: 'the fact that he saw... that he knew' etc. The clauses are in apposition with multae rēs in l. 6.
37 11 quod: rel. pronoun; the antecedent is the preceding indir. disc. Haeduōs . . . tenērī, . . . obsidēs esse apud Arioquistum ac Sequanōs, describing the plight of the Hāeduī and Sequani.—in tantō . . . Rōmānī: 'in view of the great power of the Roman people.'

37 15 periculōsum: 'he saw that it was dangerous to the Roman people for the Germans, little by little, to get in the way of crossing the Rhine;' etc. Germānōs is the subj. of consuēscere, and multitudinem is subj. of venīre. These two clauses are the subs. of periculōsum (esse). The whole clause is the obj. of vidēbat (§§ 217. 6, 203).—sibi . . . temperātūrōs . . . quin . . . exīrent: 'would refrain (check themselves) from going forth.' For sibi see § 83; for exīrent, see § 185.

37 17 ut . . . fecissent: 'as the Cimbri and Teutons had done before.' The form in the dir. disc. would be fecissent (§ 208).

37 19 quibus rébus: see §§ 143, 84.—occurrendum (esse): impers. Were the agent expressed, it would be sibi. Transl. freely, 'possibilities which he thought must be met at once.' Observe again that a verb which governs the dative (like occurrendum) cannot be used in the pass. with a personal subj.

37 22 CHAP. 34. ut . . . mitteret: a clause of purpose, subj. of placuit (§ 183, fourth example).

37 23 qui . . . postulārent: rel. clause of purpose (§ 175).—medium utriusque: 'between the two.'

37 24 conloquiō: 'for a conference.'—velle: depends on the verb of saying implied in postulārent.—rē pūblīcā: here 'matters of public interest' rather than 'the state.'

37 26 Si . . . esset: a condition contrary to fact (§ 199. I. 6).

38 1 si quid ille mē vōl: vōl takes here two objs. like verbs in § 93. Transl., 'if he wants anything of me.'

38 7 negōtī: part. gen. with quid.—sit: indir. question.

38 9 CHAP. 35. mandātīs: denoting a stern command. Cāesar now lays aside the language of diplomacy and presents his ultimatum.

38 10 adfectus: a participle denoting concession (§ 220. d).

38 12 ut . . . gravētur . . . putet: a result clause explaining hanc grātiām (§ 187. I).

38 15 nē quam: 'that not any.'

38 17 quōs: the antecedent is eōs understood, the obj. of reddere (§ 142). The subjvs. in this sentence (except licēat) are introduced by nē, or ut if implied, and are subst. clauses of purpose in apposition with haec.—illī . . . illīs: the Sēquani.

38 23 quōd . . . posset: 'so far as he could do it to the advantage of the republic.'—commodo: abl. of accordance (§ 111).

38 26 CHAP. 36. ut . . . imperēnt: a subst. clause in apposition with sūs.
NOTES

The antecedent of *qui* is *ei* understood, the subj. of *imperent*. The dative *ei*

is governed by *imperent* (§ 83).

38 27 *vicerint*: see § 214.— *quem ad modum*: 'in what manner.'

38 28 *victis*: dative with *imperare* (§ 83); the participle is used as a noun.

— *ad*: 'according to.'

39 4 *mihi*: see § 90.

39 6 *qui... faciat*: a descriptive clause denoting cause (§ 190).

40 1 *si... manēbunt*: 'if they will abide by the condition.'

40 3 *longē... abeit*: i.e. the fact that the Roman people call them

brothers will do them little good (lit. 'will be far from them').

40 4 *Quod*: 'as to the fact that' (§ 182. a).

40 6 *congregiātur*: subjv. in a command (§ 172. b).— *quid... possint*:

'what they can do.'


40 11 *quod... populārentur*: a reason given on another's authority,

which takes the subjv. on the principle of implied indir. disc.; 'because (as

they said) the Harudes were devastating their fields' (§§ 188. b, 208. b).

40 12 *nē obsessibus quidem*: cf. note on p. 22, l. 18.

40 13 *Trēveri*: sc. *questum veniēbant*.

40 16 *commōtus*: a participle denoting cause (§ 220. b).

40 17 *mātūrandum sibi (esse)*: imper. with dative of apparent agent;

transl., 'that he should have to hasten' (§ 222. II. note).

40 19 *resistē*: imper. ; transl., 'resistance could not be so easily made'

(§ 83. a).— *celerrimē*: for the form see comparison of *ācriter* (§ 17).

40 20 *contendit*: the general direction is north. Just where Ariovistus

was is uncertain.

40 21 Chap. 38. *trīdūl*: gen. of measure (§ 77. b).— *viam*: accusative of

kindred meaning (§ 98).

40 22 *occupandum*: gerundive agreeing with *Vesontiōnem*. Distinguish

from the gerund (§§ 224. b, 225. a).

40 23 *quod*: the antecedent is *Vesontiōnem*, but the agreement is with

*oppidum* (§ 138).

40 24 Id: refers to *ad occupandum Vesontiōnem*.

40 25 *praecavendum (esse)*: imper.; the subj. is *nē accideret*, a subst.

clause of purpose (§ 183, fourth example).

40 26 *eius*: dative of purpose or end (§ 89). Another dative might be

looked for with this one. See § 85.

40 27 *idemque*: sc. *oppidum.*— *ut... facultātem*: 'that it afforded a

great opportunity for protracting a war'; a clause of result.

42 2 *ut*: 'as if.'

42 4 *pedum*: pred. gen. after *est* (§ 77. a and b). For the construction
with amplius see § 105. note 2. The present site corresponds almost exactly to Cæsar’s description. See illustration, p. 41. — quā: ‘where.’


42 6 Hunc (montem) . . . efficit: ‘this an encompassing wall makes into a fortress.’

42 7 nocturnis . . . itineribus: transl., ‘marches by night and by day.’


42 12 vōcibus: ‘reports’ or ‘talk.’ — magnitūdine . . . virtūte . . . exercitātiōne: abls. of description (§ 116); cf. altitūdine, l. 5.

42 16 congressōs: ‘having met them.’

42 17 nōn mediocrē: ‘in no slight degree,’ ‘greatly.’

42 19 Hic: i.e. timor. — ortus est ā: ‘began with’ (lit. ‘rose from’). — reliquis: young Romans of noble families often accompanied commanders in their campaigns for the sake of military experience. Cæsar probably alludes to these. See Introd. III. 6. d.

42 20 urbe: i.e. Rome. — nōn magnum: ‘very little.’

42 21 alius aliā causā inlātā: ‘on various pretexts’ (lit. ‘another, another pretext having been alleged’). Notice that in Latin this double statement is condensed, only the second half being fully expressed. This is the regular idiom when alius is repeated in another case, and should be remembered (§ 144. d. 1).

42 22 quam . . . diceret: see § 177.

42 25 voltum ūngere: freely, ‘to put on a brave face.’

42 28 testāmenta obsignābantur: the seal was necessary to the validity of the will. The making of the wills shows that they had given up hope of ever returning home.

43 1 magnum . . . ūsum: ‘long experience in the service.’

43 3 Quī: the antecedent is ēi understood, the subj. of dīcēbant.

43 6 rem frūmentāriam: lit. the obj. of timēre, ‘they feared the supply of grain, that it might not’ etc.; transl. it as if it were the subj. of posset, ‘they feared that the supply of grain might not’ etc. This figure of speech, which consists in placing a word before the clause in which a statement is made regarding it, is called “prolepsis.” Compare

"Who knows the ways of the world,
       How God will bring them about."

Observe the force of ut in ut . . . posset depending on timēre (§ 184).

43 8 castra movērī ac signa ferī: ‘to break camp and advance.’ These are the regular military expressions. Note the idiom signa ferī, ‘advance.’
NOTES

43 9 attenditae: used in the sense of ‘obey’ (i.e. ‘hearken to’), and so followed by the dative (§ 83).

43 11 Chap. 40. adhibitis centuriōnibus: the centurions were not ordinarily invited into the councils of war; hence this special assertion. In addition to all the other grave dangers and difficulties of the war with the powerful German king, Caesar now suddenly finds himself face to face with a peril still more serious: that of a possible mutiny of his own army. The campaign was a hazardous undertaking, even with his men eager and willing to fight. With his men reluctant, and some of them even rebellious, Caesar stands for the moment alone, and his indomitable courage is nowhere better shown. He meets the emergency with the same decision and energy that he displays on the battle field, and manifests, in addition to supreme courage, marvelous diplomacy and knowledge of human nature. This speech, one of the most remarkable of antiquity, stamps Caesar as a consummate orator as well as an able general. Skillfully glossing over the difficulties of the undertaking, masterfully meeting every one of the alleged causes for hesitation, now by reason, now by appeal, he contrives to inspire his men with the invincible spirit of Rome that conquered the world.

43 12 quod . . . putarent: a reason given on another’s authority (§ 188. b). Here Caesar the writer gives the reason of Caesar the soldier, as if he were another person.

43 13 quaeendum . . . cogitandum: sc. esse; an impers. construction (§§ 224. a, 66).

43 15 Cur . . . quisquam . . . iūdicet: a rhetorical question; ‘why should any one consider?’ The question implies the answer that no one should consider (§ 172. d. note).

43 16 Mihi . . . persuādētur: ‘I am convinced’ (§ 83. a).

43 20 quid . . . vereāmini: cf. note on l. 15.

43 22 periculum: from the root of the verb ex-perior, ‘try’; the word which came to mean ‘danger’ originally meant ‘trial,’ and this is the meaning here.—Cimbriis et Teutoneis: these were a great horde of barbarians that about forty years before had crossed the Rhine, swept through Gaul, and were about to invade Italy. Their seemingly irresistible march was checked by the Romans under Marius, and they were practically destroyed.

43 24 meritus (esse) vidēbātur: ‘was seen to have deserved.’

43 25 servīli tumultū: ‘in the uprising of the slaves,’ i.e. the insurrection of slaves and gladiators under Spartacus, 73–71 B.C. These consisted, at least in part, of Germans captured by Marius. The abl. denotes time.—quōs: this refers to servōs as antecedent implied in the adjective servūti. —aliquid: adverbial accusative (§ 99); transl., ‘somewhat.’

43 27 bonī: see § 76. a.
THE GALLIC WAR — BOOK I

44 2 suís: 'their own' (of the Helvetii). — illórum: 'of the Germans.'
44 4 Si quóre: 'if any.' — adversum proelium: the defeat at Magetobriga; see p. 35, l. 23.
44 6 Ariovistum: subj. of vícisse in indir. disc.
44 7 neque sui potestàtem fécisset: 'and had given them no chance at him.'
44 9 ratióne . . . cónsilió . . . virtúte: see § 106.
44 10 Cui ratióni . . . hác: this expression is equivalent to hác ratióne cui; the antecedent is attracted into the rel. clause (§ 140); 'by this stratagem, for which there was opportunity against unskilled barbarians, not even Ariovistus himself hopes that our army can be caught.'
44 12 Qui: the antecedent is ei understood, the subj. of faciunt.
44 15 mihi . . . cùræ: 'I will take care of these things' (§ 89); cf. p. 37, l. 2.
44 18 Quod etc.: 'as to its being said that the soldiers will not obey the commands or advance' (§ 182. a).
44 19 quibuscumque etc.: lit. 'to whomsoever the army has not listened to the word, to these fortune has been lacking' etc.; dictō depends upon audiēns, and the two words combined, dictō audiēns, are treated as a single expression equivalent to a verb of obeying, governing the dative quibuscumque, whose antecedent is eis understood, governed by défuisse.
44 22 innocentia: this disproves avēritiam as félicitās does male rē gestā. Observe the reversed order (chiasmus) of the words, a figure common in verse and oratory:

male rē gestā / avēritiam
innocentia / félicitās

Compare in English:

"So like they were, no mortal
Might one from other know;
White as snow their armor was,
Their steeds were white as snow."

vítā: see § 119. note.
44 24 quod . . . conláturūs fui: sc. id as the antecedent of quod and the obj. of repreaesentābō.
45 2 praetōria cohors: 'bodyguard,' made up of the bravest men.
45 7 Chap. 41. innāta est: sing. verb agreeing with the nearest subj. (§ 67).
45 8 optimum iūdicium fécisset: 'had expressed the very highest opinion'; a reason stated on another's authority (§ 188. b).
45 10 cum tribūnīs . . . ēgērunt etc.: 'arranged with the tribunes to apologize' (satisfacerent).
NOTES

45 12 neque dē summā bellī etc.: 'nor supposed that the judgment concerning the policy of the campaign was theirs (suum), but their general's.'

45 13 suum . . . imperātōris: pred. after esse (§ 73. a).

46 1 itinere exquisitō . . . ut . . . dūceret: lit. 'a route having been sought out that led' etc.; lit. 'such that it led,' rather an unusual result clause. The route lay in a northeasterly direction, and entered the valley of the Rhine near the southern part of the Vosges Mountains. See the campaign map, p. 39.

46 2 eī: 'in him'; dative after fidem habēbat, which is equivalent to a verb of trusting (§ 83).

46 3 mīlūm: (sc. passuum) gen. of measure modifying circuitū (§ 77. b). Transl., 'by a circuit of more than fifty miles through an open country.'

46 5 cum . . . intermitteret: a causal clause (§ 189).

46 9 CHAP. 42. Quod: a rel. preceding its antecedent, id. — per sé: 'so far as he was concerned.'

46 10 accessisset: the subj. is Cæsar.

46 12 ad sānītātem revertī: 'was beginning to return to his senses.'

46 13 petenti: 'when he (i.e. Cæsar) asked it.' — ultrō pollicērētur: 'he now promised of his own accord.' — magnamque in spem venībat: 'he began to have great hopes.'

46 15 fore: the lack of a fut. participle of the verb désistere is supplied by the periphrasis fore utī . . . désisteret, lit. 'that it would be that' etc.

46 16 conloquiō: see § 89.

46 18 nē . . . addūceret: a subst. clause used as obj. (§ 183). It would be a prohibition in dir. disc. (§ 172. c).


46 23 Gallōrum equitātuī: he had no other; see Introd. III. 2. They numbered about 4000.


46 25 eō: adv.; 'on them,' i.e. the horses.

47 2 sī quid etc.: 'if there should be any need of active service'; quid is adverbial accusative (§ 99). — factō: see § 107. c.

47 3 nōn inrīdiculē: 'not without wit.' — ex militibus: instead of militum (§ 76, exception).

47 4 pollicitum: sc. esse.

47 6 ad equum rescribere: 'he was making knights of them.' The wit (cf. nōn inrīdiculē) in this expression consists in the fact that it has two meanings: (1) 'to enroll in the cavalry,' and (2) 'to enroll among the equītēs
THE GALlic WAR—BOOK I

(knights), a privileged and wealthy class in Roman society. In other words, it is a pun. It is not often that Cæsar deviates from his straightforward narrative for an anecdote of any kind, and the fact that he does so here shows his keen sense of humor.

47 8 Chap. 43. spatiō: see § 114.
47 10 equīs: 'on horseback'; abl. of means.
47 18 præter sē dēnōs: 'besides themselves ten each'; dēnōs is a distributive numeral.
47 17 amīcus: sc. appellātus esset (§ 94. note). — mūnera ... missa (essent): the gifts are not mentioned but they may have included embroidered robes and jewelry.
47 18 et ... et: 'both ... and.'
47 22 Docēbat: 'he showed'; followed by a series of indir. questions (§ 201) introduced by quam, 'how'; quamque, 'and how' (l. 22); quotiēns quamque, 'how often and how'; ut, 'how' (l. 24).
47 23 ippīs cum Haeduīs intercēderent: 'existed between the Romanis (ippīs) and the Haeduī' (lit. 'to themselves with the Haeduī').
47 26 prius ... quam ... adipītissent: see §§ 197. a, 208.
47 27 ut ... vellet: a result clause explaining hanc consuetūdinem (§ 187, third example).
47 28 sūi nihil: 'nothing of their own' (dignity etc.); sūi is used substantively and is a part. gen. (§ 76. a).
47 29 quod: 'what they had brought to the alliance,' the rel. preceding its antecedent, id (§ 139).
47 30 quis ... posset: the dir. form of this rhetorical question (§ 171) was quis ... posse? For the mood see § 172. d and note. Transl., 'who could suffer this to be taken from them?' The thought is that the Romans would allow no one to deprive their allies of the prestige they had enjoyed before they became Rome's allies. Note that eīs is a dative (§ 86).
48 2 nē ... inferret ... redderet ... nē ... paterētur: these clauses are in apposition with eadem.
48 5 Chap. 44. pauca: in contrast with multa in the next line.
48 8 magnā spē magnīisque praemīlis: transl. as if it were magnā spē magnōrum praemīorum.
48 10 ad mē oppugnandum: a gerundive expressing purpose (§ 225. a).
48 16 pāce: see § 107. a.
48 19 oportet: imper.; the grammatical subj. is amīcitiam ... esse (§ 216. b).
48 23 Quod ... trādūcō: 'as to the fact that' etc. (§ 182. a).
48 24 Galliae impugnandae: see § 225. b. For mē mūniēndī see § 224. c.
48 26 nisi rogātus: 'except upon invitation' (lit. 'having been asked').
NOTES

48 28 finibus: see § 101.
48 29 Quid tibi vis: lit. 'what do you wish for yourself?' i.e. 'what do you mean?' (§ 85).
48 30 haec . . . Gallia: 'this part of Gaul.'—Ut . . . sic: 'as . . . so.'
Oportet is impers. Freely, 'as I ought not to be given a free hand if . . . so.'
49 4 rerum: see § 80.
49 5 bellō . . . proximō: four years before.
49 7 habuērunt: for indic. see § 208 a. So habēs, l. 10.
49 9 Dēbeō suspicāri etc.: 'I have grounds for suspecting that the army which you, under the pretense of friendship, have in Gaul, you are keeping for the purpose of crushing me.'
49 10 mel opprimendi: see § 224 c, and cf. p. 48, l. 24.
49 12 Quod: 'but'; so in l. 15.—nōbilibus . . . grātum: Cæsar, as the head of the popular party at Rome, was especially obnoxious to the senate and the aristocracy. Many would have rejoiced to hear that disaster had befallen him, and it is quite possible that suggestions of this sort had come to Ariovistus from Rome.
49 14 compertum habeō: almost the same in force as comperē (§ 156 b. note); cf. p. 24, l. 5.
49 15 tuā morte: see § 106.
49 18 sine ūllō tuō labōre: 'without any toil on your part.'
49 19 Chap. 45. in eam sententiam . . . quā rē: 'to this effect (to show) why.'—quā rē . . . posset: an indir. question. Transl. freely, 'why he could not recede from his position.'
49 24 quibus: with ignōvit (from ignōscō); see § 83.
49 26 antiquissimum quodque tempus: see note on p. 35, l. 24.
49 29 suis: 'its own,' referring to Gaul.—voluerit: subj. in a descriptive clause denoting cause (§ 190). Transl., 'which, though conquered in war, the senate has permitted to enjoy its own laws.'
50 1 Chap. 46. geruntur: see § 198 i.
50 2 tumulum: governed by proprius, which sometimes has the force of a preposition.
50 5 nē . . . reicerant: dir. obj. of imperāvit; the indir. obj. is suis.
50 7 committendum nōn putābat ut . . . dici posset: 'he thought that no ground should be given for saying'; the subj. of committendum is the ut clause (§ 187 i).
50 8 per ǎdem: 'under pretense of (through) good faith.'
50 10 omnī Galliā: abl. of separation with iterāxit. Rōmānī is the indir. obj.
50 11 iterāxit: subj. in an indir. question together with fecissent and dirēmissent: 'when it was reported what insolence Ariovistus had displayed (lit.
'having employed what insolence'), how he had ordered the Romans out of all Gaul, how his cavalry had made an attack on our men, and how that fact had put an end to the interview.' The indir. questions are subs. of ēlātum est.

50 13 pugnandi: gerund; obj. gen. (§ 75. 6).

50 15 CHAP. 47. coep-tae: this verb is regularly pass. in form when used with a pass. inf.

50 16 uti . . . cōnitueret: following velle, the idea of asking being implied (§ 183); mitteret is in the same construction.

50 17 sui: refers to Cæsar, sē (l. 18) to Ariovistus.

50 18 causa vīsa nōn est: 'there did not seem to be a good reason.'

50 19 et eō magis, quod: 'and all the more on this account, that' etc.; cf. p. 12, l. 16 and note.— retinērī . . . quīn: 'be kept from' (§ 185).

50 21 missūrum . . . objectūrum: sc. esse.

50 23 Commodissimum: pred. adjective with mittere (p. 51, l. 2) as subj. (§ 216. a).

50 24 virtūte et hūmānitāte: not 'virtue and humanity'; it is rarely safe to transl. a Latin word by the English word derived from it. Transl., 'worth and culture.'

50 25 cīvitāte: abl. of means.

50 26 quà multā . . . ütēbātur: 'which Ariovistus spoke freely' (§ 107. a).

51 1 quod in eō: 'because in his case.'

51 2 peccandī . . . causa: 'grounds for committing an offense.'

51 3 ütēbātur: 'enjoyed.' Cf. ütēbātur in l. 1. Observe how the verb ütōr demands different translations according to the context. In every instance, however, the idea of 'use' remains fundamental.

51 7 Cōnāntēs dicere prohibuit: 'as they were trying to speak he shut them off.'

51 13 CHAP. 48. supportārētur: subjv. by attraction (§ 214). So also vellet (l. 16).

51 15 instrūctam habuit: 'kept his line drawn up'; cf. compertum habeō, p. 49, l. 14.

51 18 castrīs: the "place where" may be expressed without a preposition when the idea of means is prominent.

51 19 hoc: explained by the following description.

51 21 singulī (equitēs) singulōs (petitēs): i.e. one apiece.

51 23 si quid erat dūrius: 'if there was unusual trouble' (lit. 'if there was anything too hard'); see § 122.

51 25 si quō . . . prōdeundum: 'if there was need of advancing to any place.'

51 28 ut . . . adaequārent: 'that by holding on to (lit. 'supported by') the horses' manes they kept up with them in speed.'— iūbis: abl. of means.
NOTES

52 3 Chap. 49. castris: dative with an adjective (§ 90). By this move Caesar has two camps, the first and larger one about two miles east of the Germans, and the second, a smaller one, rather more than half a mile to the south of them. See map, p. 56.

52 4 acē triplici: see Introd. III. 12.

52 8 expedita: agreeing with milia in form, but with hominem in sense.

52 9 terrērent: a rel. clause of purpose (§ 175).

53 1 Chap. 50. institutō suō: abl. of accordance (§ 111).

53 13 sortibus: 'lots,' of leaves or twigs marked with certain signs and drawn by chance.—vaticinātiōnibus: perhaps omens interpreted from the noise of waters, river eddies, etc., or possibly prophecies arising from inner emotions.—utrum . . . necne: see § 170. 6. 2.

53 14 cās: i.e. mātrēs familiae.—Non esse fās: 'it was not fated.'

53 15 novam lūnam: a common superstition of many people.

53 18 Chap. 51. quod aatis esse visum est: sc. id, obj. of reliquit and antecedent of quod.—ālāriōs: the auxiliaries, as distinguished from the legionary (Roman) troops. They were usually stationed on the wings of the line of battle; hence their name, ālāriō, from āla, 'wing.'

53 19 prō: 'in front of.' Cf. this meaning with the one in l. 20.

53 20 prō hostium numerō: 'in comparison with the number of the enemy.'

53 21 ad speciem: 'for a show,' i.e. as if the two legions (p. 52, l. 12) were still there.

53 22 necessāriō: the Germans had to come out and fight because their camp was not fortified strongly enough to withstand Caesar's assault.

53 24 intervāllis: see § 112.

53 27 Eō: 'thereon,' i.e. on the carts and wagons.

53 28 proficiscantēs: '(the men) as they advanced' (§ 167); obj. of implorābant.

54 1 Chap. 52. singulis legiōnibus singulōs légātōs: 'a légātus in command of each legion'; however, having at this time only five légātus he appointed his quartermaster (quaestōrem) over one of the six legions. Read the description of a battle in the Introd. III. 12, and look at the illustration on p. 31 and the one facing p. 86.

54 3 eam partem: of course, the left wing of the enemy.

54 6 pīla . . . coniciendī: the gerund with dir. obj. (§ 223, note). The gerundive construction might have been used (§ 224. 6).

54 9 impetūs: accusative plur., fourth declension.

54 10 insilirent . . . revellerent . . . volnerārent: subjvs. in clauses of description. The meaning is that they leaped upon the roof formed by the shields, pulled them up, and so thrust their swords down from above (dēsuper).

54 11 Cum: 'although.'
54 18 tertiam aciem: this line had been kept as a reserve for just such emergencies.
54 18 CHAP. 53. prius ... quam ... pervénérunt: see § 197. a.
54 22 eā: abl. of means. It refers to nāviculam, obj. of nactus (from nancīscor).
54 23 reliquóque omnēs: said to have been 80,000 in number.
54 24 Duae ... uxōrēs: among the Germans only chiefs had more than one wife, and this was for the sake of honor and alliances.—nātiōne: see § 115.
54 26 dūxerat: 'had brought.' In the next line dūxerat means 'had married.'
55 1 Procillius: see p. 50, l. 23.—trīnis: used instead of tribus. Catēnae is usually found in the plur., and with such nouns distributive numeral adjectives are generally used instead of cardinals.
55 3 Quae ... rēs: i.e. the rescue of Procillius. Cæsar's joy in the safety of his young friend offers a pleasing contrast to his usual sternness. For the rel. see § 143.
56 4 neque ... dēminuerat: 'nor had fortune by his loss detracted aught from an occasion of such joy and congratulation.'
56 5 tēr: it was the regular custom of the Germans to consult the lots three times.
56 6 cōnsultum (esse): impers.
56 13 mātūrius: 'earlier.' This was in September.
56 16 conventūs: the governor of a province not only commanded the army, but administered justice as well.

BOOK II

Cæsar by his first campaign (58 B.C.) had made himself master of central Gaul, and had made his conquest sure by establishing the winter quarters of his legions among the Sequani. During the winter, while he was in Cisalpine Gaul, the Belgian Gauls, fearing that they should be the next victims of Roman aggression, united in a conspiracy to resist any further advance of Roman arms. This was reported to Cæsar, who, with characteristic energy, set out for the country of the Belgae as early in the spring (57 B.C.) as there was pasture enough to support his baggage animals.

The Belgian tribes, inhabiting what is now northeastern France, Belgium, and part of the Netherlands, were remote from any country hitherto occupied by the Romans. They lived amidst forests and swamps hard to penetrate, and had a fierce and resolute spirit of independence. In his campaign
against these tribes, especially the Nervii, Caesar met the most formidable and desperate resistance yet encountered.

57 1 CHAP. 1. Cum esset etc.: for the subj. see § 194. b.; esset is emphatic by its position. The clause is closely connected with the last sentence of the first book: in citeriorem Galliam . . . profectus est. Cum esset Caesar in citeriore Galliâ etc. The effect may be brought out in translation by the use of a noun: 'during Caesar’s stay in Cisalpine Gaul.'

57 2 dēmōnstrāvimus . . . dixerāmus: In referring to himself as the writer Caesar, like many modern writers, regularly uses the plur.—adferēbantur: the past descr. shows repeated action; 'kept coming in.' The force of the tense is aided by crēbrī.

57 4 quam: agrees with partem, though its real antecedent is Belgās (§ 138). It is the subj. of esse.

57 5 inter sē: 'to one another.'

57 6 hās esse causās: 'that the following were the reasons'; explained by the quod clauses.—quod verērentur . . . sollicitārentur: subord. clauses in indir. disc. (§ 208).—nē . . . adducērētur: subst. clause, obj. of verērentur (§ 184).

57 7 omni pācātā Galliā: 'after the subjugation of all Gaul'; abl. abs. (§ 117. b). Galliā refers to central (or Celtic) Gaul.

57 8 ab nōn nūllīs Gallīs: abl. of agent (§ 104).

57 9 ut . . . ita: 'just as . . . so,' correlatives.—Germānīs . . . versāri: obj. of nōluerant.

57 10 hiemāre . . . inveterāscere: these insfs. with their subj. exercitum are in indir. disc. after the idea of thought in molestē ferēbant, 'they took it hard.'

57 11 mōbilitātēs: abl. of cause (§ 109).

57 12 novis imperiis studēbant: 'were eager for a change of government' (lit. 'new ruling powers'); for the dative see § 83.—ab nōn nūllis . . . quod: 'by some also (sc. sollicitābantur) they were incited because.'

57 13 ad . . . facultātēs: 'the means for hiring soldiers.'—conducēndōs: see § 225. a.

57 16 rem: i.e. royal power.—imperīō nosterō: 'under our dominion'; abl. of attendant circumstance (§ 112).—cōnsequī: complementary inf. (§ 217. c).

In the passage above, beginning with Coniurāndī, note that the subord. verbs in indir. disc., that is, those that are a part of the report of Labienus, are in the subjv. mood (§ 208). Those, on the other hand, that are in the ind. (nōluerant, ferēbant, studēbant, habēbant, occupābantur, poterant) are not quoted from the report of Labienus, but state facts on Caesar’s authority (§ 208. a).

57 16 CHAP. 2. nūntīlis: abl. of cause.—duās legiōnēs: he had already six legions, numbered VII—XII, so that the addition of these two new ones, numbered XIII and XIV, made eight legions (about 30,000 men) for the Belgic campaign.
57 17 initā aestāte: abl. abs. expressing time when (§ 117. 6).
57 18 qui dēdīceret: a rel. clause of purpose (§ 175).
58 1 cum primum: i.e. when grass and young grain began to be abundant,
so that the cavalry horses and baggage animals could subsist.
58 2 Dat negōtium Senonibus: 'he enjoins on the Senones' (lit. 'he
gives business to the Senones').
58 3 uti ... cognōscant ... faciant: a subst. clause of purpose in
apposition with negōtium (§ 183, third example). — gerantur: subjv. by attraction,
depending on cognōscant (§ 214).
58 4 sē: an indir. reflex., referring to Cæsar (§ 133). — cōnstanter: 'consis-
tently,' i.e. without variation.
58 5 manūs: accusative plur.; 'small bands,' or 'companies.'
58 6 dubitandum (esse): impers. inf. in indir. disc. after exāstitimāvit; 'he
thought that he ought not to hesitate.' — quīn ... proficiscerētur: 'to set
out' (§ 186); quīn can follow only a verb with a negative.
58 7 diēbus: abl. of time within which (§ 119).
58 9 CHAP. 3. Eō: adv. — omnium opiniōne: 'than any one expected'
(lit. 'than the opinion of all'); opiniōne is used after the comparative without
quam (§ 105).
58 10 Rēmī: these were friendly to the Romans. — Galliæ: dative (§ 90).
— ex Belgis: 'of the Belgæ'; used instead of the part. gen.
58 11 lēgātōs: 'as ambassadors.' What other meaning does lēgātus have?
58 12 qui dīcerent: see § 175. — Nōs ... in fidem ... permittimus:
'put ourselves under the protection (good faith)' etc.
58 15 parāti: a participle used as an adjective. Depending on it are
the complementary infinitives dare, facere, recipere, and iuvāre (§ 217. c).
58 16 oppidīs: properly an abl. of means, but to be translated as if it were
abl. of place, 'in our towns.'
58 18 cis Rhēnum: i.e. the west (or Gallic) side.
58 19 tantus ... ut ... potuerimus: 'so great is the frenzy of them all
that we have not been able to restrain even the Suessiones' etc.; a clause of
result with the antecedent word tantus (§ 179. note).
58 22 quīn ... cōnsentirent: 'from leaguing with'; subjv. clause after a
negative word of hindering (§ 185). Note that the perfect subjv. (potuerimus)
is followed by a secondary tense.
58 24 CHAP. 4. quae ... quantaeque ... essent: indir. question (§ 201).
58 25 quid ... possent: 'what strength they had in war'; quid is an
adverbial accusative (§§ 98 and 99).
58 26 Plērique: 'the most of.' — ā Germānis: abl. of origin with a prepo-
sition (§ 102). — Rhēnum: depending on trāns in trā(ns)dūctī (§ 95. note).
58 28 sōlique: 'and ... the only ones.'
59 1 qui . . . prohibuerint: a clause of description (§ 177. a). — memoriā: abl. of time within which (§ 119).
59 3 quā ex rē fit utī . . . sēmant: 'from this fact it comes about that they assume' etc. The result clause utī . . . sēmant is the subj. of fit (§ 187. II.). — memoriā: abl. of cause (§ 109).
59 5 omnia habēmus explōrāta: 'have found out and possess all (the facts) about' (dē) etc. The expression habēmus explōrāta differs only slightly from explōrāvimus (§ 156. b. note, and cf. compertum habēō, p. 49, l. 14).
59 6 propinquitātibus: 'ties of blood.' — adfinitātibus: 'alliances by marriage.'
59 9 virtūte: abl. of respect (§ 115).
59 10 armāta mīlia centum: equivalent to armātōrum hōminum mīlia centum; grammatically, armāta agrees with mīlia. Likewise ēlēcta in the next line agrees grammatically with mīlia, but is translated 'picked men.'
59 11 sībi: dative of reference (§ 85).
59 14 cum . . . tum: 'not only . . . but.'
59 17 summa: 'the chief command.' — voluntāte: see § 111.
59 18 numerō: see § 115.
59 19 ferī: pred. adjective after habentur, which is a copulative verb (§§ 48. II. b, 94. note). Transl. 'who are regarded as particularly savage.' — inter ipsōs: 'among them,' i.e. the Belgæ.
59 23 Condūsōs etc.: subj. of posse, which depends on arbitrāmur.
59 24 Germāni: for the case cf. ferī, l. 19.
59 28 Ch. 5. cohōrtātus . . . prōsecūtus: 'after he had encouraged . . . and addressed them' etc.
59 27 līberōs obsidēs: 'their children as hostages'; obsidēs is an appositive. If faith was broken, the hostages were punished; often they were sold into slavery.
59 28 Quae omnia: 'and all this' etc.; for a rel. pronoun beginning a sentence see § 143.
60 1 quantō opere . . . intersit: 'how greatly it concerned'; indir. question. The subj. of intersit is the inf. clause, manūs . . . distinērī. — rei publicae . . . salūtis: gens. with intersit (§ 81. c).
60 2 nē . . . cōnfigendum sit: gerundive in a neg. clause of purpose. The verb is impers.; transl. 'that it might not be necessary to contend' etc.,
60 3 Id fieri posse: 'this (he said) could be done.'
60 4 intrōdūxerint . . . coeperint: in a fut. condition. In the dir. disc. these verbs would be in the fut. perf. ind.
60 6 Postquam . . . posuit: 'as soon as he was aware that all the forces of the Belgæ had been gathered into one place and were advancing against him, and had learned from the scouts whom he had sent forward, as well as
274 THE GALLIC WAR — BOOK II

from the Remi, that they were not now far away, he hastily led his army across the river Aisne, which is on the outer boundaries of the Remi, and there pitched his camp.’ For ind. with postquam see § 193. — coāctās: equivalent to a clause (§ 220. e).

60 8 flūmen: depends on trāns in trā(ns)dūcere (§ 95); cf. Rhēnum, p. 58, l. 26, and note.

60 9 exercitum: obj. of the transitive verb trādūcere.— trādūcere: complementary inf. with mātūrāvit; ‘hastened to lead.’

60 10 castra: this camp was about twelve miles northwest of Rheims. Traces of it were discovered in 1862.— Quae rés: ‘this movement,’ i.e. his having crossed the river and pitched his camp where he did. For Quae see § 143.— et latus ... mūniēbat et post eum ... reddēbat, et ... efficiēbat: the three et’s are translated ‘both ... and ... and.’

60 11 post eum quae erant tūta ... reddēbat: ‘made safe the country in the rear of his position’ (‘what things were behind him’); tūta is a pred. adj.

60 13 ut ... possent: a subst. clause of result, obj. of efficiēbat (§ 187. I).

The subj. of possent is commētās, l. 12.

60 14 efficiēbat: the subj. is still Quae rés.

60 15 in alterā parte: ‘on the other side,’ i.e. on the left bank of the Aisne, toward the Remi. Caesar had crossed the stream and encamped on the side toward the Suessiones. See campaign map, facing p. 57, and battle plan, p. 63.

60 16 pedum duodecim: gen. of measure with altītūdinem (§ 77. b).

60 17 duodēvīginti pedum: i.e. a moat eighteen feet in width.

60 18 CHAP. 6. nōmine: abl. of respect (§ 115).

60 19 milia passuum octō: ‘eight miles’; milia is accusative of extent (§ 96).— passuum: part. gen.— ex itinere: ‘on the march,’ i.e. turning aside ‘from’ their course to attack the town.

60 20 Aegrē ... sustentātum est: ‘it was with difficulty that they held out’; the verb is a pass. intransitive and hence imper. (§ 83. a). In English such verbs should be given a personal subject.

60 21 Gallōrum ... est haec: ‘the (mode of) attack, (which is) the same for the Gauls and the Belgae, is as follows’ (haec).

60 22 circumiectā multitūdīne: abl. abs.— moenibus: dative (§ 84).

60 23 iaci: complementary inf. with coeptī sunt. When are the forms of coeptī pass.? Cf. p. 50, l. 15 and note.— dēfēnsōribus: abl. of separation.

60 24 testūdine factā: ‘having made a testūdō’; see Introd. III. 13.

60 25 Quod: ‘this,’ i.e. the actions just described.— multitūdō: a sing. collective noun may have a plur. verb, as often in English (§ 65. a).

60 26 cōnistentiū: gen. of the gerund with potestās (§ 223. a).

60 27 nūlli: dative of possession (§ 88).
NOTES

60 28 summā nōbilitāte et grātiā: ‘(a man) of the highest’ etc. (§ 116).

61 1 oppidō: dative with praeerat (§ 84). — ūnus ex ēis: ‘one of those’;
a construction used in place of the part. gen. (§ 76, exception).

61 2 Nisi . . . posse: indir. disc. depending on the idea of reporting con-
tained in nūntium mitti. Transl. ‘unless reënforcements (he said)’ etc.—
sibi: i.e. Iccius.

61 4 Chap. 7. Ėō: ‘thither;’ i.e. to Bibræx.—īsēm ducibus ēsus: ‘em-
ploying the same men (as) guides’; for the abl. see § 107. a; ducibus is an
appositive (§ 58).

61 5 Numidās et Crētas: these peoples (especially the Cretans) were
famous bowmen. Crētas is a Greek form.

61 6 Baleārēs: the inhabitants of the Balearic Isles, east of Spain, were
famous slingers.—subsidiō oppidānīs: dative of purpose and of the person
affected (§ 89).

61 11 hostibus: ‘from the enemy’; dative (§ 86).

61 12 potiundī: gerundive. Note the less regular spelling potiundī instead
of potiundī.

61 15 morātī . . . dēpopulātī . . . vīcis . . . incēnsīs: the first two past
participles are in the nominative case agreeing with the subj., because, being
from deponent verbs, they are active in meaning; incēnsī, however, could not
be used in a similar way, because, coming from a regular verb, it is pass.
and means ‘having been burned.’ To employ this pass. meaning the abl. abs.
had to be used.

61 18 quō: adv.; ‘to which.’

61 20 omnibus cópiās: for the omission of cum see § 113. note.—ā mīlibus
passuum minus duōbus: ‘less than two miles off’; ā is used adverbially;
mīlibus is abl. of measure of difference (§ 114). Minus does not affect the
construction (§ 105. note 2). In the next line mīlibus is abl. after the compara-
tive amplius. Thus we have here both of the allowable constructions.

61 24 Chap. 8. prīmō: ‘at first.’

61 25 eximiam opinōnem virtūtis: ‘their high reputation for valor’;
virtūtis is an obj. gen. (§ 75. b). — proelīō: abl. (§ 101).

61 26 quid . . . posset . . . quid . . . audērent: indir. questions; lit. ‘what
they were able, what they dared.’ The thought may be rendered ‘the prowess
of the enemy and the daring of our soldiers.’—virtūte: see § 115.

62 1 locō . . . opportūnō . . . ēdōnēō: abl. abs. (§ 117. c).

62 4 tantum: correlative with quantum ‘as much . . . as.’ The rel. adject-
ive quantus is used as a subst. in the same way as the rel. pronoun qui. In this
sentence the antecedent tantum is accusative of extent; the rel. quantum is
the dir. obj. of occupāre.—adversus: ‘in front.’—locū: part. gen. with quan-
tum, but more conveniently translated with tantum, ‘over as much ground.’
THE GALLIC WAR—BOOK II

62 5 ex utrāque parte: 'on each side.'
62 6 dēiectūs: accusative plur. modified by laterīs; 'lateral slopes' (lit. 'slopes of the side').—in fronte etc.: 'falling with an easy slope in front (i.e. to the west), sank gently to the plain.' See battle plan, p. 63.
62 7 trānsversum fossam: 'an intrenchment at right angles,' i.e. to the slope of the hill.
62 8 passuum quadringentōrum: gen. of measure (§ 77. b).
62 9 extrēmās: 'the ends of' (§ 125).—tormenta: see Introd. III. 4, with the accompanying illustrations and those on pp. 104 and 120.
62 10 quod . . . poterant: a parenthetical clause of explanation and hence not attracted to the subjv. Transl. 'because they were so strong in numbers.'
62 11 esset: 'if they were needed anywhere'; a fut. more probable condition (§ 199. II. a) attracted into the subjv. by the influence of ut . . . possent (§ 214).
62 16 cōpiās . . . ēductās instruxérunt: transl. 'led out and drew up.'
62 17 Chap. 9. Palūs erat: 'there was a swamp'; i.e. in the low valley of the Miette brook. See battle plan, p. 63.
62 18 Hanc (paludem) sī nostri trānsīrent: 'to see' whether our men would cross this' (§ 201). Note the difference in translation between sī, 'if,' introducing a condition, and sē, 'whether,' introducing an indir. question.
62 19 ut . . . adgrederentur: a purpose clause depending upon parātī etc.
62 21 contendēbātur: impers. Transl. 'a cavalry engagement was going on.'
62 22 nostrīs: dative (§ 90).
62 27 sē cōnsiliō: 'with this intent.'—ut . . . expugnārent . . . intersecinerent . . . populārentur . . . prohibērent: subst. clauses of purpose in apposition with sē cōnsiliō (§ 183, third example).—sī possent . . . sī . . . potuissent: represent respectively the fut. and fut. perf. ind. of the dir. form. For the change to the subjv. see § 208. b.
63 2 ad bellum gerendum: is this gerund or gerundive? why? See § 223. c and note, and § 224. b.
63 5 Chap. 10. levis armāturāe: see § 77, and the ill., p. 65.
63 6 trādūcit: with two accusatives (§ 95).
63 9 cōnantēs: with reliquōs.
63 10 equitāti: considered as means, and therefore no preposition.—circumventōs interfēcérunt: 'surrounded and killed' (§ 220. e).
63 13 spem . . . fēseǐsse: 'that their expectations had failed' (lit. 'that hope had cheated them').
63 14 pugnandi causa: a gerund construction expressing purpose (§ 225. b).
64 1 ipsōs: i.e. the Belgae.
64 2 cōnstituērunt etc.: 'they decided that it was best for each one to return to his own home, and that they should assemble from all sides to
defend those into whose territory the Romans should first lead their army.'
The two objects of constituerunt are (1) the inf. clause optimum esse domum
suam quemque revertī (of which revertī is the subj. and optimum esse the
pred.), and (2) the subst. purpose clause (ut) ... conveniērent. The omission
of ut is a reversion to an earlier form of expression. For the case of domum
see § 97.

64 4 intrōdūxissent: past perf. subjv., attracted from the fut. perf. ind.
by being made part of the purpose clause (ut) ... conveniērent (§ 214).

64 10 quod ... cognōverant: ind. because Cæsar gives the reason on
his own authority (§ 188. a). The clause is in apposition with haec ratiō.

64 13 His persuādēri ... nōn poterat: 'these could not be persuaded'
(lit. 'it could not be persuaded to these'). Verbs that take the dative in the
active are imper. in the pass., the dative being retained (§ 83. a).—ut ...
morārentur neque ... fērent: subst. clauses of purpose, grammatical subjs.
of poterat (§ 183). Cæsar has manifestly succeeded in his plan of separating
the forces of the Belgæ.

64 10 Chap. 11. secundā vigiliā: approximately from 9 to 12 P.M.

64 17 strepitū ... tumultū: abls. of manner (§ 110).

64 19 ērdine ... imperiō: abls. of attendant circumstance (§ 112).

64 20 cum ... peteret ... properēret: descriptive temporal clauses ex-
pressing cause (§ 195).

64 22 ut ... vidērētur: subst. clause of result, obj. of fēcērunt (§ 187. I,
first example); 'they made their departure seem like a rout.'

64 23 per: see § 104. note.—speculātōrēs: 'spies.' They obtained infor-
mation by mingling in disguise with the enemy; while the 'scouts,' explōrātōrēs,
were squads of cavalry who ranged the country in the vicinity of the army.

64 24 veritus: 'fearing.' — discēderent: indir. question (§ 201).

64 26 castrīs: 'in camp'; lit. 'by camp,' the Romans regarding the rela-
tion as means rather than as place (§ 106).

64 28 ab explōrātōribus: abl. of agent (§ 104). Compare this construc-
tion with per speculātōrēs, l. 23, where Cæsar gave the speculātōrēs directions,
and used them as a "means to an end," hence the preposition per (§ 104. note);
here the explōrātōrēs are "voluntary agents," hence ab with the abl.—qui
... morārētur: a rel. clause of purpose (§ 175).

64 27 His: dative with praefercit (§ 84).

65 1 multa milia: see § 96.

65 2 cum: cf. note on p. 64, l. 20.

65 3 ab extremō agmine: 'in the rear.' — quōs: the antecedent is ei
understood, subj. of cōnsisterent and sustinērent.

65 4 prōrēs: sc. et, 'and those that were in the van.' — quod ... vidē-
rentur ... continērentur: the verbs are in the subjv. by attraction (§ 214).
65 8 sibi: dative of reference (§ 85).
65 10 tantam . . . quantum fuit diēi spatiwm: ‘killed as great a number of them as the time (before night) allowed’ (lit. ‘as great a number as the space of the day was’). Cf. p. 62, l. 4 and note.
65 15 Chap. 12. priusquam . . . recipièrent: ‘before the enemy should recover themselves’ (§ 197. b).
65 17 in fines Suessionum . . . dūxit: i.e. following his plan of subduing the tribes one after the other. “Divide and conquer” was a famous Roman proverb.
65 19 magnō itinere: see Introd. III. 11, and the ill., p. 45.
65 20 ex itinere: i.e. as soon as he arrived, without waiting to construct the usual works preliminary to storming.
65 22 esse: supply id (oppidum) for subject.
65 23 paucis dēfendentibus: abl. abs. denoting concession (§ 117. d); ‘though there were few defenders.’—expugnāre: ‘to take’ (by storm); cf. oppugnāre (l. 20), ‘to attack.’
65 24 vinēs: see Introd. III. 13.—quaeque: the antecedent of quae is ea understood, the obj. of comparāre.
65 27 aggere . . . turribus: see Introd. III. 13.
66 1 magnitūdine . . . celeritāte: abls. of cause (§ 109), modifiers of permōtis.
66 4 ut conservārentur: a subst. clause of purpose, obj. of potentibus (§ 183).
66 5 Chap. 13. obsidibus: in apposition with prīmīs and siliās.
66 8 Qui cum: ‘and when they’; cf. note on p. 32, l. 8.
66 10 maiōrēs nātū: ‘the older men’ (lit. ‘greater in respect to birth’); nātū is abl. of respect (§ 115).
66 11 vōce signifícāre: ‘show by the tones of their voices’; of course they could not speak Latin.
66 12 in eius fīdem ac potestātem venire: ‘placed themselves under his protection and submitted to his commands’ (lit. ‘came into his faith and power’).
66 13 cum . . . accessisset . . . pōneret: ‘when he had approached and was pitching his camp.’ Mark the difference in tenses; the clauses denote time and circumstance (§ 194. b).
66 15 passis manibus: ‘with hands outstretched’ (in supplication); passīs is from pandō.— suō mōre: ‘according to their custom’ (§ 111).
66 23 quantam . . . intulissent: indir. question.
66 26 Quod: a connecting rel., referring to the idea in the preceding sentence; cf. Qui, l. 8.
66 28 qua: indef. pronoun with bella. For the form see § 28, footnote 1.
67 1 Chap. 15. honōris Diviciāci . . . causā: 'out of respect for Diviciacus' (lit. 'for the sake of the honor of Diviciacus').
67 2 receptūrum: sc. esse. The omission of esse is very common.
67 3 auctōritāte: abl. of description (§ 116).
67 4 multitūdine: abl. of respect (§ 115).
67 10 mercātōribus: dative (§ 88).—vīni: part. gen. with nikil.
67 13 virtūtis: see § 77.
67 14 qui . . . dēdiderint . . . prōīcerint: 'for having surrendered' etc.; a descriptive causal clause giving the reason for increpitant and incūsant (§ 190).
67 17 Chap. 16. eōrum: i.e. of the Nervii.—trīduum: '(marched) for three days'; accusative of duration of time (§ 96).
67 18 nōn amplius mīlia: mīlia is accusative of extent of space and is not affected by amplius; cf. p. 61, l. 20, and see § 105. note 2.
67 22 uti . . . experīrēntur: a subst. clause of purpose (§ 183).
67 24 quīque: equals quī plus que, 'and those who.' The antecedent of quī is eōs understood, the obj. of coniēcisse.
67 25 quō: rel. adv., equivalent to in quem referring to locum.
67 26 esset: this would be in the subjv. also in the dir. disc., being a descriptive rel. clause (§ 177).
68 3 fīnā: an adv. 'along (with him).'
68 4 quīdām ex hīs: for abl. with ex instead of part. gen. see § 76, exception.
68 5 eōrum diērum consuētūdine . . . perspectā: the following diagram shows the relation of the words:

\[ \begin{array}{c|c|c|c}
   & consuētūdine & | & perspectā \\
   \hline
   & itineris & | & \\
   diērum & | & exercitūs \\
   2 eōrum & | & 1 nostri \\
\end{array} \]

Consuētūdine is modified by group 1 and the whole phrase is modified by group 2; lit. 'the custom of the march of our army of those days having been observed,' freely 'after they had observed the usual order of march of our army during those days.'
68 6 inter singulās legiōnēs: 'between the several legions.' For the usual order of the line of march see Introd. III. 11.
68 8 negōti: part. gen. depending on quīquam. Cf. p. 67, l. 10.—cum . . . vēnisset . . . abessent: subjvs. in indir. disc., representing the fut. perf. and fut. ind. respectively of the dir.
68 10 hanc...quī: both refer to prima legiō. — sarcinis: see Introd. III. 9.d, and the illustrations, pp. 45 and 69.

68 11 ut...nōn audērent: subst. clause of result, subj. of futūrum (esse) ($§ 187. II); lit. 'it would come to pass that they would not dare.'

68 12 Aduivābat: the subj. is the subst. clause of fact quod Nerviī...effecerant ($§ 182, first example), and the obj. is cōnsilium.

68 13 Nerviī etc.: this sentence is a good example of the Latin "periodic structure," in which, by holding the leading verb in abeyance, the thought is kept in suspense until the period is completed. Nerviī, the subject in the nominative case, indicates that those people are the deors of an act that remains unexpressed until the reader has been informed of the circumstances attending the act. Holding the subj. Nerviī in mind, he finds first when the act was performed (antiquitus); then why it was done (cum...possent); next for what purpose (quō facilius...impedērent); then by what means (tenerīs arboribus...interiectis); lastly, all is locked together into a completed whole by the act itself (effecerant ut...praebērent). — nihil possent: 'had no strength'; nihil is adverbial accusative ($§ 99).

68 14 quicquid possunt etc.: cf. nihil (l. 13), and transl. 'all the strength they have is in infantry.'

68 15 quō facilius...impedērent: a clause of purpose with a comparative ($§ 176).

68 16 vēnissent: attracted into the subjv. from the fut. perf. ind. because of its position in the purpose clause ($§ 214).

68 17 in lātitūdinem: i.e., when the tree was bent over, shoots sprang out on all sides and made a thick mass of small branches. Among these were planted briers and thorns. Traces of such hedges still exist.

68 18 ut...praebērent: an obj. clause of result depending on effecerant ($§ 187. I). — īnstar: an indeclinable noun, regularly followed by the genitive. Transl. 'like a wall' (lit. 'the image of a wall').

68 19 quō: 'into which'; a rel. adv. followed by posset in a clause of description ($§ 177). Cf. quō, p. 67, l. 25.

68 20 cum: 'since' ($§ 189).

68 21 omittendum (esse): a pass. periphrastic denoting obligation, followed by sibi, a dative of agent ($§ 87).

68 24 Chap. 18. aequālīter dēclīvis: 'with even downward slope.'

68 26 pari acclivitāte: see § 116. The description proceeds from the high ground northwest of the Sambre downward (dēclīvis) to the stream; then across the river up the ascent (acclivitāte) on the other side.— adversus huic et contrārius: 'opposite this and facing it.' See map, p. 71.

69 1 passūs...apertus: 'open at the base for about two hundred paces'; for passūs see § 96.—īnfinus: see § 125.— ab superiōre parte: 'along the upper portion.'
69 2 silvestris: an adjective modifying collis. — ut nōn . . . posset: a neg. clause of result. What would nē posset express?
69 3 in apertō locō: the open space of two hundred paces mentioned above.
69 4 secundum: a preposition governing flūmen.
69 5 pedum . . . trium: see § 77. b.
69 6 Chap. 19. cōpiis: see § 113. note.
69 7 aliter . . . dētulerant: 'was different from what the Belgae had reported' (lit. 'held itself otherwise than' etc.).
70 1 cōnsuētūdine suā: 'according to his custom' (§ 111).— legiōnēs expeditās: see Introd. III. 11.
70 2 conlocāt: contracted from conlocāverat.
70 3 proximē cōnscriptae: 'most recently leived.' These were legions XIII and XIV (see p. 57, l. 16 and note), which were not yet sufficiently trained to bear the brunt of the fight.
70 7 recipere . . . facerent: 'kept retiring' etc.; the continuous action, indicated by the past tense, is emphasized by identidem.
70 8 neque . . . audērent: 'and our men dared not follow them further than to the line to which the open space extended.'— quem ad finem: translated as if it were ad finem ad quem.
70 9 cōdentēs: agrees with eōs, the obj. understood of insequē. The omission of the pronoun in cases like this is the rule.
70 10 opere dimēnsō: see Introd. III. 10, and the ill., p. 52.
70 13 quod tempus . . . convēnerat: 'the time that had been agreed upon' (lit. 'which time had' etc.). Tempus is in apposition with the clause ubi . . . vīa sunt. An antecedent in apposition with something preceding is always placed in the rel. clause.
70 15 atque (ita ut) ipsī sēsē cōnfirmāverant: 'and just as they had determined to do.'
70 20 adversō colle: 'straight up the opposite hill'; abl. of the way by which (§ 120. note 1).
70 22 Chap. 20. Caesari: see § 87.— vēxillum: the large banner hoisted at headquarters to show that a battle was impending; see Introd. III. 7.
70 23 prōpōnendum: sc. erat; so with the several periphrastics that follow, the proper form of sum must be supplied.
70 24 tubā: the signal to take their places in the ranks; see Introd. III. 8.— ab opere: i.e. the work of fortification.
70 25 quī: the antecedent (ē) is the subj. understood of arcessendi (erant).— aggeris: 'material for a mound.'
70 26 signum dāndum: the last signal for immediate action (§ 224. a).
72 1 difficūltātibus . . . subsidīō: see § 89, and cf. p. 61, ll. 6 and 7.— scientia . . . üsus: 'theoretical knowledge and experience.' The words are
in part: apposition with *duae rēs*, and name only the first of the two helpful circumstances; the second is stated in the clause *quod . . . vetuerat* below.

72 2 *quid . . . oportēret*: indir. question, obj. of *praecribere*.

72 4 *quod . . . vetuerat*: 'the fact that he had forbidden the several lieutenants to leave the work and their several legions.'

72 7 *nihil iam*: 'no longer'; *nihil* is adverbial accusative (§99).—*per sé*: 'on their own responsibility.'—*quae vidēbantur*: 'what seemed best.' The antecedent of *quae* is *ea* understood, the obj. of *administrabant*.

The battle with the Nervii, one of the most critical episodes in Cæsar’s career, is referred to by Longfellow, in “The Courtship of Miles Standish,” in the following lines:

Now, do you know what he did on a certain occasion in Flanders,
When the rear-guard of his army retreated, the front giving way too,
And the immortal Twelfth Legion was crowded so closely together
There was no room for their swords? Why, he seized a shield from a soldier,
Put himself straight at the head of his troops, and commanded the captains,
Calling on each by his name, to order forward the ensigns;
Then to widen the ranks, and give more room for their weapons;
So he won the day, the battle of something-or-other.

72 10 Chap. 21. *quam in partem*: equivalent to *in eam partem in quam* (§140).

72 11 *decimam*: this was Cæsar’s favorite legion; cf. p. 45, ll. 1 ff.

72 12 *uti . . . retinērent . . . perturbārentur . . . sustinērent*: obj. clauses of purpose, expressing indirectly the commands given in his address (*ōrātiōne cohōratūs*).

72 14 *quam quō*: introducing a rel. clause of description; transl. ‘than the distance to which’ (lit. ‘than whither’).

72 16 *pugnantibus*: sc. *suīs or militibus*, dative with *occurrīt* (§84).

72 18 *ut . . . tempus dēfuerit*: a clause of result. Observe that in such clauses there is usually some antecedent word meaning ‘so,’ ‘such,’ ‘so great,’ ‘to such a degree,’ etc., on which the result clause depends; the words here are *tanta* and *tam* (§179, note).—*ad insignia accommodanda*: see § 225. a; ‘for fitting on the decorations’ (of the helmets etc.). See Introd. III. 9. b., and the ill., p. 74.


72 20 *Quam . . . cōnstitit*: ‘into whatever place chance took him, and whatever standards he saw first, there each took his stand.’ So well were the soldiers drilled that each could fight well even among troops not his own.

72 23 Chap. 22. *magis ut . . . quam ut reī militāris ratiō atque ōrdō pos-tulābat*: ‘rather as . . . demanded than as the theory and practice of warfare did.’
NOTES

72 25 cum ... resisterent ... impediretur: see §189. — aliae alia in parte: see note on p. 42, l. 21.

73 3 neque quid ... prōvidērī (poterat): 'neither could the necessities (lit. 'what was necessary') in each part be foreseen.' — quid ... esset: see §201.

73 6 ēventūs variī: subj. of sequēbantur; modified by fortūnāe.

73 7 CHAP. 23. In this chapter three sets of encounters, occurring at practically the same time, are described in order, (1) that of the Atrebates with the ninth and tenth legions, (2) that of the Viromandui with the eighth and eleventh, and (3) that of the Nervii with the seventh and twelfth. Study carefully the lower battle plan, p. 71. — ut ... consisterant: 'from their position' etc. (lit. 'as they had taken their position').

73 8 aciē: a genitive form. — pīlis ēmissīs: see Introd. III. 9 and 12.

73 9 hīs: i.e. the Atrebates; dative with obvenerat (§84).

73 11 cōnantēs: sc. cōs (§167), obj. of īnsecūli; 'while they were trying to cross.'

73 12 Ipsi: 'they themselves.'

73 13 prōgressī: i.e. continuing the charge up the wooded hill from which the enemy had rushed to the attack.

73 18 nūdātīs: 'being exposed.' The only legions left near the camp were the seventh and twelfth on the right wing. — cum ... cōnstitisset: see §189.

74 1 intervālō: abl. (§114).

74 2 duce Boduōgnātō: abl. abs.; 'under the leadership of Boduognatus.'

74 4 apertō latere: 'on the exposed flank'; i.e. on the right, not protected by shields.


74 7 ūnā: adv.

74 8 pulsōs: sc. esse; subj. quos. — dixeram: 'have said,' p.70, l. 17. When this is read, the writing is past; hence the past perf. for an earlier page.

74 10 decumānā portā: see Introd. III. 10 and the ill., p. xxxv.

74 13 praecipitēs: adjective agreeing with cālōnēs, but with the force of an adv., 'pell-mell,' 'in utter confusion' (§126). Concerning cālōnēs see Introd. III. 5.

74 14 qui etc.: this refers to the baggage train which was coming up with legions XIII and XIV as rear guard; see p.70, ll. 1–4. — clāmor: the shouts of the men; fremitus, the confused noise of the train.

74 15 oriēbātur: sing. because of the single idea conveyed by clāmor fremitusque (§68).

74 16 quōrum ... virtūtis opiniō: 'whose reputation for valor'; virtūtis is an obj. gen. (§75, b).

75 1 complrücki ... premē ... tenēri ... fugere: indir. disc. after vidissent.

These present tenses represent what they saw going on.
THE GALLIC WAR — BOOK II

75 4 pulsōs superātōsque . . . potīōs : sc. esse.

75 7 Chap. 25. Caesar : subj. of prōcessit (l. 27). This is another instance of the periodic sentence; see note on p. 68, l. 13. In translating such long sentences it is desirable to make several short ones, each complete in itself. This example illustrates well how much more freely the absolute construction is used in Latin than in English. As a rule, it is well to avoid transferring it literally into English, as, 'the standard bearer having been killed' etc. However, a sparing use is permissible.

75 9 ubi : construe with vīdit (§ 193). — signēs : see the illustrations, pp. 73 and 75.

75 11 sībi . . . impedimentō : 'hindered one another in fighting' (§ 89).

75 17 primipōlō : in partial apposition with centurīōnibus. For the office see Introd. III. 6. e. Baculus was one of Cæsar's best centurions.

75 22 ab novissimis : 'in the rear.' — désertō locō : 'deserting their post.'

75 25 in angustō : 'in a difficult situation,' or 'at a crisis.' — vīdit : repeated from l. 12, on account of the length of the sentence.

75 26 posset : see § 177. The rear guard had not yet arrived.— scūtō . . . militē dētrāctō : 'snatching a shield from a soldier.' For the dative militē cf. hostībus, p. 61, l. 11, and see § 86. For a description of the scūtum see Introd. III. 9. b.

75 29 possent : a purpose clause introduced by quō with a comparative (§ 176).

76 2 etiam . . . rēbus : 'even in his own extreme peril.'

76 5 Chap. 26. cōnstitērēt : from cōnstitō ; 'had taken its position.'

76 6 monuit : with two accusatives, tribūnōs and the subst. clause ut . . . coniungerent . . . inferrent (§§ 93, 183), which represents one accusative.

76 7 conversa etc. : 'should face about and charge the enemy (in opposite directions') (lit. 'bear turned standards against').

76 8 alius alī etc. : 'one was helping another'; see § 144. d. 1.

76 11 legiōnum duārum : i.e. XIII and XIV. See battle plan.

76 13 colē : i.e. the site of the Roman camp.

76 14 Labiēnūs : he, with legions IX and X, had been pursuing the Atrebates; see the first lines of chapter 23 and the battle plan.

76 16 Qui : i.e. the soldiers of legion X. How should Qui cum be translated?

76 17 quō . . . esset quantōque . . . versārētur : indir. questions after cognōvissent; 'in what condition matters stood' etc.

76 19 nihil . . . fecērunt : 'left nothing undone in the way of speed' (lit. 'made nothing of remainder'); reliquī is a part. gen. (§ 76. a).

76 21 Chap. 27. qui : the antecedent is ei understood, in partial apposition with nostrī. — prōcubuissent : see § 177.
NOTES

76 22 redintegrārent: result, depending on tanta (§ 179. note), as are also occurrerent (l. 23) and praeferrent (l. 25).

77 2 ut . . . insistērent . . . pugnārent . . . conicerent . . . remitterent: result clauses dependent on the antecedent word tantam. Cf. p. 76, l. 20.—iacentibus insistērent: 'stood on the fallen.'

77 3 hi: refers to proximī; transl. 'these too.'

77 4 qui: the antecedent is ei understood, subj. of conicerent and remitterent.—ut ex tumulō: 'as if from a mound.'

77 5 pilā . . . remitterent: i.e. they picked up and hurled back the Roman javelins.

77 6 ut . . . dēbēret: 'so that we may consider that not without good hope of success did men etc. (lit. 'so that it ought to be judged that not in vain did men etc.'). The subj. of dēbēret is the inf. clause hominēs . . . ausōs esse (§ 216. b). The ut clause expresses the result of the entire preceding description.

77 8 quae: the antecedents are the infs. trānsire, ascendere, and subīre; transl. quae 'deeds which.' Facilia is pred. adjective.—The battle with the Nervii was the most desperate of the Gallic War. Only the steadiness of the troops and the inspiration of Cæsar's presence at the critical moment saved the day.

77 12 Chap. 28. dixerāmus: see p. 67, ll. 24-26. Cf. note to p. 74, l. 8.

77 13 cum . . . arbitrārentur: a causal clause (§ 189).—impeditum (esse) etc. 'there was no obstacle in the way of (lit. 'nothing impassable to') the conquerors.'

77 14 victīs: dative (§ 85).

77 18 qui . . . possent: this is a descriptive clause and would be subjv. also in the dir. disc.

77 21 finitimīs: dative (§ 83).—ut . . . prohibērent: a subst. clause of purpose, obj. of imperāvit (§ 183).

77 23 Chap. 29. supra: in p. 67, l. 23, the Aduātucī were said to be on the way to reënforce the Nervii.—diximus: tense as in English; contrast dixerāmus, l. 12.—cum . . . venīrent: 'while they were on their way.'

77 27 Quod: transl. as a demonstrative pronoun, and cf. note on p. 32, l. 8.—cum . . . habēret: a concessive clause (§ 192).

78 2 pedum: gen. (§ 77. b). For the case used after amplius see § 105. note 2.

78 4 conlocabant: the past descr. tense often denotes an action in progress (§ 154. a).

78 6 impedimentīs: refers to cattle as well as to portable baggage.

78 8 custōdiām: 'a guard' for booty etc.—praesidium: 'a garrison' to hold the place.
78 9 ūnā: adv.; 'with it.'—HI: i.e. the six thousand.—eōrum: i.e. the Cimbri and Teutons.—obitum: 'destruction.' The Teutons were totally defeated by Caius Marius at Aquae Sextiae, 102 B.C.; the Cimbri, by Marius and Catulus, the next year, at Verceilae.

78 10 cum aliās ... aliās ... dēfenderent: 'while sometimes they were waging war (aggressively) and sometimes were defending themselves when attacked' (lit. 'were warding off war brought against them').

78 14 CHAP. 30. parvulisque proellis: 'skirmishes' (lit. 'small battles').

78 16 oppidō: abl. of means, hence the omission of in; but transl. 'in the town.'

78 17 vineis ... aggere ... turrim: see Introd. III. 13.

78 18 inridēre ... increpitāre: historical infinitives (§ 218).—quod ... instituētur: subjv. in a causal clause stating a reason on another's authority; 'because (as they said)' etc.; see § 188. b.

78 19 Quibusnam ... cōnfidunt: -nam thus used with an interrogative word denotes extreme inquisitiveness. The early writers agree that the Gauls and Germans were tall and large as compared with the Romans. The Aduatuci, unused to Roman methods of warfare, supposed that their assailants, who in their eyes seemed puny, intended to līft on their wall the tower that they were building; hence their jeering question: "Pray, by what strength of hand do you—especially being such puny little fellows—expect to set a tower of such weight on our wall?"

79 1 CHAP. 31. qui ... possessītis: a rel. clause of cause (§ 190).

79 8 trāditis armīs: abl. abs. (§ 117. a).—si ... dēdūcāmur: a future less probable condition (§ 199. II. b).

79 9 quamvis: from the pronoun quīvīs.

80 1 CHAP. 32. cōnsuētūdine ... meritō: see § 111.

80 3 ariēs: see Introd. III. 13. b and accompanying illustrations.

80 4 nisi armīs trāditīs: 'except on the condition of the surrender of your arms' (lit. 'except your arms having been surrendered').—in: 'in the case of.'

80 5 nē ... inferant: a subst. clause, obj. of imperābō. The indir. obj. is fīnitīmīs (§ 83).—quam: an indef. adjective pronoun modifying insūriam.

80 7 facere: sc. sē as subj. We should expect factūrōs (esse).

80 8 ut prope ... adaquārent: i.e. the arms filled the ditch and the deep chasm between the wall and the end of the agger almost to the top. The clause is one of result.

80 12 eō diē pāce sunt ūsī: 'for that day they enjoyed peace.' For the case of pāce see § 107. a.

80 14 CHAP. 33. quam: cf. l. 5.

80 15 ante initō ... cōnsiliō: abl. (§ 111); ante is an adv. modifying initō.
NOTES

80 20 quā: 'where.'
80 23 ignibus: this signal was given by stretching out a great flaming
torch from the side of a watchtower.
80 24 concursum est, pugnātum . . . est: impers. use of the pass.
80 25 ita àcriter . . . ut: correlatives; 'as bravely as.'
80 26 quī . . . iscerent: see § 177.
80 27 pugnārī débuit: impers.; transl. as if virēs (l. 25) were the subj., 'as
brave men ought to fight.' — in únā virtūte: 'in valor alone.'
81 1 ad: adv.; 'about.'
81 3 sectiōnem . . . universam: i.e. the whole people with all their
possessions were sold as slaves.
81 5 milium: pred. gen. after esse understood (§ 77. a; see also § 116. a. 1).
82 Chap. 35. The student is urged to try to read the Latin manuscript of
this chapter as it appears on page 81.
82 3 incolerent: subj. by attraction (§ 214).
82 4 qui . . . pollicērentur: a rel. clause of purpose. — datūrās: takes
the f. gender from nātīnibus.
82 5 in Italiān Iīlyricumque: i.e. Cisalpine Gaul and Illyricum, which
formed part of Cæsar's province. He went there, however, only during the
winter.
82 6 in Carnūtēs: to be taken with dēductūs, l. 9.
82 10 supplicātiō: 'a public thanksgiving.' Ten days was the longest time
that had ever been granted before, except to Pompey, who was honored with
twelve for his victory over Mithridates. — quod: the antecedent is the whole
idea in the preceding clause.

BOOK III

The events recorded in Book III belong chiefly to the campaign of the
year 56 B.C.; but the uprising of the Alpine tribes, described in the opening
chapters, occurred in the latter part of 57 B.C., beginning upon Cæsar's return
to Italy after the subjugation of the Belgae.
83 1 Chap. 1. Cum in Italiān proificiscerētur: connected in thought with
in Italiān profectus est, p. 82, l. 9. — Galbam: this officer later became
one of the assassins of Cæsar, his old general.
83 6 portōriis: these Alpine tribes subsisted largely by mining, grazing,
and the levying of tolls on the goods of travelers.
83 8 arbitrārētur: subj. of implied indir. disc. (§ 208. b). — uti . . .
conlocāret: a subst. clause, obj. of permīsit.
83 10 secundis aliquot proeliiis factis etc.: expand this series of abls. abs.
into clauses; cf. § 117, second paragraph.
83 16 hic: refers to vicus.
83 18 vacuam: pred. adjective after relictam.—ab his: 'by these,' i.e. the Gauls.
84 6 Chap. 2. ut . . . caperent: a subst. clause of result, in apposition with id, 'it.'
84 8 neque eam pleniissimam: 'and that not entirely full.' This legion (the twelfth) had suffered severe losses in the battle with the Nervii (Book II, chap. 25), and was below normal strength before these detachments were sent off.
84 11 cum ipsi . . . decurrerent: 'when they should charge down from the hills into the valley.'
85 1 Accedebat quod: 'and besides' (lit. 'it was added that'). The subj. of accedebat is the clause quod . . . dolabant (§182). A subst. clause with ut and the subjv. might have been used (§187. II).
85 2 abstratcoes: sc. esse.
85 3 Romanoi . . . adiungere: indir. disc. after sibi persuasum habebant, 'they were convinced' (lit. 'they had it persuaded to themselves'). With persuasum habebant cf. coactum habebat, p. 22, l. 3; compertum habeo, p. 49, l. 14; habemus explorida, p. 59, l. 5; and notes.
85 7 Chap. 3. perfectae: agrees with the nearer subj., munitiones, but belongs to opus as well.
85 8 esset prouisum: impers., 'arrangements had been made.'
85 9 timendum (esse): a pass. periphrastic (§§ 38. II, 224. a). Transl. 'that there need be no fear of war.'
85 14 venire: depends on posset, understood from posserunt, l. 15. Posset is used impersonally, lit. 'neither could it be come for aid'; freely, 'and since no one could come to help them.'
85 15 non nullae . . . sententiae: 'several opinions' (or 'votes'), given by the officers in council.
85 16 ut . . . contenderent: a subst. clause of purpose in apposition with eius modi.
85 18 Maiori . . . placuit: 'the majority decided' (lit. 'it pleased the majority').—tamen: 'nevertheless'; i.e. in spite of other sententiae.
85 20 Chap. 4. ut . . . daretur: a result clause.
85 22 decurrere, conicerere, propugnare, mittere, occurrere, ferre, superari: historical infinitives (§218); as usual, describing the situation.
85 23 gaesaeque: Gallic javelins of unknown form.
85 26 eo: adv.
85 27 quod . . . ccedebant . . . succedebant: subst. clauses explaining hoc (§182).
86 1 non modo . . . sed ne . . . quidem: 'not only not, but not even,' etc.
NOTES

We should expect another negative after modo, but the Latin regularly omits it in this expression where both parts have the same predicate.
86 3 suí recipiendi: 'of recovering himself' (§ 224. c).
86 4 Chap. 5. Cum... pugnáretur: 'when the fight had been going on.'
86 8 Baculus: see p. 75, ll. 17-18 and note.
86 11 virtútis: gen. of description.
86 12 unam esse spem salútis: 'that there was only one hope of safety' etc.—si... expérírentur: a conditional clause in apposition with spem. Note that docent, a historical present ind. (§ 153. a), allows secondary sequence, expérírentur (§ 164).— extrémum auxilium: 'the last resource.'
86 14 intermitterent, exciperent, réciperent, crúmerent, ponérent: commands in indir. disc. (§ 205), following certiérès facit in the sense of 'instructs.'
86 15 télä missa exciperent: 'should (merely) catch (on their shields) the weapons that were hurled'; i.e. they should throw none back.
86 16 post: adv.
86 18 Chap. 6. Quod iussi sunt faciunt: 'they did as (what) they were ordered.' Faciunt and the other presents that follow are historical.
86 19 suí conligendi: see § 224. c; 'of collecting their wits' (lit. 'of collecting themselves'); cf. l. 3.
86 21 undique circumventós interficiunt: 'they surrounded on all sides and killed.'
86 24 tertiā parte interfectā: abl. abs.; plus does not affect the case (§ 105. note 2).
86 26 armis: abl. of separation.—exútis: belongs with cópiis. The enemy threw down their arms as they fled.
87 2 alió... meminerat, aliís... víderat: 'remembered that he had come with one plan (i.e. to open a way into Italy) ... but saw that he had encountered other conditions.'

The episode of the uprising of the Nantuates, the Veragri, and the Seduni is concluded with chapter 6. With the following chapter begins the account of the main campaign of 56 B.C. against the hardy coast tribes, particularly the Veneti. Caesar's courage and resourcefulness are nowhere more strikingly shown.
87 12 Chap. 7. Crassus: see p. 81, ll. 7 ff.
87 13 mare: accusative after proximus; cf. p. 56, l. 11.
87 15 complúrus: modifies civitátês.
87 17 Coriosolítas: accusative plur. of Coriosolítês.
87 19 Chap. 8. Huius... civítatís: i.e. of the Veneti.
87 21 in Britanniam... cónsuèrunt: i.e. for the purposes of trade.—cónsuèrunt: contracted from cónsuèvérunt, 'are accustomed.' The present would mean 'grow accustomed.'
87 22 scientiā ... ūsū: abls. of respect (§ 115).
88 1 vectigālēs: adjunct accusative with omnēs (§ 94).
88 2 se: subj. of recuperātūrōs (esse); suōs agrees with obsidēs.
88 5 subita ... repentina: 'sudden ... unexpected.'
88 10 quam ... perferre: 'than to endure,' quam following the comparative idea in mālint.
88 13 remittat: subjv. expressing a command in indir. disc., depending on the message implied in lēgātionēm ... mittunt. The dir. disc. would be sī vēs tuōs recipere, obsidēs nōbīs remitte (§ 205).
88 14 CHAP. 9. Caesār: observe again how Cæsar has stated the difficulties and set the stage for action, and then personally appears as the chief actor.
88 15 aberat longius: 'was too far off'; i.e. to take immediate command in person.—nāvēs ... longās: 'war galleys'; see Introd. III. 14. a; and the illustrations, pp. 92, 94, 117. The Gallic ships used sails alone and had no oars.—It will be remembered that Cæsar, at the close of the previous year (57 B.C.), had set out for Illyricum and Italy (p. 82, l. 5–9). In April, 56 B.C., before his return to Gaul, he had a conference with the other triumvirs, Pompey and Crassus, and arrangements were made whereby the latter were to be consuls for the year 55 B.C., and Cæsar's term as governor of Gaul was to be extended for five years after the expiration of his first term (54 B.C.). Plans were also made to increase Cæsar's legions from eight to ten, and to provide pay for them from the public treasury. Cæsar seems thus to have been planning for future military support when he should finally return to Rome.
88 21 quantum ... admisissent: transl. freely, 'how great a crime they had committed' (lit. 'how great a crime they had brought upon themselves').
88 22 lēgātōs ... retentōs: explanatory of facinus.—quōd nōmen: transl. as if the order were nōmen quod, with nōmen in apposition with lēgātōs, and cf. p. 70, l. 13 and note.
88 26 hōc maiōre spē: 'their hope being greater on this account.'
89 2 Inscientiam: i.e. the Romans' lack of acquaintance.
89 4 diūtius: 'very long' (lit. 'longer,' i.e. than they desired); see § 145.
89 5 ut ... acciderent: 'although everything should turn out contrary to their expectations' (§ 192).
89 6 posse and the following infinitives depend on perspicībant (l. 10).
89 7 gestūrī essent: an active periphrastic (§ 222. I) and a subjv. in indir. disc.
89 8 longē aliam ... atque: 'very different ... from.'
89 9 conclūsō: i.e. like the Mediterranean, with which the Romans were familiar.
89 12 ubi ... cōnstābat: 'where it was evident that Cæsar would first wage war.'
NOTES

89 13 Sociōs: pred. accusative with Osismōs etc.

89 18 Chap. 10. multa: in part. apposition with this word are the nouns iniuria, rebellio, defectio, coniuratio, and the neg. purpose clause nē... arbitra- rentur. This relation may be represented as follows:

iniuria

rebellio

multa

defectio

coniuratio

nē... arbitra- rentur

89 21 negligētā: i.e. left unpunished.

89 22 sibi idem licēre: 'that the same opportunity was open to them' (lit. 'the same thing was permitted to them').

89 25 òdisse: 'hate'; perf. in form, but present in meaning (§ 46).—priorquam... cōnspīrārent: see § 197. b.

90 3 Chap. 11. adeat... contineat... prohibeat: commands in indir. disc. (§ 205).

90 4 accessitī (esse): depends upon dicēbantur and agrees with its subj. in case; 'were said to have been invited.'

90 10 distinendam cūret: cf. pontem faciendum cūrat, p. 20, l. 11 and note; cūret is subjv. in a rel. clause of purpose.

90 16 Chap. 12. eius modi... ut... habērent: 'of such a sort that they had' etc. (§ 179).

90 17 lingulis: some of these narrow tongues of land are several miles long.

90 18 cum... incitāvisset: 'when the tide had risen.'

90 20 minuente: 'at the ebb'; intransitive.

90 21 utrāque rē: 'in either case' (lit. 'by each circumstance'), i.e. by land or by sea.

90 23 his... adaequātis: 'when these (i.e. aggere ac mōlibus) were brought level with the walls of the town.' The towns, being at the ends of the tongues of land, were inaccessible by land during high tide. The Romans, by extending dikes along the sides of the promontories, shut off the water and were thus enabled to extend the agger in each case up to the walls of the town. (For the agger see Introd. III. 13. 6.) As soon as the Romans were in a position to take a town, the inhabitants escaped in ships to the next town.

91 1 cuīus reī: i.e. nāvēs taken collectively.

91 3 Haec... facēbant: 'this they continued to do'; past descr. of repeated action (§ 154. c). There is the same force in deportābant and recipiēbant above.

91 4 partem: accusative of duration of time (§ 96).
91 summa: with difficultās.—vāstō . . . mari etc.: abl. abs. In each of these points the ocean is contrasted with the sheltered and tideless waters of the Mediterranean.

91 8 Chap. 13. Namque: introduces the reason for the fewer troubles of the Veneti; ‘(but the Veneti had less trouble) for.’—ipsōrum: ‘their own.’

91 9 aliquantō: abl. of measure of difference.—quam nostrārum nāvium: ‘than (those) of our ships.’

91 10 quō facilius . . . possent: purpose with a comparative word (§ 176).

91 13 quamvis: from quīvīs.

91 14 trānstra etc.: ‘the cross beams of timbers a foot thick, fastened with iron bolts the thickness of a (man’s) thumb.’

91 15 crassitūdine: abl. of description.—prō: ‘instead of.’

91 16 pellēs: the Romans used sails made of flax; the Veneti of skins, untanned (pellēs) or tanned (alētae).

91 20 tanta onera nāvium: ‘ships of so great weight.’

91 22 nostrae classūs: dative of possession (§ 88), but transl. ‘the encounter of our fleet with’ etc.

91 23 ūnā celeritāte et pulsū rēmōrum: ‘only in swiftness and the power of the oars’; abl. of respect.—reliqua: ‘(but) everything else.’

91 25 nostrae: sc. nāvēs.—rōstrō: abl. of means; for description of the rōstrum see Introd. III. 14. a.

91 27 cōpulis: ‘grappling hooks.’

91 28 Accědēbat ut: ‘there was this additional advantage, that,’ followed by the subst. result clauses ut . . . ferrent . . . cōnsisterent . . . timērent.—āe ventō dedissent: ‘ran before the wind.’

92 1 cōnsisterent: ‘rode at anchor.’

92 2 nihil: see § 99.

92 3 nāvibus: see § 87.

92 6 Chap. 14. neque eis nocērī posse: ‘nor could they be harmed’; only the impers. construction can be used with the pass. of verbs of this sort; see § 83. a, and note on p. 64, l. 13.

92 7 prīmium . . . visa est: ‘as soon as it was seen.’

92 10 neque satis Brūtō . . . cōnståbat quid agerent: ‘and it was not clear to Brutus . . . what they should do.’

92 14 turribus autem excitātīs: the word tamen following shows that this abl. abs. has adversative force (§ 192. note); ‘though towers had been erected (on the Roman ships), nevertheless’ etc.

93 1 ex barbarīs nāvibus: ‘of (lit. ‘from’) the barbarians’ ships.’

93 4 magnō ūsūl: ‘of great service’; dative of the end (§ 89); in fact, it turned threatened disaster to victory; but Cæsar will not use words that hint of possible defeat.—falcēs: in apposition with nēs.
NOTES

93 6 mūrālium falcium: 'wall hooks,' long poles with sickle-shaped hooks, like those used by hook-and-ladder companies for pulling down walls (see Introd. III. 13. b). The gen. limits fūrneae understood, dative after absimili ($\S$ 90); 'of a shape not unlike (the shape) of wall hooks.' Fūrmā is abl. of description.—**His . . . praeumperēbantur:** 'whenever the ropes which fastened the yards to the masts had been seized and drawn tight by these, the ship was driven forward by the oars and (in consequence) the ropes were torn off.'

93 7 adductī erant . . . praeumperēbantur: note the distinction in tenses and see § 196.

93 9 Gallicis nāvibus: dative of reference ($\S$ 85).

93 18 in conspectū Caesaris atque omnīs exercitūs: they had an audience that was calculated to inspire their best efforts. Cēsar does not forget the dramatic setting of his narrative.

93 14 paulō fortius: 'a little braver (than usual).'

93 17 **Chap. 15. cum . . . circumsteterant . . . contendēbant:** the same use of tenses as in ll. 7–8, to express repeated action in past time.—**bīnae ac ternae:** distributives; 'when two or three ships (of the Romans) had surrounded each ship (of the Veneti).'

93 24 Quae . . . rēs: i.e. the sudden calm.—**ad negotium cōnscendiunm:** 'for finishing the business.'

93 27 ad terram pervēnerint: 'came to land.' For the exception to the rule of sequence see § 163. c.—**cum . . . pugnārētur:** 'although the battle had been going on.'

93 28 hōrā fērē quārtā: about 10 a.m.

94 2 **Chap. 16. cum . . . tum:** 'not only . . . but also.'

94 4 nāvium quod: 'all the ships' (lit. 'what of ships'); part. gen.

94 5 neque quō sē recipere . . . dēfenderent habēbant: 'had no place to which they could flee (for refuge) nor any way to defend their towns.' The subjunctive clauses are descriptive ($\S$ 177). Cf. quō . . . tolerārent, p. 32, l. 15.

94 8 eō gravius . . . quō: abls. of measure of difference. Transl. 'the more severely . . . that.'—**vindicandum (esse):** impers., but transl. 'punishment should be inflicted.'

94 10 sub corōnā vēndidit: 'sold at public auction' (lit. 'under the wreath'); captives in war, when being sold for slaves, wore wreaths. The custom arose from the crowning of animals intended for sacrifice. The selling of captives by their conquerors was common in antiquity, and Cēsar's act must not be judged by modern standards.

95 1 **Chap. 17. Q. Titūrius Sabinus . . . in fines Venellorum pervēnit:** see p. 90, ll. 8–11.

95 7 nōlēbant: i.e. the senate. Plur., referring to sēnātū, a collective noun ($\S$ 65. a).
THE GALRIC WAR—BOOK III

95 9 perditōrum: 'desperate.'
95 12 idōneō ... locō: 'in a place suitable in all respects.'
95 13 cum ... cōnsēdiēset: concessive.
95 15 hostibus etc.: equivalent to in contemptōnem ... hostium; dative of reference.
95 19 sē absente: i.e. Cæsar.
95 21 lēgātō: dative of agent with dīmicandum (esse).
95 25 Chap. 18. quid fierī velit sēdocet: 'he tells him what he wants done.'
95 21 prō perfugā: 'in the character of a deserter.'
95 3 neque longius abesse quin proximā nocte: an expression amounting to 'and that not later than the following night.'
96 7 irī: imper., depending on oportēre.
96 8 superiōrum diērum: depends on Sabīnī cunctātiō taken together. In apposition with rēs are cunctātiō, cōnfīrmātiō, inopia, spēs, and the clause quod ... crēdunt.
96 12 nōn prius ... quam: 'not ... until.'
96 13 sit concessum: see § 197. b.
96 15 ut explōrātā victōriā: 'as if victory were already assured.'—quibus ... compleant: a rel. clause of purpose.
96 18 Chap. 19. passūs mille: accusative of extent of space. Mille is here an indeclinable adjective.
96 19 quam minimum spatī: 'as little time as possible'; subj. of darētur.
96 20 examīnātique pervēnērunt: 'and they arrived all tired out.'
96 26 Quōs: a connecting rel. equivalent to eōs and obj. of cōnsecūtī (§ 143).
97 2 equītēs: nominative. —paucōs: 'only a few,' the regular meaning of this word.—quī ... ēvāserant: 'who had escaped from the fleeing crowd.'
97 6 ut: correlative with sīc.—ad bella suscipienda etc.: they were eager and ready for undertaking war, but lacked grit in enduring reverses.
97 9 Chap. 20. The third campaign of the year 56 B.C., that against the Aquitani, begins at this point. It seems to have been quite unnecessary, as well as difficult and dangerous.—P. Crrassus: see p. 90, ll. 5–8.
97 12 Praecōninus ... Mānlius: these defeats were twenty-two years before (78 B.C.), when the Aquitani united with Sertorius, the leader of the Marian party, who held Spain for ten years against Rome (82–72 B.C.).
97 17 Galliae prōvinciae: 'of the province of Gaul.'
97 18 his regiōnibus: dative after sīnītiae, which agrees with cīvitātēs. —nōminātīm ēvōcātīs: 'having been called to the colors' or 'having been drafted.'
98 1 Chap. 21. superiōribus victūrīs: see § 107. b.
98 3 quid ... possent: indir. question, subj. of perspicī. —sine imperātōrē ... adulēscentulō duce: an imperātor is the commander in chief of an army; dux refers to any person holding a command.
NOTES

98 8 vineas turresque educit: see Introd. III. 13. 6, and the ill., pp. xxxviii, xl.

98 9 cuniculis: 'mines' (lit. 'rabbits'), so called from their likeness to rabbits' burrows. These were intended to run under the Roman agger. The roof was propped up with wooden posts, and when these were set on fire and burned through, the entire mass of Roman works would fall into the pit.

98 11 diligentia: abl. of cause. The Romans doubtless destroyed the enemy's mines by countermines.

98 14 faciunt: 'they do (so).

98 18 CHAP. 22. commodis: with fruantur (§ 107. a). The clause is in apposition with condicìo.

98 19 quorum . . . amicitiae: 'to whose friendship.'


98 22 qui . . . recusaret: a rel. clause of description.

98 23 cum his: repeated from cum . . . dèvòlis on account of the long parenthesis; 'with these (I say).'

99 3 CHAP. 23. paucis diebus . . . erat: 'within only a few days after he had arrived there' (lit. 'within which it had been come there').

99 5 quòqueversus: 'in every direction.'

99 7 citerioris Hispāniae: pred. gen. This was northern Spain. — finitimae Aquitāniae: 'bordering on Aquitania'; finitimae is a pred. adjective after quae sunt.

99 10 Q. Sertori: see note on p. 97, l. 12.

99 12 cōnsuētūdine populi Rōmānī: because of their service under Sertorius they were familiar with Roman methods of warfare.

99 15 Quod: explained by the four appositive clauses suās cópiās . . . augērī.

99 10 nōn . . . dēcertāret: 'he thought a battle should not be delayed.'

What is the literal translation?

99 23 CHAP. 24. duplicē: i.e. two cohorts in depth. His numbers were too few to allow the usual formation of three divisions (trīplex aciēs).

99 24 in médiam aciem: i.e. where they would be kept steady by the legionsaries. Their ordinary position was on the wings. — quid . . . cōnsili: 'what plan' (lit. 'what of plan'); part. gen.

100 1 victōriā: abl. with polītī (§ 107. a).

100 2 sēsē recipere: i.e. to withdraw from Aquitania.

100 3 infirmōres animō: 'dispirited'; for the case of animō see § 115.

100 5 prōductīs cópiās: concessive; 'although' etc. (§ 117. d).

100 6 opīnīone timōris: 'the notion (they had given) of their own cowardice.'

100 8 exspectārī . . . quīn . . . Irētur: freely, 'that they should go to the camp without further delay.'
100 10 ad hostium castra: this is the only instance in the "Commentaries" of an attack by Romans on a fortified Gallic camp. The fight usually took place on a carefully chosen level stretch between the hostile camps.

100 18 CHAP. 25. quibus: abl. with cōnfidēbat (§ 107. b).—lapidibus . . . comportandis: 'by supplying (the regular soldiers) with stones and javelins and fetching turf for (building) an agger.' The gerundives express means.

100 15 opinīōnem pugnantium: i.e. they gave the impression of being actually engaged in fighting (§ 221).

100 17 ex locō etc.: i.e. as they stood on the rampart of the camp.

100 19 ab decumānā portā: i.e. 'in the rear,' where this gate was situated; see Introd. III. 10 and the illustration on p. xxxv. The Gauls appear here to have adopted the Roman mode of constructing camps. Cf. note on p. 99, l. 12.

100 26 CHAP. 26. omnium oculīs . . . intentīs: 'while the eyes and minds of all were bent on the battle.'

100 28 prius . . . cōnstitūrunt . . . quam . . . posset: equivalent to cōn-
stitūrunt priusquam posset (§ 197. b).

101 2 quod pērumque . . . cōnsevīt: '(a thing) which usually happens.' The antecedent of quod is the idea contained in redintegrātis vīribus. For the tense cf. note on p. 87, l. 21.

101 4 per: 'over.'

101 6 quae: accusative plur., subj. of convēnīssē. It takes its gender from the antecedent mīlium.

101 13 CHAP. 27. tempore: cf. quibus, p. 100, l. 13, and see § 107. b.


101 18 arbitrātus: 'thinking'; the past participle of a few deponent verbs is used nearly in the sense of a present. Cf. veritus, p. 64, l. 24.

101 19 alīa . . . ac: 'other . . . than' or 'different . . . from.'

101 22 continentēs: 'continuous': i.e. far-stretching.

101 23 eō: 'thither'; i.e. to the silvās and palūdes.

102 6 CHAP. 29. deinceps: i.e. in the days next following.

102 9 conversam: 'fronting'; i.e. with the boughs turned toward the enemy. —prō vāllō: 'as a palisade.'

102 11 cōnfectō: 'cleared' (of timber); lit. 'finished.'

102 12 tenērentur: 'were being seized.'

102 13 eius modi . . . utī . . . intermitterētur: 'such that the work was necessarily interrupted.'

102 14 sub pellibus: the tents were of leather.
NOTES

BOOK IV

In Book IV the scene shifts to the German frontier. In the winter of 56–55 B.C. two of the lesser German tribes, the Tecteiri and Usipetes, crowded by the powerful Suebi, crossed the Rhine into Gaul. At the earliest moment Caesar concentrated his forces in this quarter for the defense of Gaul, drove the Germans back across the Rhine, followed them up by an expedition into their own territory, and thus assured the supremacy of the Roman arms.

103 1 CHAP. I. Pompeio . . . Cæsar: i.e. the year 55 B.C. The year was defined by naming the consuls in office ($\S$ 228). The Triumvirate had decided that Cæsar should hold the government of Gaul while the other two members kept control of affairs at Rome.

103 4 quō: adv., equivalent to in quod.
103 11 Hi . . . illi: 'the latter . . . the former' ($\S$ 134. a). — annō post: 'the following year.' For the case of annō see $\S$ 114.
103 12 ratiō: 'theory' (theoretical knowledge); āsus, 'practice' (knowledge derived from experience).
103 18 privāti: there was no private ownership, but all lands were held as common property. Further, no community remained in one place longer than a year, probably that they might not become too much attached to one place.
103 16 frūmentō: abl. of means. — maximam partem: see $\S$ 99. Transl. 'for the most part.'
103 17 quae rēs: i.e. the mode of living just described. Rēs is subj. of alīt and efficiet.
103 18 nūllō officiō . . . adsuēfactī: 'accustomed to no service' (lit. 'trained by no service'); see $\S$ 106. The clause quod . . . faciunt is parenthetical.
104 3 vestitūs: part. gen. with quīe quam.
104 6 CHAP. 2. eō ut . . . habeant: 'on this account, that they may have (persons) to whom' etc.
104 8 quam quō . . . désiderent: 'than because they want' etc. A reason given as supposable but not real is expressed by the subjv. ($\S$ 188. b).
104 15 impēnsō . . . pretiō: 'at high cost.'
104 17 importātīs nōn ētuntur: 'do not import for use.'
104 22 lāborisi: pred. gen. of description ($\S$ 77. a).
104 27 mōribus: abl. of accordance.
104 29 quamvis pauci: 'however few.'
105 1 Vinum omnīnō . . . importāri nōn patiuntur: 'wine they do not allow to be brought into their country at all.'
105 4 Chap. 3. Publicē: 'as a community.'
105 7 ãnā . . . Suebis: 'extending from (the territory of) the Suebi in one direction.'
105 9 ut est captus Germānōrum: 'according to the standard of the Germans.'
105 10 paulō . . . hūmāniōrēs: 'somewhat more civilized than the others, although they are of the same race' (i.e. Germans).
105 13 cum: concessive, as shown by the following tamen (§ 192. note).
105 15 vectigālēs sibi fēcērunt: 'have rendered them tributary to themselves.'
105 23 Chap. 4. trāns flūmen: i.e. on the east side; cis Rhēnum (l. 24), the west side.
106 1 Illī: i.e. the Germānī.
106 4 viam: accusative of kindred meaning (§ 98).
106 5 cōnfectō: with itinere.
106 11 partem: accusative of duration of time.
106 14 Chap. 5. veritus: transl. as if present, 'fearing.' Cf. p. 64, l. 24.
106 15 nihil . . . committendum (esse): 'no confidence should be placed in them.'
106 16 Est . . . cōnsuētūdinis: 'for it is a Gallic custom' (lit. 'for there is this (point) of Gallic custom'); the following subjv. clauses are in apposition with hoc.
106 17 etiam invītōś: 'even though they are unwilling.'
106 21 rēbus atque audītiōnibus: 'facts and rumors.'
106 22 quōrum eōs . . . paenitērē: see § 81. b.— in vēstīgiō: 'on the spot.'
106 23 plērique: i.e. the viātōrēs and mercārīōrēs.— ad voluntātem eōrum fīcta respondeant: 'give answers fashioned according to the wish of their questioners' (eōrum).
106 25 Chap. 6. graviōrī bellō: 'too serious a war' (§ 122)
106 26 cōnsuērat: contracted from cōnsuēverat.— ad exercitum: in winter quarters among the Aulerī and Lexovii; see p. 102, l. 17.
106 27 ea . . . facta (esse): ea is explained by the inf. clauses missās (esse) ĭegātiōnēs and invītātiōque (esse) eōs.
107 2 omnia . . . fore parāta: used for the fut. pass. inf. depending on some word of promising implied in invītātōs; '(with the promise that) all things would be made ready.'
107 8 equitātū imperātō: 'cavalry being levied'; observe the meaning of imperō here.
107 10 Chap. 7. equitibus dēlēctīs: each of the allied states 'furnished its quota of cavalry.'
NOTES

107 16 quicunque: the antecedent is eis understood as indir. obj. of resistere.
107 17 Haec tamen dicere: 'that this, however, they did say'; supply se as the subj. of dicere and the following infs.
107 19 eis: i.e. to the Romans.—attribuunt: subjv. for the impv. of dir. disc. (§ 205).
107 20 eós: i.e. agrōs.
107 21 concédere: 'yield,' as inferior.
107 22 reliquum etc.: 'there was no one else on earth' etc. Observe the emphatic position of reliquum; cf. p. 21, l. 19; p. 36, l. 4; and notes.
107 23 possint: subjv. in a clause of description (§ 177).
107 24 Chap. 8. quae visum est: 'what it seemed proper (to answer).'
108 26 qui ... potuerint: the verb in this clause of description would be subjv. in the dir. disc. also; likewise qui ... possint, l. 28.
108 2 quōrum sint etc.: 'whose envoys (he informs them) are now with him and complaining.'
108 6 Chap. 9. post diem tertium: i.e. the next day but one. The first and last days are usually included in the Roman reckoning (§ 227. g).
108 7 proprius sē: 'nearer them,' sē being an indir. reflex. For the case see note on p. 56, l. 11.
108 10 trāns: i.e. westward.
108 13 Chap. 10. Vosegō: 'the Vosges.' Cæsar is wrong here; the Meuse really rises a considerable distance west of the Vosges Mountains.
108 14 parte ... receptā: the Rhine branches in these regions; one branch, the Vacalus, unites with the Meuse about eighty miles from its mouth. See the map.
108 20 multis ... effectis: transl. actively, 'making many' etc.
108 28 Chap. 11. ut erat constitūtum: 'as had been arranged.'
109 2 praemitteret: used without an obj.; transl. 'send word.'
109 3 sibique ut potestātem faceret: 'give them an opportunity.'
109 4 quōrum sī ... fecisset: 'and if their leading men and senate should give them an oath-bound pledge'; fecisset represents a fut. perf. ind. in the dir. disc. (§§ 208, 209. note). The verb is singular because it agrees with the nearest subject (§ 67) or because the two subjects form a single idea (§ 68).
109 5 condiciōne: abl. with ǎrōs (esse); see § 107. a.
109 7 daret: subjv. in an indir. command or request (§ 205).
109 8 eōdem illō pertinēre: 'tended the same way'; eōdem and illō are advs.—ut ... reverterentur: a purpose clause explaining eōdem illō.
109 14 qui nūntiārent: a rel. clause of purpose. The antecedent of qui
is the omitted obj. of *mitit*.—nē . . . *lacerarent . . . sustinērent*: commands in indir. disc. (§§ 205, 206).

109 16 accessisset: see § 198. III. b.

109 18 CHAP. 12. amplius: as usual, this word has no effect on the construction (§ 105. note 2).

109 22 indūtīs: dative of purpose.

109 23 resistentibus: sc. nostrīs, hīs being the indir. obj.

109 24 *subfossis* etc.: 'after stabbing our horses underneath and dismounting several of our men.'

109 26 ut . . . *vēnissent*: note that *dēsisterent* is subjv. of result with *ut*, and that *vēnissent* depends on it (§ 214); otherwise the clause with *prius . . . quam* would be in the ind. (§ 197. a).

110 8 genere: see § 102.

110 6 quoad: see § 198. II; compare this use of *quoad* with that on p. 109, l. 15.

110 11 CHAP. 13. *ab eis qui . . . intulisset*: 'from men who' etc.; a clause of description.

110 13 dūm . . . augērentur: see § 198. III. b.

110 14 *dementiae*: descriptive gen. in the pred. after *esse* (§ 77. a); the subj. is *exspectāre*. Transl. 'he thought it was the height of madness to wait.'

110 15 quantum . . . auctōritātīs: 'how great prestige the enemy had gained by one battle'; for *auctōritātis* see § 76. a.

110 17 quibus: i.e. the enemy; a connecting rel., indir. obj. of *dandum* (*esse*).

110 19 nē quem . . . praetermitteret: a subst. clause of purpose in apposition with *cōnsiliōs. Quem* is an indef. pronominal adjective, 'any.'

110 20 quod . . . *vēnērunt*: explanatory of *rēs.*

110 23 simul . . . simul: 'partly . . . partly.'—pūrgandi sui causā: 'for the purpose of excusing themselves' (§§ 224. c, 225. b).—quod . . . commississent: see § 188. b.

110 25 ut . . . *impetrārent*: 'that they might obtain through treachery whatever they could in the way of truce.'

110 26 Quōs . . . oblātōs (esse) *gāvisus*: 'delighted that they were put in his power'; *gāvisus* is from *gāudē*.


111 6 et . . . *et*: correlative; *celeritāte* and *discessū* explain *omnibus rēbus*.

111 7 perturbantur, cōpiāsne . . . an . . . an . . . praestāret: 'they were confused as to whether it was better' etc. (§§ 201, 170. b. 1).

111 9 Quōrum timor *cum*: equivalent to *cum timor ēorum* (§ 143).

111 11 *quī*: the antecedent is the subj. understood of *restitērunt*.

111 16 ad *quōs* *cōnsectandōs*: 'to hunt them down.' This action of *Caesar's* seems cruel. When thanksgivings were proposed in the senate for
Caesar's victory, Cato, Caesar's inveterate enemy, moved that he should be surrendered to the barbarians for this butchery. Such justification as can be found for the act rests on Caesar's conviction that to secure the Roman power the Germans on the west side of the Rhine must be destroyed and that river kept as the boundary of the Roman possessions.

111 17 Chap. 15. Germāni etc.: i.e. the Germans who were fighting heard the cries of those who were being massacred.

111 28 ad īnum: 'to a man.'
111 27 verītī: see p. 106, l. 14 and note.
111 28 libertātem: '(this) privilege.'
112 3 Chap. 16. iūstissima: 'the most important.'
112 7 Accessit ... quod ... recōperat ... confiūnerat: the quod clause is the subj. of accessit. Transl. 'a further reason was' etc. (lit. 'it was added that'). A subst. clause with ut often follows accēdō.
112 8 quam ... trānsisse: see p. 108, ll. 8 ff.
112 13 dēderent: a subst. clause without ut after postulārent.
112 15 sui ... imperī: pred. gen. after esse; 'under his power' (§ 73. a).
112 17 Ubiī autem: 'moreover the Ubiī' etc. This introduces the third of Caesar's reasons (multīs dē causīs, l. 1) for crossing the Rhine. The first is introduced by illa fuit iūstissima (l. 2), the second by Accessit etiam quod (l. 7).
112 20 premerentur: see § 188. b.
112 21 id sibi ... satis futūrum (esse): '(saying that) that would be enough for them.'

113 3 Chap. 17. neque suae neque populi Rōmāni dignitātīs etc.: 'and he decided that it was in keeping neither with his own dignity nor with that of the Roman people'; for dignitātīs see § 77. a.

114 3 Ratiōnem: 'plan.' A good idea of the structure of this bridge can be gained by a careful comparison of the text with the diagram on p. 113. Any pupil handy with tools will find it interesting and helpful to make a wooden model of a section of this bridge. The site of the bridge was probably near Bonn, where there is to-day a magnificent structure, bearing a Latin inscription stating that Caesar built a bridge there in the year 55 B.C.—bīna: 'in pairs.'

114 4 dimēnsa ad altitūdinem: 'measured (and cut) according to the depth of the river.'
114 5 pedum duōrum: i.e. between the timbers of each pair.
114 7 nōn subīcae modō dērēctē ad perpendiculum: 'not perpendicularly, like a pile' (lit. 'in the fashion of a pile').
114 8 ut ... prōcumberent: 'so as to lean forward in the direction of the current.'
114 10 ab inferiōre parte: 'downstream.' — contrā ... conversā: 'slanting against'; conversa agrees with duo (tigna).

114 11 Haec utraque ... distinēbantur: 'these two sets were held apart by two-foot timbers laid on above, equal (in thickness) to the interval left by the fastening of the piles (quantum ... distēbat), with a pair of clamps at each end.'

114 12 bipedālibus trabibus: compare with pedum duōrum, l. 5. The timbers were just wide enough to fit in between the piles forming each pair.

114 14 quibus (tignis) ... revinctis: 'after these were held apart and secured in opposite directions,' i.e. by the horizontal beams.

114 15 rērum: 'structure.'

114 16 quō maior ... hōc artius: 'the greater ... the more closely'; abls. of measure of difference. A model constructed according to this description will readily illustrate how the whole structure is the more tightly locked together the greater the pressure exerted against the sloping tigna from above or below.

114 17 Haec ... contexēbantur: 'these (the framework of timber) were covered with beams placed lengthwise.'

114 19 sublica... agēbantur: 'piles were driven also on the lower side in a slanting direction' (so as to stay the bridge against the current).

114 20 prō ariete subiectae: 'serving as a buttress.'

114 21 aliae item: other piles a little way above, to serve as a breakwater. These were probably independent of the bridge.

114 24 nec ... nocērent: 'and that they (truncē etc.) might not harm the bridge.'


115 4 hortantibus eīs quōs: 'at the instigation of those whom.'

115 10 Chap. 19. premerentur: implied indir. disc. (§ 208. b).

115 18 uti ... dēmigrārent ... dēpōnerent ... convenirent: subj. clauses of purpose following the verbal phrase nāntiōs ... dīmīssisse, which involves an idea of sending orders or advice.

115 15 hunc etc.: 'this had been selected about the middle.'

115 19 ut ... inceret ... ulcerērētur ... liberāret: substantive clauses of purpose in apposition with rēbus (§ 183, third example).

115 22 satis ... prōfectum (esse): 'enough had been done.'


116 1 Chap. 20. Cæsar's brief expedition to Britain described in the following chapters marks the beginning of the national history of England. Cæsar was the first Roman who entered Britain, and the first author who wrote about it from personal knowledge.
NOTES

116 2 ad septentriôns : ‘toward the north’; cf. p. 12, l. 4 and l. 9.
116 4 bellis : abl. of time (§ 119). — inde : i.e. from Britain.
116 6 si . . . cognôvissent : a fut. condition in indir. disc. changed from
the fut. perf. ind. (§§ 208, 209. note, 210). The clauses are subs. of fore.
116 9 illô : adv.
116 12 quanta . . . poterat : the indir. questions are obj. of reperîre.
116 15 qui : with portîs, ‘what harbors.’
116 18 Chap. 21. nāvi longâ : see the illustrations, pp. 92, 117.
116 28 quam . . . classem : lit. ‘what fleet he had built’; transl. as if
the order were classem quam fecerat. For the attraction of the antecedent
into the rel. clause see § 140.
116 27 qui pollicesantur : a rel. clause of purpose, but transl. by the pres.
participle.
117 6 magnî : gen. of indef. value (§ 78).
117 7 adeat : a subst. clause without ēt, obj. of imperat.
117 9 quantum : sc. tantum as the antecedent word; ‘so far as opportunity
could be given to him’ etc.
117 10 qui . . . audēret : a rel. clause of cause (§ 190).
117 14 Chap. 22. superîoris temporis : ‘of the season before’; see
Book III, chap. 28.
118 1 cōnseûtûdinis : see § 80.
118 2 fâcissent : the reason is given on the authority of the lēgātî, hence
the verb is in the subjv.
118 6 hâs . . . antepōnendâs : ‘that occupation about these trifling mat-
ters should take precedence of (the invasion of) Britain.’
118 8 imperat : ‘demands,’ with accusative of dir. and dative of indir. obj.
118 9 Nāvibus . . . смерîlis : see Introd. III. 14. 6, and the ill., p. 117.—
quot : sc. tot as the antecedent; ‘(as many) as he thought’ etc.
118 10 quod : the antecedent is ida understood, the obj. of distribuit;
‘what galleys he had besides’ (lit. ‘what of galleys,’ part. gen.).
118 13 ā : adv., ‘away,’ ‘off.’ — tenēbantur quō minus : ‘were detained
from’; the usual construction after verbs of hindering (§ 185).
118 16 in Menapiôs . . . in ēös pâgôs : with dûcendum, which agrees with
exercitum, obj. of dedît. The gerundive here expresses purpose (§ 224. d).
118 20 Chap. 23. nactus : from nancûs cor.
118 21 tempestâtem : ‘weather.’ — tertîâ vigîlîa : probably soon after
midnight. — solvit : ‘cast off’ the ropes; i.e. weighed anchor. — ulterîôrem
portum : the port eight miles away. (l. 13). See the map.
118 22 hōrā . . . quârtâ : about 10 A.M. The distance across is about
thirty miles. He sailed from a port at or near Boulogne, and his approach to
Britain was near Dover. There he lay at anchor till half past three.
118 26 montibus angustē etc.: i.e. the cliffs came close to the shore. See the ill., p. 119.

119 2 dum ... conveniērunt: when is dūm, ‘until,’ followed by the ind.? See § 198. III. a.

119 5 Volusēnō: cf. p. 116, l. 18, and p. 117, l. 8.—monuitque ... ad
dministrārēntur: ‘and enjoined upon them that everything should be done promptly (lit. ‘at the nod and at the time’) as military science and particularly control of ships demand, since the latter have a swift and unsteady motion’ (lit. ‘as things which have’ etc.). The obj. of monuit is the subst. clause (ut) ... administrārēntur.

119 6 postulārēnt: see § 214.

119 7 habērēnt: see § 190.

119 9 His dimissis etc.: the first et connects dimissis and nactus, the second ventum and aestum. Why are dimissis and nactus not in the same construction? See note on p. 61, l. 15.

119 11 prōgressus: toward the north.

120 2 Chap. 24. essēdārīis: the essēdum was a two-wheeled war chariot. —quō ... genere: ‘a kind (of fighting) which’; refers to the fighting both on horseback and with the chariots. Genere is attracted into the rel. clause.

120 3 ēgressī: the inf. is common after prohibēō instead of the subjv. with nē, quīn, or quō minus (§ 185. a).

120 5 cōnstitūtī: ‘to ride,’ ‘to be anchored.’

120 6 mīlitibus: dative of agent with the impers. pass. periphrastics dēsiliendum ... cōnstitendum ... pugnandum erat; pressīs modifies mī
tibus, ‘weighted as they were.’

120 9 cum īlī etc.: ‘while they’ (the Britons) etc.; a cum clause of description.

121 1 generis: see § 80.

121 2 pedestrībus: ‘on land,’ where the main strength lay in infantry.

121 4 Chap. 25. nāvēs longās: subj. of removērī, incitārī, and cōnstitūrī; the whole clause is the obj. of iussīt (§ 183. note).

121 5 barbarīs inūsitātīor: ‘more unfamiliar to the barbarians,’ i.e. than ordinary ships.

121 8 latus apertum: i.e. the right, unprotected by shields; cf. p. 74, l. 4.

121 9 inde: i.e. from the ships.

121 10 tormentis: see Introd. III. 4.

121 19 qui: the antecedent is the subj. understood of inquit. For other conspicuous actions of the tenth legion cf. p. 45, l. 2; p. 76, l. 15.—aquīlam: see Introd. III. 7.

121 20 obtestātus etc.: ‘appealing to the gods that the action might result favorably to the legion.’
NOTES

121 23 ego certē: 'I, at any rate.' The nominative of personal pronouns is not used except for emphasis. See colored plate, facing p. 120.
121 25 inter sē: 'one another.'—nē . . . admitterētur: a subst. clause, obj. of cohērētī.
121 29 adpropinquāvērunt: the subj. is mūlitēs implied.
122 1 CHAP. 26. tamen: 'nevertheless,' i.e., in spite of the fact that they fought fiercely.
122 3 alius aliā ex nāvi: see § 144. d. 1. Transl. 'men from different ships rallied about whatever standards they happened on.'
122 4 signis: dative, depending on occurrerat (§ 84).
122 5 ubi . . . cōnspexerant: 'whenever they saw'; cf. similar clauses introduced by cum meaning 'whenever,' p. 93, ll. 6 and 17 (§ 196).
122 6 singulārēs: 'scattered soldiers.'
122 8 latere apertō: see p. 121, l. 8.
122 10 speculātōria nāvīgia: swift, light boats for reconnaissance.—quōs: the antecedent is hēs, 'whomsoever he saw hard pressed, to these' etc.
122 11 simul (atque): 'as soon as' (§ 193).
122 12 longius: 'very far.'
122 14 equītēs: concerning these see chap. 23, first sentence.
122 16 fortūnam: Cæsar's belief in fortūna was real. Cf. p. 44, ll. 18–23.
122 22 ērētōris modō: 'in the character of an envoy.'
122 24 remisērunt: sc. cum, i.e. Commium.
122 26 ignōserētur: impers. (§ 83. a).
122 27 cum . . . petissent: concessive.
123 6 CHAP. 28. post diem quārtum: 'three days after;' according to our reckoning (§ 227. 6).—quām: after the comparative idea implied in post.
123 11 aliae . . . aliae: 'some . . . others.'
123 13 propius: adv. with the force of a preposition. Cf. p. 50, l. 2, and p. 56, l. 11.
123 14 tamen: i.e. though Britain was so near.—ancorēs iactēs: concessive; 'since they, though the anchors had been cast, began to fill.'
123 15 adversā nocte: 'in the face of the darkness.'—in altum prōveccētāe: 'putting out to sea' (lit. 'into the deep').
123 17 CHAP. 29. ut esset: a result clause, subj. of accidit (§ 187. II).—qui diēs: why does diēs stand in the rel. clause?
123 18 aestūs maximōs: 'very high tides'; the ocean tides, rising here between twenty and thirty feet, were strange to those who had known only the tideless waters of the Mediterranean.
123 20 nāvēs: obj. of complēbat.
123 25 id quod: id is in apposition with the clause magna . . . facta est.
123 27 quibus ... possent: a result clause; quibus = ut eis.
124 1 quod ... cōnstābat: see §188. a; 'because it was clear to all.' The subj. of oportère is hiemāri, and the whole clause is subj. of cōnstābat.
124 7 CHAP. 30. paucitātem militum ex castrorum exiguitāte cognōscērent: 'inferred the fewness of soldiers from the small size of the camp.'
124 8 hōc: 'on this account'; correlative with quod.
124 10 factū: see §226. b.—dūxērunt: 'they considered.' What does dūcō usually mean?
124 11 prohibēre ... prōdūcere: subjs. of esse.—his ... interclūsās: 'if these should be overcome or cut off from return'; abl. abs. expressing condition.
124 15 dēdūcere: i.e. from their farms; cf. p. 123, ll. 3–4.
124 16 CHAP. 31. At: regularly introduces a new scene or a new speaker.
124 17 ex ēventū nāvium: 'from what had befallen the ships.'—quod ... intermisērant: the clause explains eō.
124 18 fore ... suspicābātur: 'began to suspect that what actually happened would happen.' For this use of the past descr. tense see §154. c.
124 20 quae ... nāvēs, ēārum: transl. as if ēārum nāvium quae.
124 21 aere: the Romans used the word aes for both copper and bronze. These metals were more commonly used than iron in the Roman ships, as they do not rust.
124 22 quae: the antecedent of quae is ea, the subj. understood of comportāri.
124 24 reliquis ... effēcit: 'he managed so that they could sail tolerably well with the rest' (lit. 'it could be sailed').
125 1 CHAP. 32. Dum ... geruntur: see §198. I.—frūmentātum: supine (§226. a).
125 5 statīōne: such outposts or pickets were always on duty to guard the camp, usually a cohort at each gate.
125 6 quam cōnsuētūdō ferret: 'than usual.'
125 8 aliquid ... initum (esse): inf. clause in apposition with id.
125 9 cōnsili: part. gen.
125 11 armāri: 'to arm themselves.'
125 15 ūna: 'only one.'—suspicātī: as present; 'supposing.' Cf. arbi-trātus, p. 101, l. 18 and note.
125 17 dispersōs ... occupātōs: agreeing with nostrōs understood, the obj. of adortī.
125 20 CHAP. 33. ex essēdīs: these chariots held several men each besides the driver.
125 21 equōrum: obj. gen.; 'the very terror that the horses cause.'
125 26 expeditūm ... receptum: 'a ready retreat.'
NOTES

126 3 incitātōs eque sustinēre: 'to check their horses in full gallop.'
126 5 iugō: 'the yoke,' resting on the necks of the horses and supporting the end of the pole or tongue (tēmō).
126 7 CHAP. 34. Quibus rēbus: 'by means of these tactics.'—perturbātis nostrīs: dative of indir. obj. after tulit.
126 13 quī: i.e. the Britons; the antecedent is the subj. understood of discērunt.
126 16 continērent . . . prohibērent: subjvs. of description.
126 19 sui liberantī: 'of setting themselves free' (§ 224, c).
126 23 CHAP. 35. idem . . . fore: 'that the same thing would happen'; explained by the result clause ut . . . effugerent.
127 1 tantō spatīō . . . quantum: 'over as much ground as'; spatīō is abl. (§ 106, a).
127 10 CHAP. 36. propinquā diē aequinocītā: 'since the time of the equinox (in September, usually a stormy season) was near.'
127 11 infirmās . . . subiciendam: 'that unseaworthy ships should be exposed to storms' (lit. 'that with unseaworthy ships the voyage should be exposed to storms'). Nāvibus is the abl. of attendant circumstance (§ 112).
127 19 quōs reliquae: obj. and subj. respectively of capere potuērunt understood.
127 21 CHAP. 37. Quibus ex nāvibus: the onerāriae duae mentioned in l. 18.
127 22 in castra: i.e. of which Sulpicius Rufus had command (p. 118, ll. 17 ff.).
127 24 prīmō: adv.
127 25 si . . . nōllent: attracted into the subjv. from the present ind. (§ 214).
128 1 orbe factō: 'forming a circle.' The arrangement was somewhat like that of the modern hollow square.
129 3 CHAP. 38. siccitātēs: the plur. is used because many swamps are referred to.
129 4 quō sē recipērent: a rel. clause of description (§ 177).—quō per-
129 18 supplicātiō: cf. p. 82, ll. 9 ff., where the supplicātiō of fifteen days was said to exceed in time any ever granted before.
INDIRECT DISCOURSE

Before beginning an analysis of the passages in indirect discourse study carefully §§ 202–213 in the Grammar.

NOTES ON THE PASSAGES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE
IN BOOKS I AND II

In general, in analyzing constructions in indirect discourse, first be sure to get the meaning of the passage; next consider what the direct quotation would be; and then determine the reasons for the changes in mood and tense.

In the analysis of the following passages it will be well for the pupil to compare carefully the passages in indirect discourse with the corresponding passages of the direct as given in the first two books of this text.

BOOK I

225 1 Chap. 13. Si . . . voluisset: in the dir. disc. of this statement (p. 20, l. 17), the subj. of the main clause is Helvētii and the preds. are ibunt and erunt. These verbs become fut. inf. (§ 204), while Helvētii becomes accusative, Helvētiōs (§ 92), with which the fut. participles in the inf. (itūrōs, futūrōs) agree.

The first subord. verb, faciet, becomes subjv. (§ 208); and the tense is past (§ 209 and note), because the main verb on which the whole passage depends is the perf. ēgit, a secondary tense (§§ 161, 162). On the same principle the other subord. verbs, cōstitueris and volueris, are changed to the subjv. mood (§ 208) and the past perfect tense (§ 209 and note).

225 4 sīn bellō . . . Helvētiōrum: in the dir. disc. (p. 20, l. 20), the main verb is the impv. reminiscere, which becomes subjv. (§ 205), and takes the past by the rules of sequence.

225 6 Quod . . . dēspiceret: in the dir. disc. (p. 20, l. 22), the main verb is nōūs, with the infa. tribuerē and dēspicerē. These expressions are changed to past subjvs., tribueret and dēspiceret, with nē (§§ 162, 206). The subord. verbs adorēt eōs and trānsierant are changed regularly to the past perfect subjv.; possēnt, being already subjv. (§ 194. 8), remains in the same form.

308
225 9 ipsōs ... sē: both these pronouns were nōs in the dir. disc. (p. 20, l. 24); for their equivalence to each other see § 136. a. Ipsōs is essentially emphatic, sē not especially so; hence ipsōs is appropriate to the emphatic contrast with suae; moreover, sē referring to the Helvetii could not without confusion have been used in the same sentence with suae referring to Cæsar. — sē ... niterentur: in the dir. disc. (p. 20, l. 24), the main verb is didicimus, which is changed regularly to the inf. didicisse. The subord. verbs, contendāmus and nītāmur, are already subjvs. (§ 179) and remain in the same mood, but are changed from the present to the past by the rule of sequence.

225 11 Quā rē ... prōderet: in the dir. disc. (p. 21, l. 2), the main verb is nōti, which with committere is changed to nē committeret (cf. note on l. 6). The subord. verb cōnstitimus becomes past perfect subjv. regularly; while capiat and prōdalt, being already in the subjv. (§ 187. I), remain in the same mood, but are changed to the past by the rule of sequence.

225 18 Ch. 14. fuīsse: this represents the conclusion of a condition contrary to fact in past time, and stands for fui in the dir. disc. If the dir. form had been fuisset, as we might have expected (§ 199. III. b), we should have had futūrum fuīsse in the indir. (§ 213. a). — dēceptum: sc. esse.

225 19 commissum: sc. esse. This depends on intellegēret, a verb of thinking, and is thus in indir. disc. within indir. disc.

225 24 posse: a main verb in a rhetorical question (§ 207. II. a).

226 4 dolēant: we might have expected dolērent; see § 162 and § 163. a. The same principle applies to velint, which might have been vellent; it applies also to the remaining subord. verbs in the chapter.

226 14 Ch. 17. Note that most of the subord. verbs in this chapter would be in the subjv. in the dir. disc. All these, of course, simply remain in the subjv., subject to the rule for the sequence of tenses.

227 12 Ch. 18. Sī quid accidat: a less probable fut. condition (§ 199. II. b) in indir. disc. In indir. disc. the more probable and the less probable fut. condition have the same form and cannot be distinguished (§§ 210, 211).

227 23 Ch. 20. Quod sī ... accidisset: do not mistake this for a condition contrary to fact. The dir. form was acciderit, 'if anything shall have happened' (§ 199. II. a).

227 25 futūrum (esse) utī ... āverterentur: see § 212.

228 6 Ch. 31. Nōn minus etc.: the verb of saying is easily understood (§ 203. a).

229 7 Futūrum esse ... utī ... pellentur: see § 212.

229 82 Ch. 32. velut sī cōram adesse: be careful not to mistake this for a condition contrary to fact. The dir. disc. was velut sī ... adsit (§ 200 and note).

230 5 Ch. 34. ipsī: for mihi of the dir. disc. For this use of the intensive pronoun for the reflexive see note on p. 225, l. 9, and § 136. a.
INDIRECT DISCOURSE

230 6 ventūrum fuisse: the regular form for the conclusion of a condition contrary to fact in indir. disc. (§ 213. a).

230 14 CHAP. 35. Throughout this chapter Cæsar is speaking to the ambassadors. The references to Ariovistus, therefore, are in the third person.

230 25 Si . . . fēcisset: a more probable fut. condition representing the fut. perf. ind. in dir. disc.

231 9 CHAP. 36. qui . . . faceret: note that this would be faciat in the dir. disc. (§ 190).

231 26 CHAP. 40. iūdicāret: a deliberative question in the dir. disc. (§ 172. d and note); verērentur and dēspērārent following are in the same construction; for the change to indir. disc. see § 207. II. b.

232 12 Si . . . commovēret: a non-committal condition in indir. disc. (§§ 199. I. a, 210).

BOOK II

236 28 CHAP. 14. inciderint: in dir. disc. this would be inciderunt in a past non-committal condition (§ 199. III. a).

237 3 CHAP. 15. dēdidissent: this would be subjv. also in the dir. disc.; so also prōīcissent (§ 190).
From the painting by Sir Edward Poynter

THE IDES OF MARCH

(See page 8)
ESSENTIALS OF GRAMMAR

A. DECLENSIONS AND CONJUGATIONS

NOUNS

1. Nouns are inflected in five declensions, distinguished by the final letter of the stem and by the termination of the genitive singular.

- **First Declension** — Ā-stems, Gen. Sing. -ae
- **Second Declension** — ō-stems, Gen. Sing. -ī
- **Third Declension** — Consonant stems and I-stems, Gen. Sing. -īs
- **Fourth Declension** — Ū-stems, Gen. Sing. -ūs
- **Fifth Declension** — Ė-stems, Gen. Sing. -ēī

*a.* The base of a noun is found by dropping the ending of the genitive singular. The stem is formed from the base by adding to it the distinguishing vowel of the declension. Observe below the base and stem of *domina*.

2. **First Declension. Ā-stems**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singul ar</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Terminations</strong></td>
<td><strong>Terminations</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>domina</td>
<td>domīnae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>domīnae</td>
<td>dominārum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>domīnae</td>
<td>dominīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>dominām</td>
<td>dominās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>dominā</td>
<td>dominīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*a.* Deā and filīa have the termination -ābus in the dative and ablative plural.
3. SECOND DECLENSION. O-STEMS

a. Masculines in -us

dominus, master Stem domino- Base domin-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Terminations</strong></td>
<td><strong>Terminations</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. dominus</td>
<td>-us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. dominī</td>
<td>-ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. dominō</td>
<td>-ō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. dominum</td>
<td>-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. dominō</td>
<td>-ō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>domini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dominōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dominīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dominōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dominīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Nouns in -us of the second declension have the termination -e in the vocative singular, as domine.
2. Proper names in -ius, and filius, end in -i in the vocative singular, and the accent rests on the penult, as Vergi’li, fili.

b. Neuters in -um

pilum, spear Stem pilo- Base pil-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Terminations</strong></td>
<td><strong>Terminations</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. pilum</td>
<td>-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. pilī</td>
<td>-ī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. pilō</td>
<td>-ō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. pilum</td>
<td>-um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. pilō</td>
<td>-ō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pila</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pilōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pilīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pila</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pilīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Masculines in -ius and neuters in -um end in -i in the genitive singular, not in -ii, and the accent rests on the penult.

c. Masculines in -er and -ir

puer, boy Stem puero- Base puer-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>TERMINATIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. puer</td>
<td>ager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. puerī</td>
<td>agrī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. puerō</td>
<td>agrō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. puerum</td>
<td>agrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. puerō</td>
<td>agrō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4.

Third Declension

I. Consonant Stems

1. Nouns that add -s to the base to form the nominative singular: masculines and feminines only.

princeps, m., chief    miles, m., soldier    lapis, m., stone

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Terminations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Gen.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>princeps</td>
<td>miles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lapis</td>
<td>militus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Stems that add no termination in the nominative singular: a. masculines and feminines; b. neuters.

Masculines, feminines, and neuters.

5.

I. Consonant Stems

1. Nouns that add -s to the base to form the nominative singular: masculines and feminines only

princeps, m., chief    miles, m., soldier    lapis, m., stone

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bases or Stems</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>princeps</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Stems that add no termination in the nominative singular: a. masculines and feminines; b. neuters.

Masculines, feminines, and neuters.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>princeps</td>
<td>principis</td>
<td>principi</td>
<td>principem</td>
<td>principes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lapis</td>
<td>militis</td>
<td>militi</td>
<td>militem</td>
<td>militae</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>principes</td>
<td>principum</td>
<td>principibus</td>
<td>principes</td>
<td>principibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lapidēs</td>
<td>lapidum</td>
<td>lapidibus</td>
<td>lapidēs</td>
<td>lapidibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 In the nominative a final -t or -d of the stem is dropped before -s.
LATIN GRAMMAR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bases or Stems</th>
<th>rēx, m., king</th>
<th>iūdēx, m., judge</th>
<th>virtūs, f., virtue</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SINGULAR</td>
<td>rēg-</td>
<td>iūdic-</td>
<td>virtūt-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>rēx¹</td>
<td>iūdēx¹</td>
<td>virtūs¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>rēgis</td>
<td>iūdicis</td>
<td>virtūtis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>rēgī</td>
<td>iūdicī</td>
<td>virtūtī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>rēgem</td>
<td>iūdicem</td>
<td>virtūtem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>rēge</td>
<td>iūdice</td>
<td>virtūte</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLURAL</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>rēgēs</td>
<td>iūdicēs</td>
<td>virtūtēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>rēgum</td>
<td>iūdicum</td>
<td>virtūtum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>rēgibus</td>
<td>iūdicibus</td>
<td>virtūtibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>rēgēs</td>
<td>iūdicēs</td>
<td>virtūtēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>rēgibus</td>
<td>iūdicibus</td>
<td>virtūtibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Nouns that have no termination in the nominative singular

a. Masculines and Feminines

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bases or Stems</th>
<th>cōnsul, m., consul</th>
<th>legiō, f., legion</th>
<th>ōrdō, m., row</th>
<th>pater, m., father</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SINGULAR</td>
<td>cōnsul-</td>
<td>legiōn-</td>
<td>ōrdin-</td>
<td>patr-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>cōnsul</td>
<td>legiō²</td>
<td>ōrdō²</td>
<td>pater</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>cōnsulis</td>
<td>legiōnis</td>
<td>ōrdinis</td>
<td>patris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>cōnsuli</td>
<td>legiōnī</td>
<td>ōrdinī</td>
<td>patri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>cōnsulem</td>
<td>legiōnem</td>
<td>ōrdinem</td>
<td>patrem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>cōnsule</td>
<td>legiōne</td>
<td>ōrdine</td>
<td>patre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLURAL</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>cōnsulēs</td>
<td>legiōnēs</td>
<td>ōrdinēs</td>
<td>patrēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>cōnsulum</td>
<td>legiōnum</td>
<td>ōrdinum</td>
<td>patrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>cōnsulibus</td>
<td>legiōnibus</td>
<td>ōrdinibus</td>
<td>patribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>cōnsulēs</td>
<td>legiōnēs</td>
<td>ōrdinēs</td>
<td>patrēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>cōnsulibus</td>
<td>legiōnibus</td>
<td>ōrdinibus</td>
<td>patribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 In the nominative a final -c or -g of the stem unites with -e and forms -ē; and a final -t or -d is dropped.
2 Stems in -a and -ēa drop -n and end in -ē in the nominative.
FORMS

b. Neuters

flūmen, n., river  tempus, n., time  opus, n., work  caput, n., head


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>TERMINATIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note. Most stems in -er and -or have -us in the nominative singular.

II. I-Stems

a. Masculines and Feminines

caedēs, f., slaughter  hostis, m., enemy  urbs, f., city  cliēns, m., retainer

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>STEMS</th>
<th>BASES</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>TERMINATIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>caedi-</td>
<td>caed-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hosti-</td>
<td>host-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>urbi-</td>
<td>urb-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Nom.     |             |
| Gen.     |             |
| Dat.     |             |
| Acc.     |             |
| Abl.     |             |

1. Avis, cīvis, finis, ignis, nāvis, have the abl. sing. in -i or -e.
2. Turris has accusative turrim and ablative turris or turre.
LATIN GRAMMAR

b. Neuters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOUN</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SINGULAR</td>
<td>TERMINATIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. insignis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>animālis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>calcārīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. insigni</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>animāli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>calcārī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. insigni</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>animāli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>calcārī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOUN</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SINGULAR</td>
<td>TERMINATIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. insignia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>animālia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>calcāria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. insignibus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>animālibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>calcāribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. insignibus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>animālibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>calcāribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7. THE FOURTH DECISION. U-STEMS

adventus, m., arrival         cornū, n., corn

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOUN</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SINGULAR</td>
<td>TERMINATIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. adventus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cornū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. adventū (ā)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cornū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. adventū</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cornū</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NOUN</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. adventūs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cornua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. adventibus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cornua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. adventibus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cornibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Digitized by Google
8. THE FIFTH DECLENSION. Ė-STEMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Base</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>diēs</td>
<td>diē-</td>
<td>rēs</td>
<td>rē-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>diēī</td>
<td>-ē</td>
<td>rēi</td>
<td>-ēi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>diēī</td>
<td>-ē</td>
<td>rēi</td>
<td>-ēi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>diēm</td>
<td>-ēm</td>
<td>rē</td>
<td>-ē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>diē̆</td>
<td>-ē̆</td>
<td>rē̆</td>
<td>-ē̆</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Singular Terminations**

- ēs
- -ēi
- -ēi
- -ēm
- -ē

**Plural**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Base</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>diēs</td>
<td>diē-</td>
<td>rēs</td>
<td>rē-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>diērūm</td>
<td>-ē</td>
<td>rērūm</td>
<td>-ērūm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>diēbus</td>
<td>-ē</td>
<td>rēbus</td>
<td>-ēbus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>diēs</td>
<td>-ē</td>
<td>rēs</td>
<td>-ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>diēbus</td>
<td>-ē</td>
<td>rēbus</td>
<td>-ēbus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural Terminations**

- ēs
- -ērūm
- -ēbus
- -ē

9. SPECIAL PARADIGMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Base</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Deus, m., god</td>
<td>deo-</td>
<td>de-</td>
<td>Vī- and virī-</td>
<td>iter, n., way</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Domus, f., house</td>
<td>domu-</td>
<td>dom-</td>
<td>Vī- and virī-</td>
<td>iter- and itiner-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Singular**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Vī</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>deus</td>
<td>domus</td>
<td>vīs</td>
<td>iter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>dei</td>
<td>domūs</td>
<td>vīs (rare)</td>
<td>itinerīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>deō</td>
<td>domūi, -ō</td>
<td>vī (rare)</td>
<td>itinerī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>deum</td>
<td>domum</td>
<td>vīm</td>
<td>iter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>deō</td>
<td>domō, -ū</td>
<td>vī</td>
<td>itinerere</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Vīrīs</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>dei, di</td>
<td>domūs</td>
<td>vīrīs</td>
<td>itinerā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>deōrum, deum</td>
<td>domuuum, -ōrum</td>
<td>vīrīum</td>
<td>itinerum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>deis, dīs</td>
<td>domibus</td>
<td>vīribus</td>
<td>itineribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>deīs</td>
<td>domōs, -ūs</td>
<td>vīrīs, -ēs</td>
<td>itinerā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>deīs, dīs</td>
<td>domibus</td>
<td>vīribus</td>
<td>itineribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. The vocative singular of deus is like the nominative.
b. The locative of domus is domī.
ADJECTIVES

10. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS. O-STEMS AND Ā-STEMS

a. Adjectives in -us

bonus, good stems bono- m. and n., bonā- f. Base bon-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gender</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>bonus</td>
<td>bonorum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>boni</td>
<td>bonum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>bonō</td>
<td>bonēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>bonum</td>
<td>bonās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>bonō</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. Adjectives in -er

liber, free stems libero- m. and n., liberā- f. Base liber-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gender</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>liber</td>
<td>liberīrōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>liberī</td>
<td>liberā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>liberō</td>
<td>liberāe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>liberum</td>
<td>liberām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>liberō</td>
<td>liberā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gender</th>
<th>Singular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>liberī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>liberīrōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>liberīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>liberōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>liberīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
FORMS

pulcher, pretty

Stems pulchro- m. and n., pulchrë- f. Base pulchr-

Singular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>pulcher</td>
<td>pulchra</td>
<td>pulchrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>pulchrē</td>
<td>pulchræe</td>
<td>pulchrē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>pulchrō</td>
<td>pulchræe</td>
<td>pulchrō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>pulchrum</td>
<td>pulchram</td>
<td>pulchrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>pulchrō</td>
<td>pulchrā</td>
<td>pulchrō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>pulchrē</td>
<td>pulchræe</td>
<td>pulchra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>pulchrōrum</td>
<td>pulchrōrum</td>
<td>pulchrōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>pulchrīs</td>
<td>pulchrīs</td>
<td>pulchrīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>pulchrōs</td>
<td>pulchrōs</td>
<td>pulchra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>pulchrīs</td>
<td>pulchrīs</td>
<td>pulchrīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

11. THE NINE IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

alius, another

Stems alio- m. and n., aliā- f. Base ali-

Singular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>alius</td>
<td>alia</td>
<td>aliūd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>aliūs</td>
<td>aliīs</td>
<td>aliōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>aliū</td>
<td>aliī</td>
<td>aliōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>aliīm</td>
<td>aliām</td>
<td>aliūd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>aliū</td>
<td>aliā</td>
<td>aliō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>alius</td>
<td>alia</td>
<td>aliaē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>aliūs</td>
<td>aliūs</td>
<td>aliārum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>aliūs</td>
<td>aliūs</td>
<td>aliās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>aliīm</td>
<td>aliām</td>
<td>aliūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>aliūs</td>
<td>aliās</td>
<td>aliūs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ūnus; one, only

Stems úno- m. and n., únā- f. Base ún-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>únus</td>
<td>únā</td>
<td>únūnum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>únīus</td>
<td>únīus</td>
<td>únōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>únī</td>
<td>únī</td>
<td>únīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>únīm</td>
<td>únīm</td>
<td>únīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>únī</td>
<td>únī</td>
<td>únīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. So also ûllus, nûllus, sôlus, tôtus, alter (altera, alterum), uter (utra, utrum), neuter (neutra, neutrum).
LATIN GRAMMAR

12. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION. I-STEMS

I. THREE ENDINGS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>ace, acri, acre, keen, eager</th>
<th>Stem acri-</th>
<th>Base acri-</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>aces</td>
<td>acri</td>
<td>acri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>acris</td>
<td>acris</td>
<td>acris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>acri</td>
<td>acri</td>
<td>acri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>acrem</td>
<td>acrem</td>
<td>acre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>acri</td>
<td>acri</td>
<td>acri</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

II. TWO ENDINGS

omnis, omne, every, all Stem omni- Base omni-

| **Singular** |                               |             |             |
| Masc. and fem. | neut. | Masc. and fem. | neut. | Masc. and fem. | neut. | Masc. and fem. | neut. |
| Nom.  | omnis | omne | omnès | omnia | omnès | omnia | omnès | omnia | omnès | omnia | omnès | omnia | omnès | omnia |
| Gen.  | omnis | omnis | omnium | omnium | omnium | omnium | omnium | omnium | omnium | omnium | omnium | omnium | omnium | omnium |
| Dat.  | omni | omni | omnibus | omnibus | omnibus | omnibus | omnibus | omnibus | omnibus | omnibus | omnibus | omnibus | omnibus | omnibus |
| Acc.  | omnem | omne | omnis, -es | omnia | omnis, -es | omnia | omnis, -es | omnia |
| Abl.  | omni | omni | omnibus | omnibus | omnibus | omnibus | omnibus | omnibus |

III. ONE ENDING

par, equal Stem pari- Base par-

| **Singular** |                               |             |             |
| Masc. and fem. | neut. | Masc. and fem. | neut. | Masc. and fem. | neut. | Masc. and fem. | neut. |
| Nom.  | par | par | parès | paria | parès | paria | parès | paria | parès | paria | parès | paria | parès | paria |
| Gen.  | paris | paris | parium | parium | parium | parium | parium | parium | parium | parium | parium | parium | parium | parium |
| Dat.  | pari | pari | paribus | paribus | paribus | paribus | paribus | paribus | paribus | paribus | paribus | paribus | paribus | paribus |
| Acc.  | parem | par | paris, -es | paria | paris, -es | paria | paris, -es | paria |
| Abl.  | pari | pari | paribus | paribus | paribus | paribus | paribus | paribus |

1. Observe that all i-stem adjectives have -i in the ablative singular.
FORMS

13. PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICPLES

amāns, loving STEM amanti- BASE amant-

SINGULAR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MASC. AND FEM.</th>
<th>NEUT.</th>
<th>MASC. AND FEM.</th>
<th>NEUT.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>amāns</td>
<td>amāns</td>
<td>amantēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>amantis</td>
<td>amantis</td>
<td>amantium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>amantī</td>
<td>amantī</td>
<td>amantibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>amantem</td>
<td>amāns</td>
<td>amantēs, -ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>amante, -ī</td>
<td>amante, -ī</td>
<td>amantibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

iēns, going STEM ienti-, eunti- BASE ient-, eunt-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MASC. AND FEM.</th>
<th>NEUT.</th>
<th>MASC. AND FEM.</th>
<th>NEUT.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>iēns</td>
<td>iēns</td>
<td>euntēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>euntīs</td>
<td>euntīs</td>
<td>euntium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>euntī</td>
<td>euntī</td>
<td>euntibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>euntem</td>
<td>iēns</td>
<td>euntēs, -ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>eunte, -ī</td>
<td>eunte, -ī</td>
<td>euntibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

14. REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

POSITIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MASC.</th>
<th>MASC. AND FEM.</th>
<th>NEUT.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>altus (alto-)</td>
<td>altior</td>
<td>altius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liber (libero-)</td>
<td>liberior</td>
<td>liberius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pulcher (pulchro-)</td>
<td>pulchrior</td>
<td>pulchrius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audāx (audāci-)</td>
<td>audācior</td>
<td>audācius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brevis (brevi-)</td>
<td>brevior</td>
<td>brevius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ācer (ācri-)</td>
<td>ācrior</td>
<td>ācrius</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

COMPARATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MASC.</th>
<th>FEM. NEUT.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>altius</td>
<td>altissimus -a -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liberius</td>
<td>liberrimus -a -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pulchrius</td>
<td>pulcherrimus -a -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audācius</td>
<td>audācissimus -a -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brevius</td>
<td>brevissimus -a -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ācrius</td>
<td>ācerrimus -a -um</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SUPERLATIVE

15. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

altior, higher

SINGULAR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MASC. AND FEM.</th>
<th>NEUT.</th>
<th>MASC. AND FEM.</th>
<th>NEUT.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>altior</td>
<td>altius</td>
<td>altiōrēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>altiōris</td>
<td>altiōris</td>
<td>altiōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>altiōrī</td>
<td>altiōrī</td>
<td>altiōribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>altiōrem</td>
<td>altius</td>
<td>altiōrēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>altiōre</td>
<td>altiōre</td>
<td>altiōribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bonus, -a, -um, good</td>
<td>melior, melius, better</td>
<td>optimus, -a, -um, best</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>malus, -a, -um, bad</td>
<td>peior, peius, worse</td>
<td>pessimus, -a, -um, worst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magnus, -a, -um, great</td>
<td>maior, maius, greater</td>
<td>maximus, -a, -um, greatest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multus, -a, -um, much</td>
<td>—, plus, more</td>
<td>plurimus, -a, -um, most</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parvus, -a, -um, small</td>
<td>minor, minus, smaller</td>
<td>minimus, -a, -um, smallest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>senex, senis, old</td>
<td>senior</td>
<td>maximus nātū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iuvenis, -e, young</td>
<td>iūnior</td>
<td>minimus nātū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vetus, veteris, old</td>
<td>vetustior, -ius</td>
<td>veterrimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facillis, -e, easy</td>
<td>facilior, -ius</td>
<td>facillimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>difficilis, -e, difficult</td>
<td>difficilior, -ius</td>
<td>difficillimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>similis, -e, similar</td>
<td>similior, -ius</td>
<td>simillimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dissimilis, -e, dissimilar</td>
<td>dissimilior, -ius</td>
<td>dissimillimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>humilis, -e, low</td>
<td>humilior, -ius</td>
<td>humillimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gracilis, -e, slender</td>
<td>gracilior, -ius</td>
<td>gracillimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exterus, outward</td>
<td>exterior, outer, exterior</td>
<td>extrêmus, last</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inferus, below</td>
<td>inferior, lower</td>
<td>infimus, lowest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>posterus, following</td>
<td>posterior, later</td>
<td>postrēmus, last</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>superus, above</td>
<td>superior, higher</td>
<td>postumus, highest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[cis, citrā, on this side]</td>
<td>citerior, hither</td>
<td>citimus, hithermost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[in, intrā, in, within]</td>
<td>interior, inner</td>
<td>intimus, inmost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[prae, prō, before]</td>
<td>prior, former</td>
<td>primus, first</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[prope; near]</td>
<td>proprius, nearer</td>
<td>proximus, next</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ultrā, beyond]</td>
<td>ulterior, further</td>
<td>ultimus, furthest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
FORMS

17. REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cārē (cārus), dearly</td>
<td>cārius</td>
<td>cāriissimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miserē (miser), wretchedly</td>
<td>miserius</td>
<td>miserrimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ācriter (ācer), sharply</td>
<td>ācriter</td>
<td>ācerrimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facile (facilis), easily</td>
<td>facilius</td>
<td>facillimē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

18. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>diū, long, a long time</td>
<td>diūtius</td>
<td>diūtissimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bene (bonus), well</td>
<td>melius, better</td>
<td>optimē, best</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>male (malus), ill</td>
<td>peius, worse</td>
<td>pessimē, worst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magnopere, greatly</td>
<td>magis, more</td>
<td>maximē, most</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multum (multus), much</td>
<td>plūs, more</td>
<td>plūrimum, most</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parum, little</td>
<td>minus, less</td>
<td>minimē, least</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saepe, often</td>
<td>saepius</td>
<td>saepissimē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

19. NUMERAL ADJECTIVES

The cardinal numerals are indeclinable excepting ānus, duo, trēs, the hundreds above one hundred, and mīlle used as a noun. The ordinals are declined like bonus, -a, -um.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cardinals</th>
<th>Ordinals</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(How many)</td>
<td>(In what order)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1, ānus, -a, -um</td>
<td>one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2, duo, duae, duo</td>
<td>two</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3, trēs, tria</td>
<td>three,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4, quattuor</td>
<td>etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5, quīnque</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6, sex</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7, septem</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8, octō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9, novem</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10, decem</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11, āndecim</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12, duodecim</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13, tredecim (decem (et) trēs)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14, quattuordecim</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Cardinals | Ordinals  
---|----
15, quindecim | quintus decimus  
16, sedecim | sextus decimus  
17, septendecim | septimus decimus  
18, duodeviginti (octodecim) | duodevigésimus  
19, undeviginti (novendecim) | undevigésimus  
20, viginti | vicésimus  
21, viginti unus or unus et viginti, etc. | vicésimus primum or unus et vicésimus, etc.  
30, trīgintā | trīcé̱simus  
40, quadragintā | quadragésimus  
50, quinquagintā | quinquagésimus  
60, sexagintā | sexagésimus  
70, septuagintā | septuagésimus  
80, octogintā | octogésimus  
90, nonagintā | nonagésimus  
100, centum | centésimus  
101, centum (et) unus, etc. | centésimus (et) primum, etc.  
120, centum (et) viginti | centésimus vicésimus  
121, centum (et) viginti unus, etc. | centésimus (et) vicésimus primum  
200, ducenti, -ae, -a | ducentésimus  
300, trecenti | trecentésimus  
400, quadrilingenti | quadrilingentésimus  
500, quingenti | quingentésimus  
600, sexcenti | sexcentésimus  
700, septingenti | septingentésimus  
800, octingenti | octingentésimus  
900, nongenti | nongentésimus  
1000, mille | millésimus  

20. Declension of duo, two, tres, three, and mille, a thousand:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. duo</td>
<td>duæ</td>
<td>duo</td>
<td>tres</td>
<td>tria</td>
<td>mille milia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. duorum</td>
<td>duārum</td>
<td>duōrum</td>
<td>trium</td>
<td>trium</td>
<td>mille milium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. duōbus</td>
<td>duābus</td>
<td>duōbus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td>mille milibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. duōs or duo</td>
<td>duās</td>
<td>duo</td>
<td>trīs or tres</td>
<td>tria</td>
<td>mille milia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. duōbus</td>
<td>duābus</td>
<td>duōbus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td>mille milibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note. Mille is used in the plural as a noun with a modifying genitive, and is occasionally so used in the nominative and accusative singular. For the declension of unus cf. § 11.
FORMS

PRONOUNS

21. PERSONAL

**FIRST PERSON**

sing. ego, I; plur. nōs, we

sing. tu, thou, you; plur. vōs, you

sing. plur.

Nominative

ego nōs
tū vōs

Genitive

mei nostrum, -trī
tuī vestrum, -trī

Dative

mihi nōbis
tibi vōbis

Accusative

mē nōs
tē vōs

Ablative

mē nōbis
tē vōbis

**SECOND PERSON**

a. The demonstrative pronoun is, ea, id is regularly used as the personal pronoun of the third person.

22. REFLEXIVE

**FIRST PERSON**

sing. me, myself

plur. us, ourselves

Genitive

mei nostrum, -trī
tuī vestrum, -trī

Dative

mihi nōbis
tibi vōbis

Accusative

mē nōs
tē vōs

Ablative

mē nōbis
tē vōbis

**SECOND PERSON**

sing. thee, you, yourself

plur. you, yourselves

Genitive

mei nostrum, -trī
tuī vestrum, -trī

Dative

mihi nōbis
tibi vōbis

Accusative

mē nōs
tē vōs

Ablative

mē nōbis
tē vōbis

**THIRD PERSON**

sing. him(her, it)self

plur. themselves

Genitive

mei nostrum, -trī
tuī vestrum, -trī

Dative

mihi nōbis
tibi vōbis

Accusative

mē nōs
tē vōs

Ablative

mē nōbis
tē vōbis

NOTE. Reflexive pronouns have no nominative.

23. POSSESSIVE PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES

The possessive pronominal adjectives my, mine, your, yours, etc. are declined like adjectives of the first and second declensions.

**SINGULAR**

1st Pers. meus, mea, meum

2d Pers. tuus, tua, tuum

3d Pers. suus, sua, suum

my, mine

your, yours

his (own), her (own), its (own)

**PLURAL**

1st Pers. noster, nostra, nostrum

2d Pers. vester, vestra, vestrum

3d Pers. suus, sua, suum

our, ours

your, yours

their (own), theirs

NOTE. Meus has the irregular vocative singular masculine mi; as, mi filli, O my son.
24. Suus is used only as a reflexive, referring to the subject; as, puer patrem suum videt, the boy sees his (own) father; agricolaep agrōs suōs amant, the farmers love their (own) fields.

When not reflexive, his, her, and its are usually expressed by eius, the genitive singular of is, ea, id; and their by eōrum (masculine and neuter) and eārum (feminine), the genitive plural of is, ea, id. Thus:

puer patrem eius videt, the boy sees his (not his own) father
agricolaep agrōs eōrum amant, the farmers love their (not their own) fields

25. INTENSIVE AND DEMONSTRATIVE

These pronouns belong to the first and second declensions, but have the pronominal endings -ius and -ī in the genitive and dative singular.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MASC.</td>
<td>FEM.</td>
<td>NEUT.</td>
<td>MASC.</td>
<td>FEM.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>ipse</td>
<td>ipsa</td>
<td>ipsum</td>
<td>ipsī</td>
<td>ipsae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>ipsī'us</td>
<td>ipsī'us</td>
<td>ipsī'us</td>
<td>ipsōrum</td>
<td>ipsārum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ipsī</td>
<td>ipsī</td>
<td>ipsī</td>
<td>ipsīs</td>
<td>ipsīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>ipsum</td>
<td>ipsam</td>
<td>ipsum</td>
<td>ipsōs</td>
<td>ipsās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>ipsō</td>
<td>ipsā</td>
<td>ipsō</td>
<td>ipsīs</td>
<td>ipsīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

hic, this (here), he

<p>| | | | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>hic</td>
<td>haec</td>
<td>hoc</td>
<td>hī</td>
<td>hae</td>
<td>haec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>huius</td>
<td>huius</td>
<td>huius</td>
<td>hōrum</td>
<td>hārum</td>
<td>hōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>huic</td>
<td>huic</td>
<td>huic</td>
<td>his</td>
<td>his</td>
<td>his</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>hunc</td>
<td>hanc</td>
<td>hoc</td>
<td>hōs</td>
<td>hās</td>
<td>haec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>hōc</td>
<td>hāc</td>
<td>hōc</td>
<td>his</td>
<td>his</td>
<td>his</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ista, this, that (of yours), he

<p>| | | | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>iste</td>
<td>ista</td>
<td>istud</td>
<td>istī</td>
<td>istae</td>
<td>ista</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>istī'us</td>
<td>istī'us</td>
<td>istī'us</td>
<td>istōrum</td>
<td>istārum</td>
<td>istōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>istī</td>
<td>istī</td>
<td>istī</td>
<td>istīs</td>
<td>istīs</td>
<td>istīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>istum</td>
<td>istam</td>
<td>istud</td>
<td>istōs</td>
<td>istās</td>
<td>ista</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>istō</td>
<td>istā</td>
<td>istō</td>
<td>istīs</td>
<td>istīs</td>
<td>istīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
FORMS

ille, that (yonder), he

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>MASC.</strong></td>
<td><strong>FEM.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>ille</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>illius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>illi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>illum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>illō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

is, this, that, he

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>MASC.</strong></td>
<td><strong>FEM.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>eius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>eum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>eō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

idem, the same

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>MASC.</strong></td>
<td><strong>FEM.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>idem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>eius'dem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ei'dem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>eun'dem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>eō'dem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note. In the plural the two i's in idem and iisdem are pronounced as one, and the forms are sometimes written idem and isdem.

26.

RELATIVE

qui, who, which, that

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>MASC.</strong></td>
<td><strong>FEM.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>qui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>cuius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>cui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>quem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>quō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
27. **INTERROGATIVE**

*quis*, substantive, *who, what*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>MASC. AND FEM. NEUT.</strong></td>
<td><strong>MASC. FEM. NEUT.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. quis</td>
<td>quid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. cuius</td>
<td>cuius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. cui</td>
<td>cui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. quem</td>
<td>quid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. quō</td>
<td>quō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The interrogative adjective *quī, quae, quōd* is declined like the relative.

28. **INDEFINITES**

*quis* and *quī*, as declined above,¹ are used also as indefinites (*some, any*). The other indefinites are compounds of *quis* and *quī*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUBSTANTIVE</th>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>MASC. AND FEM. NEUT.</strong></td>
<td><strong>MASC. FEM. NEUT.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. quisque</td>
<td>quidque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. cuius’que</td>
<td>cuius’que</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. cuique</td>
<td>cuique</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. quemque</td>
<td>quidque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. quōque</td>
<td>quōque</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

29. **quidam, a certain one, a certain**

Observe that in the neuter singular the adjective has *quoddam* and the substantive *quiddam*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>MASC.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom. quidam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. cuius’dam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. cuidam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. quandam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. quōdam</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ *qua* is generally used instead of *quae* in the feminine nominative singular and in the neuter nominative and accusative plural.
FORMS

Plural

Nom. quīdam quaedam quaedam
Gen. quōrun'dam quārun'dam quōrun'dam
Dat. quibus'dam quibus'dam quibus'dam
Acc. quūsdam quāsdam quaedam
Abl. quibus'dam quibus'dam quibus'dam

30. quisquam, substantive, any one (at all)

MASC. AND FEM. NEUT.

Nom. quisquam quiscquam (quidquam)
Gen. cuius'quam cuius'quam
Dat. cuiquam cuiquam
Acc. quemquam quicum quam (quidquam)
Abl. quōquam quōquam

31. aliquis, substantive, some one. aliquī, adjective, some

Singular

Substantive

MASC. AND FEM. NEUT. MASC. FEM. NEUT.

Nom. aliquis aliquī aliquá aliquod
Gen. alicu’ius alicu’ius alicu’ius alicu’ius alicu’ius
Dat. alicui alicui alicui alicui alicui
Acc. alicuem alicuid alicuem alicuem alicuem alicuem
Abl. aliquō alicuō alicuā alicuō

Adjective

MASC. FEM. NEUT.

Nom. aliquī aliquae aliquā
Gen. aliquō’rum aliquā’rum aliquō’rum
Dat. āl’quibus ali’quibus ali’quibus
Acc. aliquōs aliquās aliquā
Abl. ali’quibus ali’quibus ali’quibus

Plural for both Substantive and Adjective

MASC. FEM. NEUT.

Nom. aliquī aliquae aliquā
Gen. aliquō’rum aliquā’rum aliquō’rum
Dat. ali’quibus ali’quibus ali’quibus
Acc. aliquōs aliquās aliquā
Abl. ali’quibus ali’quibus ali’quibus

A. quis (qui), any one, any, is the least definite of these. aliquis (alliī), some one, some, is more definite than quis. quisquam, any one (at all), and its adjective āllus, any, occur mostly with a negative, expressed or implied, and in clauses of comparison.
REGULAR VERBS

32. FIRST CONJUGATION. Ā-VERBS. AMŌ

Principal Parts amō, amāre, amāvi, amātus
Pres. Stem amā- Perf. Stem amāv- Part. Stem amāt-

ACTIVE

PRESENT

I love, am loving, do love, etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>amō</th>
<th>amāmus</th>
<th>amor</th>
<th>amāmur</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amās</td>
<td>amātis</td>
<td>amāris, -re</td>
<td>amāmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amat</td>
<td>amant</td>
<td>amātur</td>
<td>amāntur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PAST DESCRIPTIVE

I loved, was loving, did love, etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>amābam</th>
<th>amābāmus</th>
<th>amābar</th>
<th>amābāmur</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amābās</td>
<td>amābātis</td>
<td>amābāris, -re</td>
<td>amābāmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābat</td>
<td>amābant</td>
<td>amābātur</td>
<td>amābantur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

FUTURE

I shall love, etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>amābō</th>
<th>amābīmus</th>
<th>amābor</th>
<th>amābīmur</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amābis</td>
<td>amābītis</td>
<td>amāberis, -re</td>
<td>amābīmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amābit</td>
<td>amābunt</td>
<td>amābitur</td>
<td>amābuntur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PERFECT

I have loved, loved, did love, etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>amāvī</th>
<th>amāvimus</th>
<th>amātus, -a, -um</th>
<th>amātī, -a, -um</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amāvisti</td>
<td>amāvistis</td>
<td>amāvērunt, -re</td>
<td>amātius, sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāvit</td>
<td>amāvīrun</td>
<td>amāvērunt</td>
<td>amātius, sum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PAST PERFECT

I had loved, etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>amāveram</th>
<th>amāverāmus</th>
<th>amātus, -a, -um</th>
<th>amātī, -a, -um</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amāverās</td>
<td>amāverātis</td>
<td>amāverant</td>
<td>amātius, sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāverát</td>
<td>amāverant</td>
<td>amātius, sum</td>
<td>amātius, sum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have loved, etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>amāverō</th>
<th>amāverimus</th>
<th>amātus, -a, -um</th>
<th>amātī, -a, -um</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amāveris</td>
<td>amāveritis</td>
<td>amāverint</td>
<td>amātius, sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāverit</td>
<td>amāverint</td>
<td>amātius, sum</td>
<td>amātius, sum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>amāverō</th>
<th>amāverimus</th>
<th>amātus, -a, -um</th>
<th>amātī, -a, -um</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amāveris</td>
<td>amāveritis</td>
<td>amāverint</td>
<td>amātius, sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāverit</td>
<td>amāverint</td>
<td>amātius, sum</td>
<td>amātius, sum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>amāverō</th>
<th>amāverimus</th>
<th>amātus, -a, -um</th>
<th>amātī, -a, -um</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amāveris</td>
<td>amāveritis</td>
<td>amāverint</td>
<td>amātius, sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāverit</td>
<td>amāverint</td>
<td>amātius, sum</td>
<td>amātius, sum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Forms

#### Subjunctive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Imperative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>amem</td>
<td>amemus</td>
<td>amor</td>
<td>amemur</td>
<td>amä, love thou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amēs</td>
<td>amētis</td>
<td>amēris</td>
<td>amēmini</td>
<td>amāre, be thou loved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amet</td>
<td>ament</td>
<td>amētur</td>
<td></td>
<td>amāmini, be ye loved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amārem</td>
<td>amāremus</td>
<td>amārer</td>
<td>amāremur</td>
<td>amātō, thou shalt love</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amārēs</td>
<td>amārēsis</td>
<td>amārēris</td>
<td>amārēmini</td>
<td>amātō, he shall love</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāret</td>
<td>amārent</td>
<td>amārētur</td>
<td></td>
<td>amātōte, you shall love</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāverim</td>
<td>amāverimus</td>
<td>amātus,</td>
<td>simus,</td>
<td>amantō, they shall be loved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāveris</td>
<td>amāveritis</td>
<td>sis,</td>
<td>amāti,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāverit</td>
<td>amāverint</td>
<td>sit,</td>
<td>sētis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-a, -um</td>
<td>-ae, -a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāvissem</td>
<td>amāvissemus</td>
<td>amātus,</td>
<td>essem,</td>
<td>amātūris, -a, -um esse, to be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāvissēs</td>
<td>amāvissēsis</td>
<td>sis,</td>
<td>amāti,</td>
<td>about to love</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amāvissēt</td>
<td>amāvissent</td>
<td>set,</td>
<td>sētis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-a, -um</td>
<td>-ae, -a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>essent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Future

- amātō, thou shalt love
- amātō, he shall love
- amātōte, you shall love
- amantō, they shall be loved

#### Infinitive

- Pres. amāre, to love
- Perf. amāvisse, to have loved
- Fut. amātūrus, -a, -um esse, to be loved

#### Participles

- Pres. amāns, -antis, loving
- Fut. amātūrus, -a, -um, about to love

#### Gerund

- Nom. amandō, of loving
- Gen. amandī, of loving
- Dat. amandō, for loving
- Acc. amandum, loving
- Abl. amandō, by loving

#### SUPINE (Active Voice)

- Acc. amātum, to love
- Abl. amātū, to love, in the loving

---

1 Sometimes called the future passive participle.
## SECOND CONJUGATION. E-VERBS. MONEÔ

**Principal Parts** moneô, monère, monuí, monitus  

**Pres. Stem** monê-  
**Perf. Stem** monu-  
**Part. Stem** monit-

### ACTIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past Descriptive</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Past Perfect</th>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>I advise, etc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>I was advising, etc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>I shall advise, etc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>I have advised, I advised, etc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>I had advised, etc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>I shall have advised, etc.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moneô</td>
<td>monebâm</td>
<td>monêbô</td>
<td>monuï</td>
<td>monueram</td>
<td>monuerô</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monës</td>
<td>monêbâs</td>
<td>monëbis</td>
<td>monuïstî</td>
<td>monuerâs</td>
<td>monueris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monet</td>
<td>monëbat</td>
<td>monëbit</td>
<td>monuït</td>
<td>monuerat</td>
<td>monuerit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monêmus</td>
<td>monêbâmus</td>
<td>monêbimus</td>
<td>monuïmus</td>
<td>monuerâmus</td>
<td>monuerimimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monëtis</td>
<td>monêbâtis</td>
<td>monêbitis</td>
<td>monuïstis</td>
<td>monuerâtis</td>
<td>monuerint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monënt</td>
<td>monêbant</td>
<td>monëbint</td>
<td>monuïtum</td>
<td>monuerant</td>
<td>monuerintum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>I am advised, etc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>I was advised, etc.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moneor</td>
<td>monêtur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monëris, -re</td>
<td>monëtur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monëmini</td>
<td>monëbâminí</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monèmur</td>
<td>monëbâmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monëbâris, -re</td>
<td>monëbâtur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monëbântur</td>
<td>monëbântur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past Descriptive</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Past Perfect</th>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>I advise, etc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>I was advising, etc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>I shall advise, etc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>I have advised, I advised, etc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>I had advised, etc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>I shall have advised, etc.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moneô</td>
<td>monebâm</td>
<td>monêbô</td>
<td>monuï</td>
<td>monueram</td>
<td>monuerô</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monës</td>
<td>monêbâs</td>
<td>monëbis</td>
<td>monuïstî</td>
<td>monuerâs</td>
<td>monueris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monet</td>
<td>monëbat</td>
<td>monëbit</td>
<td>monuït</td>
<td>monuerat</td>
<td>monuerit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monêmus</td>
<td>monêbâmus</td>
<td>monêbimus</td>
<td>monuïmus</td>
<td>monuerâmus</td>
<td>monuerimimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monëtis</td>
<td>monêbâtis</td>
<td>monêbitis</td>
<td>monuïstis</td>
<td>monuerâtis</td>
<td>monuerint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monënt</td>
<td>monêbant</td>
<td>monêbint</td>
<td>monuïtum</td>
<td>monuerant</td>
<td>monuerintum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>I am advised, etc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>I was advised, etc.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moneor</td>
<td>monêtur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monëris, -re</td>
<td>monëtur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monëmini</td>
<td>monëbâminí</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monèmur</td>
<td>monëbâmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monëbâris, -re</td>
<td>monëbâtur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monëbântur</td>
<td>monëbântur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past Descriptive</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Past Perfect</th>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>I advise, etc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>I was advising, etc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>I shall advise, etc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>I have advised, I advised, etc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>I had advised, etc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>I shall have advised, etc.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moneô</td>
<td>monebâm</td>
<td>monêbô</td>
<td>monuï</td>
<td>monueram</td>
<td>monuerô</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monës</td>
<td>monêbâs</td>
<td>monëbis</td>
<td>monuïstî</td>
<td>monuerâs</td>
<td>monueris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monet</td>
<td>monëbat</td>
<td>monëbit</td>
<td>monuït</td>
<td>monuerat</td>
<td>monuerit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monêmus</td>
<td>monêbâmus</td>
<td>monêbimus</td>
<td>monuïmus</td>
<td>monuerâmus</td>
<td>monuerimimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monëtis</td>
<td>monêbâtis</td>
<td>monêbitis</td>
<td>monuïstis</td>
<td>monuerâtis</td>
<td>monuerint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monënt</td>
<td>monêbant</td>
<td>monêbint</td>
<td>monuïtum</td>
<td>monuerant</td>
<td>monuerintum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>I am advised, etc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>I was advised, etc.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moneor</td>
<td>monêtur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monëris, -re</td>
<td>monëtur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monëmini</td>
<td>monëbâminí</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monèmur</td>
<td>monëbâmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monëbâris, -re</td>
<td>monëbâtur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monëbântur</td>
<td>monëbântur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past Descriptive</th>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Past Perfect</th>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>I advise, etc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>I was advising, etc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>I shall advise, etc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>I have advised, I advised, etc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>I had advised, etc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>I shall have advised, etc.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moneô</td>
<td>monebâm</td>
<td>monêbô</td>
<td>monuï</td>
<td>monueram</td>
<td>monuerô</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monës</td>
<td>monêbâs</td>
<td>monëbis</td>
<td>monuïstî</td>
<td>monuerâs</td>
<td>monueris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monet</td>
<td>monëbat</td>
<td>monëbit</td>
<td>monuït</td>
<td>monuerat</td>
<td>monuerit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monêmus</td>
<td>monêbâmus</td>
<td>monêbimus</td>
<td>monuïmus</td>
<td>monuerâmus</td>
<td>monuerimimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monëtis</td>
<td>monêbâtis</td>
<td>monêbitis</td>
<td>monuïstis</td>
<td>monuerâtis</td>
<td>monuerint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monënt</td>
<td>monêbant</td>
<td>monêbint</td>
<td>monuïtum</td>
<td>monuerant</td>
<td>monuerintum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>I am advised, etc.</strong></td>
<td><strong>I was advised, etc.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moneor</td>
<td>monêtur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monëris, -re</td>
<td>monëtur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monëmini</td>
<td>monëbâminí</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monèmur</td>
<td>monëbâmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monëbâris, -re</td>
<td>monëbâtur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monëbântur</td>
<td>monëbântur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
FORMS

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT
moneam
moneāmus
monear
moneāmur
moneēs
moneātis
monēaris, -re
moneāmini
moneeat
monecant
moneātur
moneantur

PAST
monērem
monērēmus
monērer
monērēmur
monērēs
monērētis
monērēris, -re
monērēmini
monēret
monērent

PERFECT
monuerim
monuerīmus
monitus, sit
sim
moniti, sitis
monueris
monueritis
-sa, -um
monētis
-ae, -a
monuerit
monuerint

PAST PERFECT
monuissem
monuissemus
monitus, essētis
essēmus
monuisseis
monuisseitis
-ae, -a
monuisset
monuisseint

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT
monē, advise thou
monēte, advise ye
monēre, be thou advised
monēmini, be ye advised

FUTURE
monētō, thou shalt advise
monētor, thou shalt be advised
monētō, he shall advise
monētor, he shall be advised
monētōte, you shall advise
monentō, they shall advise

INFinitive

Pres. monēre, to advise
monēri, to be advised
Perf. monuisse, to have advised
monitus, -a, -um esse, to have been advised
Fut. monitūrus, -a, -um esse, to be about to advise
moniturum ēri, to be about to be advised

PARTICIPLES

Pres. monēns, -entis, advising
monenī, of advising
Fut. monitūrus, -a, -um, about to advise
monitum ēri, to be about to be advised
Past monitus, -a, -um, having been advised, advised

GERUND

Nom. monēndā
Gen. monēndi, of advising
Dat. monēndō, for advising
Acc. monēndum, advising
Abl. monēndō, by advising

SUPINE (Active Voice)

Acc. monitum, to advise
Abl. moniqū, to advise, in the advicing
### Third Conjugation. Ē-verbs. Regō

**Principal Parts** regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus

**Pres. Stem** rego-  
**Perf. Stem** rēx-  
**Part. Stem** rēct-

#### Active

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I rule, etc.</td>
<td>I am ruled, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regō</td>
<td>regimus</td>
<td>re'gor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regis</td>
<td>regitās</td>
<td>re'geris, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regit</td>
<td>regunt</td>
<td>re'gitur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Past Descriptive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I was ruling, etc.</th>
<th>I was ruled, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>regēbam</td>
<td>regēbumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regēbās</td>
<td>regēbātīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regēbat</td>
<td>regēbant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Future

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I shall rule, etc.</th>
<th>I shall be ruled, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>regam</td>
<td>regēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regēs</td>
<td>regētīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reget</td>
<td>regent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I have ruled, etc.</th>
<th>I have been ruled, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rēxī</td>
<td>rēximus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxistī</td>
<td>rēxistīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxit</td>
<td>rēxērunt, -re</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Past Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I had ruled, etc.</th>
<th>I had been ruled, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rēxeram</td>
<td>rēxerāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxerās</td>
<td>rēxerātīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxerat</td>
<td>rēxerant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Future Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I shall have ruled, etc.</th>
<th>I shall have been ruled, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rēxerō</td>
<td>rēxerīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēxeris</td>
<td>rēxerītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēixerit</td>
<td>rēixerint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Form</td>
<td>Present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SUBJUNCTIVE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>regam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>regás</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>regat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>regerem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>regerēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>regeret</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td>réxerim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>réxerēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>réxerēt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Perfect</td>
<td>réxissem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>réxisseēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>réxisseet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IMPERATIVE</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>rege, rule thou¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>regite, rule ye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>regitō, thou shalt rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>regitō, he shall rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>regitōte, ye shall rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>reguntō, they shall rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>INFINITIVE</strong></td>
<td>Pres. regere, to rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Perf. réxisse, to have ruled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fut. rēctūrus, -a, -um esse, to be about to rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PARTICIPILES</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>regēns, -entis, ruling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>rēctūrus, -a, -um, about to rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>regendi, of ruling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>regendō, for ruling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>regendum, ruling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>regendō, by ruling</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ The corresponding imperative forms for the four verbs dicō, dūcō, facēō, and ferō are dic, dūc, fac, and fer.
35. **FOURTH CONJUGATION: -I-VERBS. AUDIO**

**Principal Parts**
- audiō, audire, audīvi, audīitus

**Pres. Stem** audi-
**Perf. Stem** audīv-
**Part. Stem** audit-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I hear, etc.</td>
<td>I am heard, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiō</td>
<td>audiīmus</td>
<td>au’dior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēs</td>
<td>audiētis</td>
<td>audiē’ris, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiet</td>
<td>audiēunt</td>
<td>audiē’tur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past Descriptive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was hearing, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēbam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēbās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēbat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I shall hear, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiet</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I have heard, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīvī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīvistī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīvit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I had heard, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīveram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīverās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīverat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I shall have heard, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīverō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīveris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīverit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### FORMS

#### SUBJUNCTIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th></th>
<th>Past</th>
<th></th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th></th>
<th>Past Perfect</th>
<th></th>
<th>Imperative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audiēm</td>
<td>audiāmus</td>
<td>audiār</td>
<td>audiāmur</td>
<td>audiērem</td>
<td>auditus, -a, -um</td>
<td>auditūs, -a, -um esse, -a, -a</td>
<td>audiē, hear thou</td>
<td>audīre, be thou heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēs</td>
<td>audiātis</td>
<td>audiāris, -re</td>
<td>audiāminī</td>
<td>audiētēs</td>
<td>auditī, sitis</td>
<td>auditūs, -a, -um esse, -a, -a</td>
<td>audite, hear ye</td>
<td>audiminī, be ye heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēt</td>
<td>audiānt</td>
<td>audiātur</td>
<td>audiāntur</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiērem</td>
<td>audiēremus</td>
<td>audiērer</td>
<td>audiēremur</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiētēs</td>
<td>audiētēs</td>
<td>audiērēris, -re</td>
<td>audiērēminī</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiētēt</td>
<td>audiētēnt</td>
<td>audiērētur</td>
<td>audiērentur</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auditus, -a, -um</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>essēmus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auditus, -a, -um esse, -a, -a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### IMPERATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th></th>
<th>Future</th>
<th></th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audī, hear thou</td>
<td>audiēre, to hear</td>
<td>auditor, thou shalt be heard</td>
<td>audiērī, to be heard</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audite, hear ye</td>
<td>audiēris, -e, -um esse, -a, -a, -a</td>
<td>auditor, he shall be heard</td>
<td>audīmus ērī, to be about to be heard</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PARTICIPLES

| Present | | Future | | Past |
|---------|---|-----|---|
| audiēns, -entis, hearing | audiēndus, -a, -um, to be heard | audiētus, -a, -um esse, -a, -a, -a | audiētur, -a, -um, having been heard, heard |

#### GERUND

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audiēndus, -e, -um, of hearing</td>
<td>audiēndus, -e, -um, about to hear</td>
<td>audiēndus, -e, -um, hearing</td>
<td>audiēndus, -e, -um, hearing</td>
<td>audiēndus, -e, -um, by hearing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### SUPINE (Active Voice)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th>Acc.</th>
<th>Abl.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audiēnum</td>
<td>audiēnum, to hear</td>
<td>audiēnum, to hear, in the hearing</td>
<td>audiēnum, to hear, in the hearing</td>
<td>audiēnum, to hear, in the hearing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

Digitized by Google
36. THIRD CONJUGATION. VERBS IN -IÔ. CAPIÔ

Principal Parts: capiô, capere, cēpî, captus
Pres. Stem: cape-
Perf. Stem: cēp-
Part. Stem: capt-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACTIVE</th>
<th>INDICATIVE</th>
<th>PASSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capiô</td>
<td>capimus</td>
<td>ca’pior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capis</td>
<td>capitis</td>
<td>ca’peris, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capit</td>
<td>capiunt</td>
<td>ca’pitur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PAST DESCRIPTIVE</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capiēbam</td>
<td>capiēbāmus</td>
<td>ca’pībar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēbās</td>
<td>capiēbātis</td>
<td>capiēbā’ris, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēbat</td>
<td>capiēbānt</td>
<td>capiēbā’tur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FUTURE</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capiam</td>
<td>capiēmus</td>
<td>ca’piar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēs</td>
<td>capiētis</td>
<td>capiē’ris, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiet</td>
<td>capiētent</td>
<td>capiē’tur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PERFECT</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cēpî, cēpisti, cēpit, etc.</td>
<td>captus, -a, -um sum, es, est, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PAST PERFECT</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cēperam, cēperās, cēperat, etc.</td>
<td>captus, -a, -um eram, erās, erat, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FUTURE PERFECT</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cēperō, cēperis, cēperit, etc.</td>
<td>captus, -a, -um erō, eris, erit, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capiam, capiās, capiat, etc.</td>
<td>capiar, -iāris, -re, -iātur, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PAST</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>caperem, caperēs, caperet, etc.</td>
<td>caperer, -erēris, -re, -erētur, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PERFECT</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cēperim, cēperīs, cēperit, etc.</td>
<td>captus, -a, -um sim, sīa, sit, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PAST PERFECT</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cēpissem, cēpissēs, cēpisset, etc.</td>
<td>captus, -a, -um essim, essēs, esset, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IMPERATIVE</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ad Pers. cape</td>
<td>capere</td>
<td>capimini</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### FORMS

#### FUTURE

| 2d Pers. | capitō | capitōte | capitor | ——— |
| 3d Pers. | capitō | capiuntō | capitor | capiuntor |

#### INFINITIVE

| Pres. | capere | capiō |
| Perf. | cēpisse | captōs, -a, -um esse |
| Fut. | captūrus, -a, -um esse | captūm īrī |

#### PARTICIPLES

| Pres. | capiēns, -ientis | ——— |
| Fut. | captūrus, -a, -um | Gér. capiendus, -a, -um |
| Past | ——— | Past | captūs, -a, -um |

#### GERUND

| Gen. | capiendī |
| etc. | |

#### SUPINE (Active Voice)

| Acc. | captūm |
| Abl. | captū |

### DEPONENT VERBS

| I. | hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum, urge |
| II. | vereor, verērī, veritus sum, fear |
| III. | sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, follow |
| IV. | partior, partīrī, partītus sum, share, divide |

**Note.** In addition to the passive conjugation, deponent verbs use certain forms from the active. These are marked with a star. Deponent -īō verbs of the third conjugation are inflected like the passive of capitō.

#### INDICATIVE

| Pres. | hortor | vereor | sequor | partior |
| hortārīs, -re | verēris, -re | sequeris, -re | partīris, -re |
| hortātūr | verētur | sequitur | partītūr |
| hortāmur | verēmur | sequimur | partīmūr |
| hortāminī | verēminī | sequimini | partīminī |
| hortantūr | verentūr | sequuntūr | partīuntūr |
| P. D. | hortābar | verēbar | sequēbar | partīēbar |
| Fut. | hortābor | verēbor | sequar | partiar |
| Perf. | hortātus sum | veritus sum | secūtus sum | partītus sum |
| P. P. | hortātus eram | veritus eram | secūtus eram | partītus eram |
| F. P. | hortātus erō | veritus erō | secūtus erō | partītus erō |
### Latin Grammar

#### Subjunctive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Stem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>hortēr</td>
<td>verear</td>
<td>sequar</td>
<td>partīar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>hortārēr</td>
<td>verērēr</td>
<td>sequerēr</td>
<td>partīrer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>hortātus sim</td>
<td>veritus sim</td>
<td>secūtus sim</td>
<td>partītus sim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. P.</td>
<td>hortātus essem</td>
<td>veritus essem</td>
<td>secūtus essem</td>
<td>partītus essem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Imperative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>hortāre</td>
<td>verēre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>hortātor</td>
<td>verētor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>hortāri</td>
<td>verēri</td>
<td>partīri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>hortātus esse</td>
<td>veritus esse</td>
<td>partītus esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td><em>hortātūrus esse</em></td>
<td><em>veritūrus esse</em></td>
<td><em>partītūrus esse</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Participles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td><em>hortāns</em></td>
<td><em>verēns</em></td>
<td><em>partīns</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td><em>hortātūrus</em></td>
<td><em>veritūrus</em></td>
<td><em>partītūrus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>hortātus</td>
<td>veritus</td>
<td>partītus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ger.</td>
<td>hortandus</td>
<td>verendus</td>
<td>partiendus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Gerund

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>hortandī, etc.</em></td>
<td><em>verendī, etc.</em></td>
<td><em>partiendī, etc.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Supine

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>hortātum, -tū</em></td>
<td><em>veritum, -tū</em></td>
<td><em>partītum, -tū</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 38. I. Active Periphramic Conjugation:

#### Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>amātūrus sum, <em>I am about to love</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Descr.</td>
<td>amātūrus eram, <em>I was about to love</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>amātūrus erō, <em>I shall be about to love</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>amātūrus fuī, <em>I have been, was, about to love</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Perf.</td>
<td>amātūrus fueram, <em>I had been about to love</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. Perf.</td>
<td>amātūrus fuerō, <em>I shall have been about to love</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Subjunctive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>amātūrus sim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>amātūrus essem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>amātūrus fuerim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Perf.</td>
<td>amātūrus fuissem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
FORMS

INFinitive

Pres. amātūrus esse, to be about to love
Perf. amātūrus fuisse, to have been about to love

II. Passive Periphrastic Conjugation:

INDICATIVE

Pres. amandus sum, I am to be, must be, loved
Past Descr. amandus eram, I was to be, had to be, loved
Fut. amandus erō, I shall have to be loved
Perf. amandus fui, I was to be, had to be, loved
Past Perf. amandus fueram, I had had to be loved
Fut. Perf. amandus fuerō, I shall have had to be loved

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres. amandus sim
Past amandus essem
Perf. amandus fuerim
Past Perf. amandus fussem

INFinitive

Pres. amandus esse, to have to be loved
Perf. amandus fuisse, to have had to be loved

IRREGULAR VERBS

39.

sum, am, be

PRINCIPAL PARTS sum, esse, fui, futurus

Pres. Stem es-  Perf. Stem fu-  Part. Stem fut-

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

SINGULAR

sum, I am
es, thou art
est, he (she, it) is

PLURAL

sumus, we are
estis, you are
sunt, they are

PAST DESCRIPTIVE

eram, I was
eras, thou wast
erat, he was

eramus, we were
eratis, you were
erant, they were
### LATIN GRAMMAR

#### Future

- eró, I shall be
- eris, thou wilt be
- erit, he will be
- erimus, we shall be
- eritis, you will be
- erunt, they will be

#### Perfect

- fuí, I have been, was
- fuísti, thou hast been, wast
- fuit, he has been, was
- fuimus, we have been, were
- fuistis, you have been, were
- fuère, they have been, were

#### Past Perfect

- fuerám, I had been
- fuerás, thou hadst been
- fuerat, he had been
- fueramus, we had been
- fuerátis, you had been
- fuerant, they had been

#### Future Perfect

- fueró, I shall have been
- fueris, thou wilt have been
- fuerit, he will have been
- fuerimus, we shall have been
- fueritis, you will have been
- fuerint, they will have been

### Subjunctive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Singular</th>
<th>Present Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sim</td>
<td>simul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sis</td>
<td>sitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sit</td>
<td>sint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perfect Singular</th>
<th>Perfect Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fuerim</td>
<td>fuerímus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fueris</td>
<td>fuerítas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerit</td>
<td>fuerint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Imperative

#### Present

- 2d Pers. Sing. es, be thou
- 2d Pers. Plur. este, be ye

#### Future

- 2d Pers. Sing. estó, thou shalt be
- 3d Pers. Sing. estó, he shall be
- 2d Pers. Plur. estóte, ye shall be
- 3d Pers. Plur. suntó, they shall be

### Infinitive

- Pres. esse, to be
- Perf. fuisse, to have been
- Fut. futúrus, -a, -um esse or fore, to be about to be

### Participle

- futúrus, -a, -um, about to be
### FORMS

**40. possum, be able, can**

**Principal Parts** possum, posse, potuī, —

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Indicative</strong></th>
<th><strong>Subjunctive</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
<td><strong>Plural</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres. possum</td>
<td>pos'sumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>potes</td>
<td>potes'tis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>potest</td>
<td>possunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past poteram</td>
<td>poterāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. poterō</td>
<td>poterimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf. potuī</td>
<td>potuimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P.P. potueram</td>
<td>potuerāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F.P. potuerō</td>
<td>potuerimus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Infinitive**

Pres. posse

**Participle**

Pres. potēns, gen. -entis, (adjective) powerful

### 41. prōsum, benefit

**Principal Parts** prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, prōfutūrus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Pres. Stem</strong></th>
<th><strong>Perf. Stem</strong></th>
<th><strong>Part. Stem</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>prōdes</td>
<td>prōfu</td>
<td>prōfut-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Indicative</strong></th>
<th><strong>Subjunctive</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
<td><strong>Plural</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres. prōsum</td>
<td>prō'sumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prōdes</td>
<td>prōdes'tis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prōdest</td>
<td>prōsunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past prōderam</td>
<td>prōderāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. prōderō</td>
<td>prōderimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf. prōfui</td>
<td>prōfuimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P.P. prōfueram</td>
<td>prōfuerāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. P. prōfuerō</td>
<td>prōfuerimus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperative**

Pres. 2d Pers. prōdes, prōdeste

**Future Participle** prōfutūrus, -a, -um esse
42. **Principal Parts**

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Pres.} & \quad \text{volō, velle, volui, ——, be willing, will, wish} \\
\text{Future} & \quad \text{nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, ——, be unwilling, will not} \\
\text{Perfect} & \quad \text{mālō, mālle, mālui, ——, be more willing, prefer}
\end{align*}
\]

\(\text{nōlō}\) and \(\text{mālō}\) are compounds of \(\text{volō}\). \(\text{nōlō}\) is for \(\text{ne (not) + volō}\), and \(\text{mālō}\) for \(\text{mā (from magis, more) + volō}\). The second person \(\text{vis}\) is from a different root.

### Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>_singular</th>
<th>_</th>
<th>_plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pres.</strong></td>
<td>volō</td>
<td>nōlō</td>
<td>mālō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vis</td>
<td>nōn vis</td>
<td>māvis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volt</td>
<td>nōn volt</td>
<td>māvolt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plural</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volumus</td>
<td>nōlumus</td>
<td>mālumus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vultis</td>
<td>nōn vultis</td>
<td>māvul’tis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volt</td>
<td>nōlunt</td>
<td>mālunt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fut.</strong></td>
<td>volēbam</td>
<td>nōlēbam</td>
<td>mālēbam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>futam, volēs, etc</td>
<td>nōlam, nōlēs, etc.</td>
<td>mālam, mālēs, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perf.</strong></td>
<td>volūi</td>
<td>nōlui</td>
<td>mālui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P. P.</strong></td>
<td>volueram</td>
<td>nōlueram</td>
<td>mālueram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>F. P.</strong></td>
<td>voluerō</td>
<td>nōluerō</td>
<td>māluerō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Subjunctive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pres.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>velis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>velit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plural</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>veli’mus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>veli’tis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>velit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Past</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perf.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P. P.</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Imperative

| | | |
|----------| | |
| **Pres.** | nōli | | |
| nōlite | | |
| **Fut.** | nōlitō, etc. | | |
### FORMS

#### Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>velle</th>
<th>nölle</th>
<th>mällle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>voluisse</td>
<td>nöluisse</td>
<td>mäluisse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Participle

| Pres.  | volēns, -entis | nölēns, -entis |

#### 43.

**ferō, bear, carry, endure**

**Principal Parts**

| Pres. Stem | fer- | Perf. Stem | tul- | Part. Stem | lät-
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>ferō</td>
<td>ferimus</td>
<td></td>
<td>feror</td>
<td>ferimur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fers</td>
<td>fertis</td>
<td></td>
<td>ferris, -re</td>
<td>feriminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fert</td>
<td>ferunt</td>
<td></td>
<td>fertur</td>
<td>feruntur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. D.</td>
<td>ferēbam</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ferēbar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>feram, ferēs, etc.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ferar, ferēris, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>tuli</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>lätus, -a, -um sum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. P.</td>
<td>tuleram</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>lätus, -a, -um eram</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. P.</td>
<td>tulerō</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>lätus, -a, -um erō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subjunctive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ferar, ferāris, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>feram, ferās, etc.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ferrer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>ferrem</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>lätus, -a, -um sim</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>tulerim</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>lätus, -a, -um esse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. P.</td>
<td>tulissem</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Imperative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres. 2d Pers.</th>
<th>fer</th>
<th>ferte</th>
<th>ferre</th>
<th>ferimī</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fut. 2d Pers.</td>
<td>fertō</td>
<td>fertōte</td>
<td>fērör</td>
<td>feruntōtor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3d Pers.</td>
<td>fertō</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>ferre</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>tulisse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>lätūrus, -a, -um esse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Participles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>ferēns, -entis</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>lätūrus, -a, -um</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LATIN GRAMMAR

GERUND

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gen.</th>
<th>ferendi</th>
<th>Acc.</th>
<th>ferendum</th>
<th>Supine (Active Voice)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>ferendō</td>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>ferendō</td>
<td>Acc. lătum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Abl. lătū</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

44.

eo, go

Principal Parts eo, ire, iī (ivi), itum (n. perf. part.)

Pres. Stem i-      Perf. stem i-or iī-      Part. Stem it-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
<th>Imperative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eō</td>
<td>imus</td>
<td>eam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is</td>
<td>itis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>eunt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ībam</td>
<td></td>
<td>īrem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ībō</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iī (ivi)</td>
<td></td>
<td>ierim (iverim)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. P.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ieram (iveram)</td>
<td></td>
<td>īssem (īvissem)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. P.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ierō (iverō)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>īre</td>
<td>īsse (īvisse)</td>
<td>itūrus, -a, -um</td>
<td>eundum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Participles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>Ger.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>īens, gen. euntis</td>
<td>eundum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Gerund

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gen.</th>
<th>Dat.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>eundī</td>
<td>eundō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Acc.</th>
<th>Abl.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>eundum</td>
<td>eundō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Acc.</th>
<th>Abl.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>itum</td>
<td>itū</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. The verb eo is used impersonally in the third person singular of the passive, as ātur, ītum est, etc.
b. In the perfect system the forms with v are very rare.

45.

fiō, passive of faciō; be made, become, happen

Principal Parts fiō, fieri, factus sum

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
<th>Imperative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fiō</td>
<td></td>
<td>fiam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fit</td>
<td>fiunt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fiēbam</td>
<td></td>
<td>fierem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fiam, fiēs, etc.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
FORMS

INDICATIVE
Perf. factus, -a, -um sum
P. P. factus, -a, -um eram
F. P. factus, -a, -um erō

INFINITIVE
Pres. fieri
Perf. factus, -a, -um esse
Fut. factum īri

SUBJUNCTIVE
factus, -a, -um sim
factus, -a, -um esse

PARTICIPLES
Past factus, -a, -um
Ger. faciendus, -a, -um

46.

I. DEFECTIVE VERBS

INDICATIVE
Perf. coepī, began memini, remember
P. P. coeperam memineram
F. P. coeperō meminerō

SUBJUNCTIVE
Perf. coeperim meminerim
P. P. coepissem meminissem

IMPERATIVE
SINGULAR
mementō

PLURAL
mementōte

INFINITIVE
Perf. coepisse meminisse
Fut. coeptūrus esse

PARTICIPLE
Past coeptus
Fut. coeptūrus

II. IMPERSONAL VERBS

INDICATIVE
Pres. licet, is permitted
Past licēbat
Fut. licēbit
Perf. licuit (licitum est)
P. P. licuerat (licitum erat)
F. P. licuerit (licitum erit)

SUBJUNCTIVE
liceat
licēret
licuerit (licitum sit)
licuisset (licitum esset)

INFINITIVE
licēre, licuisse, lictūrum esse
B. SYNTAX

SENTENCES

47. A sentence is a group of words expressing a complete thought. Kinds of Sentences. Sentences are declarative, interrogative, or imperative:

a. A declarative sentence is one that makes a statement:
   \textit{Caesar venit, Caesar is coming}

b. An interrogative sentence is one that asks a question:
   \textit{venitne Caesar? is Caesar coming?}

c. An imperative sentence is one that expresses a command:
   \textit{veni, Caesar, come, Caesar}

48. Parts of Sentences. Every sentence consists of two parts, the subject and the predicate:

I. Subject. The subject of a sentence is a noun, or some expression used as a noun, about which something is said:

\textit{Caesar respondit, Caesar made answer; responditne Caesar? did Caesar make answer?}

In both of these sentences \textit{Caesar} is the subject.

a. In Latin the subject is often not expressed by a separate word, but is contained in the termination of the verb:

\textit{scribit, he writes; scribunt, they write; scribimus, we write}

b. The subject may be some word or group of words used as a noun:

\textit{haec perficere est facile, to accomplish these things is easy; accidit ut plena luna esset, it happened that the moon was full}
II. Predicate. The predicate is that part of the sentence which says something about the subject:

\[ \text{lūna est plēna; the moon is full} \]

a. The predicate may be a verb, or it may consist of a noun, pronoun, or adjective combined with some form of the verb \textit{sum} or its equivalent, and describing or defining the subject:

\[ \text{Piso erat cōnsul, Piso was consul; tū es īlle, you are he; oppidum erat magnum, the town was large} \]

b. The verb \textit{sum}, combined with a noun, pronoun, or adjective as above, is called the \textit{copula}, that is, the connective. When an intransitive or passive verb is used in the same way, it is called a copulative verb:

\[ \text{Dīviciācus appellātur amīcus, Diviciacus is called friend} \]

49. Transitive Verb. A transitive verb has or requires a direct object to complete its sense:

\[ \text{imperātōrem videō, I see the general} \]

50. Intransitive Verb. An intransitive verb does not admit of a direct object to complete its sense:

\[ \text{imperātor venit, the general is coming} \]

51. Phrase. A phrase is a group of connected words not containing a subject and predicate. A phrase is often used as an adjective or an adverb:

\[ \text{vīr erat magnae virtūtis, he was a man of great courage; omnibus precibus dūrabant, they implored with all (manner of) entreaties} \]

In these sentences \textit{magnae virtūtis} and \textit{omnibus precibus} are respectively adjective and adverbial phrases.

52. Direct Object. The person or thing directly affected by the action of a verb is called the direct object:

\[ \text{Caesar eum incūsat, Caesar upbraids him} \]
\[ \text{Helvētīi aciem īnstrūxérunt, the Helvetii drew up a line of battle} \]
53. Indirect Object. The person toward whom or the thing toward which an action or feeling is directed, is called the indirect object:

agrōs haeeduīs dat, he gives fields to the Haeeduī

54. Appositive. A noun or pronoun used to describe or explain another noun or pronoun denoting the same person or thing, without the use of a verb, is called an appositive:

Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, vēnit, Ariovistus, the king of the Germans, came

Note. A noun or pronoun used as above is said to be in apposition with the word it describes or explains, and agrees with it in case.

55. Forms of Sentences. In their form sentences are simple, compound, or complex:

a. A simple sentence is a sentence containing but one subject and one predicate:

Caesar venit, Caesar comes

b. A compound sentence consists of two or more independent sentences:

Caesar vēnit et hostēs fūgērunt, Caesar came, and the enemy fled

c. A complex sentence consists of at least one independent sentence and one or more dependent sentences:

cum Caesar vēnisset, hostēs fūgērunt, when Caesar had come, the enemy fled

56. Clause. A clause is a group of words that forms part of a sentence and that contains a subject and a predicate.

In the last two Latin sentences above, each group of words, Caesar vēnīt, hostēs fūgērunt, cum Caesar vēnisset, is a clause.

a. If one statement modifies another in any way, the modifying clause is said to be subordinate, and the clause modified is called the main clause:

cum Caesar vēnisset, hostēs fūgērunt, when Caesar had come, the enemy fled; here cum Caesar vēnisset is the subordinate clause and hostēs fūgērunt is the main clause
SYNTAX — AGREEMENT

b. If one statement is simply added to another, the clauses are said to be coördinate. They are usually connected by a coördinating conjunction (§ 151. a):

Caesar vēnit et hostēs fügērunt, Caesar came and the enemy fled; here both clauses are coördinate

57. Modifiers. A subject or a predicate may be modified by a word, a phrase, or a clause:

mīles fortīs ācritēr pugnāt, the brave soldier fights fiercely; the words fortīs and ācritēr modify the subject and predicate respectively
imperātor bonō animō in urbem vēnit, a general of great courage has come into the city; the phrases bonō animō and in urbem modify the subject and predicate respectively
imperātor quem nōmināvī pontem aedificāvit ut flūmen trānsīret, the general whom I have named built a bridge that he might cross the river; the clauses quem nōmināvī and ut flūmen trānsīret modify the subject and predicate respectively

AGREEMENT

NOUNS

58. Predicate or Appositive. A noun used as predicate or appositive agrees in case with the word which it explains or describes:

Ariovistus erat rēx, Ariovistus was king
Labiēnum, lēgātum, mīsīt, he sent Labienus, the lieutenant

ADJECTIVES

59. General Rule. Adjectives and words used as adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case:

iter est longum, the journey is long
mōns altissimus impendēbat, a very high mountain overhung
Gallia est divīsa, Gaul is divided
60. Predicate Adjective. When an adjective forms a part of the predicate with the verb sum or its equivalent (§ 48. II. a), it is called a predicate adjective:

Suëbòrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōssima Germānōrum omnium, the tribe of the Suebi is by far the greatest and most warlike of all the Germans

61. Attributive Adjective. When an adjective immediately describes a noun without the use of a copulative verb, it is called an attributive adjective:

prīma legiō in castra vēnit, the first legion came into camp

AGREEMENT WITH TWO OR MORE NOUNS

62. Number. When an adjective modifies two or more nouns connected by et, -que, or atque (ac), a predicate adjective is in the plural number, and an attributive adjective agrees in number with the nearest noun:

dominus et servus sunt dissimiōnes, master and slave are unlike
bonus rēx et rēgīna, the good king and queen

63. Gender. When an adjective modifies two or more nouns of different genders, a predicate adjective is usually masculine if the nouns denote living beings, neuter if they denote things without life; and an attributive adjective agrees with the nearest noun:

pater et māter sunt cāri, father and mother are dear
gladius et scūtum sunt magna, the sword and shield are large
cārus pater et māter }

pater et māter cāra } the dear father and mother

NOTE. If the nouns denote both persons and things, a predicate adjective is usually neuter plural, but may follow the gender of the persons and be either masculine or feminine:

rēx et libera cīvītās sunt inimīca, a king and a free state are incompatible
rēx et classis sunt tūtī, the king and the fleet are safe
PRONOUNS

64. Pronouns used as nouns (substantively) have the construction of nouns; used as adjectives they agree with their nouns in the same way as adjectives (§ 59):

_H sunt extrā prōvinciam prīmi, these are the first beyond the province
_hoc prōelium factum est, this battle was fought

a. Note, however, that a relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but that its case depends on its construction in the clause in which it is used:

lēgātī quī convocātī erant convēnērunt, the envoys who had been
summoned assembled

lēgātī quōs convocāverat convēnērunt, the envoys whom he had
summoned assembled

Note. When the relative clause contains a predicate noun, the relative pronoun agrees with this noun rather than with an antecedent of different gender and number:

Rhēnus, quod est flūmen Gallicum, the Rhine, which is a Gallic stream

VERBS

65. General Rule. Finite verbs agree with their subjects in person and number:

Orgetorix dēligitur, Orgetorix is chosen
Helvētī oppida incendunt, the Helvētī burn their towns

Note. A finite verb is one having person and number.

a. A verb is usually singular if it has for its subject a collective noun, — that is, a noun singular in form but referring to more than one person or thing, — but it may be plural if individuals are thought of:

senātus haec intellegit, the senate knows this
magnā multitudō venērunt, a great multitude came

66. Impersonal Verbs. When a verb is used impersonally, that is, without a personal subject, it is put in the third person singular, and a perfect participle or gerundive ends in -um:

pugnātur, fighting is carried on; pugnātum est, fighting was carried on
67. Agreement with Two or More Subjects. With two or more subjects connected by et, -que, or atque (ac) the verb may agree with the nearest or be plural:

summa alacritās et cupiditās belī gerendī innāta est, very great eagerness and desire for waging war were inspired

oppidum et vīcus incenduntur, the town and village are burned

68. With two or more subjects forming a single idea the verb may be singular:

Mattōna et Sēquana dividit etc., the Marne and Seine divide etc.,

B. G. I. 1

69. With two or more singular subjects connected by conjunctions meaning or or nor the verb is in the singular number:

neque imperātor neque lēgātus erat timidus, neither the general nor the lieutenant was afraid

CASES OF NOUNS

NOMINATIVE

70. The nominative case is used as the subject of a finite verb or as the predicate after a copulative verb:

Caesar respondit, Caesar replies
Labīēnus erat lēgātus Labienus was a lieutenant

71. The nominative case is used as the subject of the historical infinitive (§ 218):

cotīdiē Caesar frūmentum flāgitāre, Caesar daily demanded grain,

B. G. I. 16

GENITIVE

GENITIVE WITH NOUNS

72. General Rule. The genitive is used to limit or define another noun not meaning the same person or thing.

This general rule includes all the varieties of the genitive with nouns mentioned below.
73. **Possessive Genitive.** A noun may be modified by a genitive denoting the possessor or owner:

inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, between the territories of the Helvetii and the Allobroges, B. G. I. 6

*a.* The possessive genitive often stands in the predicate:

duæ fuērunt Ariovistī uxōrēs, Ariovistus had two wives, B. G. I. 53

74. Possessive pronominal adjectives are used instead of the possessive genitive of personal pronouns:

nōn oportet mē ā populō Rōmānō in mēō (instead of mē) iūre impēdīrī, it is not proper that I should be hindered in my rights by the Roman people, B. G. I. 36

75. **Subjective and Objective Genitive.** A noun that suggests action or feeling may be modified by a genitive. The context will generally tell whether the genitive is the *subject* or the *object* of the action or feeling denoted by the noun:

*a.* timor mīlitum tantus erat ut fugerent, the fear of the soldiers was so great that they fled

Here the phrase *timor mīlitum* means that the soldiers fear; hence *mīlitum*, as the subject of the feeling expressed by *timor*, is a subjective genitive.

*Cf.* patrum nostrōrum memoriā, within the memory of our fathers, B. G. II. 4

*b.* timor mīlitum hostēs dēturruit, the (their) fear of the soldiers kept the enemy back

Here the phrase *timor mīlitum* means that the soldiers are feared; hence *mīlitum*, as the object of the feeling expressed by *timor*, is an objective genitive.

*Cf.* prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniūriīs populi Rōmānī, for the ancient wrongs of (inflicted by) the Helvetii upon the Roman people, B. G. I. 30.

In this sentence *Helvētiōrum* is a subjective genitive, *populi Rōmānī* is an objective genitive.
76. Partitive Genitive. Words denoting a part of an object or group are followed by a genitive denoting the whole object or group:

\[ \text{très partés copiārum trādūxērunt, they led across three quarters (parts) of their forces} \]

\[ \text{a. The partitive genitive may be used not only with nouns, but also with neuter singular adjectives and pronouns used substantively (§§ 127, 128):} \]

\[ \text{quantum habēat in sé bonī constantia, how much advantage (of good) firmness has, B. G. I. 40} \]

\[ \text{ nisi quid erit auxili, unless there shall be some (of) aid, B. G. I. 31} \]

\[ \text{satis esse causae arbitrābātur, he thought there was sufficient reason (enough of reason), B. G. I. 19} \]

**Exception.** Cardinal numerals (except mīlia) and the indefinite pronoun quīdam usually take the ablative with \( \text{ē} \) (ex) instead of the partitive genitive:

\[ \text{ūnus ex ēis, one of those; quīdam ex mīlitibus, one of the soldiers} \]

77. Genitive of Description or Quality. The genitive of a noun is used to denote quality or kind. Such a genitive is regularly accompanied by an adjective (cf. Ablative of Description, § 116. a):

\[ \text{vir et cōnsilī magnī et virītīs, a man of (both) great discretion and courage, B. G. III. 5} \]

\[ \text{a. Genitive of Description as Predicate. The descriptive genitive is often used as the predicate of a sentence:} \]

\[ \text{est enim hoc Gallicae cōnsuētūdinis, for this is a Gallic custom, B. G. IV. 5} \]

\[ \text{flūminis erat altitūdō pedum circiter trium, the depth of the river was about three feet, B. G. II. 18} \]

\[ \text{b. The descriptive genitive is often used with numerals to denote measure (Genitive of Measure):} \]

\[ \text{fossam obdūxit circiter passuum quādringentōrum, he extended a ditch of about four hundred paces, B. G. II. 8} \]
SYNTAX — NOUNS

78. Genitive of Value. The adjectives tantī, quantī, plūris, and minōris are used substantively in the predicate to denote indefinite value:

*tantī eius apud sē grātiam esse ostendit, he pointed out that his good will was of so great value in his sight (apud sē), B. G. I. 20

79. Genitive of Material. The genitive may denote the substance, or material, of which anything consists:

*aciem instruxit legiōnum quattuor, he drew up a line of battle of four legions, B. G. I. 24

Genitive with Adjectives

80. Adjectives denoting desire, knowledge, memory, fullness, power, sharing, guilt, and their opposites, also participles in -ns used as adjectives, are followed by the genitive:

*hominēs barbari et nostrae cōnsūtūdīnīs imperīti, men uncivilized and unacquainted with our customs, B. G. IV. 22

rei militāris perītissimus, thoroughly skilled in military practice,
B. G. I. 21

vir amāns rei pūblicae, a man fond of the republic

Genitive with Verbs

81. The genitive is used with the following verbs:

a. Verbs of Memory. With reminiscor, remember, and obliviscor, forget:

*quod sī veteris contumeliāe oblivisci velim, but if I should be willing to forget the old affront, B. G. I. 14

reminiscere veteris incommoti populi Rōmānī, remember the former misfortune of the Roman people, B. G. I. 13

b. Verbs of Feeling. With paenitet, repent, and some others. These take the accusative of the person with the genitive of the thing:

*cōnsūlōrum sēs paenitet, they repent of their plans (lit. it repents them of their plans), cf. B. G. IV. 5.
c. With the verb *interesse*, *it concerns*:

*dicit quantum opera re publicae interesse*, *he shows how greatly it concerns the common welfare*, B. G. II. 5

d. Sometimes with the verb *potior*, *get possession of*, which, however, commonly takes the ablative (§ 107. a):

*totius Galliae potiri*, *to get possession of the whole of Gaul*, B. G. I. 3

**DATIVE**

82. **Dative of Indirect Object.** The dative is the case of the indirect object, and denotes that *to which* or *for which* anything is or is done. It is used not only with intransitive verbs, but also with transitive verbs in connection with a direct object:

*ei filiam suam dat*, *he gives (to) him his daughter*, B. G. I. 3

83. **Dative with Special Verbs.** The dative of the indirect object is used with many intransitive verbs meaning *to favor, please, help, trust*, and their contraries; also *to believe, persuade, threaten, injure, envy, command, obey, serve, resist, pardon, and spare*; also with *temperō* meaning *to refrain*:

*cbiutātī persuāsit*, *he persuaded the state*, B. G. I. 2

*prima aciā victis resistit*, *the first line resists the vanquished*,

cf. B. G. I. 25

**Note.** Most of these verbs are transitive in English, take a direct object in the objective case, and are usually translated as if transitive. But in Latin the real idea is *to give a command to, to grant pardon to, to be obedient to*, etc., and the dative of the indirect object follows as a natural consequence.

*a. In the passive voice these verbs are used impersonally (§ 66), and the dative follows as with the active voice*:

*mihī quidem persuādetur*, *I am indeed persuaded (lit. it is persuaded to me)*, B. G. I. 40

84. **Dative with Compounds.** The dative of the indirect object is found after many verbs compounded with *ad, ante, con, dē, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super*, and sometimes *circum*:
SYNTAX — NOUNS

Iccius, qui tum oppidó praerat, Iccius, who was then in command of the town, B.G. II. 6

NOTE. Some of these verbs are transitive and some intransitive, the former taking both a direct and an indirect object:

para civitātis calamitātem popūlo intulerat, part of the state had brought disaster on the people, B.G. I. 12

a. The dative of the indirect object is used also with several compounds of bene and satis:

si Allobrogibus satisfaciētis, if you will make amends to the Allobroges, B.G. I. 14

85. Dative of Reference. The dative is used to denote the person or thing for whose benefit, or to whose injury, the action is performed:

omnēs in fugā sibi præsidium pōnēbant, all sought safety for themselves in flight, cf. B.G. II. 11

tōtius bellī imperium sibi postulant, they demand for themselves the command of the entire war, B.G. II. 4

86. Dative of Separation. Some verbs signifying to take away from, particularly compounds of ab, dē, and ex, take the dative:

scūtō militī dētrāctō, the shield being snatched from a soldier, B.G. II. 25

Rōmānī Haedūs libertātem ēripient, the Romans will take away liberty from the Haedui, cf. B.G. I. 17

NOTE. This dative differs from the ablative of separation (§ 101) in the fact that there is almost always an idea of advantage or disadvantage to the person concerned. It is thus closely connected with the dative of reference.

87. Dative of Apparent Agent. The dative is sometimes used to denote agency; regularly with the passive periphrastic conjugation (§ 222. II):

Segueās omnēs cruciātūs sunt perferendī, all tortures must be endured by the Sequani, B.G. I. 32

 omnibus Gallis idem est faciendum, the same thing must be done by all the Gauls, B.G. I. 31
88. Dative of Possession. The dative is used as a predicate with the verb *sum* to denote possession:

- *in mūro consistendi potestās erat nulli*, no one was able to keep his footing on the wall (lit. the possibility was to no one), B.G. II. 6
- *nullus aditus est ad eós mercātōribus*, traders have no access to them (lit. no access to them is to the traders), B.G. II. 15

Notice that the idea of motion (*to them*) is expressed by the accusative with *ad*, while the idea of possession (*to the traders*) is expressed by the dative.

89. Dative of Purpose or End. The dative is used to denote *purpose* or *end*, often with another dative denoting the person benefited or injured (§ 85):

- *pollicitus est sibi eam rem cūrae futūram*, he promised that he would look out for that matter (lit. that matter should be for a care to himself), B.G. I. 33
- *novissimīs praesidīō erant*, they were (for) a protection to the rear, B.G. I. 25

90. Dative with Adjectives. The dative is used with adjectives or adverbs denoting *nearness, likeness, fitness, service*, and their opposites:

- *finitimī Belgīs erant*, they were adjacent to the Belgæ, B.G. II. 2
- *castrīs idōneum locum dēlēgit*, he chose a place suitable for the camp, B.G. I. 49
- *proximī Gallīae sunt*, they are nearest to Gaul, cf. B.G. II. 3

**ACCUSATIVAE**

91. Direct Object. The *direct object* of a transitive verb is put in the accusative:

- *legātōs dē pāce mīsērunt*, they sent envoys in regard to peace, B.G. IV. 27

92. Subject of Infinitive. The subject of an infinitive is put in the accusative:

- *nostrōs nōn esse īnferiōres intellēxit*, he found that our men were not inferior, B.G. II. 8

Note. The subject of the historical infinitive (§ 218), is regularly in the nominative (§ 71).
93. Two Accusatives — Direct Object and Secondary Object. Some verbs of asking, demanding, and teaching may be followed by two accusatives—one (the direct object) of the person and the other (the secondary object) of the thing:

Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum flāgitāre, Cæsar demanded grain of the Hædui, B.G. I. 16

Note. This construction is found with ōrō, poscō, rogō, flāgitō, doceō, and a few other verbs.

a. With the passive of rogō and of verbs of teaching and a few others the accusative of the person becomes the subject, and the accusative of the thing is retained:

Active: agrōs Gallōs rogāvit, he asked the Gauls for territory
Passive: Galli agrōs rogāti sunt, the Gauls were asked for territory

94. Two Accusatives — Direct Object and Adjunct Accusative. Verbs of making, choosing, calling, regarding, showing, etc. often take a second accusative referring to the same person or thing as the direct object. This second object is called the adjunct accusative:

eum vergobretum appellant Hædui, the Hædui call him vergobretus,
cf. B.G. I. 16

Ariovistum amīcum appellant, they call Ariovistus friend

Note. In the passive the direct object becomes the subject nominative, and the adjunct accusative becomes the predicate nominative:

Ariovistus amicus appellātur, Ariovistus is called friend

95. Accusative with Compounds. Transitive verbs compounded with trāns may take, in addition to the direct object, a secondary object depending on the preposition:

trēs partēs cōpiārum Helvētīī id flūmen trāduxerant, the Helvetii had led three fourths of their forces across that river, cf. B.G. I. 12

Note. In the passive these verbs retain the secondary object:

Belgae Rhēnum trāductī sunt, the Belgae were led across the Rhine,
cf. B.G. II. 4

96. Accusative of Duration and Extent. The accusative denotes duration of time and extent of space:
haec magnam partem aequitas faciēbant, they continued to do this during a great part of the summer, B.G. III. 12
finēs in longituōinem mīla passuum CCXL patēbant, the territories extended in length two hundred and forty miles, cf. B.G. I. 2

97. Accusative of Place Whither. Place whither is regularly expressed by the accusative with the preposition ad or in; but with names of towns and the word domus, home, the preposition is omitted:

in Italian profectus est, he set out for Italy, B.G. II. 35
Rōmam ad senātum vēni, I came to Rome to the senate
Bibracte ire contendit, he hastened (to go) to Bibracte, B.G. I. 23
domum suam quisque revertitur, each returns to his home, cf. B.G. II. 10

Note. Ad is used with names of towns after verbs of motion when the meaning is to the neighborhood of instead of to:

ad Genāvam pervēnit, he came to (the vicinity of) Geneva, B.G. I. 7

98. Accusative of Kindred Meaning. An intransitive verb may be used with the accusative of a noun, or of a neuter pronoun or adjective of indefinite meaning, which has or suggests the same meaning as the verb:

id eis persuāsit, he persuaded them to this course (lit. he persuaded this (course) to them), B.G. I. 2

In this sentence id, the object of persuāsit, represents the persuasion itself, and so repeats the idea of the verb.

99. Adverbial Accusative. The accusative is often used with the force of an adverb:

nihil saxa timēbant, they did not fear the rocks at all, cf. B.G. III. 13
maximam partem lacte vivunt, they live for the most part on milk, B.G. IV. 1

In these sentences nihil and partem are used adverbially.
SYNTAX — NOUNS

VOCATIVE

100. The word denoting the person called or addressed is put in the vocative case. This has the same form as the nominative except in the singular of nouns in -us of the second declension, which have the vocative in -e:

ibi erunt Helvētī ubi eōs tū, Caesar, esse volueris, the Helvētī will be (in the place) where you, Cēsar, shall have wished them to be,
B.G. I. 13
et tū quoque, Brūte! and thou too, Brūtus!

ABLATIVE

101. Ablative of Separation. The ablative, with or without ab, dē, or ex, is used to denote separation:

hostem ā pugnā prohibēbant, they kept the enemy from battle, cf. B.G. IV. 34
proelīō supersedēre statuit, he decided to hold aloof from battle,
B.G. II. 8

a. When the place from which is the name of a town or the word domus, home, the ablative is used without a preposition:

erant itinera duo quibus itineribus domō exire possent, there were two routes by which they could go out from home, B.G. I. 6

Note. When the idea is not directly out of or from a town, but from the neighborhood of it, the preposition ab is used:

ab Ocelō in finēs Vocontiōrum pervēnit, he came from (the vicinity of) Ocelum into the territories of the Vocontiī, B.G. I. 10

102. Ablative of Origin. The ablative is used, with or without ab or ex, to denote the origin from which anything is derived:

initium orton est ab Ambiorīge, the beginning was made by (lit. arose from) Ambiorīx, B.G. V. 25
Piso amplissimō genere nātus est, Piso was born of most distinguished family, cf. B.G. IV. 12
103. Ablative of Material. The ablative is used with *ex* or *de* to denote the *material* of which anything consists:

*nāvēs factae sunt ex rōbore*, *the ships were made of oak*, cf. B. G. III. 13

104. Ablative of Agent. The *agent* or *doer* of an act is expressed after passive verbs by the ablative with *ā* or *ab*:

*ab nōn nūllīs Gallīs sollicitābantur*, *they were incited by some (of the)* Gauls, cf. B. G. II. 1

**Note.** When the agent is considered as a *means to an end*, the accusative with *per* is used:

*per trēs potentēs populus Galliæ potirī posse spērant*, *through three powerful nations they hope to be able to get possession of Gaul*, cf. B. G. I. 3

105. Ablative of Comparison. The comparative degree without *quam* is regularly followed by the ablative:

*celerius omnium opinione vēnit*, *he came more quickly than any one had expected* (lit. than the expectation of all), cf. B. G. II. 3

**Note 1.** The comparative may, however, be followed by *quam*, and the two things compared are then put in the same case:

*iūstitia est melior quam laus*, *justice is better than praise*

**Note 2.** After the comparatives *plús*, *minus*, *amplius*, and *longius*, without *quam*, a word of measure or number is often used in the case it would have if there were no comparative:

*aditus in lētitūdinem nōn amplius pedum CC relinquēbatur*, *an approach of not more than two hundred feet in width was left* (lit. an approach of two hundred feet — not more), B. G. II. 29

In this sentence *pedum* is the genitive of measure (§ 77. b), the construction it would have if *amplius* were not used.

106. Ablative of Means. The ablative is used without a preposition to denote the *means* or *instrument* of an action:

*equitātum suō sūmpτū alit*, *he maintains the cavalry at* (by means of) *his own expense*, cf. B. G. I. 18

*a. The ablative of means is used to denote the* way by which: *

*eōdem itinere contendit*, *he hastened by the same route*, B. G. I. 21
107. Ablative with Special Words. The ablative is used:

a. With the verbs utor, fruor, fungor, potior, versus, and their compounds:

Caesar idem ducibus usus est, Caesar employed the same guides, cf. B. G. II. 7

castris nostris potiti sunt, our men got possession of the camp, B. G. I. 26
commodis fruuntur, they enjoy advantages, cf. B. G. III. 22

Note. Potior may take the genitive (§ 81. d).

b. With the verbs fidō, confidō, nitor, and the verbal adjective frētus:

de Crassus non multum confidēbat, Crassus placed little reliance in these, cf. B. G. III. 25
Sōtiātēs superiōribus vīctorīs frētī sunt, the Sotiates relied on their former victories, cf. B. G. III. 21

c. With opus est and usus est, there is need:

opus factō est, there is need of action, cf. B. G. I. 42

Note. Opus may be used as a predicate with the thing needed as subject nominative. The person needing is in the dative:

si quid mihi opus est, if I need anything

108. Ablative of Value or Price. With verbs of buying and selling the price is expressed by the ablative:

parvō pretiō redempta, bought in at a low price, B. G. I. 18

Note. For the genitive of value see § 78.

109. Ablative of Cause. The ablative, with or without a preposition, is used to express cause:

Dumnorix grātiā plūrimum poterat, Dumnorix had great power because of his influence, B. G. I. 9

Note. The ablatives causā and grātiā, for the sake, regularly follow a noun in the genitive:

huius potentiae causā, for the sake of this power, B. G. I. 18

110. Ablative of Manner. The manner of an action is expressed by the ablative, either with an adjective modifier or with cum, sometimes with both:
nūdō corpore pugnant, they fight with body unprotected, cf. B.G. I. 25
magnō cum strepitū ēgressī sunt, they went forth with great din, cf. B.G. II. 11

111. Ablative of Accordance. The ablative may express that in accordance with which anything is, or is done, often with ex or dē:

Instrūtō suō Caesar cōpiās suās ēdūxit, Caesar led out his forces according to his custom; B.G. I. 50

112. Ablative of Attendant Circumstance. The circumstance or situation under which an action occurs is expressed by the ablative:

eam rem imperīō nostrō cōnsequī nōn poterant, they could not accomplish that under our sway, cf. B.G. II. 1

113. Ablative of Accompaniment. The ablative is used to denote accompaniment, regularly with cum:

intellegō quantō id cum periculō fēcerim, I know with how great danger I did that, B.G. I. 17
cum pueris mulieribusque, with children and women, B.G. II. 28

Note. With some military expressions cum may be omitted; the noun is then regularly modified by an adjective:

Caesar subsequētūr omnibus cōpiās, Caesar followed with all his forces, B.G. II. 19

a. Verbs of contention and the like require cum:

cum Gērmānīs contendunt, they fight with the Germans, B.G. I. 1

114. Ablative of Measure of Difference. With words that express or imply comparison the ablative is used to denote the measure of difference:

alterum iter erat multō facilius, the other route was much easier (lit. easier by much), cf. B.G. I. 6
ā mūlibus passuum circiter duōbus Rōmānōrum adventum exspectābant, about two miles away they were awaiting the arrival of the Romans (lit. off (ā) by two miles), B.G. V. 32. The preposition ā is here used as an adverb
115. Ablative of Respect. The ablative denotes *in what respect* something is true:

*linguā inter sē dīferunt, they differ from one another in language,*
B. G. I. 1

*infirmitōres animō, dispirited (lit. weaker in respect to courage),*
B. G. III. 24

116. Ablative of Description or Quality. The ablative with an adjective modifier is used to denote quality or kind:

*hominēs inimīcō animō, men of unfriendly disposition, B. G. I. 7*

a. Either the genitive (§ 77) or ablative may be used in description, but in general:

1. Statements of *measure, number, time, and space* are in the genitive.

2. Physical qualities are in the ablative.

*mūrum pedum sēdecim perdūcit, he extended a wall (of) sixteen feet,*
B. G. I. 8

*Germanī ingenti magnītūdine corporum sunt, the Germans are of great size of body, cf. B. G. I. 39*

b. The ablative of description, like the genitive of description, may be used as the predicate of a sentence; cf. *magnītūdine* in the last example.

117. Ablative Absolute. The ablative of a noun or pronoun with a participle expressed or understood in agreement may be used absolutely, that is, grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence.

While grammatically independent, the ablative absolute has a logical relation to the rest of the sentence. This relation is best expressed in translation by changing the ablative absolute into a clause introduced by *if, when, since, though, etc.*

The ablative absolute may express the following relations:

a. Condition:

*ā quibus nōs dēfendere, trādītīs armīs, nōn pōterimus, from these we cannot defend ourselves if we surrender our arms (lit. our arms having been surrendered), B. G. II. 31*
b. Time:

inis aestūte Q. Pedīum mīsit, in the beginning of summer (lit. summer having been begun) he sent Quintus Pedius, B.G. II. 2

c. Cause:

Caesarem certīōrem faciunt sēsē, depopulātīs agrīs, nōn facile ab oppīdis vim hostium prohibēre, they inform Cæsar that, since their fields have been laid waste, they cannot easily ward off the violence of the enemy from their towns (lit. their fields having been laid waste), B.G. I. 11

d. Concession:

turribus excitātīs, tamen hās altitūdō puppium ex barbarīs nāvibus superābat, even though towers had been erected, nevertheless the height of the sterns of the barbarian ships rose above them (lit. towers having been erected), B.G. III. 14

e. Circumstance:

ea omnia, inscientibus ipsis, fēcerat, he had done all those things without their knowledge (lit. they being unaware), cf. B.G. I. 19

f. Means:

nāvibus ūncīs, conātī sunt, they tried by means of joining boats (lit. boats having been joined), cf. B.G. I. 8

118. Special Constructions of the Ablative Absolute. A noun (or pronoun) with an adjective, or a noun (or pronoun) with a noun, may form an ablative absolute construction without an accompanying participle. This occurs when the sense demands the present participle of sum, which is lacking in Latin:

Sēquānis invitās, Iēr nōn poterant, if the Sequani should be unwilling, they could not go (lit. the Sequani (being) unwilling), B.G. I. 9

ea omnia, mē invitā, fēcisti, you have done all those things against my will (lit. I (being) unwilling), cf. B.G. I. 19

in, M. Messālā et M. Piso consūlibus, coniūrātiōnem fēcit, he made a conspiracy in the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso (lit. Messala and Piso (being) consuls), B.G. I. 2
119. Ablative of Time. The time at which or within which is expressed by the ablative:

eō tempore principātum in civitāte obtinēbat, at that time he held the chief position in the state, B.G. I. 3

paucis annis omnēs ex Galliae finibus pellentur, within a few years all will be driven from the territories of Gaul, B.G. I. 31

Note. Duration of time is sometimes expressed by the ablative instead of by the accusative (§ 96):

eā tōtā nocte continenter iērunt, they marched uninterrupted during that entire night, B.G. I. 26

120. Ablative of Place Where. Place where is regularly expressed by the ablative with the preposition in. Names of towns omit the preposition:

in Germānōrum finibus bellum gerunt, they wage war in the territories of the Germans, cf. B.G. I. 1

proelium Philippī factum est, the battle was fought at Philippi

a. The so-called locative case is used instead of the ablative of place in the singular of the names of towns of the first and second declensions; also domī, at home. The locative case ends in -ae in the first declension, and in -i in the second, being just like the genitive singular:

conciliō Gallōrum Samārobrivae perāctō, after a council of the Gauls had been brought to an end at Samārobriva, B.G. V. 24

Caesar Avaricī complūrēs diēs commorātus, Caesar after tarrying several days at Avaricum, B.G. VII. 32

domī nihil erat, there was nothing at home, B.G. I. 28

b. The preposition is regularly omitted with the ablatives locō, locīs, parte, partibus, when they are modified by an adjective or a genitive:

alienō locō proelium committunt, they join battle in an unfavorable place, B.G. I. 15

Note 1. The way by which is put in the ablative case without a preposition:

frūmentum fiūmine Aart subvexerat, he had brought grain up the river Sabine, cf. B.G. I. 16

Note 2. For expressions denoting the place from which see § 101. a.
ADJECTIVES

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

121. Adjectives have in general the same distinctions of meaning for the positive, comparative, and superlative degrees as in English:
   altus, high; altior, higher; altissimus, highest

122. The comparative of an adjective sometimes denotes merely a high degree of the quality:
   si quid erat dūrius, if there was any uncommonly hard (task), B.G. I. 48

123. The superlative of an adjective sometimes denotes simply a very high degree of the quality:
   mōns altissimus impendēbat, a very high mountain overhung, B.G. I. 6

124. The superlative of an adjective with quam preceding denotes the highest degree possible of the quality:
   quam maximum numerum coemēbant, they purchased the largest number possible, B.G. I. 3

SPECIAL USES OF ADJECTIVES

125. The adjectives medius, imus, summus, and reliquus may denote a part of the object described:
   in colle mediō aciem instrūxit, he drew up a line of battle in the middle of the hill, B.G. I. 24
   summus mōns à Labiēnō tenēbatur, the top of the mountain was held by Labienus, cf. B.G. I. 22

126. An adjective in regular agreement with a noun sometimes has the meaning of an adverb:
   animadvertit Caesar Sāquanōs trīstēs terram intuērī, Cæsar noticed that the Sequani sadly kept their eyes upon the ground, B.G. I. 32

127. Adjectives are often used substantively, that is, like nouns:
   nostri magnum numerum eōrum occidērunt, our (men) slew a large number of them, B.G. II. 10
PRONOUNS

128. Pronouns in general may be used either as substantives or as adjectives, and the rules for nouns and adjectives apply to them accordingly. In their substantive use they are properly called pronouns. In their adjective use they should be called pronominal adjectives.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

129. Nominative Use. The nominative forms of the personal pronouns, ego, tū, nōs, and vōs, are not used except for emphasis.

_ego certē meum officium praesitītērō, I, at least, will have done my duty_, B.G. IV. 25

130. Personal Pronouns of the Third Person. There are no regular personal pronouns of the third person, their place being supplied by a demonstrative, generally_is_ (§ 135):

_iēgātōs ad Caesarem misērunt sēque et dēdīdērunt, they sent envoys to Caesar and surrendered to him_, B.G. II. 28

POSSESSIVE PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES

131. The possessive pronominal adjectives, _meus, tuus, noster, vester, suus_, agree in gender, number, and case with the word they modify, not with the word denoting the possessor:

_puella librōs meōs habet, the girl has my books_

Here the possessive, _meōs_, agrees with _librōs_, the things possessed, although this is plural masculine accusative, while the possessor, _puella_, is singular feminine nominative.

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

132. Direct Reflexives. The reflexive pronoun, _sui, sibi, se_, and its possessive adjective, _suus, -a, -um_, regularly refer to the subject of the clause in which they stand:

_se suaque dēdīdērunt, they surrendered themselves and their property_,

B.G. II. 15
133. Indirect Reflexives. In a subordinate clause the reflexive and its possessive adjective often refer back to the subject of the main clause. They are then called indirect reflexives:

dat negotium Galli uti sé certiorem faciant, he directs the Gauls to inform him, cf. B. G. I. 2

NOTE. The reflexive, sibi, sibi, sé, refers to the third person only. For the first and second persons the personal pronouns are used as reflexives, thus:

**Singular**
- laudō mē, I praise myself
- laudās tē, you praise yourself
- laudat sé, he praises himself

**Plural**
- laudāmus nōs, we praise ourselves
- laudātis nōs, you praise yourselves
- laudant sé, they praise themselves

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

134. Hic and Ille. Hic refers to something near; ille to something remote. Their most common meaning is conveyed by the words this and that:

mea haec est Gallia, sicut illa vestra, this (part of) Gaul is mine, just as that (part) is yours, cf. B. G. I. 44

a. When hic and ille are used together, hic generally refers to the latter of two objects, and ille to the former:

hi rūreas in vicem annō post in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent, the latter (just mentioned) again in their turn are in arms the year after, the former (mentioned previously) remain at home, B. G. IV. 1

135. Is. Is as a demonstrative pronoun may mean either this or that.

Is is often used as a personal pronoun of the third person (he, she, it, her, him, them):

e filiam dat, he gives (to) him his daughter, B. G. I. 3
THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN

136. The intensive pronoun, *ipse*, standing either alone or in agreement with another word, expresses emphasis or contrast. Its use must be carefully distinguished from that of the reflexive, particularly as we use the word *self* in translating both. The following examples illustrate the difference:

sap laudat, *he* praises *himself*; *ipse* puerum laudat, *he* himself praises the boy

a. *Ipse* is sometimes used in place of the indirect reflexive (§ 133):

si quid *ipse* a Caesare opus esset, (he said) if *he* needed anything from Caesar (lit. if any need was to *himself*), B.G. I. 34

b. *Ipse* is often used in the genitive case with a possessive pronoun to strengthen the possessive idea:

suā *ipsōrum* linguā ātuntur, they employ their own language
suum *ipsius* exercitum habet, *he* has his own army

RELATIVE PRONOUNS

137. General Rule. Relative pronouns agree with their antecedents in gender and number, but their case depends on their construction in the clause in which they are found:

Sabinus, cum eis cópiis quās a Caesāre accéperat, Sabinus, with those forces which he had received from Caesar, B.G. III. 17

138. Agreement with a Predicate Noun or Appositive. A relative pronoun regularly agrees with a predicate noun or appositive in its own clause, rather than with its antecedent:

Vesontiō, quod est oppidum maximum Sēquanōrum, Vesontio, which is the largest town of the Sequani, B.G. I. 38

139. Relative Clause preceding. A relative clause when emphatic precedes the clause containing the antecedent:

quōrum per finēs ierant, his imperāvit, *he* ordered these through whose territories they had gone, B.G. I. 28
140. Antecedent in the Relative Clause. The antecedent of a relative pronoun is sometimes placed in the relative clause:
   
   quam fecerat classem iubet convenire, he ordered the fleet which he had built up to assemble (lit. what fleet he had etc.), B.G. IV. 21

141. Repetition of the Antecedent. The antecedent is sometimes repeated with the relative:

   erant itinera duo, quibus itineribus domō exīrē possent, there were two ways by which (ways) they could go out from home, B.G. I. 6

142. Omission of the Antecedent. The antecedent may be omitted if it is a pronoun or an indefinite word:

   quī cognōscerant misit, he sent (men) to reconnoiter, B.G. I. 21

143. Relative beginning a New Sentence. A relative pronoun, referring to an antecedent in the preceding sentence, often stands at the beginning of a new sentence. In such cases the relative is best translated by a personal or demonstrative pronoun:

   quī cum eum in itinere convĕnissent etc., when these had met him on the way etc., B.G. I. 27
   nostri nōn eādem alacritātē ētēbantur. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās removērī iussit, our men did not exert themselves with the same eagerness. When Caesar noticed this, he ordered the ships of war to be removed, B.G. IV. 24, 25

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

144. The indefinite pronouns and adjectives are used to indicate that some person or thing is meant without designating which one; some of the most common and their uses are:

a. Quis, some one, any one, some, any, is the least exact of the indefinites, and stands generally after sī, nisi, nē, or num; quīdam, a certain one, a certain, is the most definite:

   sī quis dīcit, if anybody says
   vērētur nē quis veniat, he fears that some one may come
   quīdam ex militibus dīxit, a certain one of the soldiers said, B.G. I. 42
b. *Aliquis, some one, some*, is more definite than *quis*:

*a liquis dicit, some one may say*

c. *Quisquam, any one, and the indefinite adjective nullus, any*, are used commonly in negative sentences, and in sentences implying a negative:

*Cur quisquam iūdicāret? why should any one judge? B.G. I. 40*

*neque ulla necessitāte continebantur, nor were they restrained by any necessity, B.G. II. 11*

d. *Alius, another, and alter, the other (of two), when used in pairs have the following meanings:*

*Alius . . . alius, one . . . another*

*Alii . . . alii, some . . . others*

*Alteri . . . alteri, the one party . . . the other*

1. *Alius used twice in different cases in the same clause expresses just half the meaning conveyed:*

*Alius alia ex nāvi sé adstrēgābat, they gathered, (one from one ship,)*

*another from another ship, B.G. IV. 26*

*Alii aliam in partem ferebantur, they rushed, (some in one direction,)*

*others in another direction, B.G. II. 24*

**ADVERBS**

145. Adverbs in the comparative degree, like adjectives (§§ 122, 123), may indicate merely a high degree of what they express without denoting real comparison. The superlative also may express a very high degree, instead of the highest:

*sē diūtius dūcis intellēxit, he realised that he was being put off too long, B.G. I. 16*

*Plūrinum domī poterat, he was very powerful at home, cf. B.G. I. 20*

**NEGATIVE ADVERBS**

146. The usual negative adverb is *nōn*; this is regular with the indicative mood.

*a. Nōn combined with another negative word, as nullus, makes an indefinite affirmative: nōn nullī, some*
147. *Ne* is used with the subjunctive denoting negative purpose, will, or desire; this includes commands in indirect discourse:

ad haec constittit ne tempus dimitteret, he took his stand by these
that he might not lose time, B.G. II. 21
quae re ne committeret, (he told him) that he should therefore not
bring it to pass, B.G. I. 13

PREPOSITIONS

148. Prepositions are used with the accusative and ablative cases.

149. Prepositions with the Accusative. The prepositions used with the accusative are ad, adversus, ante, apud, circá, circum, circiter, cís, citrā, contrā, ergā, extrā, in, intrā, inter, intrá, iūxtā, ob, penes, per, post, praeter, prope, propter, secundum, sub, super, suprā, trāns, ultrā, versus.

Note. The adjectives proprius, proximus, and the adverbs proprius, proximē, sometimes govern the accusative like prepositions:

proximē Rhēnum, next to the Rhine; propius tumulum, nearer the mound

150. Prepositions with the Ablative. The prepositions used with the ablative are a (ab, abs), cōram, cum, dē, e (ex), in, prae, prō, sine, sub, tenus.

a. Cum is attached to the ablative of the personal, reflexive, interrogative, and relative pronouns as an enclitic:

nēmō mēcum sine suā perniciē contendit, no one has striven with me
without his destruction, B.G. I. 36
hunc sēcum habēre in prīmis constituerat, him especially he had de-
cided to keep with him, B.G. V. 6
proximī sunt Germānīs, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt, they are
nearest to the Germans, with whom they continually wage war,
B.G. I. 1

Note. In and sub govern both cases. With the accusative they denote
motion toward a place; with the ablative rest in a place:

exercitum sub iugum mittit, he sends the army under the yoke
in oppidō manet, he remains in the town
SYNTAX — VERBS

CONJUNCTIONS

151. Conjunctions connect words, phrases, and clauses of the same rank, or main clauses with subordinate clauses.

a. Coördinating Conjunctions. Coördinating conjunctions (connecting expressions of equal rank) are such words as et, atque, ac, -que, enim, sed, autem, etc.

b. Subordinating Conjunctions. Subordinating conjunctions (connecting dependent clauses with the clauses upon which they depend) are such words as cum, antequam, quod, si, etsi, quamvis, etc.

VERBS

152. Terms. The terms transitive, intransitive, impersonal, voice (active and passive), mood, tense, etc. are used in general as in English.

TENSES AND MOODS

TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE

153. Present Tense. The present tense represents an action or state as now taking place or existing:

hōrum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae; the Belgae are the bravest of all these, B.G. I. 1

a. Historical Present. The present is sometimes used instead of a past tense to describe a past action more vividly:

ad Galbam accurrunt atque docent etc., they rush up to Galba and point out etc., B.G. III. 5

Note. The historical present may be translated by either a present or a past tense.

154. Past Descriptive Tense. The past descriptive tense is used:

a. To denote an action going on in past time:

Helvētiī agrōs populābantur, the Helvetii were devastating the fields, B.G. I. 11

1 The past descriptive is often called the imperfect.
b. In description:

mōns altissimus impendēbat, a very high mountain overhung, B.G. I. 6

c. To denote an action as attempted, as customary, or as begun:

nōstrōs prohibēbant, they tried to keep back our men, B.G. V. 9

ē in proxima oppida recipēbant, they (regularly) retreated to the nearest town, B.G. III. 12

suspicābātur, he was beginning to suspect, B.G. IV. 31

Note. In narration the forward steps of the action are in the perfect tense, descriptive passages in the past descriptive.

155. Future Tense. The future tense denotes an act or state that will take place in the future:

vōbiscum pācem faciam, I will make peace with you, B.G. I. 14

156. Perfect Tense. The perfect tense has two uses. It may represent:

a. An action as now completed (present perfect). It is then translated with the English auxiliary have:

utī suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, as I have shown above, B.G. II. 1

b. An action or state as a fact in past time (past absolute):

ēō exercitum dūxīt, he led his army thither, B.G. III. 28

Note. The past participle with hābeō has almost the same meaning as a perfect active, but denotes the continued effect of the action of the verb:

vectigālia redempta habet, he has bought up the revenues, B.G. I. 18

157. Past Perfect Tense. The past perfect tense represents an action as completed in past time:

Helvētīi iam suās cōplās trādūxerant, the Helvetii had already led their troops across, B.G. I. 11

158. Future Perfect Tense. The future perfect tense represents the action as completed in the future:

ubī cōnstitueris, where you shall have determined, B.G. I. 13

1 The past perfect is often called the pluperfect.
TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

In Independent Clauses

159. When the subjunctive is used independently, its tense values are as follows:

a. The present and perfect subjunctive refer to future time:
   
   eāmus (§ 172. a), let us go
   nē dēspexerīs (§ 172. c), do not despise

   Note. Exhortations, wishes, commands, etc., from their very nature, refer to the future. Eāmus and dēspexerīs above imply that the acts are not yet performed.

b. The past subjunctive generally refers to present time, but sometimes to past time:
   
   utinam scīberet (§ 172. e. 2), O that he were writing (now). This implies that the act is not now going on
   quid fācerem? (§ 172. d'), what was I to do?
   tum vīderēs (§ 172. f), then you might have seen

   c. The past perfect subjunctive refers to past time:
   
   utinam scīpsisset (§ 172. e. 3), O that he had written (then). This implies that the act was not then performed

In Dependent Clauses

160. In dependent clauses the tenses of the subjunctive are determined by the tenses of the main verb, and conform to the rule for the sequence of tenses.

161. Sequence of Tenses. The tenses of the indicative and subjunctive are classified as primary and secondary. The primary tenses are those referring to present or future time; the secondary tenses are those referring to past time.

1 The past subjunctive is often called the imperfect, and the past perfect the pluperfect.
The following table represents this division, the primary tenses being marked (1) and the secondary tenses (2):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(1) Present</td>
<td>(1) Present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2) Past descriptive</td>
<td>(2) Past</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1) Future</td>
<td>(1) Perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2) Perfect (past absolute, § 156. b)</td>
<td>(2) Past perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2) Past perfect</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1) Future perfect</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I. The present and past subjunctive denote incomplete action (that is, present or future with reference to the main verb), and their use by the rule for sequence of tenses is shown below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I ask</td>
<td>quaeō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I asked</td>
<td>quaeōbam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I shall ask</td>
<td>quaeōm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I asked</td>
<td>quaeōm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I had asked</td>
<td>quaeōveram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I shall have asked</td>
<td>quaeōverō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quid dicit (1) what he says</td>
<td>quid diceret (2) what he said</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

II. The perfect and past perfect subjunctive denote completed action (that is, past with reference to the main verb), and their use by the rule for sequence of tenses is shown below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I ask</td>
<td>quaeō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I asked</td>
<td>quaeōbam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I shall ask</td>
<td>quaeōm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I asked</td>
<td>quaeōm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I had asked</td>
<td>quaeōveram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I shall have asked</td>
<td>quaeōverō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quid dixiet (1) what he said</td>
<td>quid dixisset (2) what he had said</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

From this use of tenses follows the rule:

162. Primary tenses in the indicative are followed by primary tenses in the subjunctive, and secondary by secondary.
163. Exceptions. Occasional exceptions to sequence occur, especially in long passages:

a. Sometimes a secondary tense of the indicative is followed by a primary tense of the subjunctive:

respondit sī obsidēs dentur sēsē pācem esse factūrum, he replied that he would make peace if hostages should be given, B.G. I. 14

b. The perfect indicative, when past absolute (§156. b), is regularly a secondary tense; but when used as a present perfect (§156. a) it may be followed by the primary sequence:

ita didicimus ut magis virtūte contendāmus, we have been so trained that we strive more by courage, B.G. I. 13

c. A perfect subjunctive, particularly in clauses of result (§179), may follow a secondary tense:

temporis tanta fuit exiguitās ut tempus defuerit, so short was the time that there was no opportunity, B.G. II. 21

164. Historical Present. The historical present (§153. a) allows either primary or secondary sequence:

diem dicunt quā diē conveniant, they appoint a day on which (day) they shall assemble, B.G. I. 6

esse spem docent, sī extremum auxilium experimentur, they showed that there was hope, if they should try a last resource, B.G. III. 5

165. Historical Infinitive. The historical infinitive (§218) is regularly followed by a secondary tense:

interim cotidiē Caesar Haeduōs frumentum, quod essent policiti, flāgiūre, meanwhile Cæsar demanded of the Hādui every day the grain which they had promised, B.G. I. 16

Tenses of the Infinitive

166. a. Not in Indirect Discourse. Except in indirect discourse (§203) only the present and perfect infinitives are used; the present represents the action of the verb as in progress with no distinct reference to time, the perfect as completed.

bellum gerere dēbet, he ought to be waging war
pudet mē hoc fēcisse, I am ashamed to have done this
b. In Indirect Discourse. In indirect discourse the tenses of the infinitive denote a time that is present, past, or future with reference to the time denoted by the verb of saying etc. by which the indirect discourse is introduced. Thus:

1. The present infinitive expresses the same time as that of the verb of saying:
   
   dicit esse spem, he says that there is hope  
   dicēbat esse spem, he said that there was hope  
   dicet esse spem, he will say that there is hope

2. The perfect infinitive expresses time before that of the verb of saying:
   
   dicit fuisse spem, he says that there was hope  
   dicēbat fuisse spem, he said that there had been hope  
   dicet fuisse spem, he will say that there was hope

3. The future infinitive expresses time later than that of the verb of saying:
   
   dicit futūram esse spem, he says that there will be hope  
   dicēbat futūram esse spem, he said that there would be hope  
   dicet futūram esse spem, he will say that there will be hope

Tenses of the Participle

167. The tenses of the participle, like those of the infinitive in indirect discourse (§ 166. b), express a time present, past, or future with reference to the verb with which it is used:

haec fēns ā Caesare petītī, weeping he asked this from Caesar,  
B. G. I. 20

dē his rēbus certior factus, trānseuntēs adgressus est, when he had been informed of these matters, he attacked them as they were crossing  
(lit. having been informed, he attacked (them) crossing)
SYNTAX — VERBS

Moods in Independent Sentences

The Indicative in Independent Sentences

168. The indicative mood is used to state a real or an assumed fact or to ask a question.

169. Statement of Facts. Any form of the indicative may be used to state a real or an assumed fact:

*est aliud iter, there is another road*
*Ariovistus fuit rex, Ariovistus was king*
*Caesar veniet, Caesar will come*

170. Questions. A question may be asked, as in English, by the use of an interrogative pronoun or adverb:

*quis hoc fecit? who did this?*
*ubi est puer? where is the boy?*

_a._ Questions that may be answered by "yes" or "no" have no introductory interrogative in English, but in Latin are regularly introduced by the interrogative particles -ne, nonne, or num.

1. If information only is sought, and no particular answer suggested, the enclitic -ne is added to the first word:

*scribitne epistulam? is he writing the letter?*

2. Nonne expects an affirmative answer:

*non ne epistulam scribit? he is writing the letter, is he not? or, is he not writing the letter?*

3. Num expects a negative answer:

*num epistulam scribit? he is not writing the letter, is he?*

_b._ A double, or alternative, question asks which of two supposed cases is true.

1. The first member of a double question is generally introduced by utrum or -ne (neither of which is to be translated); the second member by an, or:

*utrum scribet, an veniet? will he write, or come?*
*scribetne, an veniet? will he write, or come?*
LATIN GRAMMAR

Note. Frequently the first member has no introductory word:

scribet, an veniet? will he write, or come?

2. If the second member means simply or not, annōn is used in
direct questions, necne in indirect questions (§ 201):

scribitne annōn? is he writing or not?
quaerō scribatne necne, I ask whether he is writing or not
déclārābant utrum ex úsū esset necne, they announced whether it was
advantageous or not, cf. B.G. I. 50

171. Rhetorical Questions. A rhetorical question is one that is
asked simply for effect, and seeks no information:

tālēane iniūriās perferre possum? can I endure such injuries?

THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES

172. The subjunctive is used in independent sentences to express:
a. Exhortation, in the first person plural, present tense; the
   negative is nē:

   nē hōs latrōnēs interficiāmus, let us not kill these robbers, cf. B.G.
   VII. 36

b. Command, in the third person, present tense:

   obsidēs reddat, let him return the hostages, B.G. I. 35

c. Negative Command, or Prohibition, with the negative nē:

   nē despexerīs or nē despiciās, do not despise

Note 1. Negative command is generally expressed, however, by nōli, nōlitē,
with the present infinitive. See § 173. note.

Note 2. The uses under a, b, and c are often called volitive (from volō,
will) subjunctives, since they express an act of the will.

d. Deliberation, in questions implying doubt, perplexity, or
   indignation:

   quam ratiōnem pugnae īnsistam? what plan of battle shall I adopt?
   cf. B.G. III. 14

   cūr despērētis? why should you despair? B.G. I. 40

Note. Such questions are usually rhetorical (§ 171) in character.
e. Wish (Optative Subjunctive), often with utinam. The negative is nōn. The three forms of wishes and their expression in Latin are as follows:

1. A future wish regarded as possible of fulfillment; present (less frequently perfect) subjunctive, with or without utinam:

   (utinam) scribat
   (utinam) scripsisset

   } may he write

2. A wish unfulfilled in present time; past subjunctive with utinam:

   utinam scriberet, would (or I wish) that he were writing

3. A wish unfulfilled in past time; past perfect subjunctive with utinam:

   utinam scripsisset, would (or I wish) that he had written

f. Possibility (Potential Subjunctive), to express what may be or might be. The negative is nōn:

   aliquis dicat, some one may say
   tum vidērēs, then you might have seen

Note. The subjunctive denoting possibility is often used as the conclusion of an expressed or implied condition:

   laudētur (si hoc faciat), he would be praised (if he should do this)
   laudāretur (si hoc faceret), he would be praised (if he were doing this)
   laudātus esset (si hoc fēcisset), he would have been praised (if he had done this)

The Imperative

173. The imperative is used to express a command or entreaty:

   "desīlite," inquit, "commilitōnēs," "leap down, fellow soldiers,"
   he said, B. G. IV. 25

Note. A negative command, or prohibition, is regularly expressed by nōlī, nōlite, with the infinitive (§ 172. c. note 1):

   nōlī committere, do not bring it to pass, cf. B. G. I. 13
CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

174. Clauses denoting the purpose of an action are usually introduced by ut, that (in order that), affirmative; and ne, that not, lest, negative; and stand in the subjunctive mood:

non nulli ut timoris suspicione vent remanebant, some remained that they might avoid the suspicion of fear, B.G. I. 39
ne graviore bello occurreret ad exercitum proficiscitur, he set out for the army that he might not meet with too serious a war, B.G. IV. 6

175. Relative Clauses of Purpose. A purpose clause may be introduced by a relative pronoun or adverb:

legatoe mittunt quid dicerent, they sent envoys to say (lit. who should say), B.G. I. 7

176. Relative Purpose Clauses containing a Comparative. Purpose clauses containing a comparative are regularly introduced by quod, which is equivalent to ut eoque:

manu auxiisse iussit quod facilius gladiis ut possent, he gave orders to open the ranks that they might be able to use their swords more easily, B.G. II. 25

NOTE. For substantive clauses of purpose see (§ 183). Purpose may be expressed also by the gerund (§§ 223, 225), the gerundive (§§ 224, 225), or the supine (§ 226. a).

CLAUSES OF DESCRIPTION OR CHARACTERISTIC

177. A relative clause that describes an antecedent by telling what kind of person or thing it is, is called a clause of description or characteristic, and takes the subjunctive:

domi nihil erat quod famem tolerarent, there was nothing at home whereby they could allay hunger, B.G. I. 28
SYNTAX — VERBS

a. Relative clauses of description are especially common after such expressions as est qui, sunt qui, unus est qui, solum est qui:

_eras omniō itinera duo quibus itineribus domō exīre possent, there were in all two ways by which they could go out from home_, B.G. I. 6

_unus sum qui addūcī nōn potuerim, I am the only one who could not be influenced_, B.G. I. 31

178. A relative clause that simply tells _what_ person or thing the antecedent is, instead of _what kind_ it is, or one that only _adds a fact_ without which the antecedent clause would still be complete, takes the indicative:

_ubi ea diēs quam cōnstituerat cum lēgātīs vēnit, negat sē posse etc., when the day which he had decided upon with the envoys came, he said that he could not etc_, B.G. I. 8

_Quam cōnstituerat tells what day, not what kind of day_.

_auxilia ex Britannia, quae contrā eās regiōnēs posita est, arcessunt, they summoned reinforcements from Britain, which is situated opposite to those regions_, B.G. III. 9

The antecedent clause makes complete sense without the _quaē_ clause.

For relative clauses of description denoting cause see § 190.

**Clauses of Result**

179. Clauses that express the result of some act or state mentioned in the main clause are introduced by _ut, so that_, and take the subjunctive mood. The negative in clauses of result is _nōn_:

_mōns impendēbat, ut facile perpauci prohibēre possent, a mountain towered above, so that a very few (men) could easily keep (them) back_, B.G. I. 6

 collateral nāscēbatur silvestris, _ut nōn facile intrōrus perspicī posset, a hill rose, wooded, so that a view within could not easily be gained_, B.G. II. 18
NOTE. A result clause may often be recognized by the presence in the main clause of some word meaning *so, so great, such*, etc., like *ita, sic, tansus, tālis*, etc.:

*ita Helvētii institūti sunt ut fōsēs accipere consūrēnt*, the Helvetii have been so trained that they are accustomed to take hostages, B.G. I. 14

180. Relative Clauses of Result. A clause of result may be introduced by a relative pronoun or adverb:

*nēmō est tam senex quī sē annum nōn putet posse vīvere, no one is so old that he does not think* (lit. who does not think) *that he can live for a year*

NOTE. Relative clauses of purpose or result may often be tested by noting whether *ut* with a personal or demonstrative pronoun can be substituted for the relative. In the last sentence *ut* is might have been used instead of *quī*.

For substantive clauses of result see § 187.

SUBSTANTIVE, OR NOUN, CLAUSES

181. A substantive clause is one that is used like a noun, that is, as the subject or object of a verb, or as an appositive or predicate.

182. *Quod* Clauses of Fact. Substantive clauses introduced by *quod, that*, take the indicative to state a fact:

*quod glōriāmīnt, eōdem pertinet, (the fact) that you boast, amounts to the same thing*, B.G. I. 14

The *quod* clause is the subject of *pertinet*.

*hōc est miserōr fortūna, quod nē in occultō quidēm querī audent, their lot is the more pitiful in this, that they do not dare to complain even in secret*, B.G. I. 32

The *quod* clause is in apposition with *hōc*.

a. *Quod* at the beginning of a sentence often has the meaning *as to the fact that*:

*quod improvisor ūnum pāgum adortus es etc., as to the fact that you attacked one canton unexpectedly etc.*, B.G. I. 13

183. Substantive Clauses of Purpose. Substantive clauses with *ut* or *nē* and the subjunctive are used after verbs of commanding, persuading,
requesting, urging, wishing, and similar verbs whose action is directed toward the future:

his uti conquirent imperāvit, he ordered these to hunt (them) up
(lit. that they should hunt (them) up), B.G. I. 28
persuādet Castiō ut régnum occuparet, he persuades Casticus to seize
the supreme power (lit. that he should seize), B.G. I. 3

In these sentences the ut clause is used as object.

dat negotium Senonibus ut ea cognōscant, he employs the Senones to
find this out (lit. he gives employment to the Senones etc.), B.G. II. 2

Here the ut clause is in apposition with negotium.

erat ei praeceptum nē proelium committeret, it had been enjoined on
him that he should not engage in battle, B.G. I. 22

Here the nē clause is the subject of erat praeceptum.

Note. Cōnor, iubeō, patiō, volō, nōlō, and mālō take the infinitive:

nāvēs longās paulum removērī iussit, he ordered the ships of war to be
withdrawn a little, B.G. IV. 25

184. Substantive Clauses after Verbs of Fearing. After verbs of
fearing substantive clauses with the subjunctive are introduced by nē,
rendered that, lest, or by ut, rendered that not:

verēbantur nē ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur, they feared that our
army would be led against them, cf. B.G. II. 1

verēbantur ut exercitus noster ad eōs addūcerētur, they feared that our
army would not be led against them

185. Substantive Clauses after Verbs of Hindering and Opposing.
Verbs of hindering, opposing, and the like, are followed by substan-
tive clauses with the subjunctive, introduced by nē, quīn, or quō
minus. Nē is used when the main verb is affirmative, quīn when it
is negativet, quō minus in either case:

dētērre potes nē maior multitūdō trādūcatūr, you are able to prevent
a larger number from being brought over, B.G. I. 31
Germanĭ retinēri non poterant quīn tēla conicerent, the Germans could
not be prevented from hurling their weapons, B.G. I. 47
neque recūsābunt quō minus sub Germanōrum imperiō sint, nor will
they refuse to be under the sway of the Germans, cf. B.G. I. 31
a. Some of these verbs also allow the infinitive:

nōstrōs nāvibus ēgressi prohibēbant, they kept our men from going forth from the ships, B.G. IV. 24

186. Substantive Clauses after nōn dubitō, etc. Negated expressions of doubt (nōn dubitō, I do not doubt; nōn dubium est, there is no doubt) are followed by quīn (that) and the subjunctive:

nōn dubitō quīn supplicium sūmat, I do not doubt that he will exact punishment, B.G. I. 31
nōn est dubium quīn tōtius Galliae plūrimum Helvētīi possint, there is no doubt that the Helvētīi are the most powerful (tribe) of all Gaul, B.G. I. 3

187. Substantive Clauses of Result. I. Substantive clauses of result with ut and the subjunctive are used as the subject or object of verbs of accomplishing, effecting, etc., especially faciō, efficiō, perficiō, etc. They may be used also as appositives:

obsidēs uti inter sē dent perficit, he brings it about that they give hostages to one another, B.G. I. 9 (object)
factum est uti Germānī mercēde ac esserentur, it was brought about that the Germans were invited for pay, B.G. I. 31 (subject)
hanc grātiam refert, ut gravētur, he makes this return, (namely) that he objects, B.G. I. 35 (appositive)

II. Substantive clauses of result with ut and the subjunctive are used as the subject of certain impersonal verbs, such as it happens, it remains, it is added, etc., as fit, accidit, accēdit, etc.:

accidit ut esset lūna plēna, it happened that there was a full moon, B.G. IV. 29

Note 1. Substantive clauses with ut, substantive clauses with quod (§ 182), and infinitive clauses with subject accusative (§§ 216, 217) are constructions so nearly equivalent that any one of the three may at times be used with relatively little difference in meaning.

Note 2. Indirect questions (§ 201), and infinitive clauses with subject accusative after verbs of saying etc. (§ 203), are also substantive clauses.
Causal Clauses

188. Causal Clauses introduced by quod, etc. Causal clauses introduced by quod, quia, quoniam, or quandō, because, take:

a. The indicative when the reason given is that of the speaker or writer:

fortissimī sunt Belgae propterea quod longissimē absunt, the Belgae are the bravest because they are farthest away, B.G. I. 1

Here Cæsar gives his own reason why the Belgae are the bravest.

b. The subjunctive when the reason given is not that of the speaker or writer, but is simply alleged as the reason of some one else:

Haeduī (veniēbant) questum quod Harūdēs finēs populārentur, the Hāeduī came to complain because (they said) the Harūdēs were devastat-ing their fields, B.G. I. 37

Here Cæsar gives, not his own reason, but the reason alleged by the Hāeduī.

189. Causal Clauses introduced by cum. Causal clauses introduced by cum, since or because, take the subjunctive:

his cum suā sponte persuādere nōn possent, lēgātōs mittunt, since they could not persuade these of their own accord, they sent envoys, B.G. I. 9

praesertim cum eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscēperit queritur, he complains especially because influenced by their entreaties he has undertaken the war, B.G. I. 16

190. Relative Clauses of Cause. Cause may be denoted by a relative clause with the subjunctive:

magnam Cæsar iniūriam facit quī vectīgālia dēteriōra faciat, Cæsar does a great wrong in making (lit. who makes, i.e. because he is making) the revenues lower, B.G. I. 36

Note. In this use the relative is equivalent to cum is etc. It is often pre-ceded by ut, utpote, or quippe. Cf. B.G. IV. 23, ut quae . . . habērent.
LATIN GRAMMAR

CONJECTIVE CLAUSES

191. Concessive Clauses with the Indicative. Concessive clauses with the indicative are introduced by *quamquam, etsi, tametsi, although*:

*quamquam sunt eiusdem generis, sunt hümäniōrēs, although they are of the same race, they are more civilized, B.G. IV. 3*

*nam etsi videbat, tamen nōn putābat etc., for although he saw, nevertheless he did not think etc., B.G. I. 46*

NOTE. *Quamquam* often introduces a principal clause to mark a transition to a new subject of discussion. It is then translated *and yet*.

192. Concessive Clauses with the Subjunctive. Concessive clauses with the subjunctive are introduced by *cum, ut, quamvis, although*:

*cum ea ita sint, tamen si obsidēs dabuntur, pācem faciam, although these things are so, nevertheless, if hostages shall be given, I will make peace, B.G. I. 14*

*ac iam ut omnia contrā opiniōnem acciderent, tamen perspicīebant etc., and although now all things should fall out contrary to their expectation, nevertheless they were well aware etc., B.G. III. 9*

NOTE. *Cum* is used in temporal clauses (*when, § 194*) and in causal clauses (*since, § 189*) as well as in concessive clauses (*although*). When *tamen* (*nevertheless*) occurs in the main clause, the *cum* clause is concessive; if *praesertim* (*especially*) precedes, the *cum* clause is probably causal.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES

193. Temporal Clauses introduced by *postquam, ut, ubi, etc.*. Temporal clauses introduced by *postquam, after, ut, ubi, when, cum primum, simul, simul atque (ac), as soon as*, take the indicative, usually the perfect, sometimes the historical present:

*postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiās ad sē venire vīdit, exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit, after he saw that all the forces of the Belgae were coming toward him, he hastened to lead his army across, B.G. II. 5*

*Caesar ubi suōs urgērī vīdit, prōcessit, when Caesar saw that his men were hard pressed, he advanced, B.G. II. 25*
194. Temporal Clauses introduced by *cum*. Temporal clauses introduced by *cum*, *when*, and referring to the present or future, take the indicative; but referring to the past they have two uses:

a. *Definite*: to define or fix the time at which the action of the main verb occurred. The mood is indicative:

*cum* Caesar in Galliam *vēnit*, alterius factōnis principēs erant Haedui,
*when* Caesar came into Gaul, *the* Haedui *were* at the head of one faction, B.G. VI. 12

b. *Descriptive*: to describe the situation or circumstances under which the action of the main verb took place. The mood is subjunctive (past or past perfect):

*cum* ab his *quaeraret*, sic *reperiebat*, when he made inquiries from these,
he gained the following information, B.G. II. 4

*cum dē imprōvisō *vēnisset*, Rēmī lēgātōs misérunt, *when* he had come unexpectedly, *the* Remi sent envoys, B.G. II. 3

In the sentence (§ 194. a) *cum* Caesar in Galliam *vēnit*, alterius factōnis principēs erant Haedui, the time of the Haeduan supremacy is merely *dated*, or *fixed*, by the *cum* clause, and is true independently of Cæsar’s coming. They were at the head of one faction whether he came or not.

In the sentence (§ 194. b) *cum dē imprōvisō *vēnisset*, Rēmī lēgātōs misérunt, the fact Rēmī lēgātōs misérunt, *the* Remi sent envoys, is not true independently of his coming. They sent them under the circumstances occasioned by his coming. They would not have sent them if he had not come.

**Note.** Temporal clauses of description with *cum* correspond closely with relative clauses of description (§ 177).

195. *Cum* Clauses denoting Time and Cause. Sometimes the idea of *time* is combined with that of *cause*. In such cases *cum* with the subjunctive is always used:

*Helvētii, cum id intellegent, lēgātōs misérunt, the Helvetii sent envoys when (since) they learned that*, cf. B.G. I. 13

**Note.** This use corresponds with the relative clause of cause (§ 190).

196. *Cum* meaning *whenever*. *Cum*, *whenever*, denoting a repeated action, is generally followed by the indicative:
ad eós sē, cum ēsus est, recipiunt, they retreat to these whenever it is necessary, cf. B.G. IV. 2

cum fūnēs adductī erant, praerumpēbantur, whenever the ropes were drawn tight, they were broken off, B.G. III. 14

197. Temporal Clauses introduced by antequam or priusquam.
Temporal clauses introduced by antequam or priusquam, before, have the following uses:

a. When they denote an actual fact they take the indicative:

neque prius fugere dēstitērunt, quam ad flāmen Rhēnum pervēnērunt, nor did they cease to flee, before they reached the river Rhine, B.G. I. 53

b. When they denote something anticipated, but not sure, they take the subjunctive:

priusquam quicquam cōnārētur, Diviciācum ad sē vocārī inbet, before undertaking anything, he orders Diviciacus to be summoned to him, B.G. I. 19

198. Temporal Clauses introduced by dum, dōnec, or quoad. I. Dum, meaning while, takes the indicative in the historical present (§ 153. a), even though the time is past:

dum haec geruntur, Caesari nūntiātum est, while this was going on, word was brought to Cæsar, B.G. I. 46

II. Dum, dōnec, and quoad, meaning as long as, take the indicative:

quoad potuīt, fortissimē restītit, he resisted bravely as long as he was able, B.G. IV. 12

III. Dum, dōnec, and quoad, meaning until, have two uses:

a. The indicative, to denote an actual fact:

neque finem sequēndi fécrunt quoad præcipitēs hostēs ëgérunt, nor did they cease pursuing until they routed the enemy, B.G. V. 17

b. The subjunctive, to denote something anticipated:

dum nāvēs conventent exspectāvit, he waited until the ships should arrive, B.G. IV. 23
Conditional Sentences

199. Definition. A conditional sentence is a complex sentence containing an independent clause and a subordinate clause introduced by sì, if; or nisi, sì non, unless, if not. The subordinate clause is called the condition (or protasis) and the main clause the conclusion (or apodosis).

Conditional clauses are divided as to time into the following three classes:

I. Present Conditions:

a. Non-Committal Conditions (that is, those in which nothing is implied as to the truth or falsity of the case supposed); these take the present indicative:

sì hoc facit, laudātur, if he is doing this, he is praised

b. Conditions Contrary to Fact; these take the past (imperfect) subjunctive:

sì hoc faceret, laudārētur, if he were doing this (but he is not), he would be praised (at the present time)

II. Future Conditions:

a. More Probable Conditions; these take the future or future perfect indicative:

sì hoc faciet, laudābitur, if he does (shall do) this, he will be praised
sì hoc fēcerit, laudābitur, if he shall have done this, he will be praised

b. Less Probable Conditions; these take the present or perfect subjunctive:

sì hoc faciat (fēcerit), laudētur, if he should do this, he would be praised

III. Past Conditions:

a. Non-Committal Conditions; these take the past descriptive (imperfect) or perfect indicative:

sì hoc fāciēbat, laudābātur, if he was doing this, he was praised
sì hoc fēcit, laudātus est, if he did this, he was praised
b. Conditions Contrary to Fact; these take the past perfect (pluperfect) subjunctive:

si hoc fecisset, laudatus esset, if he had done this (but he did not), he
. would have been praised

NOTE. The conditional clause, not the conclusion, determines the class to which a conditional sentence belongs. Although both parts are usually in the same mood and tense, yet the conclusion may be in any form of the verb that the sense requires; for example:

si hoc facit, cum laudate, if he is doing this, praise him

Because of the form of the conditional clause this conditional sentence must be classed as present non-committal.

200. Clauses of Comparison with velut, velut si. A conditional clause of comparison introduced by velut, velut si, as if, takes the subjunctive, the tense being determined by the rule for sequence of tenses (§ 162):

absentis Ariovistus crudelitatem, velut si coram adsit, horrent, they stand in fear of the cruelty of Ariovistus in his absence (absentis) just as (they would) if he were (should be) present, B.G. I. 32

NOTE. Such a condition has the future less probable form in the Latin, though in English it has the form of a condition contrary to fact. The sentence above, thrown back into past time, reads velut si adesset, horreabant.

INDIRECT QUESTIONS

201. Indirect questions are substantive interrogative clauses used, generally as object, after verbs of inquiring, asking, knowing, telling, etc. They are in the subjunctive mood:

quae in eo reprehendat ostendit, he points out what he censures in him,
B.G. I. 20

intellego quantum id cum periculö fecerim, I know with how great danger I did that, B.G. I. 17

NOTE. The same interrogative words that introduce direct questions (§ 170) are used with indirect; but questions answered by “yes” or “no” are introduced without distinction by num or -me, translated whether.
SYNTAX — VERBS

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

202. A direct quotation is a statement made in the exact words of the original speaker or writer. Such a statement is said to be in the direct discourse:

his Caesar respondit, "Minus mihi dubitātiōnis datur," to these Caesar answered, "I entertain less (of) doubt," B.G. I. 14
"déssilite," inquit, "commilitōnēs," "leap down, comrades," he said, B.G. IV. 25

203. An indirect quotation is a reported statement, not made in the exact words of the original speaker or writer, but adapted to the form of the sentence used by the person quoting them. Such a statement is said to be in indirect discourse, and is used after verbs of saying and thinking:

his Caesar respondit sibi minus dubitātiōnis datur, to these Caesar answered that he entertained less (of) doubt, B.G. I. 14

a. Sometimes the verb of saying is not expressed, but is understood from the context:

eös incūsvavit: Ariovistum populi Rōmāni amīcitiam adpetisse, he upbraided them (saying) that Ariovistus had sought to gain the friendship of the Roman people, B.G. I. 40

b. The subjunctive may be used in a subordinate clause merely to imply that the quotation is indirect. This is called implied indirect discourse (§ 208 and b):

Caesar frūmentum quod essent polliciti ſagitāre, Caesar demanded the grain which (as he said) they had promised, B.G. I. 16

Independent Sentences in Indirect Discourse

204. Declarative Sentences. In declarative sentences the six tenses of the indicative, on becoming indirect, pass into the three corresponding tenses of the infinitive with subject accusative, as shown by the following table:
a. The subject accusative (§ 92) of the infinitive is regularly expressed in indirect discourse, even if it was not used in the direct. Pronouns of the first and second person are changed to those of the third (if the verb of saying is in the third person), the reflexive forms (§ 132) being used to refer to the subject of the verb of saying:

**DIRECT:** (ego) trānsī fī nōn meā sponte, *I did not cross of my own free will*

**INDIRECT:** Ariovistus respondit trānīisse sē sē nōn suā sponte, *Ariovistus replied that he had not crossed of his own free will, B.G. I. 44*

205. Imperative Sentences. An imperative in the direct discourse is changed in the indirect to the subjunctive; the present being used after a primary tense, the past after a secondary tense:

respondit sī quid vellent, reverterentur, *he answered that if they wanted anything, they should return, B.G. I. 7*

This sentence in the direct form would be

sī quid vultis, revertimini, *if you want anything, return*

206. Prohibitions. In a prohibition having nōlī, nōlitē, and the infinitive in the direct discourse (§ 173. note), the infinitive is changed to the present or past subjunctive with nē in the indirect according to the sequence of tenses, and nōlī disappears:

nōlī committēre, *do not bring it to pass, B.G. I. 13*

This prohibition when changed to indirect discourse becomes

nē committeret, *(Divico said) that he should not bring it to pass*
207. Questions. I. Real Questions (§170) on becoming indirect change their verbs from the indicative to the subjunctive, the tenses conforming to the rule for the sequence of tenses:

**Direct:** cum in mea possessionis venis? why do you come into my possessions? B. G. I. 44

**Indirect:** Ariovistus respondit . . . cum in sua possessionis ventret, Ariovistus answered (asking) why he came into his possessions

II. a. Rhetorical Questions (§171) that have the indicative in the direct discourse, change the indicative to the infinitive in the indirect:

**Direct:** num recentium iniuriarum memoriam deponere possum? can I put aside the recollection of the recent wrongs? B. G. I. 14

**Indirect:** Caesar respondit . . . num recentium iniuriarum memoriam deponere posse, Caesar answered (asking) whether he could put aside the recollection etc.

b. Rhetorical Questions that have the deliberative subjunctive (§172.d) in the direct, retain the subjunctive in the indirect; the tense follows the rule for the sequence of tenses:

**Direct:** cum de vestra virtute desperetis? why should you be diffident of your own courage? B. G. I. 40

**Indirect:** (quaesivit) cum de sua virtute desperarent, (he inquired) why they should be diffident of their own courage

*Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse*

208. General Rule; Mood. Verbs in the subordinate clauses of complex sentences are changed to or remain in the subjunctive:

**Direct:** hi sunt idem Germann qui tamen paries esse nostrum exercitu non potuerunt, these are the same Germans who nevertheless could not equal our army, B. G. I. 40

**Indirect:** (Caesar dicit) hos esse eisdem Germanos qui tamen paries esse nostrum exercitu non potuerint, (Cæsar says) that these are the same Germans who nevertheless could not equal our army

a. If the statement made in the subordinate clause is true independently of the words of the speaker or writer, the indicative mood may be retained:
certior factus est, ex ea parte vici quam Galliæ concesserat, omnēs noctū
dissessisse, he was informed that all had departed by night from
that part of the village which he had assigned to the Gauls,
B.G. III. 2

b. IMPLIED INDIRECT DISCOURSE. The subjunctive may be used
in a subordinate clause merely to imply that the quotation is indirect.
This is called implied indirect discourse (§ 203. b):

Caesar frumentum quod essent pollicitiī fāgitāre, Caesar demanded the
grain which (as he said) they had promised, B.G. I. 16

209. Tense. The tense of verbs in subordinate clauses in indirect
discourse is determined by the tense of the verb of saying, according
to the rule for the sequence of tenses; for example, dicit, he says, will
be followed by the present or perfect subjunctive; dixit, he said, by
the past or past perfect subjunctive:

DIRECT: id quod in Nerviis fēcī, faciam, I will do that which I did
in (the case of) the Nervii, B.G. II. 32

INDIRECT: dicit sē id quod in Nerviis fēcerit, factūrum esse, he says
that he will do that which he did in (the case of) the Nervii

dixit sē id quod in Nerviis fēcisset, factūrum esse, he said that he
would do that which he had done in (the case of) the Nervii

DIRECT: verēmur angustiās itineris quae intercēdunt, we fear the
difficulties of the way which intervene, cf. B.G. I. 39

INDIRECT: dicunt sē verēri angustiās itineris quae intercēdant, they
say that they fear the difficulties of the way which intervene
dixerunt sē verēri angustiās itineris quae intercēderent, they said that
they feared the difficulties of the way which intervened

NOTE. As a rule the same verb stem will be used in the subjunctive as
was used in the indicative; for example, a present or future indicative will
become a present or past subjunctive; a perfect or future perfect indicative
will become a perfect or past perfect subjunctive.

EXCEPTION: Sometimes for the sake of vividness a primary tense
is used in the subjunctive after a secondary tense of a verb of saying:

respondit ita Helvētiās institūtōs esse utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare,
cōnṣūrēnt, he replied that the Helvetii had been so trained that they
were accustomed to receive hostages, not to give (them), B.G. I. 14
Conditional Sentences in Indirect Discourse

210. All conditional sentences with verbs in the indicative (§ 199. I. a, II. a, III. a) are treated in indirect discourse as ordinary complex sentences, the verb in the main clause (conclusion) being changed to the infinitive, and the verb in the subordinate clause (condition) to the subjunctive:

DIRECT: hostēs si bellum gerunt, vincunt, if the enemy are waging war, they are conquering

INDIRECT: dicit hostēs, si bellum gerant, vincere, he says that if the enemy are waging war, they are conquering

211. In future less probable conditions (§ 199. II. b) the verb in the conclusion (which, of course, is the main verb) is changed to the future infinitive; the verb in the condition, being in a subordinate clause, remains in the subjunctive, though the tense may have to be changed to accord with the rule for the sequence of tenses:

DIRECT: hostēs si bellum gerant, vincant, if the enemy should wage war, they would conquer

INDIRECT: dicit hostēs, si bellum gerant, victūros esse, he says that if the enemy should wage war, they would conquer

dixit hostēs, si bellum gerent, victūros esse, he said that if the enemy should wage war, they would conquer

212. In future conditions, either more or less probable (§ 199. II. a, b), a passive verb in the conclusion of the direct discourse is expressed by fore (futūrum esse) ut with the present subjunctive after a primary tense, past subjunctive after a secondary tense:

DIRECT: si bellum gerant, vincentur, if they shall wage war, they will be conquered (more probable)

si bellum gerant, vincantur, if they should wage war, they would be conquered (less probable)

INDIRECT (both more probable and less probable): dicit si bellum gerant fore ut vincentur, he says that if they shall (should) wage war, they will (would) be conquered

dixit si bellum gerent fore ut vincerentur, he said that if they should wage war, they would be conquered
213. In conditions contrary to fact (§ 199. I. b, III. b) the verb in the condition (past or past perfect subjunctive) remains unchanged. The verb in the conclusion (past or past perfect subjunctive) undergoes the following changes:

a. If it is in the active voice, it is changed to the proper form of the future participle in -ērūs with fuisse:

**DIRECT:** hostēs si bellum gererent, vincerent, *if the enemy were waging war (now), they would be conquering*

**INDIRECT:** dicit (or dixit) hostēs, si bellum gererent, victūrōs fuisse, *he says (or said) that if the enemy were waging war, they would be conquering*

**DIRECT:** hostēs si bellum gessissent, vicissent, *if the enemy had waged war, they would have conquered*

**INDIRECT:** dicit (or dixit) hostēs, si bellum gessissent, victūrōs fuisse, *he says (or said) that if the enemy had waged war, they would have conquered*

b. If the verb in the conclusion is in the passive voice, the form futūrum fuisse ut is used, followed by the past subjunctive of the verb to be changed:

**DIRECT:** hostēs si bellum gessissent, victī essent, *if the enemy had waged war, they would have been conquered*

**INDIRECT:** dicit (or dixit) futūrum fuisse ut hostēs, si bellum gessissent, vincerentur, *he says (or said) that if the enemy had waged war, they would have been conquered.***

**SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION**

214. A subordinate verb that would regularly be in the indicative is sometimes attracted to the subjunctive by another subjunctive (or equivalent infinitive), on which it depends:

monuit, ut maritimae rēs postulārent, omnēs rēs administrārentur, *he directed that all things should be executed as naval tactics demanded, B.G. IV. 23*

dat negotium Senonibus utī ea quae apud eōs gerantur cognōscant, *he employs the Senones to find out those things which are going on among them, B.G. II. 2*
SYNTAX—THE INFINITIVE

THE INFINITIVE

215. The infinitive is a verbal noun. As a verb it has tense and voice, and may be transitive or intransitive, but expresses neither person nor number. As a noun it has certain case constructions.

216. The Infinitive as Subject. The infinitive, either with or without a subject accusative, may be used as subject:

a. With esse:

perfacile est cōnāta perficere, it is easy to accomplish the undertakings, B.G. I. 3

b. With impersonal verbs:

nōn oportet mē impēdīrī, it is not proper that I should be hindered,
B.G. I. 36

217. The Infinitive as Object. The infinitive, either with or without a subject accusative, may be used as object:

a. With subject accusative; after verbs of wishing, ordering, permitting, allowing, and the like:

überōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī lussit, he ordered the children to be brought to him (as) hostages, B.G. II. 5

b. With subject accusative; after verbs of saying, thinking, perceiving, and the like. This is the regular construction of principal clauses in indirect discourse (§§ 203, 204):

Caesar certior fiēbat omnēs Belgās consūrāre, Caesar was informed that all the Belgae were conspiring, B.G. II. 1

c. Without subject accusative; to complete the predicate of verbs meaning to be able, be accustomed, decide, begin, dare, try, and the like, which require another action of the same subject. Such verbs are called verbs of incomplete predication, and the accompanying infinitive is called the complementary infinitive:

cōpiās parāre coepērunt, they began to prepare forces, B.G. III. 23
constituērunt ea comparāre, they decided to prepare those things,
B.G. I. 3
218. Historical Infinitive. In vivid narration the infinitive with subject nominative may be used for the past descriptive indicative:

 Caesar Haeduōs frumentum fāgitāre, Caesar demanded grain of the Haeduī, B.G. I. 16

PARTICIPLES

219. Participles are verbal adjectives; as adjectives they agree with nouns in gender, number, and case; as verbs they have tense and voice, and may take an object. For tense distinctions see § 167.

220. The present and past participles are often used predicatively where in English a phrase or a subordinate clause would be employed:

a. Time:

patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omni Galliā vexātā, within the memory of our fathers, when all Gaul was ravaged (lit. all Gaul having been ravaged), B.G. II. 4

b. Cause:

quibus rēbus Caesar vehementer commōitus māturandum sibi existi-māvit, because he was greatly disturbed by these facts, Caesar thought that he ought to hasten, B.G. I. 37

c. Condition:

damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat, punishment was to follow, if he was condemned (lit. having been condemned), B.G. I. 4

d. Concession:

beneficiō beneficūs hanc grātiam refert, though he has been treated with kindness, he makes this return (lit. having been treated), cf. B.G. I. 35

e. Simple Relative Clause:

submōtis restitērunt, they resisted those who had been routed, cf. B.G. I. 25

221. Participles used as Nouns. The present and past participles are often used as nouns:

opiniōnem pugnāntium praebebant, they gave the impression of (men) fighting, cf. B.G. III. 25
SYNTAX—GERUND

222. The Periphrastic Conjugations. I. The future participle in
-ārus is used with the verb sum to form what is called the active
periphrastic conjugation. This denotes future, or intended, action:

praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant, except what they were going to
carry with them, B.G. I. 5

II. The future passive participle, or gerundive in -ndus (§ 224), is
used with the verb sum to form what is called the passive periphrastic
conjugation. This is used to denote what must be, or ought to be, done.
The word representing the person upon whom the duty or obliga-
tion rests is put in the dative of apparent agent (§ 87):

omnēs cruciātūs sunt perferendī, all (kinds of) cruelties have to be
endured, cf. B.G. I. 32

Caesari omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda, Caesar had to do all things
at one time (lit. all things had to be done by Caesar etc.), B.G. II. 20

Note. Intransitive verbs in the passive periphrastic conjugation are regu-
larly used impersonally:

concūdendum esse nōn putābat, he did not think that he ought to comply
(lit. that it ought to be complied)

GERUND

223. The gerund is an active verbal noun with stem like that of
the gerundive. It is found only in the neuter gender, and in the
genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular of the second de-
clension. It is governed in general as a noun, and may have the
modifiers of a verb:

a. Genitive:

hominēs bellandī cupidī, men eager for warfare (lit. desirous of war-
ring), B.G. I. 2

b. Dative; the dative of the gerund is rare except with a few
adjectives.

c. Accusative; the accusative of the gerund is used only with
prepositions and does not take an object:

Caesar respondit diem sē ad deliberaendum sūmpiturum (esse), Caesar
answered that he would take time for deliberating, B.G. I. 7
406  LATIN GRAMMAR

d. Ablative:

reperībat in quaerendo Caesar, Caesar found on inquiry (lit. in inquiring), B.G. I. 18

Note. The gerund with a direct object is found as a rule only in the genitive and in the ablative without a preposition.

GERUNDIVE

224. The gerundive (ending in -ndus) is a passive verbal adjective, declined like an adjective of the first and second declensions. It is used as follows:

a. The gerundive as a predicate adjective in the passive periphrastic conjugation (§ 222. II) denotes what must be, or ought to be, done.

Caesarī omnia ēnō tempore erant agenda, Caesar had to do all things at one time (lit. all things had to be done by Caesar etc.), B.G. II. 20

b. The gerundive is generally used instead of the gerund with a direct object (§ 223, note). The gerundive agrees with its noun, which takes the case that the gerund would have:

praedae faciendae facultās dabātur, an opportunity for securing (lit. of securing) plunder was afforded, cf. B.G. IV. 34

The equivalent gerund construction would be praedam faciendī facultās, with praedam as object of the gerund faciendī. The translation in both constructions is the same.

ab his fit initium retinendī Silius, these take the initiative in detaining Silius, B.G. III. 8

in petendā pāce culpam in multitūdinem contulērunt, in seeking peace they attributed the fault to the multitude, B.G. IV. 27

ad eās rēs cōnficiendās, for accomplishing these measures, B.G. I. 3

c. With the personal and reflexive forms meī, tuī, suī, nostri, vestri, a form in -ndī is commonly used without change in gender or number:

neque suī conligendī hostibus facultātem relinquunt, neither do they leave to the enemy an opportunity of recovering themselves, B.G. III. 6

As suī is plural, we might here expect conligendōrum to agree with it.
d. The gerundive may be used as an attributive adjective. In this use it often expresses purpose after verbs like cūrō, to care for, see to, etc.:

pontem faciendum cūrat, he causes a bridge to be built (lit. he sees to a bridge to be built), B.G. I. 13

Gerund and Gerundive expressing Purpose

225. Both gerund and gerundive are used to express purpose:

a. In the accusative with ad:

respondit diem sē ad deliberandum sūmptūrum (esse), he replied that he would take time to deliberate, B.G. I. 7
ad eās rēs cōnficiendās Orgetorix dēligitur, Orgetorix is chosen to accomplish these measures, B.G. I. 3

b. In the genitive with causā or grātiā:

venīsne speculandī causā? do you come for the sake of spying? cf. B.G. I. 47
id nōn Galliae oppugnandae causā faciō, I am not doing that for the sake of attacking Gaul, B.G. I. 44

Supine

226. The supine is a verbal noun of the fourth declension, found only in the accusative (-um) and ablative (-ā):

a. The supine in -um is used after verbs of motion to express purpose:

vēnī auxiliō postulātum, I came to ask aid, B.G. I. 31

b. The supine in -ā is used with adjectives like an ablative of respect (§ 115):

optimum factū esse dūxērunt, they considered it the best thing to do (lit. best with respect to doing), B.G. IV. 30

Note. The supine in -um may take an object; the supine in -ā never does:
legātōs mittunt rogātum auxiliō, they send envoys to ask aid, B.G. I. 11.
THE ROMAN CALENDAR

227. Dates were reckoned by the Romans as follows:

a. By the Roman calendar, as reformed by Julius and Augustus Cæsar, the year had 365 days, divided into months as at present, February having 29 days every fourth year.

b. The names of the months, used as adjectives, were as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>January</th>
<th>May</th>
<th>September</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Iānuārius, -a, -um</td>
<td>Māius, -a, -um</td>
<td>September, -bris, -bre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>February</td>
<td>June</td>
<td>October</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Februārius, -a, -um</td>
<td>Iūnius, -a, -um</td>
<td>Octōber, -bris, -bre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>March</td>
<td>Quintilis, -e</td>
<td>November</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mārtius, -a, -um</td>
<td>Sextilis, -e</td>
<td>November, -bris, -bre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>April</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aprīlis, -e</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note. The seventh month (Quintilis) was later called Iūlius in honor of Julius Cæsar, and the eighth (Sextilis), Augustus, in honor of that emperor.

c. The year was formerly regarded as beginning with March, which made July the fifth (Quintilis) month, August the sixth (Sextilis), September the seventh (September), etc.

d. Dates were reckoned from three points in the month, namely, the Calends (Kalendae, -ärum), the first day of the month; the Nones (Nōnae, -ärum), the fifth day; and the Ides (Idūs, Íduum), the thirteenth.

However, in March, May, July, and October the Nones fell on the seventh day, and the Ides on the fifteenth.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Kalendae</th>
<th>Nōnae</th>
<th>Ídūs</th>
<th>Kalendae</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 ... 27 28 29 30 31</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

e. An event occurring at any one of these points was said to occur on the Calends, on the Nones, on the Ides, and the date was expressed by the simple ablative of time. The noun denoting the date was modified by the adjective representing the month in question:

Kalendīs Februāriīs, on the first of February
Nōnīs Aprīlibus, on the fifth of April
Nōnīs Octōbrībus, on the seventh of October
Ídībus Iānuāriīs, on the thirteenth of January
Ídībus Mārtiīs, on the fifteenth of March
f. From the Calends, Nones, and Ides the dates in the month were reckoned backwards. The date immediately preceding any one of them was expressed by the word pridiē, used as a preposition followed by the accusatives Kalendarēs, Nōnās, Īdūs, modified by the adjective form of the word denoting the month:

pridiē Kalendarēs Februāriēs, the thirty-first of January
pridiē Nōnās Ianuāriēs, the fourth of January
pridiē Īdūs Mārtiēs, the fourteenth of March
pridiē Īdūs Septembrēs, the twelfth of September

g. The dates intervening between any two points were counted as so many days before the second point. The Romans, however, in reckoning a series, counted both extremes; for example, the eleventh day of April was counted as the third day before the Ides (that is, the thirteenth), the tenth of April as the fourth day before the Ides.

h. In expressing dates the phrase ante diem (translated the day before) was used with the accusatives Kalendarēs, Nōnās, Īdūs, the word diem being modified by the proper ordinal numeral:

ante diem tertium Kalendarēs Octōbrēs, the third day before the Calends of October (September 29)
ante diem quārtum Kalendarēs Octōbrēs, the fourth day before the Calends of October (September 28)
ante diem sēxtum Īdūs Mārtiēs, the sixth day before the Ides of March (March 10)
ante diem quintum Nōnās Māiēs, the fifth day before the Nones of May (May 3)

NOTE. These expressions were generally abbreviated as follows:


i. To find the equivalent in English for a date given in Latin, observe the following rule:

If the given Latin date is counted from the Calends, add two to the number of days in the preceding month and subtract the given date; if from the Nones or the Ides, add one to the day on which they fall, and from the number thus obtained subtract the given date.
The whole expression denoting a date was sometimes treated as a single substantive governed by a preposition; compare the following:

*in a.d. V. Kal. Nov., to the fifth day before the Calends of November (October 28)*

*opus contulit in ante diem III. Id. Oct., he postponed the work to the 13th of October*

**Note.** Before Julius Cæsar reformed the calendar (46 B.C.), the Roman year consisted of 355 days. All the months had 29 days except March, May, July, and October, which had 31 days, and February, which had 28. As this calendar year was too short for the solar year, a month of varying length (*mēnsis intercalāris*) was inserted after February 23 every other year.

**228.** The Roman year was designated either by the names of the consuls (as, *M. Messālā M. Pisoē consulibus, B.G. I. 2*) or by the number of the year reckoned from the founding of the city (*ab urbe conditā* abbreviated to *A. U. C.*). The founding of the city is assigned to the year 753 B.C. In order, therefore, to find the year of the Christian era corresponding to a given Roman date *A.U.C.*, the number of the Roman year must be subtracted from 754, 1 being added to 753 to allow for the Roman custom of including both extremes when reckoning the difference between two numbers. For example, Cæsar was killed in 710 *A.U.C.*, or 44 (754–710) B.C.
LATIN COMPOSITION

LESSON I

1. Order of Words. In English the words of a sentence stand in a more or less fixed order. Emphasis is indicated when speaking by stress of voice, and in a written sentence by the use of italics or by underscoring the emphatic words. In Latin, on the other hand, emphasis and the relative importance of words are shown by their position in the sentence.

2. The most emphatic place is the first; next in importance is the last; the weakest point is the middle.

3. As the most important word in the sentence is normally the subject, and the second in importance is normally the verb, the tendency is to place these respectively first and last. Their respective modifiers stand next these according to their relative emphasis. This may be represented as follows:

   Strong  Weak  Strong

   Subject followed by its modifiers   Modifiers followed by Verb

4. For convenience this is called the normal order. Departure from the normal order is frequent, however, from the fact that in Latin, just as in English, other words or groups of words may be regarded as of more importance than the subject or the verb. This importance may be indicated:
a. By placing words to be emphasized first, more rarely last:

Gal·los Garumna flūmen dividit, the Gauls are separated by the
Garonne river (lit. the Gauls the Garonne river separates)
magna ḍis immortālībus habēnda est grātia, great gratitude is due
the immortal gods

b. By reversing the normal order, especially of nouns with attrib-
utive adjectives (§ 61) and nouns with modifying genitives. The
normal position of demonstrative pronouns, cardinal numerals, and
adjectives of quantity and place (for example, ulterior, citerior,
inferior, etc.) is before the nouns they modify; the normal position
of other adjectives, ordinal numerals, possessives, indefinites, and
genitives is after their nouns:

ille imperātor, that general (normal order)
imperātor ille, that famous general (normal order reversed)
mors frātris tui, the death of your brother (normal order)
tui frātris mors, your brother’s death (normal order reversed)

c. The appositive (§ 54) normally follows its noun; when emphatic
it precedes:

Caesar imperātor, Caesar, the general
imperātor Caesar, the general, Caesar

d. The subject may stand last, or the verb first, to indicate unusual
emphasis:

dēlectat mē ērātiō, the speech delights me

e. The copula sum (§48. II. b) ordinarily stands last, or between
the subject and predicate; but when it emphasizes existence (there
was, there is, etc.), it stands first, or at any rate before the subject:

erat nūllum aliuī iter, there was no other way

EXERCISE

5. Translate the following sentences, so arranging the words as to show
the importance of those italicized:

1. Orgetorix, who was the richest of the Helvetii, made a conspiracy.
2. The Helvetii were hemmed in on all sides.
3. The Helvetii excel the rest of the Gauls.
4. There is a river, the Rhone by name, which separates our province.

5. The territories of the Belgae are farthest away.

6. They keep the Germans away from their territories by almost daily battles.

7. Many of the Helvetii were noble, but Orgetorix excelled the rest.

8. A very high mountain hems them in on one side.

9. Orgetorix persuaded certain ones of the Helvetii who were desirous of power.

10. The Sequani are nearest to the province, the Belgae are farthest away.

NOTE. A superior figure standing after a word (for example, so) refers to that word only; placed before a word (for example, so) it refers to two or more following words.

1 Followed by the dative, § 84. 2 reliquì, agreeing with its noun in gender, number, and case, means the rest of. 3 Ablative of respect, § 115. 4 Ablative of means, § 106. 5 iná ex parte. 6 Dative, § 83. 7 Ablative with ex, § 76. Exc.

LESSON II

6. General Rules for Agreement.


b. Agreement of Relatives, § 64. a.

c. Agreement of Appositives, § 58.

d. Agreement of Verbs, § 65.

EXERCISE

1. The Helvetii, a Gallic tribe, made a conspiracy.

2. The river Rhone divides our province from the Helvetii.

3. They chose Orgetorix, who was the noblest of all.

4. They chose Dumnorix, who held the leadership of the state.

5. His retainers, the number of whom was large, rescued him.

6. The leadership was held by Dumnorix, the brother of Casticus.

7. The territories of the Helvetii, who are very near to our province, are narrow.
8. They persuaded Dumnorix, whose brother was Diviciacus.
9. They were influenced \(^2\) by the authority of Orgetorix, which was great.
10. The Helvetii, the Sequani, (and) the Hœdui, three very powerful peoples, were influenced by this speech.

\(^1\) Dative, § 90. \(^2\) Ablative, § 106.

LESSON III

7. Predicate and Attributive Adjectives defined, §§ 60, 61.

8. Agreement of Adjectives with Two or More Nouns, §§ 62, 63 and note.

EXAMPLES

multi pueri et puellae or pueri et puellae multae, many boys and girls
bonus puer et puella, the good boy and girl
pueri et puellae erant bona, the boys and girls were good
rex et regina capti sunt, the king and queen were captured
virtus et studium militum erant magna, the valor and zeal of the soldiers were great
naves captivique restitutas sunt or naves captivique restituta sunt, the ships and the captives were restored

EXERCISE

1. Orgetorix's authority and ambition for power were very great.
2. All the towns and villages and the rest of the private buildings were burned.
3. The old men, the women, (and) the children were prepared \(^1\) for all things.
4. Not all the towns and soldiers were captured.
5. The Helvetii were hemmed in by great rivers, lakes, (and) mountains.
6. Geneva, a large town, is \(^2\) very near \(^3\) to the province.
7. Many carts and beasts of burden were purchased.
8. He attempted to send ambassadors to the small towns and villages.
9. Both the lake and the river are very deep.
10. Both Norecia and other towns have been besieged.

1 ad omnia. 2 § 123. 3 § 90. 4 ad with accusative, § 97.

LESSON IV

9. Special Rules for the Agreement of Relative Pronouns, § 64. a.

Note.

EXAMPLES

pueri et puellae qui erant boni, the boys and girls who were good
rēx et rēgina qui captī sunt, the king and queen who were captured
virtūs et studium militum, quae erant magna, the valor and zeal of
the soldiers, which were great
nāvēs captīvique quae restitūta sunt, the ships and the captives
which were restored
Corinthus, quod erat clārum oppidum, Corinth, which was a famous
city

Note. When the antecedents represent both persons and things the relative
pronoun (like the predicate adjective, cf. § 63 and note) may be masculine:
nāvēs captīvique qui restitūtī sunt

EXERCISE

1. The third legion, which he had with him, dug a ditch.
2. The Jura is a mountain which divides the Sequani from the
Helvetii.
3. All the women and old men who were captured were trans-
ported across the river.
4. He held in mind the custom and precedent which the Roman
people had established.
5. Both the hostages and baggage wagons which they had were
surrendered.
6. The Helvetii, who are a Gallic state, sent ambassadors to
Cæsar.
7. I see the great wall and ditch which Cæsar made.
8. The Rhone, which is the largest river of Gaul, has many fords.
9. Dumnorix bound by his personal influence the peoples and states which were nearest.
10. In the meantime the towns and villages which he had burned, (and) whose inhabitants he had driven out, were restored.
11. The Sequani inhabit this field, which is the best part of Gaul.

1 sēcum, § 150. a. 2 ad with accusative, § 97.

LESSON V

10. Agreement of Verbs, §§ 65 and a, 67, 68, 69.

EXAMPLES

nūntius mittitur, a messenger is sent
nūntīi mittuntur, messengers are sent
cōnsul et lēgātus veniunt, the consul and the envoy are coming
neque cōnsul neque lēgātus venit, neither the consul nor the envoy is coming
senātus haec intellegit, the senate knows this
senātus haec intellegunt, the senate know this

NOTE. When subjects are of different persons the verb is in the first person rather than in the second, and in the second rather than in the third:

ego et tū scribimus, you and I are writing
tū et Mārcus audiēbatīs, you and Marcus heard

EXERCISE

1. The Sequani and Hāedui are not far from our province.
2. Many Gallic tribes, warlike men and foes of the Roman people, occupied the higher places.
3. Neither the centurion nor the envoy halted.
4. Neither the Sequani nor the Helvetii rejected the commands of Cæsar.
5. 1 For these reasons you and Cæsar will hasten into Farther Gaul.
6. "You and I, Labienus," said Cæsar, "will drive out the enemy."

7. The cohort was brave, but after it was cut off it was easily thrown into confusion.

8. Either the consul or the general will delay in the vicinity of Geneva.

9. You and Cæsar easily captured the enemy who held the heights.

10. Cæsar led his army against the Suebi, a warlike tribe who dwelt across the Rhine.

11. The senate, which was unfriendly to Cæsar, did not approve this.

12. Thence the Saône, which is a Gallic river, arises.

1 ob eæ causã. 2 Latin, I and you. 3 Vocative, § 100. 4 inquit Cæsar; inquit, followed by its subject, is regularly used when a speech is directly quoted.

LESSON VI


a. The Present Indicative, § 153.

b. The Past Descriptive Indicative, § 154. a, b, c.

c. The Future Indicative, § 155.

d. The Perfect Indicative, § 156. a, b.

e. The Past Perfect Indicative, § 157.

f. The Future Perfect Indicative, § 158.

EXERCISE

1. The Helvetii are crossing the river Saône with rafts.

2. The Belgæ, who are the bravest of all, inhabit one part of Gaul.

3. Cæsar kept attacking the enemy, who had not yet crossed the river.

4. This canton, in the memory of our fathers, had brought great calamity on the Roman people.

5. The army of Crassus, the consul, has been repulsed and sent under the yoke.
6. The shouts of the horsemen, who were following closely, had been heard.

7. He attacked those who were delaying; for they were not armed.

8. The Helvetii were accustomed to receive hostages, not to give them.

9. You and I will receive the grain, if our friends (shall) have sent it.

10. The Helvetii were going into that part where Cæsar did not wish them to be.

11. If the enemy turn away from the river, Cæsar will not follow them.

12. Neither you nor Crassus was received within their boundaries.

1 Latin, turn their march away. The verb turn, which is present in English, really refers to future perfect time and should be so rendered in the Latin.

LESSON VII

12. The Subjunctive in Independent Uses.

a. Volitive, § 172. a, b, c, and notes 1 and 2.

b. Optative, § 172. e. 1, 2, 3.

EXAMPLES

eāmus, let us go; audiat, let him hear; exeant, let them go forth;
ne scribant, let them not write
ne hoc fēceris, or nōli hoc facere, do not do this
(utinam) veniat, O that he may come, may he come, I wish that he may come, I hope that etc.
(utinam) nē veniat, O that he may not come, I hope that he won’t come, etc.

utinam veniret, O that he were coming (now), would that etc.

utinam vēnisset, O that he had come (then), would that etc.

NOTE. The negative word with the volitive and optative subjunctive is regularly nē; with the potential subjunctive (§ 172. f) it is nōn.
EXERCISE

1. Let us demand the grain which they have promised.
2. Let Liscus declare that which he has before kept secret.
3. Do not announce our interview to the enemy.
4. \(^1\) Do not, my friends, announce to the multitude the plans which you have heard.
5. Would that we were finding these things to be true.
6. I hope that nothing may happen to Cæsar.
7. O that you and Cæsar and the Romans had not restored my brother to his former place of influence.
8. Let us not \(^2\) begin to flee.
9. \(^1\) Do not give your sister in marriage to Dumnorix.
10. I hope you may not find that Dumnorix is in command of the cavalry.\(^3\)
11. Let them neither take the oath nor surrender their arms.
12. Ariovistus had settled in their territories and was demanding hostages.

\(^1\) nōli with infinitive, § 172. c. note 1. \(^2\) Latin, make a beginning of flight. \(^3\) Dative, § 84.

LESSON VIII


\(a.\) The Potential Subjunctive, § 172. \(f\) and note.

EXAMPLES

aliquis dīcat, some one may say.
quis hoc ferat? who can endure this?
tum hoc vidērēs, then you (that is, any one) might have seen this.
hoc nōn crēdat, he would not believe this.

Note. Independent subjunctives translated with may, might, can, as in the first three examples, are not used except with the words quis, aliquis, vix, facile, forsitān, with the indefinite second person (for example, vidērēs above), or with questions expecting negative answers. Those that are
translated with *would*, as in the last example, usually depend upon some condition expressed or implied: *hoc non credat, he would not believe this* (that is, if you should tell him).

6. The Imperative Mood, § 173.

**EXAMPLES**

*instrue cōpiās, draw up the forces*  
*ēdūcite militēs, lead forth the soldiers*

**Note.** Prohibitions, or negative commands, are most frequently expressed by *nōli* or *nōlite* (the imperative of the verb *nōlō*) followed by the infinitive; the perfect subjunctive with *nē* is likewise so used:

\[
\begin{align*}
nōli nōs dēspicere, Caesar & \quad do not despise us, Caesar \\
nē nōs dēspexeris, Caesar & \quad do not despise us, Caesar \\
nōlite nōs dēspicere, amīci & \quad do not despise us, friends \\
nē nōs dēspexeritis, amīci & \quad do not despise us, friends
\end{align*}
\]

**EXERCISE**

1. Some one may say, "Let us send forward scouts."
2. It would be easy to collect the grain.
3. In the third watch you might have seen Labienus.
4. The Romans because of their bravery 1 can conquer the Germans.
5. Who 2 can hesitate to follow such a general?
6. O that our general would say, "Let us advance."
7. Lead your forces to the nearest hill and attack the enemy.
8. Do not follow the enemy, but encamp in this place.
9. Would that you had led your forces into camp; no one 3 would have attacked you there.
10. Do not say, "I hope that we may conquer the enemy," but advance and conquer them.
11. They never would lead their forces across into the territories of the Sequani.
12. I would that he had remained in hiding; for 4 he would now be free.

1 Use *possūm* with infinitive. The potential subjunctive cannot be used here; see § 13 a. note, above.  
2 Do not use *possūm* here; cf. § 13 a. note, above.  
3 Past perfect subjunctive.  
4 Past subjunctive.
LESSON IX

15. Clauses of Pure Purpose,* § 174.
16. Relative Clauses of Purpose, §§ 175, 176.

EXAMPLES
explōrātōrēs praemittit ut (or qui) locum dēligant, he sends forward scouts to choose a place
explōrātōrēs praemisit ut (or qui) locum dēligerent, he sent forward scouts to choose a place
pontem facit quō facilius transeat, he builds a bridge that (by which) he may cross the more easily

EXERCISE
1. They were hurling javelins 1 to wound our men.
2. Let us remove the horses to make the danger of all equal.
3. They had drawn their swords that they might make an attack on us.
4. The Helvetii will send envoys to him 2 to beg for peace.
5. They met him on the way 3 to talk the sooner about a surrender.
6. Six thousand men hastened to the Rhine that they might not surrender their arms.
7. They went in the 4 first part of the night, the better to conceal their flight.
8. Let them restore the towns lest the Germans cross over.
9. I hope that he may choose another ambassador 5 to send.
10. No one would urge his troops to withstand such an army.
11. Cæsar sent letters that they might know these things to be true.
12. Let us receive the king’s son within our territories.

1 Express by an ut clause, § 174. An infinitive often expresses purpose in English, but it must not be so used in Latin. 2 Use a relative clause of purpose. 3 quō mātūrīus, lit. by which the sooner, § 176. 4 prīma nocte. 5 Latin, whom he may send.

* The terms “pure purpose” and “pure result” are used to distinguish adverbial clauses of purpose or result from relative or substantive clauses of this character.
LESSON X

17. Relative Clauses of Description (Characteristic), § 177 and a.
18. Clauses of Pure Result, § 179 and note.

EXAMPLES

a. Relative Clauses of Description:

miles qui fugiat est timidus, a soldier who runs away is cowardly

In this sentence the clause qui fugiat describes, or tells what kind of soldier it is, and hence takes the subjunctive. Compare it with the following:

ille miles, qui fugit, est timidus, that soldier, who is running away, is cowardly

Here the clause qui fugit does not describe the soldier, but simply states a fact about him, and the fact is expressed by the indicative.

Notice also the following forms of descriptive clauses:

sunt qui maledicant, there are some who slander
nēmō est qui hoc nōn crēdat, there is no one who does not believe this

b. Clauses of Pure Result:

Affirmative clauses of purpose and result are alike in form; but negative clauses of purpose are introduced by nē (§ 174), negative clauses of result by ut nōn:

iter fēcit ut oppidum caperet, he marched to take the town (purpose).
iter tam celeriter fēcit ut oppidum caperet, he marched so quickly that he took the town (result)
fugit nē interficerētur, he fled that he might not be killed (negative purpose)
tam celeriter fugit ut nōn caperētur, he fled so swiftly that he was not captured (negative result)

c. Relative Clauses of Result:

nēmō est tam timidus qui fugiat, no one is so cowardly that he (lit. who) runs away
This sentence is equivalent to nōmō est tam timiūs ut fugiāt. The word tam in the antecedent clause shows that the relative clause expresses result rather than description, but the constructions are closely related. (See § 179. note.)

**EXERCISE**

1. Ariovistus will hasten to take Vesontio.
2. The town was so fortified that the Romans were not able to take it.
3. There were some who did not try to follow.
4. Who is there that can contend with you?
5. Cæsar hastened by such long marches that he seized the town before the arrival of Ariovistus.
6. There is no one so bold that he dares to do these things.
7. 1 I am not such a man that I hold in mind the wrongs of the Hædui.
8. There was no way by which they could go forth.
9. He would not incite his friends to make the march.
10. A law which injures the people ² is a punishment.
11. There are very few traders who dare to come into these islands.
12. He sent messengers that an army might be collected more quickly.

1 Nōn sum quī. ² Dative, § 83.

**LESSON XI**

20. **Substantive Clauses, § 181.**
21. **Substantive Clauses of Purpose, § 183 and note.**
22. **Substantive Clauses after Verbs of Fearing, § 184.**

**EXAMPLES**

hortor ut veniat, I urge him to come (lit. that he come)
imperat nō tant, he commands them not to go
Galli Rōmānōs expellere cōnāti sunt, the Gauls tried to drive out the Romans
vereor nē Germāni fūmen trānseant, I fear that the Germans will cross the river
metuō ut auxílium ferās, I fear that you will not bring aid

NOTE 1. Among the common verbs that regularly take the subjunctive in a substantive clause of purpose are the following:

- hortor, cohortor, urge, exhort
- imperō, order, command
- moneō, advise
- ōrō, petō, rogō, ask
- persuādeo, persuade
- postulō, demand

NOTE 2. The following verbs take the infinitive:

- cōnor, attempt
- iubeō, command
- patior, allow
- vetō, forbid

NOTE 3. Observe that, in substantive clauses after verbs of fearing, nē is translated that, or lest, and ut that not.

EXERCISE

1. They fear that their plans will be reported.
2. We ask that we may make the journey with you.
3. Do not try to do things which you are not able to do.
4. The Hāedui were afraid that Ariovistus would remain in Gaul.
5. They tried to persuade Cæsar to drive out the Germans.
6. They feared that Cæsar would not send his legions to drive out the enemy.
7. Let us exhort our friends not to fear that they will be conquered.
8. Would that we had persuaded our allies not to retreat.
9. Do not give hostages, but demand that hostages be given.
10. Let us ask for soldiers to guard the camp.
11. The band was so large that it was perceived by the enemy.
12. There was no one who did not fear that the army would not endure the toil.

1 § 150. a. 2 § 183. note. 3 Not accusative. 4 § 175. 6 Relative clause of description, § 177. a.
LESSON XII

23. Substantive Clauses (continued), § 181.
24. Substantive Clauses of Result, § 187. I, II.
25. Substantive Clauses introduced by quin or quo minus, §§185, 186.

EXAMPLES

efficit, he brings it about
fit, it happens
accidit, it happens
additum, it is added
ut obsideat dent, that they give hostages
enee impedivit quominus (nee) flumen transirent, he hindered them from crossing the river
nee non impedivit qui flumen transirent, he did not hinder them from crossing the river
non dubitau quin Helvetii exant, I do not doubt that the Helvetii are going forth

EXERCISE

1. Rage and madness \(^1\) caused him to make war on them.
2. An added fact was (it was added) that within the memory of our fathers Marius conquered these same Germans.
3. Thus it happened that he moved the camp the \(^2\) next night.
4. There is no doubt that he has favored this legion.\(^3\)
5. There were some who were not prevented from laying waste the fields.
6. He commanded that the captives be led forth in sight of our army.
7. It happened that Cæsar had the \(^4\) greatest confidence in him.
8. I do not doubt that the scouts \(^5\) will inform Cæsar.
9. I fear that Ariovistus will not seek the friendship of Cæsar.
10. \(^6\) Ariovistus is a man who conquers by stratagem.
11. I fear that he will prevent them from marching.
12. They will be prevented from waging war.

\(^1\) brought it about that he made.  \(^2\) Ablative, § 119.  \(^3\) Dative, § 83.
\(^4\) maximè confideret, with the dative.  \(^5\) Use the active periphrastic, § 222.
\(^6\) Ariovistus est qui.
LESSON XIII

26. Causal Clauses introduced by *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, or *quandō*, § 188. *a, b.*

27. Causal Clauses introduced by *cum*, § 189.

**EXAMPLES**

queritur quod dēstitūtus est \( \rightarrow \) he is complaining because he has been abandoned

queritur quod dēstitūtus sit \( \rightarrow \) abandoned

Observe that these two sentences are translated in exactly the same way; but the Latin makes it clear that in the first the speaker is giving his own reason, and that in the second he is giving the reason alleged by the person who is complaining.

*cum mōns intercīderet, prōcēdere nōn poterant, since a mountain intervened, they were not able to proceed*

*cum hostēs fūgissent, castra mōvērunt, since the enemy had fled, they moved the camp*

**EXERCISE**

1. I crossed the Rhine because the Gauls invited me.
2. The Germans left home because (as they said) they had dwelling places in Gaul.
3. Ariovistus will make war on the Romans because (as he says) they have made war on him.1
4. Since the horsemen were drawing nearer, Cāesar ceased speaking.
5. These tribes were conquered because they could not keep the Romans from going through their territories.
6. Let us attack Ariovistus because he has tried to drive out the Romans.
7. Since you render this return, I shall prevent the multitude from crossing over into Gaul.
8. There was no one so cowardly that he was not willing to follow.
9. Ariovistus, however, had crossed the Rhine because (as he claimed) he had been invited by the Gauls.2
10. There is no doubt that a large number of Germans were led into Gaul to lay waste the fields.

11. He could not fight very advantageously because he had no shield.

12. It happened that very many were hard pressed because the enemy attacked them one at a time.

1 Use the reflexive. 2 Latin, made an end of speaking (loquendi, § 223).

3 § 104. 4 Not infinitive.

LESSON XIV

28. Temporal Clauses introduced by cum, § 194. a, b.

29. Temporal Clauses introduced by antequam or priusquam, § 197. a, b.

30. Temporal Clauses introduced by dum, donec, or quoad, § 198. III. a, b.

EXAMPLES

multōs amīcōs habuit eō tempore cum ex urbe profectus est, he had many friends at the time when he set out from the city

hostēs eōs adgressī sunt cum inermēs essent, the enemy attacked them (at a time) when they were defenseless

incolae oppida combussērunt priusquam hostēs pervēnērunt, the inhabitants burned their towns before the enemy arrived

incolae oppida combussērunt priusquam hostēs pervenīrent, the inhabitants burned their towns before the enemy should arrive

The clause priusquam . . . pervēnērunt in the third sentence shows by the indicative that the enemy did in fact arrive; in the fourth sentence nothing shows certainly whether the enemy arrived or not. It is only known that the towns were burned in anticipation of their possible arrival.

The same difference between fact and anticipation is shown by the mood in the following sentences:

imperātor in urbe manēbat dum legiōnēs pervēnērunt, the general remained in the city until the legions arrived

imperātor in urbe manēbat dum legiōnēs pervenīrent, the general remained in the city until the legions should arrive
EXERCISE

1. When I inquired from the matrons, they spoke as follows.
2. At the time when Cæsar led back his forces into camp, Ariovistus attacked him.
3. Cæsar did not learn the reason before the captives arrived.
4. Since these regions extended to the ocean, they could wander about more widely.
5. The Germans were waiting until they should see the new moon.
6. Cæsar drew up his line of battle before he knew this custom.
7. The enemy were not prevented from making sallies before their camp was taken.
8. They feared that the army would cross the river before reinforcements should arrive.
9. When the women who were in the wagons saw our army, they feared that they should be given into slavery.
10. The Germans had been so trained that they would die before they would endure servitude.
11. When they had sent back a part of their forces, the rest advanced to the banks of the river.
12. Since the command of the whole war has been conferred upon Galba,\(^1\) he will collect many armed men.

\(^1\) Dative, § 82.

LESSON XV

31. Direct Questions, §§ 168, 170 and a. 1, 2, 3; b. 1, 2.

32. Indirect Questions, § 201 and note. For examples, see grammar.

EXERCISE

1. Did Cæsar dismiss Diviciacus or not?
2. Did he send forward scouts or did he hasten to lead the army through the fields of the enemy?
3. Who is this tribune? He is n’t armed, is he?
4. I asked who that tribune was, and whether he was armed.
5. Did he call a conference or not? I asked whether he called a conference or not.

6. I feared that he would ask me whether the general was going to call a council.

7. Was he so cowardly that he led his army back?

8. What is the nature of the place? Are there forests and mountains there?

9. I asked what the nature of the place was, and whether there were forests and lakes there.

10. Did he not ask whether Cæsar refrained from battle\(^1\) or not?

11. Is there\(^2\) any one who does not wonder why he advanced?

12. He will not be prevented from asking why the cavalry has been sent into these fields.

\(^1\) proeliō, § 101. \(^2\) quisquam.

**LESSON XVI**

33. Conditional Sentences.

a. Present Conditions, § 199. I. \(a, b\).

b. Future Conditions, § 199. II. \(a, b\).

c. Past Conditions, § 199. III. \(a, b\).

**EXAMPLES**

\(a. \text{Present}\)

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{sī hoc facit, fortis est, if he is doing this, he is brave} \\
n\text{would be brave}
\end{align*}
\]

\(b. \text{Future}\)

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{sī hoc faciet, fortis erit, if he does (shall do) this, he will be brave} \\
n\text{would be brave}
\end{align*}
\]

\(c. \text{Past}\)

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{sī hoc faciēbat, fortis erat, if he was doing this, he was brave} \\
n\text{sī hoc fēcit, fortis fuit, if he did this, he was brave} \\
n\text{sī hoc fēcisset, fortis fuisse, if he had done this, he would have been brave}
\end{align*}
\]
EXERCISE

1. A multitude of horsemen arrived before the mound was thrown up.

2. If you set up towers, the Gauls will send ambassadors.

3. If the Remi should ask that the Gauls be preserved, they would gain their request.

4. I shall receive the enemy in surrender if they (shall) give up their arms.

5. If they are being reduced to servitude, they are enduring all (manner of) insults.

6. If they had perceived how great a calamity they had brought upon the state, they would have fled into Britain.

7. If ambassadors had been sent, they would not have accepted any conditions of peace.

8. If the state was large, he demanded very many hostages.

9. If he should return to Cæsar, would Cæsar dismiss his forces?

10. If they were allowing wine to be imported, would not their courage be weakened?

11. If there had been any hope of safety, they would not have detained the ambassadors, would they?

12. They would not have entered these regions if they had been acquainted with the mountains and forests.

1 Not present, § 199. II. a.
2 § 170. a. 3.

LESSON XVII

34. Concessive Clauses introduced by quamquam, § 191.

35. Concessive Clauses introduced by cum, § 192 and note.

EXAMPLES

quamquam flumen est altum, tamen transire possumus, although (the fact is that) the river is deep, nevertheless we can cross

iter non avertit, cum hostes sequerentur, he did not turn aside, although the enemy were following
cum urge'rentur, tamen non fugerunt, although they were hard pressed, nevertheless they did not flee

Note. Observe that cum may mean when (temporal), since (causal), and although (concessive). When it is temporal, the mood used may be indicative or subjunctive (§ 194); but when it is causal or concessive, cum is always followed by the subjunctive. Its concessive use is often indicated by the presence of tamen, nevertheless, in the main clause.

Exercise

1. Although the Nervii are (really) brave, nevertheless they cannot conquer the Romans.
2. Though the legions were hard pressed, they nevertheless resisted the enemy\(^1\) bravely.
3. Since the inequality of fortune was so great, different results followed.
4. The inequality of fortune was so great that different results followed.
5. Though the Gauls were breathless with running,\(^2\) they nevertheless attempted to cross the river.
6. The Gauls were repulsed when they attempted to cross the river.
7. Furthermore (it was added that), though they had advanced into an unfavorable place, yet they put the enemy to flight.
8. The standard would not have been lost if the standard bearer had not been killed.
9. The courage of the soldiers will be renewed if Cæsar advances\(^3\) to the front rank.
10. They were waiting until Labienus should send forward the tenth legion.
11. He did not see clearly for what reason Labienus was sending forward the tenth legion.
12. If the enemy should attack our van, we should halt.

\(^1\) Dative, § 83. \(^2\) Ablative, § 109. \(^3\) Not present.
LESSON XVIII

36. Indirect Discourse defined, §§ 202, 203 and a.

37. Declarative Sentences in Indirect Discourse, § 204.
   a. Simple Sentences, § 204.
   b. Complex Sentences, §§ 208, 209 and note.

38. Commands in Indirect Discourse, §§ 205, 206.

39. Interrogative Sentences (Questions) in Indirect Discourse, § 207. I.

EXAMPLES

(1) Simple Sentences

The tense of the infinitive in indirect discourse is determined by the tense of the verb as it would have been used in the direct discourse, and not by the tense of the verb of saying. The rule for the sequence of tenses (§ 162) does not affect the infinitive.

**DIRECT:** Rōmānī fortiter pugnant, the Romans fight bravely

```
{dicit
dicēbat
dicet
dīxit
dīserat
dīserit}
```

**INDIRECT:** Rōmānōs fortiter pugnāre, he says, said, will say, etc., that the Romans fight (fought, if the verb of saying refers to past time) bravely

(2) Complex Sentences

When translating complex sentences into indirect discourse treat the main clause as a simple sentence, considering first what the form would be in the direct discourse. For the subordinate clauses, put the verbs in the subjunctive if they are not already in that mood, observing the rule for the sequence of tenses. It is the tense of the verb of saying, dicit, dīxit, etc., which determines the sequence.
LATIN COMPOSITION

DIRECT DISCOURSE

Rōmānī, quī in oppidō sunt, fortiter pugnānt (pugnāvērunt, pugnābunt),
the Romans, who are in the town, fight (fought, will fight) bravely

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

dīcit Rōmānōs, quī in oppidō sint, fortiter pugnāre (pugnāvisse, pug-
nātūrōs esse), he says that the Romans, who are in the town, fight
(fought, will fight) bravely
dīxit Rōmānōs, quī in oppidō essent, fortiter pugnāre (pugnāvisse,
pugnātūrōs esse), he said that the Romans, who were in the town,
fought (had fought, would fight) bravely

DIRECT DISCOURSE

Rōmānī, quī in oppidō fuērunt, fortiter pugnānt (pugnāvērunt, pug-
nābunt), the Romans, who have been in the town, fight (fought,
will fight) bravely

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

dīcit Rōmānōs, quī in oppidō fuerint, fortiter pugnāre (pugnāvisse,
pugnātūrōs esse), he says that the Romans, who have been in the
town, fight (fought, will fight) bravely
dīxit Rōmānōs, quī in oppidō fuissent, fortiter pugnāre (pugnāvisse,
pugnātūrōs esse), he said that the Romans, who had been in the
town, fought (had fought, would fight) bravely

(3) COMMANDS

DIRECT DISCOURSE  INDIRECT DISCOURSE

hostēs vincē, conquer the enemy dīcit (dīxit) hostēs vincat (vinceret),
he directs (directed) him to
conquer the enemy

(4) QUESTIONS

DIRECT DISCOURSE  INDIRECT DISCOURSE

cūr nōn ēxit? why does he not (dīcit, dīxit) cūr nōn exēat (exīret),
(he says, said) why does (did) he
go forth? (he says, said) why does (did) he
not go forth?
EXERCISE

1. The legions which are hard pressed fear that they will be surrounded.

2. He knows that the legions which are hard pressed fear that they will be surrounded.

3. He said that the legions which were hard pressed feared that they would be surrounded.

4. He said that the battle had been announced to the soldiers who were guarding the baggage.

5. The Romans will not take the territories which the Gauls hold.

6. He says that the Romans will not take the territories which the Gauls hold.

7. He announced that the Romans would not take the territories which the Gauls held.

8. Throw back the javelins that you have intercepted.

9. He directed them to throw back the javelins that they had intercepted.

10. He said that the territories were his.¹ Why had the Germans crossed the Rhine?

11. Lead out the legions that are around you. Why do you remain here?

12. He directed him to lead out the legions that were around him; (and asked) why he remained there.

13. don't lay waste our fields.

14. He told us not to lay waste their fields.

¹ Possessive reflexive, § 133; see also §§ 48. II, 59, 60, and note that the predicate with esse agrees with the subject accusative. ² § 173, note. ³ Use a form of dícē. ⁴ § 206.
LESSON XIX

(Before beginning this lesson review Lesson XVI)


b. Less Probable Future Conditions in Indirect Discourse, §§ 211, 212.
c. Conditions Contrary to Fact in Indirect Discourse, § 213. a, b.
For all these cases, study carefully the examples in the grammar.

EXERCISE

Change each of the following sentences into indirect discourse, first after dicit, and then after dixit:

1. If they should seek peace, they would give up all their possessions.
2. If the Romans preserve (shall preserve) the Aduatuci, they will deprive them of all their arms.¹
3. If you have neighbors who are hostile, they envy your valor.²
4. The general would have defended them if they had surrendered their arms.
5. If the cavalry were (now) attacking the Germans, they would be hard pressed.
6. If all the arms were thrown into the ditch, the heap equaled the height of the wall.
7. If the gates should be closed, the soldiers would go forth.
8. If the tribes which dwell across the Rhine should send envoys, Cæsar would make peace with them.
9. If the road over the Alps had not been dangerous, Cæsar would not have sent a legion there.³
10. If the enemy had fought successful battles, hostages would not have been given.

¹ Ablative, § 101. ² Dative, § 83. ³ periculōsum. ⁴ Not ibi, because there in this sentence means thither.
LESSON XX

41. The Infinitive as Subject, § 216. a, b.

42. The Infinitive as Object, § 217. a, b.

43. The Complementary Infinitive, § 217. c.

EXAMPLES

**Infinitive as Subject**

- fās est, *it is right*
- turpe est, *it is disgraceful*
- necesse est, *it is necessary*
- opus est, *it is necessary*
- licet, *it is permitted*
- apertum est, *it is plain*
- mīrum est, *it is wonderful*
- vērum est, *it is true*
- fāma est, *it is rumored*

- ire, *to go, or eum* (for) *him to go*
- agrōs vāstāri, *that the fields are laid waste*

**Infinitive as Object**

- vetō eum scribere, *I forbid him to write*
- iubeō sociōs venire, *I order the allies to come*

**Complementary Infinitive**

- dēbeō, *I ought*
- possum, *I can (am able)*
- soleō, *I am accustomed*

- ire, *to go*

**EXERCISE**

1. It is plain that the difficulties were great.
2. All men ought to praise him because he is brave.
3. He said that all men ought to praise the soldier because he was brave.
4. It was necessary for Cæsar to distribute his army.
5. It is rumored that the Germans crossed the river before the scouts announced that they were coming.
6. He thinks that the Germans would not have crossed the river if the scouts had announced that they were coming.
7. It would be disgraceful to surrender our arms if there should be hope of victory.
8. He said that it would be disgraceful to surrender their arms if there should be hope of victory.

9. He will not order them to remain in this place unless he thinks that it is right.

10. It is not proper that the villages of those who have defended us be burned.

11. They were accustomed to make the prows high \(^1\) in order to receive the waves more easily.

12. When the ships had arrived, it was not clear what plan of battle he would adopt.

13. It is true that the Romans had prepared hooks by which \(^2\) to seize the ropes of the ships.

14. He says that if the storm had not been so great, the ships would not have been detained.

\(^1\) Not ut. Why? \(^2\) See § 175, and cf. Lesson IX, note 5.

LESSON XXI

44. The Participle, § 219.

a. Tenses, § 167.

b. Adjective and Predicate Uses, §§ 220. \(a-e\), 221.

c. The Ablative Absolute, §§ 117, 118.

45. Certain tenses and uses of the English participle are wanting in Latin, as is seen in the following comparison:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. cōgēns</td>
<td>collecting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past ——</td>
<td>having collected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. coāctūrus</td>
<td>about to collect</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Hence, in such a sentence as they killed him (as he was) collecting the ships, the present participle, collecting, since it exists also in Latin, cōgēns, may be translated literally, and we have (eum) cōgentem nāvēs occidērunt.
But, in the absence of the present *passive* participle, we cannot translate literally the *ships* (while) *being collected were seized*, but must express the idea in some other way, as, for example, by a clause, *while they were being collected*, *dum cōguntur*.

Similarly we cannot translate literally, by means of a past active participle, *the Romans, having collected their ships, set sail*; but must express the idea by a clause, *cum nāvēs coēgissent, when they had collected their ships*, or by an ablative absolute, *nāvibus coēctis, their ships having been collected*, or by some other form of statement.

46. The place of the missing participles in Latin is most frequently supplied by the ablative absolute, but it is to be noted that this construction can be used only when its substantive refers to a person or thing not elsewhere mentioned in the same sentence. For example, do not translate *Caesar, having captured the town, burned it*, by *Caesar, oppidō captō, id incendit*, where *id* and *oppidō* refer to the same thing, but rather by *Caesar oppidum captum incendit*.

On the other hand, in the sentence *Caesar, having captured the town, burned the temple*, the ablative absolute may be used, as, *Caesar, oppidō captō, templum incendit*.

47. In translating English sentences into Latin, clauses of *time, cause, condition, concession*, etc. are often best rendered by a participial construction; see § 220. *a–e*.

**EXERCISE**

Before beginning the translation of the following sentences study carefully all the examples in the grammar, § 220. *a–e*. In translating use a participle wherever possible.

1. After the yards had been torn off, the ships could not move from the spot.
2. The soldiers hastened *1* while climbing into the ships of the enemy.
3. We saw the enemy seeking safety in flight.
4. *2* After the business was finished, very few of the ships reached land.
5. It is true that the Romans took the ships by surrounding them.
6. The Veneti, having lost all their ships, surrendered to Cæsar.
7. Since they had gathered all their ships into one place, it was clear that they would be victorious.
8. He sold into slavery (those) who inhabited the coast.

1 Present participle. 2 Do not use a clause. 3 Latin, took the surrounded ships. Why not ablative absolute?

II. Cæsar, having judged that it was necessary to send aid to those who were fighting around the gates, advanced to the front line. Then, after exhorting his (men) to be brave, he gave the signal. The Romans, having quickly driven out the enemy, took the town. Although the town had been captured, Cæsar forbade that the inhabitants should be killed.

LESSON XXII


49. The Passive Periphrastic Conjugation, § 224 a.

50. The Dative of Agent, § 87.

51. The passive periphrastic conjugation denotes what must be, or what ought to be, and is always passive. Therefore, to use this construction, sentences not already passive must first be cast in the passive form; for example, to translate Caesar must give the signal, the sentence must be recast to the signal must be given by Caesar, Caesari signum dandum est.

52. Since the passive of an intransitive verb is always impersonal (§ 66), the passive periphrastic of such a verb must be used impersonally; hence the gerundive of an intransitive is always neuter singular in form. The case that the verb governs in the active is retained in the passive; for example, they must be persuaded is rendered eis persuādendum est (lit. it must be persuaded to them).
EXERCISE

I. 1. The soldiers could see the enemy approaching the rampart.¹
2. They all exclaimed that Sabinus ought to set out for the camp of Caesar.
3. We ought not to criticize the general because he does not lead out his legions.
4. We must not hinder the lieutenant from keeping himself in camp.²
5. We ought to persuade the man ³ to cross over to the enemy and learn what is going on.
6. Caesar noticed that, although the Germans had been driven out, the Belgæ were still unfriendly.
7. He replied that the allies would have to collect ships.
8. Our kinsmen must leave their fields, since the enemy are making inroads.

¹ Dative. ² castris, ablative of means, § 106. ³ Not infinitive.

II. Sabinus, after receiving his troops, hastened into the territory of the enemy. Among the enemy there was great fear when they heard that Sabinus was approaching. They knew that they must collect large forces ¹ to wage war with him successfully. When the scouts informed Sabinus that the enemy were not far distant, he thought that he ought not to advance until Caesar should arrive. He did not dare to attack so great a multitude ² while Caesar was absent.

² Not infinitive. ³ Ablative absolute, § 117. e.

LESSON XXIII

53. The Gerundive (continued), § 224. b.

54. The Gerund, § 223. a–d and note.

a. The Gerundive and the Gerund expressing Purpose, § 225. a, b.

Note. In the genitive and the ablative without a preposition the gerund may take a direct object, as, cupidus epistulam scribendi, desirous of writing a letter. In other cases the gerundive construction is preferred, and may be used even here, as, cupidus epistulæ scribendiæ. The translation is exactly the same as for the gerund.
EXERCISE

I. 1. We ought not to lose this favorable opportunity of going to the camp.
  2. On account of the greatness of the forests and swamps war ought not to be waged.
  3. After the council was dismissed, they collected fagots suitable for filling the Roman ditches.
  4. When his arrival was known, the enemy were desirous of engaging in a cavalry battle.
  5. Our men are desirous of showing what they can do without the general.
  6. They sent ambassadors to Crassus to beg for peace.
  7. He said that a favorable opportunity of detaining the ambassadors was given.
  8. When he had set forth the reasons for coming, he ceased speaking.
  9. The Gauls attempt to conquer by fighting long and bravely.

1 Passive periphrastic.  2 Ablative, § 109.  3 aptus with ad and the accusative of the gerundive.  4 Indirect question.

II. Although the enemy daily gave opportunities for fighting, Sabinus kept himself in camp to confirm the impression of fear. Then he chose a crafty man well fitted to carry out the matter successfully and secretly sent him to the enemy to set forth the fear of the Romans. This man told the Gauls that Sabinus was desirous of secretly leading out his army the next night, and that there was no doubt that they could easily overcome the unsuspecting Romans.

1 Genitive of the gerund.  2 Genitive of the gerund with causā.  3 Genitive of the gerundive with causā.  4 A subjunctive clause with quin, following a negative expression of doubt, § 186.
LESSON XXIV

55. Relative Pronouns, § 137.

56. Demonstrative Pronouns and Adjectives, §§ 134. a, 135.

a. Hic, iste, and ille point out a person or thing definitely in place or time. Their relation to the speaker may be represented graphically thus:

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{hic} & \text{iste} & \text{ille} \\
\text{Speaker} & \text{this (near)} & \text{that (remote)} & \text{that (more remote)}
\end{array}
\]

The pronoun is is used of persons or things either far or near and makes no definite reference to place or time. As a substantive it is commonly used as a pronoun of the third person (he, she, it).

57. Indefinite Pronouns and Adjectives, § 144. a–d.

58. Reflexive Pronouns and Adjectives, §§ 132, 133 and note.

a. The Intensive Pronoun ipse, § 136.

EXERCISE

I. 1. Concerning this man whom you have named I say nothing.

2. Although the deserters are keeping themselves in hiding, it is certain that they are in the city.

3. It is rumored that a certain man, whom it is not necessary to name, has collected a large army for storming the town.

4. Neither were there any supplies at home, nor was any one prepared for waging war.

5. Crassus sent certain horsemen to go around the camp.

6. If any one desires to drive away the defenders of the gate, he must not hesitate.

7. Unless some one shall hinder us from going forth, we shall pursue (those) who seek safety in flight.

8. We shall follow them into the swamps that no one may escape.

1 dē with ablative. 2 Genitive of gerundive with causa. 3 illus, § 144. c. 4 quisquam, § 144. c. 5 Relative clause of purpose. 6 nē quis, § 144. a.
II. When certain scouts who had been sent forward to select a place suitable for a camp returned, they reported \(^1\) as follows: "There are in all two places which we can choose, the one protected by a swamp, the other more suitable for a camp but less easy \(^2\) to defend." \(^8\) On hearing this the general set out with two cohorts to see the places himself. On the way they met \(^4\) some horsemen of the enemy. Some of these they killed (as they were) fleeing; others they surrounded and captured.

\(^1\) haec. \(^2\) Express by ad with the gerund. \(^3\) his auditis, ablative absolute. \(^4\) occurred with the dative.

LESSON XXV.

59. Expressions of Time.

a. Time When or Within Which, § 119.

b. Time How Long or During Which, § 96.

c. Time Before or After an Event, § 114.

To denote the *time before* or *time after* an event the Latin uses the word *ante* or *post*, either as an adverb with the ablative of measure of difference (§ 114) or as a preposition governing the accusative:

- *decem ante diēbus* (lit. *before by ten days*) or *ante decem diēs,* *ten days before*
- *decem post diēbus* (lit. *afterward by ten days*) or *post decem diēs,* *ten days after*

**Note.** As prepositions *ante* and *post* either precede the numeral or stand between it and its noun; as adverbs they either precede or follow the noun.

**EXERCISE**

For Latin numerals see page 323.

1. Pompey was consul in the fifty-fifth year before Christ.

2. The Gauls were subdued by Cæsar in eight years. In the fourth year he made his first inroad into the territory of the Germans.

3. A few months after, \(^1\) when he had subdued many tribes of Gauls, he hastened to Britain.
4. Those tribes, since they neither had ships nor were able to repulse the guards, were prevented from crossing.

5. Before those who were on this side of the river saw what these (men) were doing, the ships were seized.

6. After they had seized the ships, they supported themselves for the rest of the winter on the captured supplies.

7. Three months afterward these same tribes would have returned into Gaul if they had not been prevented from crossing.

8. If the Gauls had decided that they ought to make a beginning of fighting, they would have driven out the enemy in three days.

1 Ablative absolute.  2 Indirect question.  3 Ablative absolute.  4 reliquam partem, § 96.  5 Ablative, § 106.

II. Certain tribes which I have mentioned, having been driven from their territories, wandered about for three years and reached the regions nearest to the Rhine, where dwelt the Menapii. The latter, terrified by the approach of this great multitude, crossed the river, leaving guards to prevent the enemy from crossing. The enemy, having tried in vain for many days to cross, pretended that they were returning to their own settlements, and the Menapii so believed. But suddenly they attacked the unsuspecting Menapii, having made a march of three days in a single night.

1 hī.  2 Ablative absolute.  3 A relative clause of purpose.

LESSON XXVI

60. Expressions of Place.

a. Place from Which, § 101. a.

b. Place Whither, § 97.

c. Place toward Which, § 97. note.

d. Place at or in Which, § 120.

e. The Locative Case, § 120. a.

Note. Apply as a general principle the rule that the relations of place are expressed by prepositions with their proper cases, but that names of towns and domus omit the preposition.
EXERCISE

I. 1. He replied that there were no supplies at home by which they could support themselves.
2. During the winter before the war against the Germans Caesar had been in Italy.
3. From Italy to Germany is a long journey; (and) likewise the road from Rome to Geneva is difficult.
4. In the towns the Gauls surround travelers ¹ to ask what each one of them has heard about each thing.
5. Caesar set out for his army early because he feared that the Gauls were sending embassies to the Germans.
6. The army had remained in winter quarters for three months not far from the sea.
7. If the tribes wander ² too widely from their boundaries, they will never return home.
8. He wishes to go from this place to Vesontio; or, if that town is too far away, to Geneva.

¹ Not infinitive. ² látius, § 145.

II. Caesar waged war for many years in Gaul and other lands, for he did not wish to make an end¹ of fighting until he had overcome all his enemies. After the wars were finished he returned home. But he did not live many years. Many envied him² and there were some who believed that he was seeking royal power. Accordingly a conspiracy was made against him, and he was killed at Rome by those who a few years before had been his friends.

¹ finis. ² Dative, § 83. ³ erant qui, with the subjunctive of description, § 177. a.
61. The Genitive, § 72.

a. The Possessive Genitive, § 73.
b. The Genitive of Material, § 79.
c. The Genitive of Description, § 77.
d. The Partitive Genitive, § 76. a.
e. The Subjective Genitive, § 75. a.
f. The Objective Genitive, § 75. b.

Note. With cardinal numbers and quidam the ablative with ē or ex is used instead of the partitive genitive:

quattuor ex Helvētiis, four of the Helvetii

EXERCISE

I. 1. He made a march of a few days into the territory of the Germans.
2. Many of their ambassadors came from their own country into Gaul.
3. This tribe of the Germans had gone forth from home many years before, terrified by fear of the Suebi.
4. In five days they reached the banks of the Rhine, which is the largest river of Germany.
5. Those who live near the river seek the friendship of their neighbors.
6. When they could no longer withstand the attack of the Romans, they fled into the forests.
7. The heap of arms was so great that it equaled the height of the wall.
8. They must collect a large supply of grain that they may the more easily support themselves during the winter.

II. The Germans were (men) of the greatest valor and so fierce that even¹ the Romans feared them. When Cæsar was in Gaul, the most conspicuous of the Germans was their king, Ariovistus. He had
crossed the Rhine with a great multitude and come into the territory of the Sequani, and had seized a third part of their land, the best of all Gaul. When certain of the Sequani had come to Cæsar to complain concerning the wrongs of Ariovistus, their terror of the king was so great that they wept.

1 ipæl.  2 Agrees with part.  3 fleo.

LESSON XXVIII

62. The Dative.

a. The Indirect Object, § 82.
b. The Dative with Special Verbs, § 83 and note.
c. The Dative with Compounds, § 84.

NOTE 1. The so-called special verbs that govern the dative do so because they have a special meaning requiring an indirect object; for example, the exact meaning of imperat militibus is *he gives a command to the soldiers*; of persuădet amicis, he offers persuasion to his friends.

These verbs often take a direct object along with the dative, usually a neuter pronoun or an object clause; for example, amicis persuădet ut exæant, *he persuades (to) his friends to go forth*. Here the clause ut exæant is the direct object and amicis the indirect object of persuădet.

NOTE 2. Likewise verbs compounded with ad, ante, con, etc. do not take the dative because of the preposition, but rather because their meaning requires an indirect object.

Many verbs compounded with these prepositions are transitive and take the accusative. Just what verbs are used with the dative must be learned by observing the usage of the best writers as recorded in the Latin dictionary. Some compound verbs take the accusative (direct object) along with the dative (indirect); for example, Caesar Gallis bellum infert, Cæsar makes war on the Gauls.

EXERCISE

I. 1. He commanded his legions to give the enemy time neither for defending the camp nor for seeking safety in flight.
2. Certain tribes spare neither the women nor the children of their enemies.
3. 1 All had been persuaded to leave their homes within ten days.
4. If they had harmed any of the Romans, Cæsar would not have pardoned them.

5. So great was the multitude of those who were coming that they stood on the dead bodies.

6. He enjoined upon them that they should not spare any one.

7. The barbarians were hindered from injuring the envoys.

8. He put Labienus, a leader of great valor, in charge of the fortifications because he himself had to hasten into Hither Gaul.

9. Cæsar favored the tenth legion because they had remained courageous.

10. They themselves were cowardly and envied the courage of the Romans.

1 Latin, it had been persuaded to all (§ 83, note and a). The clause which would have been the object of the active is used as subject of the passive.

2 Use the genitive plural of the present participle, and omit the word those.

II. When the Romans were approaching the territory of the Germans, some of them were so cowardly that they were unwilling to advance farther and said that they did not wish to expose themselves to death. Cæsar, however, said that if the rest were unwilling to go, he himself would set out with the tenth legion alone. This legion was so brave that Cæsar favored it and all envied its valor.

LESSON XXIX

63. The Dative (continued).

a. The Dative of Purpose or End, § 89.

b. The Dative of Reference, § 85.

c. The Dative with Adjectives, § 90.

EXERCISE

1. The bridge was a great terror to the barbarians, who had been accustomed to cross the river by means of boats.

2. Although they had been defeated, they began again to defend themselves and to resist those who were coming.
3. Cæsar knew that his friendship would be of the greatest service to the Gauls.
4. He wished to remain in Germany until the tribes who dwell there should see how large a force he had.
5. Although the Romans had few legions, nevertheless they inspired fear in the Gauls.
6. He sent two legions as a support to those who were laboring under difficulties.
7. Terrified they threw themselves at Cæsar's feet and asked that he would spare them.
8. They selected a place which they thought was suitable for pitching the camp.

1 Latin, for a great terror.  2 Latin, for the greatest service.  3 Dative, § 85.

II. 1 As you set out from Gaul, Britain is not far away. Cæsar thought that for many reasons it would be of great advantage to him if he should visit the island. To the Gauls themselves the land was unknown, and not even from the traders was he able to find out what tribes lived there or how large the island was. Even if those tribes were similar to the Gauls, he did not fear that they would be a match for the Romans. Accordingly in the third watch he set sail.

1 Latin, to one setting out. Omit one.  2 Ablative of cause.  3 Dative.
  4 incognitus, -a, -um.  5 păr.

LESSON XXX

64. The Accusative.

a. The Direct Object, § 91.

b. The Accusative of Duration and Extent, § 96.

c. Two Accusatives — Direct Object and Adjunct Accusative, § 94 and note.

d. Two Accusatives — Direct Object and Secondary Object, § 93. note and a.
EXAMPLES

Ariovistum amicum appellant, they call Ariovistus friend
Ariovistus ab eis amicus appellatur, Ariovistus is called friend by them
consulem sententiam rogaverunt, they asked the consul his opinion
consul sententiam ab eis rogatus est, the consul was asked his opinion by them

Note. The verbs peto, postulo, and quaerio do not take two accusatives, but the accusative of the thing and the ablative with ab (rarely ex) of the person.

EXERCISE

I. 1. Caesar demanded many hostages from some tribes.
2. The tribes were asked for many hostages by Caesar.
3. Although Ariovistus had been called king and friend by the Romans, nevertheless he was hostile to them.
4. There were in all two ways, nor was it clear which (one) they had chosen.
5. He lay at anchor five hours until the rest of the ships arrived.
6. The envoys asked Caesar what he had learned from Volusenus.
7. Caesar says that the ships of war were of great service to the Romans.
8. He asked that it be permitted\(^1\) to them to remain there during the whole winter.

\(^1\) Use licet with the infinitive, § 216.

II. Though there is danger for one\(^1\) going into places which have not been explored, nevertheless Caesar decided\(^2\) that he must go to Britain\(^3\) to find out how large the island was and what harbors were nearest to Gaul. He therefore began to equip his ships in a suitable place about ten miles from camp. He made not only ships of war, but also transport ships to carry across his troops. The latter\(^4\) were eighty feet long and twenty feet wide.

\(^1\) Omit. \(^2\) Infinitive of an impersonal passive periphrastic. \(^3\) Not infinitive. \(^4\) A form of hic.
LESSON XXXI

65. The Ablative.

d. The Ablative of Accordance, § 111.

NOTE. The ablative of separation regularly takes a preposition if the ablative denotes persons.

EXERCISE

I. 1. Since no voice had been heard for many hours, they were terrified at the silence.

2. Caesar in accordance with his custom tried to keep the enemy from supplies.

3. The wind carried some back to the same place from which they had set out.

4. Since their march was interrupted during no part of the night, they reached their villages in ten hours.

5. The ships of the cavalry set sail from the upper harbor by Caesar’s order.

6. Piso, who was born of a most distinguished family, was called friend by our senate.

7. Having been deprived of their homes they had nothing except their arms.

8. Since they are very near to the province, the traders are able to import those things that tend to weaken the courage.

1 Ablative absolute, § 117. c. 2 iussu. 3 ad with accusative of the gerundive.

II. While Caesar was in Britain with his army, such a storm arose that he was deprived at one time both of his ships of war and of his transports. Because of this calamity there was great excitement throughout the whole army; but there is no doubt that the enemy
rejoiced at the occurrence.\(^1\) \(^2\) A council was called together by order of their chiefs and they decided \(^3\) to keep the Romans from grain and other supplies.

\(^1\) Ablative of cause. \(^2\) Express by the ablative absolute. \(^3\) A complementary infinitive.

**LESSON XXXII**

66. The Ablative (*continued*).

\(a\). The Ablative of Manner, § 110.  
\(b\). The Ablative of Agent, § 104.  
\(c\). The Ablative of Means, § 106.  
\(d\). The Ablative with ātōr, fruor, etc., § 107.\(^a\).  
\(e\). The Ablative with *opus* est, § 107.\(^c\).

**Note 1.** The ablative of means is used without a preposition, while the ablative of agent requires ā or ab:

\begin{align*}
\text{Gallī virtūte Rōmānōrum superābantur, the Gauls were overcome by the} \\
\text{valor of the Romans} \\
\text{Gallī ā Rōmānis superābantur, the Gauls were overcome by the Romans}
\end{align*}

**Note 2.** The ablative of manner is rare without *cum* or an attributive adjective.

**EXERCISE**

I. 1. Although Cæsar was born of a noble family, he often differed from the senate.  
2. Hostages were demanded by Cæsar in accordance with the right of war.  
3. While Cæsar was carrying on war in Britain he did not enjoy any leisure.  
4. Because of these things he drew up his line of battle on the following day in the middle of the hill.\(^1\)  
5. He suspected on account of the dust that the legion was being hard pressed by the enemy.  
6. There was need of a guard lest the enemy should \(^4\) get possession of the camp.
7. When he had hastened thither by long marches, all surrendered their arms of their own will.  

8. Although they had fought fiercely, they were overcome by the violence of our attack.

1 See § 125, first example.  
2 potior with either genitive or ablative, §§ 81, d, 107. a and note.  
3 Ablative.

II. Since many ships had been damaged by the violence of the storm, Cæsar used the timber and ropes of those that were most seriously damaged 1 to repair the rest. Other things of which there was need had to be brought over from the continent. There was no doubt that the Britons perceived his danger and their own favorable opportunity. Cæsar accordingly began to prepare all his resources for 2 every emergency with the greatest speed.

1 Not infinitive.  
2 ad.

LESSON XXXIII

67. The Ablative (continued).

a. The Ablative of Comparison, § 105.

b. The Ablative of Accompaniment, § 113.

c. The Ablative of Measure of Difference, § 114.

d. The Ablative of Respect, § 115.

EXERCISE

I. 1. A few hours later on the same day ambassadors were sent by the enemy concerning peace.

2. By common agreement they hastened against our men with great speed and attacked them on the exposed side.

3. Though the cavalry did not arrive with the rest of the soldiers, yet Commius had brought over some foot soldiers with him.

4. The barbarians were not more courageous than the Romans, but their army was larger by half.
5. That he might the more easily learn what they were doing, he remained one day longer.

6. Cæsar surpassed all other generals in the number of thanksgivings.

7. Although they were not equal in number, nevertheless influenced by the hope of plunder they made inroads into their fields.

8. He thought that the top of the mountain was held by Labienus, but a few days later he found out that it was held by the enemy.

1 Latin, later by a few hours.  2 a or ab.  3 § 150.  4 § 125, second example.

II. After Cæsar's ships had been damaged by the waves and tide, he began to repair them with the greatest speed; for he feared that he should not reach the continent if he (should) set sail with weak ships. While Cæsar was in these difficulties, the Britons, to whom liberty was dearer than life, took counsel among themselves that Cæsar might not escape. They had confidence especially in their war chariots, which, because of their strange appearance, were more terrible than the horsemen and infantry.

LESSON XXXIV

68. The Roman Calendar, §§ 227. a–i, 228.

EXERCISE

For Latin numerals see page 323.

I. 1. On account of the wrongs, both public and private, which they had inflicted, there was need of the severest punishment.

2. Although they are few in numbers, they excel in courage.

3. The king with his allies brought aid to the captives on the third of October.

4. The Helvetii announced that they would try to enter the territories of the Allobroges on the twenty-eighth day of March.

5. Even if they set out on the seventeenth of March, they will arrive many days later.

6. When the envoys of the Helvetii had come to Cæsar on the thirteenth of April, they were prevented from going through the province.
7. The greatest battle of the Civil War was fought at Pharsalus on the ninth of August.

8. Accordingly on the seventeenth of April, when they had prepared (support) against all accidents, they led down their forces from the hill.

II. Many omens were seen a few days before Cæsar was killed. Among others, on the fourteenth of March several birds pursued a smaller (one) into the senate house. On the fifteenth of March, after Cæsar entered the senate house, he was pierced with twenty-three wounds by the conspirators. After Cæsar's death Augustus became emperor. He was born on the twenty-third of September ¹ in the consulship of Cicero and Antonius.

¹ Ablative absolute.

LESSON XXXV

69. MISCELLANEOUS EXERCISE

I. 1. Cæsar called a council of his soldiers and exhorted them. He showed that Ariovistus would not reject his terms; he showed furthermore that the Romans were equal to the Germans.

2. ¹ When a signal had been given by fires, they assembled; at the same time messengers were sent to stir up the other states to war.

3. He commanded the soldiers to make a bridge, according to the plan ² already established, ³ a little above that place where they had crossed two years before.

4. Since time had not been given ⁴ for collecting and arming themselves, and many severe wounds had been received, all withdrew from the fight.

5. Fearing that they might be influenced to seek aid from their neighbors, he persuaded them by large rewards to go forth from their boundaries.

6. He pointed out to them that, ⁵ on account of their fidelity, he would not deprive them of their abodes if they should return.

7. He performed all these things with great courage and so quickly that they were finished before the enemy knew what was going on.
8. When all the soldiers had assembled, they began to hurl their weapons into the rampart; and then, when our men had been dislodged, they pursued them from the higher places to the banks of the river.

1 significātiōne factā. 2 § III. 3 Latin, above by a little (paulō). 4 ad with the gerundive. 5 propter with the accusative.

II. The Helvetii decided to go forth from their boundaries for two reasons: first, because they were hemmed in on all sides by the character of their country, on one side by a river, on another by a mountain, (and) on a third by a lake; in the next place they were desirous of wandering about more widely to make war on their neighbors. In accordance with these plans they called a council and bound themselves by pledge and oath that they would attempt to get possession of the supreme power of the whole of Gaul.

1 ex. 2 alter. 3 Use the genitive of the gerund. 4 Infinitive. 5 Ablative.
ENGLISH PRONUNCIATION OF
PROPER NAMES

KEY TO DIACRITICAL MARKS

a as in fàte a as in what i as in ice ő as in nôt û as in für
á as in senâte i as in idea ô as in cûrk ŏ as in rûle
ä as in fàt é as in mûte í as in ít ô as in âûl û as in pull
ä as in ârm è as in âvent û as in ûse
ä as in âll é as in mût ô as in îld û as in înîte Ŷ as in bû
ä as in âsk ẽ as in bûr ô as in ôbey û as in îp Ŷ as in bûby

c as in call g as in go qu as in quit
ç as in city ġ as in cûge Ů as in hû
êh as in sehool ĕn as in înk Ů as in ink

All other unmarked consonants have their usual English sounds. Silent letters are italicized. Primary accents are heavy, secondary accents light.

Åc'cô åm bû'ô rîx ár vêrnî
á ehâ'ia åm'bhî vâr'î tî (êh) å'el å
å ehû'l'îs åm phîlp'ô lîs â't'ê bêtêg
å cû'tî lîs åm'prî lûs â'trî lûs
å'dî a tô'n'îs ån lôr'êl å
åd'û àvâ cû ån'dô brô'çî lûs å'lu'nlîs
å'dâ àvâ cî ån'dê åu rû'n'çû lêviîns
å'ìç cûs ån dî åu'elî (ê)
ål'êx ån'drî â ån'ôlô'ô lûs á vûr'î cûm
ål lôb'rô gêg ån tô'niî lûs åx'î nà
âfîrî cuîs ån pôlî tô å'và lêviîa
âl'èx ån'drî à (ê)
âl lôb'rô gêg åq'ûl tû'nîl å
âm bû'ô rîx å'îrî Ô vîs'tôÔs (ê)
ëm bû'ô sôni À'rîr
ëm'bî lû'ô Êr'ûlînîs
ëm'bî lû'ô (ê)

457
PRONUNCIATION OF PROPER NAMES

Í tálí ã
Ítší ûs
(ab)
Íañí ûs
(q)
Íup'pl tër
(q)
Íulí ûs

Là bè'trí ûs
Là'bí 'enúś
Là'ri'sà
Là tó'brió gi
Lè mà'n'núś
Lèmró vi'çèq
Lèntú ûs
Lè pön'tí l
(ab)
Leu'çl
Lèx d'ã'l
Lù'gèr
Lún'gò nèg
Lù'sèqus
Lù cà'ní ûs
Lù cû'l ûs
Lù'cî ûs
(ab)
Lùc tè'trí ûs
Lù gò'tô rix

Màç'é dò'ní ã
Màg'é tó'brió gà
Màn'dû brâ'cî ûs
(ab)
Màn'lı ûs
Màr'cô mà'n'ní
Màr'cûs
Mà'tró ûs
Màrg
Mà'tró nà
Màx'lûnûs
Mè'dí b mà't'ró çî
Mèl'dî
Mè nà'pl l

Mèr cû'rî ûs
Mè's sâlâ
Mè'tî ûs
(ab)
Mî nèr'và
Mó'nà
Màr'lí nî
Mà'sà
Mûyâ lè'nè
Nà'm mè'nûs
(û)
Nà'm'né tèg
Nàn'tó a'tèg
Nàr'bô
Nàs'û ã
(ab)
Nèm'é tèg
Nèr'vî l
Nô rè'jà
(û)
Nô'vî ò dà'ñûm

Öç'é lùm
Öc'tó dàtûs
Ôr çû'n'I à
Ôr gê'tô rix
Ôrî çîm
Ô sîs'mî

Pà rîs'l l
(ab)
Pàr'thî
Pè'dî ûs
Pè lù'ñí úm
(ab)
Pèr'gà múm
Pê'tró sà'd'l ûs
Phà'rûs
Plo'tô nèg
Pûsî
Pûm pè'lûs
(û)
Pûr'cô nî'nûs
Prû çî'l'ûs

Ptà 'ã'nî l
Ptôl'é màdûs
Ptôl'é mà's
Pû'bîl ûs
Ràu'rà çî
Rê'dô nèg
Rê'mî
Rê'mûs
Rû'nûs
Rû'kó nûs
Rû'dôs
Rû'fûs
Rû tè'nî

Sà bû'nûs
Sà'bis
Sàn'tó nèg
Sàn'tó nî
Scîpl'o
Scî bônî ûs
Sè dû'nî
Sè dû'sî l
(ab)
Sèg'ô nàx
Sè gôn'tî a'çîl
(ab)
Sè gû'ël à'vî
(ab)
Sën'tô nèg
Sèp tî'mî ûs
Sèq'ùà nà
Sèq'ùa nî
Sè rà'pl ôn
Sèr tò'tî ûs
Sèr'vî ûs
Sèx'tî ûs
Sîb'û sà'tèg
Sî'lî ûs
Sè'tî a'tèg
(ab)
Spîn'thèr
Sûë'bl
(w)
PRONUNCIATION OF PROPER NAMES

Sučč’al ő’nęg
(ł)
Stu gęm’bri
Stų’la
Stų pęc’l ęs
(ab)
Śy’l ą

Täm’tę sis
Tär bęł’lę
Tär’ų sę’tę gęg
Täs ęc’tę ęs
(ab)
Tąč’l mąg’ł lęs
Tęc ęc’tę gęg
Tęnc’tę ri
Tęr’ń ąsid’l ęs
Tęń’tę nęg
Thęs ęc’lę ā
Thręx
Tig’r ę’ńl}
Tę tę’ri ęs
Tęń’łęs
Tęł ęsęą

Tōł ę sę’tęg
Trąl’ęg
Tręń’ręh ęńl
Tre’bl ęs
Trę bę’ńl ęs
Tręń’rę ri
Trę ąńl ęs
Tręń’ ęgę
Tręń’ ęńlęg
tuł’gę
Tuł’lęs
Tręń’łęs
Tęł ęńl

Ulęł’ł
U ąlp’ęłęg

Vuć’ę lęs
Vuł’ł ri ęs
Vuć’ę ęńlęg
Vuł ęńl ęs
Vuł ęńl ęs
Vuł ęł ę ęąłęg
VOCABULARIES
ABBREVIATIONS

abbr. = abbreviation
abs. = absolute or absolutely
act. = active
adj. = adjective
adv. = adverb or adverbia l
c. = common, i.e. either masc. or fem.
cf. = cōnfer, i.e. compare
comp. = comparative
conj. = conjunction
dcl. = declined
dem. = demonstrative
dep. = deponent
distrib. = distributive
emph. = emphatic
esp. = especially
f. or fem. = feminine
fig. = figurative or figuratively
freq. = frequentative
impers. = impersonal
indecl. = indeclinable
indef. = indefinite
intens. = intensive
interrog. = interrogative
intrans. = intransitive
irr. = irregular

lit. = literal or literally
loc. = locative
m. or masc. = masculine
n. = neuter or noun
neut. = neuter
neg. = negative or negatively
num. = numeral
opp. = opposed
orig. = originally
p. = participle
pass. = passive
perf. = perfect
plur. = plural
p.p. = perfect participle
prep. = preposition
pres. = present
pron. = pronoun
reflex. = reflexive or reflexively
rel. = relative
sc. = scilicet, namely
sing. = singular
subjv. = subjunctive
superl. = superlative
trans. = transitive
v. = verb

†, a dagger denotes an assumed form.
1, 2, 3, 4, refer to the regular conjugations of verbs.
Heavy-faced type in parentheses denotes other spellings or forms.
Other common abbreviations will be readily understood.
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

For numerals see Grammar, § 19. References preceded by G. are to the Grammar; those with Roman numerals are to the Composition Lesson in which the word occurs.

able — arise

able (be), possum, irr.
about, adv., circiter
about, prep., (around) circum, with acc.; (concerning) dē, with abl.
above, adv., suprā
above, prep., suprā, with the acc.
absent (be), absūm, irr.
accept, accipīō, 3
accident, cāsus, -ūs, m.
accordingly, itaque
account, on account of, ob, propter (XXIII), with the acc.
accustomed (be), soleō, 2; cōn-suēscō, 3, in perf. tenses
acquainted with (be), cognōscō, 3, in perf. tenses
across, trāns, with the acc.
added (it is), accēdit, 3
adopt, īnṣistō, 3; īnstitūō, 3
advance, prōcēdō, 3; prōgredior, 3
advantage, ūsus, -ūs, m.
advantageous, commodus, -a, -um
advantageously, commodē
afraid (be), timeō, 2; vereor, 2
after, afterwards, adv., postē, post
after, conj., postquam
after, prep., post, with the acc.
again, iterum
against, in, contrā, with the acc.
agreement, cōnsēnsus, -ūs, m.
aid, auxiliūm, auxiliī, n.
all, omnis, omne; tōtus, -a, -um (XXVII); in all, adv., omnīnō
allow, patior, 3
ally, socius, sociī, m.
almost, paene, ferē
Alps, Alpēs, -ium, f. plur.
already, iam
also, etiam
although, cum, quamquam
altogether, omnīnō
am, sum, irr.
ambassador, lēgātus, -ī, m.
ambition for power, cupiditās rēgnī
among, inter, with the acc.
anchor (lie at), in ancorīs exspectō, 1
and, ac, atque, et, -que
announce, nūntiō, 1
another, alius, alia, alīud
any, adj., āllus, -a, -um (G. § 144. c)
any one, quis, quisquām (G. § 144. c)
appearance, speciēs, -ēī, f.
approach, n., aditus, -ūs, m.
approach, v., adpropinquō, 1 (with the dat.)
approve, adprobō, 1
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

arm — canton

arise, orior, 4
arm, v., armō, 1; armed, p., armātus, -a, -um
armes, (offensive) tēla, -ōrum, n. plur.; (defensive) arma, -ōrum, n. plur.
army, exercitus, -ūs, m.
around, circum, with the acc.
arrival, adventus, -ūs, m.
arrive, perveniō, 4
ask, ask for, rogō, 1 (XI, XXX); petō, 3 (XVI); flāgitō, 1; (inquire) quaerō, 3; rogō, 1
assemble, conveniō, 4
attack, n., impetus, -ūs, m.
attack, v., adgredior, 3
attempt, cōnor, 1
authority, auctōritās, -ātis, f.
auxiliaries, auxilia, -ōrum, n. plur.
away (be), absūm, irr.

baggage, impedimenta, -ōrum, n. plur.
baggage wagon, carrus, -i, m.
band, manus, -ūs, f.
bank, ripa, -ae, f.
barbarian, barbarus, -i, m.
barbarous, barbarus, -a, -um
battle, proelium, proeli, n.; fight
battles, proelia faciō, 3; plan of
battle, ratiō pugnae; line of battle,
aciēs, -ēi, f.
beast of burden, iūmentum, -i, n.
because, quod
become, fiō, irr.
before, adv., anteā, ante; conj., pri-
usquam; prep., ante, with the acc.
beg for, petō, 3
begin, incipio, 3; began, coepī, de-
fective

beginning, initium, initi, n.
believe, crēdō, 3
besiege, oppugnō, 1
best, optimus, -a, -um
better, adj., melior, melius; adv.,
melius
bind, obstringō, 3
bird, avis, -is, f.
boat, nāvis, -is, f.
body (dead), cadāver, -eris, n.
bold, audāx, -ācis
born (be), nāscor, 3; orior, 4
both (each of two), uterque, utraque,
uterque
both . . . and, et . . . et
boundary, finis, -is, m.
brave, fortis, forte
bravely, fortiter
bravery, fortitūdō, -inis, f.
breathless, examinātus, -a, -um
bridge, pōns, pontis, m.
bring, ferō, irr. (XXXIV); bring
about, efficiō, 3; bring over, trans-
portō, 1; bring upon, inferō, irr.
Britain, Britannia, -ae, f.
Britons, Britannii, -ōrum, n. plur.
brother, frāter, frātris, m.
building, aedificium, aedifici, n.
burn, incendō, 3
business, negōtium, negōtī, n.
but, at, sed

calamity, calamitās, -ātis, f.
call (name), appellō, 1; call together
(summon), convocō, 1
camp, castra, -ōrum, n. plur.
can, possum, irr.
canton, pāgus, -i, m.
ENGLISH–LATIN VOCABULARY

**captive** — cut off

captive, captivus, -i, m.
capture, capiō, 3
carry across, trānsportō, 1; carry back, referō, irr.; carry on, gerō, 3; carry out the matter, negō-
tium gerō, 3
cart, carrus, -i, m.
cause, efficiō, 3 (xii)
cavalry, adj., equester, equestris, equestre.
cavalry, n., equitēs, -um, m. plur.; equitātus, -ūs, m.
cease, finem faciō, 3
celta, Celtae, -arum, m. plur.
centurion, centūriō, -onis, m.
certain, pron., quidam, quaedam, quoddam.
certain (it is), cōnstat, 1
chain, catēna, -ae, f.; throw into chains, in catēnas coniciō, 3
change, convertō, 3
charge, put in charge of, praeficiō, 3
chief, prīnceps, -cipis, m.
children, liberī, -ōrum, m. plur.; puerī, -ōrum, m. plur.
choose, dēligō, 3
christ, Christus, -i, m.
cicero, Cicerō, -onis, m.
city, urbs, -is, f.
civil, civilis, civile
clarity (it is), apertum est, irr.
climb, trānsscendō, 3
close, claudō, 3
coast, ōra maritima, ōrae maritimae, f.
cohort, cohos, -tis, f.
collect, cōgō, 3 (xxii); comportō, 1 (xxvii); conferō, irr. (viii); conligō, 3 (xxiii, xxxv)

**come, veniō, 4**
command, n., (control) imperium, imperā, n.; (order) imperātum, -i, n.; am in command, praesum, irr.
command, give command, v., iubeō, 2; imperō, 1 (xxviii)
common, commune, commūnis, commune
complain, queror, 3
conceal, cēlō, 1
concerning, dē, with the abl.
condition, condiō, -onis, f.
confer on, dēferō, irr.
conference, concilium, concili, n.
confidence, have confidence in, cōn-

**confirm, cōnfirmō, 1**
confusion (throw into), perturbō, 1
conquer, superō, 1; vincō, 3
conspicuous, amplus, -a, -um
conspiracy, coniūrātiō, -onis, f.
conspirator, coniūrātus, -i, m.
consul, cōnsul, -ulis, m.
contend, contendō, 3
continent, continēns, -entis, f.
council, concilium, concili, n.
counsel (take), cōnsulō, 3
courage, animus, -i, m. (xvi); virtūs, ûtis, f.
courageous, fortis, forte
cowardly, adj., timidus, -a, -um; adv., timidē
crafty, calidus, -a, -um
criticize, reprehendō, 3
cross (over), trānsseō, irr.
custom, mōs, mōris, m.; (usage) cōn-

**cut off, abscedō, 3**
daily, adj., cotidiānus, -a, -um; adv., cotidiē
damage, adflīgō, 3
danger, periculum, -ī, n.
dangerous, periculōsus, -a, -um; it is dangerous, est cum periculō
dare, audeō, 2
day, diēs, -ēi, m.; space of three days, trīduum, -ī, n.
deaf body, cadāver, -eris, n.
dear, cārūs, -a, -um
death, mors, mortis, f.
decide, statuō, 3 (XXV, XXX)
declare, prōpōnō, 3
deep, altus, -a, -um
defeat, superō, 1
defend, défendō, 3
defender, défensor, -ōris, m.
delay, moror, 1
demand, flāgitō, 1; poscō, 3 (XVI); postulō, 1
deprive, dēspoliō, 1 (XIX); privō, 1 (XXXI)
deserter, perfuga, -ae, m.
desire, volō, irr.
desirous, cupidus, -a, -um
detain, dētineō, 2; retineō, 2 (XVI)
die, morior, 3
differ from, dissentīō, 4 (with ā or ab)
different, varius, -a, -um
difficult, difficilis, difficile
difficulty, difficūtas, -ātis, f.
dig a ditch, fossam faciō, 3
direct, dīcō, 3
dislocate, dēiciō, 3
dismiss, dīmittō, 3
distant (be), absūm, ēr.
distinguished, amplus, -a, -um
distribute, distribuo, 3
ditch, fossa, -ae, f.
divide, dividō, 3
do, faciō, 3; efficiō, 3 (XXIII); agō, 3 (XXV)
doubt, dubitō, 1; there is no doubt, nōn est dubium
draw, dēstringō, 3; draw near, prope accēdō, 3; draw up, instrō, 3
drive away, dēpellō, 3; drive out, expellō, 3 (XXV)
dust, pulvis, -eris, m.
dwell, incolō, 3
dwelling place, sēdēs, -is, f.
each one, (of several) quisque, quaeque; (of two) uterque, utraque, utrumque
early, adj., mātūrus, -a, -um; adv., mātūrē
easily, facile
easy, facilis, facile
either ... or, aut ... aut, vel ... vel
embassy, légātō, -onis, f.
emergency, cāsus, -ūs, m.
emperor, princeps, -cīpis, m.; imperātor, -ōris, m.
encamp, cōnsīdō, 3
endure, perferō, irr.
enemy, hostis, -is, c.
engage in, committō, 3, trans.
enjoin upon, mandō, 1
enjoy, ütor, 3 (lit. use)
enter, ingredior, 3 (with in or intrā);
intrō, 1 (XXXIV)
tenreat, ōrō, 1
envoy, légātus, ē, m.
ENGLISH–LATIN VOCABULARY

envy — friendship

envy, invidēo, 2 (with the dat.)
equal, adj., pār, paris; make equal,
eaquō, 1
equal, v., adaequō, 1
equip, parō, 1
escape, évādō, 3
especially, maximē
establish, cōnstitūō, 3; īstitūō, 3
even if, etsī
every, omnis, omne
evident (it is), cōnstat, 1
eexcel, praestō, 1
except, praeter, with the acc.
excitement, perturbātiō, -ōnis, f.
exclaim, conclāmō, 1
exhort, cohortor, 1; hortor, 1
explore, explōrō, 1
expose myself, mē offerō, irreg.
exposed, apertōs, -a, -um
extend, pateō, 2

fact (it is an added), accēdit, 3
fagots, sarmenta, -ōrum, n. plur.
family, genus, -ēris, n.
far, longē
farther, adj., ulterior, ulterius; 
adv., longius; farthest, longissimum
father, pater, patris, m.
favor, indulgeō, 2
favorable, secundus, -a, -um
fear, n., metus, -ūs, m. (XXIX); timor,
-ōris, m.
fear, v., metuō, 3; timeō, 2; vereor, 2
few, paucī, -ōrum, m. plur.; very
few, perpaucī, -ōrum, m. plur.
fidelity, fidēs, -ēs, f.
field, ager, agrī, m.

fierce, ōcer, ācris, ācre
fiercely, ōcrēt
fight, n., pugna, -ae, f.; proelium, 
proelī, n.
fight, v., pugnō, 1; fight battles, 
proelia faciō, 3
fill, compleō, 2
find, find out, reperiō, 4
finish, cōnficiō, 3
fire, ignis, -is, m.
first, prīmus, -a, -um; in the first 
place, adv., primum
fitted (well), idōneus, -a, -um
flee, fugiō, 3
flight, fuga, -ae, f.; put to flight, in 
fugam coniciō, 3
foe, hostis, -is, c.
follow, sequor, 3; follow close after, 
subsequor, 3; follow up, cōnsequo, 3;
inssequor, 3
following, posterus, -a, -um
follows (as), haec, n. plur.
foot, pēs, pedis, m.
foot soldier, pedes, -itis, m.
for, conj., enim, nam
forbid, vetō, 1, irreg.
force (violence), vis, vis, f.
forces, cōpiēae, -ārum, f. plur.
ford, vadum, -i, n.
forest, silva, -ae, f.
former, antiquus, -a, -um; prīstinus, 
-a, -um
fortification, mūnitio, -ōnis, f.
fortify, mūniō, 4
fortune, fortūna, -ae, f.
free, liber, -era, -erum
friend, amīcus, -i, m.
friendship, amīcitia, -ae, f.
from — hostage

from, à, ab, è, ex, with the abl.;
  after verbs of hindering etc., quin
front, prīmus, -a, -um
full, plēnus, -a, -um
furthermore, etiam

gain a request, impetrō, 1
Gallic, Gallicus, -a, -um
gate, porta, -ae, f.
gather, cōgō, 3
Gaul, Gallia, -ae, f.
general, imperātor, -ōris, m.
Geneva, Genāva, -ae, f.
Germans, Germānī, -ōrum, m. plur.
Germany, Germānia, -ae, f.
give, dō, irr.; give in marriage, in
  mātrimōnium dō; nūptum con-
locō, 1; give up, trādō, 3
go, cō, irr.; go round, circumeō, irr.;
go forth, ēgredior, 3; exeo, irr.; go
forward, prōcēdō, 3; prōgredior,
3; go into (approach), adeō, irr.;
go on (in sense of being done), pas-
  sive of agō, 3, or of gerō, 3
good, bonus, -a, -um
grain, frūmentum, -i, n.; grain sup-
ply, rēs frūmentāria, reī frūmen-
  tāriae, f.
gratitude, grātia, -ae, f.
great, magnus, -a, -um; greater,
maior, maius; greatest, maximus,
-a, -um; summus, -a, -um (XXXII);
how great, quantus, -a, -um; so
great, tantus, -a, -um
greatness, magnitūdō, -inis, f.
guard, n., custōdia, -ae, f. (XXV);
  praesidium, praesīdī, n. (XXXII)
guard, v., custōdiō, 4
  half, dimidium, dīmīdi, n.
halt, cōnsistō, 3
happen, accidō, 3; fiō, irr.
harbor, portus, -ūs, m.
harm, do harm to, noceō, 2 (with
  the dat.)
hasten, contendō, 3; properō, 1;
  māturō, 1
he, is, eius
heap, acervus, -ī, m.
hear, audiō, 4
height, altūtūdō, -inis, ā; heights,
  loca superiōra, locōrum superi-
  ōrum, n. plur.
hem in, contineō, 2
here, hic
hesitate, dubitō, 1
hiding (in), in occultō; keep in
hiding, mē in occultō contineō, 2
high, altus, -a, -um; ērēctus, -a, -um
  (XX); very high, altissimus, -a,
  -um; higher, superior, superius
hill, collis, -is, m.
himself, ipse, ipsius
hinder, impediō, 4
his, (reflexive) suus, -a, -um; not
  reflexive eius
hither, adj., citerior, citerius
hold, teneō, 2; obtineō, 2; hold in
  mind, memorīa teneō, 2; hōld
out, sustentō, 1
home, domus, -ūs, f.; at home, domī;
  leave home, domum relinquō, 3
hook, falx, falcis, f.
hope, spēs, spei, f.
horse, equus, equī, m.
horsemans, eques, -ītis, m.
hostage, obses, -idis, c.
hostile, inimicus, -a, -um
hour, hora, -ae, f.
how, quō modō; how large, quantus, -a, -um
however, autem
hurl, coniciō, 3 (xxxv); mittō, 3
I, ego, meī
if, sī; if not, sī non, nisi
illustrious, clārus, -a, -um
import, importō, i
impression, opinio, -onis, f.
in, in, with the abl.
incite (urge on), sollicitō, i
indeed, quidem
inequality, iniquitās, -ātis, f.
infamy, peditātus, -ūs, m.
inflict, inferō, irr. (xxxiv)
influence (personal), n., grātia, -ae, f.
influence, v., addūco, 3; permoverō, 2
inform some one, aliquem certīorem faciō, 3
inhabit, incolō, 3
inhabitant, incola, -ae, c.
injure, noceō, 2 (with the dat.)
inquire, quaerō, 3
inroad, incursio, -onis, f.
inspire, iniciō, 3
insult, iniuria, -ae, f.; contumēlia, -ae, f.
intercept, intercipiō, 3
interrupt, intermittō, 3
interview, conloquium, conloquī, n.
into, in, intrā, with the acc.
invite, accessō, 3
island, insula, -ae, f.
Italy, Italia, -ae, f.
javelin, pilum, -i, n.
journey, iter, itineris, n.; make a journey, iter faciō, 3
judge, dūcō, 3; iūdicō, i
keep, teneō, 2; keep from, prohibēō, 2 (xxxii); dēterreo, 2; keep off, prohibēō, 2; keep in hiding, mē in occultō contineō, 2; keep secret, taceō, 2
kill, interficīō, 3; occīdō, 3
king, rēx, regis, m.
kinsman, necessarius, necessārii, m.
know, cognōscō, 3 (in perf. tenses);
intellegō, 3; nōscō, 3 (in perf. tenses); sciō, 4 (lx)
labor under difficulties, labōrō, 1
lack, be lacking, dēsum, irr.
lake, lacus, -ūs, m.
land, terra, -ae, f.; ager, agrī, m.
language, lingua, -ae, f.
large, magnus, -a, -um; how large, quantus, -a, -um
last, adv., proximē
later, adv., post
latter, hic, haec, hoc (xxv)
law, lēx, légis, f.
lay waste, vāstō, 1
lead, dūcō, 3; lead across, trādūco, 3; lead back, redūcō, 3; lead down, dēdūcō, 3 (xxxiv); lead out or forth, ōdūcō, 3
leader, dux, ducis, m.
leadership, principatūs, -ūs, m.
learn, intellegō, 3; cognōscō, 3 (in perf. tenses, know) (xv)
leave, trans., relinquiō, 3
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

legate — nevertheless

legate, légátus, -í, m.
legion, legiō, -onis, f.
leisure, ótium, óti, n.
less, minus
letter, litterae, -ārum, f. plur.
liberty, libertās, -ātis, f.
live at anchor, in ancorīs exspectō, i
life, vita, -ae, f.
light, lūx, lūcis, f.
likewise, item
line of battle, aciēs, -ēī, f.; line of
march, agmen, -inis, n.
little, adj., parvus, -a, -um; adv.,
paulum (sometimes used as a
noun)
live, vivō, 3; (dwell) incolō, 3
long, adj., longus, -a, -um; long
march, iter magnum, n.; adv.,
diū
lose, āmittō, 3

madness, ámentia, -ae, f.
make, faciō, 3 (passive fiō; see
G. § 45); make war upon, bellum
inferō, irr. (with the dat.)
man, homō, -inis, c.; vir, virī, m.
manner, modus, -i, m.; in what
manner, quō modo
many, multī, -ae, -a; complūrēs, -ium;
very many, plērīque, plēraeqe,
plēraque
march, n., iter, itineris, n.
march, v., iter faciō, 3
marriage (give in), see give
matron, māter familiās, mātris fa-
miliās, f.
matter, negotium, negotiī, n.
meanwhile, in the meantime, interim

Mediterranean Sea, Mare Internum,
Maris Interni, n.
meet (assemble), conveniō, 4
memory, memoria, -ae, f.; in the
memory of our fathers, memorīa
patrum
mention, dīcō, 3 (xxv); comem-
morō, 1
messenger, nūntius, nūntī, m.
middle, medius, -a, -um
mile, mīlle passūs; miles, mīlia
passuum
mind, animus, -i, m.; hold in mind,
memorīa teneō, 2
mistaken (be), errō, 1
month, mēnsis, -is, m.
mood, lūna, -ae, f.
mound, agger, -eris, m.
mountain, mōns, montis, m.
moving, moveō, 2
multitude, multitūdō, -inis, f.
must, express by the passive peri-
phrastic (G. §§ 38, II, 222. II)

name, n., nōmen, -inis, n.
name, v., dīcō, 3; nōminō, 1 (xxiv);
mentionem faciō, 3
narrow, angustus, -a, -um
nature, nātūra, -ae, f.
neat, adv., prope; prep., prope,
with the acc.
neatest, proximus, -a, -um
necessary (it is), opus est, irr.
need, opus, n., indecl.
neighbor, finitus, -i, m.
neither . . . nor, neque . . . neque
never, numquam
nevertheless, tamen
new — possession

new, novus, -a, -um
next, proximus, -a, -um
night, nox, noctis, f.
no (not any), nūllus, -a, -um
no one, nēmō, dat. nēminī; nūllus, nūllius
noble, nōbilis, nō bile
not, nōn, nē; not even, nē ... qui-
dem; not only ... but also, nōn
sōlum ... sed etiam; not yet,
nōndum
nothing, nihil, n., indecl.
notice, animadvertē, 3
now, nunc
number, numerus, -ī, m.

oath, iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī, n.;
give oath, iūrō, 1
occupy, occupō, 1
occurrence, rēs, reī, f.
ocean, adj., maritus, -a, -um
ocean, n., oceānus, -ī, m.
often, saēpe
old man, senex, senēs, m.
omen, omen, -inis, n.
on, in, with the acc. or abl.; on this
side, citrā, with the acc.
one, ānus, -a, -um; one at a time,
singuli, -ae, -a
only, ānus, -a, -um; sōlus, -a, -um
opportunity (power, capability), fa-
cultās, -ātis, f.; favorable oppor-
tunity, occāsiō, -onis, f.
or, an; either ... or, see either
order, at the order of, iussū, abl.
sing. m.
order, v., imperō, 1; iūbeō, 2
other, alius, alia, aliud; other (of
two), alter, -era, -erum; the one
... the other, alter ... alter
ought, dēbeō, 2
our, noster, -tra, -trum; our men,
nostri
over (through), per, with the acc.
overcome, superō, 1
owe, dēbeō, 2

pardon, ignōscō, 3 (with the dat.)
part, pars, partis; f.
pass the winter, hiemō, 1
peace, pāx, pācis, f.
people, populus, -i, m.
perceive, intellegō, 3; sentiō, 4
perform, administrō, 1
permit, concēdō, 3 (with the dat.);
it is permitted, licet, 2
personal influence, grātia, -ae, f.
persuade, persuādeo, 2(with the dat.)
pertain, pertineō, 2
Pharsalus, Pharsālōs, -i, f.
pierce, cōnfodiō, 3
pitch camp, castra pōnō, 3
place (in the next), adv., deinde
place, n., locus, -ī, m.; plur., loca,
-ōrum, n.
place, v., pōnō, 3
plain (it is), apertum est, irr.
plan, cōnsilium, cōnsiliī, n.; plan of
battle, ratiō pugnae
pledge, fidēs, -ei, f.
plunder, praedā, -ae, f.
point out, dēmōnstrō, 1
Pompey, Pompēius, Pompēī, m.
port, portus, -ūs, m.
possession, get possession of, potior,
4 (with the abl. or gen.)
possessions — Rhone

possessions, possessōnēs, -um, f.
  plur.
power, potestās, -ātis, f.; royal
  power, rēgnum, -ī, n.
powerful, potēns, -entis
praise, laudō, 1
precedent, exemplum, -ī, n.
prepare, comparō, 1 (XXXII, XXXIV);
  praeparō, 1 (XX)
prepared, parātus, -a, -um
preserve, servō, 1; cōnservō, 1
  (XVI, XIX)
presa (hard), premō, 3; urgeō, 2
pretend, simulō, 1
prevent, dēterreō, 2; prohibeō, 2;
  impediō, 4
private, privātus, -a, -um
promise, polliceor, 2
proper (it is), oportet, 2
protect, tueor, 2
province, prōvincia, -ae, f.
prow, prōra, -ae, f.
public, públicus, -a, -um
punishment, poena, -ae, f. (X); sup-
  plicium, suppliciō, n. (XXXIV)
purchase, coēmō, 3
pursue, cōnssequor, 3
put in charge of, praeficiō, 3; put
to flight, in fugam coniciō, 3 (or
  dō, irr.); fugō, 1
quickly, celeriter

ready (make), comparō, 1
reason, causa, -ae, f.; for this reason,
  propterēa; for what reason, quam
  ob rem
receive, accipió, 3; excipió, 3 (XX)
reduce, redigō, 3
reënforcements, auxilia, -ōrum, n.
  plur.
refrain (from), supersedeō, 2; tem-
  perō, 1
region, locus, -ī, m.; plur., loca,
  -ōrum, n.; regiō, -onis, f.
reject, repudiō, 1
rejoice, laetor, 1
remain, maneō, 2; remaneō, 2
remove, removeō, 2
render, referō, irr.; render return,
  grātiam referō
renew, redintegrō, 1
repair, reficiō, 3
reply, respondēo, 2
report, renünitiō, 1
repulse, pellō, 3; repellō, 3
request (gain a), impetrō, 1
rescue, ēripio, 3
resist, resistō, 3
resources, subsidia, -ōrum, n. plur.
rest, rest of, reliquiā, -ōrum, m
  plur.
restore, restituo, 3
result, ēventus, -ūs, m.
retainer, cliēns, -entis, m.
retard, tardō, 1
retreat, mē recipiō, 3
return, redeō, irr.; revertor, 3
reward, praedēm, praemī, n.
Rhine, Rhēnus, -i, m.
Rhone, Rhodanus, -i, m.
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

rich — soon

rich, dīves, -ītis; richēr, dītior, dītius; richest, dītissimus, -a, -um
right, iūs, iūris, n.
rive, flūmen, -inis, n.
road, iter, itineris, n.; via, -ae, f.
Romānī, Rōmānus, -a, -um;
the Romanus, Rōmānī, -orum, m.
Rome, Rōma, -ae, f.
rope, fūnis, -is, m.
route, via, -ae, f.; iter, itineris, n.
rumor, fāma, -ae, f.; rūmor, -ōris, m.
running, cursus, -ūs, m.

safe, tūtus, -a, -um
safety, salūs, -ūtis, f.
sail, set sail, solvō, 3
sally, excursīō, -ōnis, f.
same, idem, eadem, idem; to the same place, adv., eōdem
Saōne, Arar, -āris, m.
say, dīcō, 3; inquam, irr.
sack, inopia, -ae, f.
scout, explōrātor, -ōris, m.
sea, mare, -is, n.
secret (keep), taccō, 2
secretly, clam
see, videō, 2; see clearly, perspicīō, 3; see to, prōvideō, 2
seek, petō, 3; adpetō, 3
seize, capiō, 3; comprehendo, 3 - (xx); occupō, 1 (x, xxv)
select, dēligō, 3
sell, vēndō, 3
senate, senātus, -ūs, m.
Senate house, cūrīa, -ae, f.
send, mittō, 3; send back, remittō, 3; send forward, praemittō, 3
separate, dīvidō, 3

seriously, graviter
service, ēsus, -ūs, m. (xxx); utilitās, -ātis, f. (xxix)
servitude, servitūs, -ūtis, f.
set forth, trans., prōpōnō, 3; set out, proficiscor, 3; set sail, solvō, 3; set up, consitūō, 3
settle, consìdō, 3
settlement, sēdēs, -is, f.
several, complūres, -ium
severe, gravis, grave
shield, scūtum, -i, n.
ship, nāvis, -īs, f.; ship of war, nāvis longa
shout, clāmor, -ōris, m.
show, doceō, 2; ostendō, 3
side, latus, -eris, n.; pars, partis, f.; this side of, citrā, with the acc. on all sides, undique
sight, conspeximus, -ūs, m.
signal (signal), signifcātio, -onis, f.
signal (standard), signum, -i, n.
silence, silentium, silenti, n.
similar, similis, simile
since, cum
single, ūnus, -a, -um
sister, soror, -ōris, f.
slavery, servitūs, -ūtis, f.
small, parvus, -a, -um
so, sic, ita (generally with verbs), tam (with adjectives)
soldier, mīles, -ītis, m.
some, aliquī, -quae, -qua; nōn nūlli, -ae, -a; some... others, alī... alī
some one, aliquis, -cuius
son, filius, filli, m.
soon, mox; as soon as, simul atque;
sooner, māturius
Spain — this

Spain, Hispānia, -ae, f.
spare, parçō, 3 (with the dat.)
speak, dicō, 3; loquor, 3
speech, ōrātiō, -ōnis, f.
speed, celeritās, -ātis, f. (XXXII);
    (running) cursus, -ūs, m. (XXXIII)
spot, locus, -i, m.; plur., loca, -ōrum, n.
stand upon, īnsistō, 3
standard, signum, -i, n.
standard bearer, signifer, -ferī, m.
state, cīvitās, -ātis, f.; rēs pūblica,
    rei pūublicae, f.
still, tamen
stir up, incitō, 1
storm, n., tempestās, -ātis, f.
storm, v., oppugnō, 1
strange, inūsītātus, -a, -um
stratagem, ratīō, -ōnis, f.
strive, contendō, 3
subdue, superō, 1
successful, secundus, -a, -um
successfully, bene
such a, tālis, tāle
suddenly, subītō
sufficiently, satis [-um
suitable, aptus, -a, -um; idōneus, -a,
supply, cōpia, -ae, f.; supplies,
    commētus, -ūs, m. (XXXI); cōpiae,
    -ārum, f. plur. (XXV); grain supply,
    rēs frūmentāria, rei frūmen-
    tāriae, f.
support, subsidium, subsidī, n.
support myself, mē alō, 3
supreme power, imperium, imperi, n.
surpass, praeceūō, 3; praestō, 1
surrender, n., dēdictō, -ōnis, f.
surrender, v., trans., trādō, 3; in-
    trans., mē dēdō, 3
surround, cingō, 3; circumveniō, 4
    (XVIII, XXI); circumsistō, 3 (XXVI)
suspect, suspicor, 1
swamp, palūs, -ūdis, f.
swift, celer, -eris, -ere
swiftly, celeriter
sword, gladius, glādi, m.
take, capio, 3; take across, trāns-
    portō, 1; take oath, iūrō, 1
talk, loquor, 3
tear off, disiciō, 3
tempest, tempestās, -ātis, f.
tend, pertineō, 2
terms, condiciō, -ōnis, f.
terrible, horribilis, horribile
terrified, perterritus, -a, -um
territory, territories, finēs, -ium,
    m. plur.
terror, terror, -ōris, m.
than, quam
thanksgiving, supplicātiō, -ōnis, f.
that, in order that, so that, conj.,
    ut, (with comparatives) quō;
    that not, (purpose) nē, (result) ut
    nōn
that, pron., ille, illa, illud
themselves, (intensive) ipsi, ipsae,
    ipsa; (reflexive) sui, sibi
then, tum
thence, inde
there, ibi
thereafter, postea
therefore, itaque
thing, rēs, rei, f.
think, arbitror, 1; putō, 1; ex-
    istimō, 1; sentiō, 4
this, hic, haec, hoc
thither, eō
though, cum
through, throughout, per, with the
acc.
throw, coniciō, 3; iaciō, 3; throw
back, reiciō, 3; throw forward,
prōiciō, 3; throw into confusion,
perturbō, 1; throw up (heap up),
iaciō, 3 (xvi)
thus (accordingly), itaque
tide, aëstus, -ūs, m.
timber, māteria, -ae, f.
time, tempus, -oris, n.; space of
time, spatium, spatī, n.; at the
same time, simul
to, ad, in, with the acc.
toll, labor, -ōris, m.
top of, summus, -a, -um
tower, turris, -is, f.
town, oppidum, -i, n.
trader, mercātor, -ōris, m.
train, exercēō, 2; īnstitūō, 3
transport, trānsportō, 1
transport ship, nāvis onerāria, nāvis
onerāriae, f.
traveler, viātor, -ōris, m.
treachery, perfidia, -ae, f.
tribe, gēns, gentis, f.; nātiō, -ōnis,
f. (v)
tribune, tribūnus, -i, m.
troops, cōpiae, -ārum, f. plur.
true, vērus, -a, -um
try, cōnōr, 1; experior, 4
turn away, āvertō, 3
under, sub, with the acc. (motion
toward) or abl. (place where)
unfavorable, inīquus, -a, -um
unfriendly, inimicus, -a, -um
unite, trans., coniungō, 3; intrans.,
mē coniungō
unless, nisi
unsuspecting, inopināns, -antis
until, dum, dōnec, quoad
unwilling (be), nōlō, irr. -
upon, in, with the acc. (motion
toward) or abl. (place where)
upper, superior, superius
urge, hortor, 1
use, utōr, 3

vainly, in vain, frūstrā
valor, virtūs, -ūtis, f.
van, primum agmen, prīmī agminis,
n.
vicinity, in the vicinity of, apud,
with the acc.
victorious over (be), superō, 1
victory, victōria, -ae, f.
village, vicus, -i, m.
v violence, vis, vis, f.
visit, adeō, irr.; commeō, 1 (with
ad and the acc.)
voice, vox, vocis, f.
wage war, bellum gerō, 3
wagon, carrus, -i, m.
wait, exspectō, 1
wall, mūrus, -i, m.; make a wall,
mūrum perdūcō, 3
wander, wander about, vagor, 1
war, bellum, -i, n.; carry on war,
bellum gerō, 3; make war on,
bellum inferō, irr. (with the
dat.); ship of war, nāvis longa,
nāvis longae, f.
war chariot — zeal

war chariot, essedum, -ī, n.
warlike, bellicōsus, -a, -um
waste (lay), populus, r; vāstō, 1
watch, vigilia, -ae, f.
wave, fluctus, -ūs, m.
way, iter, itineris, n.; via, -ae, f.; on the way, in itinere
weak, infirmus, -a, -um
weaken, effēminō, 1; weakened (be), relanguēscō, 3
weapons, (of defense) arma, -ōrum, n. plur.; (of offense) tēla, -ōrum, n. plur.
what, interrog., quid; in what manner, quō modō
when, cum, ubi
whence, unde
where, ubi
whether, num, -ne, sī; whether . . . or, -ne . . . an, utrum . . . an
which (of two), uter, -tra, -trum
while, dum
who, rel., quī, quae, quod; interrog., quis, quid
whoever, quīcunque, cuiuscumque
whole, as a whole, omnis, omne; tōtus, -a, -um
why, cūr, quā dē causā
wide, adj., lātus, -a, -um; adv., lātē
widely, lātē
will, voluntās, -ātis, f.
willing (be), volō, irr.
wind, ventus, -ī, m.
wine, vinum, -ī, n.
winter, adj., hībernus, -a, -um;
winter quarters, hiberna, -ōrum, n. plur.
winter, n., hiēms, -emis, f.
winter, pass the winter, v., hiemō,
I wish, volō, irr.
with, cum, with the abl.
withdraw, discēdō, 3 (with ab or ex); excēdō, 3 (with the abl. alone)
within, intrā, with the acc.
without, sine, with the abl.; be without, careō, 2 (with the abl.)
withstand, sustineō, 2
woman, mulier, -eris, f.
woman, n., vulnus, -eris, n.
wound, v., volnerō, 1
wrong, iniōria, -ae, f.
yards, antemnae, -ārum, f. plur.
year, annus, -ī, m.
yet (nevertheless), tamen; not yet, nōndum
yoke, iugum, -ī, n.
you, tú, tuī
zeal, studium, studi, n.
LATIN–ENGLISH VOCABULARY

A. — acceptus

A., abbr. for Aulus (which see)
a., abbr. for ante
ä, see ab

ab (ä, aë), prep. with abl., away from, from. — With expressions of measure, off, away: a millibus passuum duobus, two miles off. — With different notion in English: ortum est ab, sprang from, began with; vacuum ab, destitute of; capit initium a, begins at; ab tanto apatio, so far off. — Esp. with passives, by. — Esp. also, a fronte, in front; a tergo, from or on the rear; ab infimo, at the foot; a dextro cornu, on the right wing; a re frumentaria, in respect to the grain supply. — In composition, off, away, apart, without, not

abditus, p. p. of abdeo

abdö, -dere, -didi, -ditus [ab-do (put)], trans., hide. — With in and acc., withdraw to (take refuge among). — abditus, -a, -um, p. p., hidden, remote, removed

abducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductus, trans., lead away, take away

abiciō, -icere, -iēci, -iectus [ab-iacio], trans., throw away, throw down

abiectus, p. p. of abicio

abiēs, -ietis, f., fir or spruce (tree or wood)

abripio, -ripere, -ripui, -reptus [ab-rapio], trans., snatch away, carry away

ab, see ab

abscidë, -cidere, -cidi, -cisus [abs-caedo], trans., cut off, tear off, tear away

abs cisus, p. p. of abscidō

absēns, -entis, see absum

absimilis, -e, adj., unlike

absistō, -sistere, -stiti, no p. p., intrans., stand off, stand away, withdraw; keep aloof

abstineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentus [ab-teneo], intrans., refrain: proelio (refrain from giving)

abstrāctus, p. p. of abstraho

abstrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -trāctus [abs-traho], trans., drag away

absum, -esse, āfui, āfutūrus, irr., intrans., be away, be absent: suspiclo (be wanting). — absēns, pres. p. as adj., absent, in one’s absence

abundō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, intrans., be strong in

ac, see atque

accēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessūrus [ad-cedo], intrans., move toward, draw near, approach; be added: huc accedebat ut, there was also this (disadvantage) that

acceptus, p. p. of accipio
accessus, p. p. of accedo
accidē, -cidere, -cidē, no p. p. [ad-
cado], intrans., fall to, fall on;
happen, occur
accidē, -cidere, -cidē, -cisus [ad-
cado], trans., cut into
accipē, -cipere, -cōpī, -ceptus [ad-
cipō], trans., take, receive; suffer;
learn, hear. — acceptus, -a, -um,
p. p. as adj., acceptable
acclivēs, -ē [ad-clivus, slope], adj.,
sloping, ascending
acclivitās, -ātis [acclivis], f., ascent,
acclivity.
Accō, -ōnis, m., one of the Senones,
who stirred up his people against
the Romans
accommodō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ad-
commodo (fit)], trans., adjust. —
accommodātus, -a, -um, p. p.,
fitted, adapted
accūrātē, adv., carefully
accurrō, -currere, -currī, no p. p. [ad-
curro], intrans., run to, ride up
accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., ac-
cuse, blame, find fault with
acerbē, adv., bitterly: ferre inopiam
(suffer severely from etc.)
acerbītās, -ātis [acerbus], f., suf-
ferring
acerbus, -a, -um [acer, sharp], adj.,
bitter, hard to bear
acerbimē, superl. of acriter
acervus, -i [acer, pointed], m., heap,
pile
acēs, -ēs, f., point, sharp edge, edge:
oculorum (keen glance, glare). —
Esp., line, line of battle, array, army
acrēter, adv., sharply; fiercely, vio-
ently, hotly: acriter pugnatum
est, a fierce battle was fought
āctus, p. p. of ago
acuō, -ure, -ui, -ūtus, trans., sharpen.
— acūtus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj.,
sharpened, sharp
ad, prep. with acc. With idea of
motion toward, to, toward, against.
— Of time, till, at, on: ad diem, on
the day. — With numerals, about
adāctus, p. p. of adigo
ādaequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans.,
made equal to: moles moenibus
(make as high as); altitudinēm
muri (reach up to); currum (keep
up with)
adāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., covet,
become attached to
addō, -dere, -didi, -ditus [ad-do
(put)], trans., add
adducō, -ducere, -düxi, -ductus, trans.,
lead to, draw to; induce, drive
ademptus, p. p. of adimo
adēō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, irr., trans.
and intrans., go to; visit; attack,
approach
adēō, adv., to that point
eques], intrans., ride up
adfectus, p. p. of adicio
adferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, irr.,
trans., bring to, bring; cause,
bring forward, allege, report,
announce
adiciō, -ficere, -feci, -fectus [ad-facto],
trans., do to, affect. — With acc.
and abl., affect with, inflict on.
adfigō — adpetō

In passive, suffer, receive: magnō dolore adficī, be greatly distressed
adfigō, -figere, -fixi, -fixus, trans.,
fasten to
adfigō, -figere, -fixi, -fixus, trans., make up in addition
adfinītās, -ātis [adfinis, related],
\[f., relationship: adfinitātibus con-

adfixus, p.p. of adfigo
adfixō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., dash
against, shatter
adfigō, -figere, -fixi, -fixus, trans.,
dash at; overthrow, damage:
naves (shatter, damage)
adfore, see adsum
adgredior, -gredi, -gressus [ad-
gredior, step, go], dep., trans., go
among, march against, attack
adgregō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans.,
gather: se (gather round, flock
to); se ad amicitiam (attach one’s
self to)
adhibeō, -ēre, -ūi, -itus [ad-habeō],
trans., call in, admit; employ,
use
adhortor, -āri, -ātus, dep., trans.,
encourage, urge
adhuc, adv., up to this time
Adiatunnus, -ī, m., chief of the
Sotiates
adiciō, -icere, -iēci, -iectus [ad-iacio],
trans., throw to, hurl: aggerem
(throw up); join to, add: adiecta
planities (with the addition of)
adiectus, p.p. of adicio
adigō, -igere, -ēgī, -ēactus [ad-ago],
trans., drive to, drive up (of cattle,
etc.); drive in, drive home (of
piles), move up (of towers), shoot
(of weapons); force, bind (by oath)
adīmō, -īmerē, -ēmī, -emptus [ad-
emō, take] trans., take away
aditus, -ūs [adeō], m., approach, ac-
cess; means of approach
adluṅgō, -luŋgere, -iūnxi, -iūctus,
trans., join to, attach, add
adiuvō, -iuvāre, -iūvī, -iūtus, trans.,
assist, help, be of advantage
adlātus, p.p. of adfero
administer, -tīrī, m., servant: ad
sacrficia (priest, celebrant
administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans.,
carry into execution, perform
admīror, -āri, -ātus, dep., trans., be
surprised at, wonder at
admittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus,
trans., let go: admissō equo, at
full speed; allow: in se facinus
(commit a crime); ēdecus (per-
mit to be incurred, incur)
admodum, adv., to a degree; very,
very much
adolēscō, -olēscere, -olēvī, -ultus, in-
trans., grow up
adorior, -orīrī, -ortus, dep., trans.,
attack, assail
adparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans. and
intrans., prepare, get ready,
make preparations
adpellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsus, trans.
and intrans., land (ships), bring
to land
adpetō, -petere, -petīvī, -petitus,
trans. and intrans., seek to gain.
desire; approach
adplícō — aequō

adplícō, -āre, -āvī (-ui), -ātus (-ítus), trans., lean against
adprobō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., approve of
adpropinquō, -āre, -āvī, no p.p., intrans., approach, come near
adpulsus, p.p. of adpello
adripīō, -ripere, -ripuí, -reptus [adrapio], trans., snatch up, seize
adrocanter, adv., with presumption, with insolence
adrocanitia, -ae, f., insolence, presumption
adsciscō, -sciscere, -scivī, -scitus, trans., attach (by formal decree)
adсидuus, -a, -um, adj., constant, continued
adintendent, -sisterē, -stītī, no p.p., intrans., stand by: in conspectu patris (appear)
adspectus, -ús, m., appearance
adsuēfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus, trans., accustom, train
adsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētus, trans. and intrans., accustom; become accustomed
adsum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, irr., intrans., be near, be present, be at hand, appear
Aduatucī, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe of the Belgae, living on the west bank of the Meuse
adulēscēns, -entis, adj., young.— As noun, a youth, young man.— With proper names, the younger (j.r., to distinguish a son from his father)
adulēscentia, -ae, f., youth

adulēscēntulus, -i, m. (often as adj.), a mere boy, very young
adventus, -ūs [advenio, arrive], m., arrival, approach
adversārius, -a, -um, adj., opposed.— As noun, opponent, enemy
adversus, prep. with acc., see advert
advertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, trans., turn towards: animum (turn the attention, notice).— adversus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., in front, opposed, opposite, unfavorable: hostibus adversus occurrent (right against, in their front); in adversum os, right in the face; flumine (up, cf. secundum); res adversae, adversity, want of success.— adversus, prep. with acc., against
advolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, intrans., fly to, fly at
aedificium, -i [aedifico], n., building.— Esp., buildings standing singly, farm buildings
aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [aedes, house, facio], trans., build
aegerrimē, superl. of aegre
aegrē, adv., feebly; with difficulty
Aemilius, -i, m. (Lucius), a Gaul, a subaltern in Caesar's Gallic cavalry
aequāliter, adv., evenly, uniformly
aequinoctium, -i [aequus-nx], n., the time of the equinox, the equinox
aequitās, -ātis [aequus], f., fairness, justice.— Esp., aequitas animi, contentment
aequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., make equal, equalize
aequus — aliquis

aequus, -a, -um, adj., even, level, equal; fair, just, equitable. — *Esp.* aequus animus, equanimity, contentment; aequo Marte, on equal terms

eraria, -ae [aes], f., mine

aes, aeris, n., copper (as metal for ships or as money). Hence, money. — *Esp.*, alienum, debt (another man’s money)

aestas, -ätis, f., summer

aestimatio, -onis [aestimo], f., valuation

aestimō, -äre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., value, estimate; regard

aestuarium, -i [aestus, tide], n., estuary, marsh

aestus, -ās, m., heat; tide

aētis, -ätis, f., age

Āfricus, -a, -um, adj., of Africa. — *Esp.*, sc. ventus, the southwest wind (blowing from Africa to Italy)

āfuisse, āfutūrus, see absum

ager, agrī, m., land, field, country, territory

agger, -eris [ad-gero], m. (that which is carried to a place), earth (for a wall), mound of earth, wall, rampart

agitō, -äre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., propose, discuss

agmen, -inis [ago], n., a body in motion, army, line (of troops on the march): primum (the van); novissimum (the rear); claudere (bring up the rear)

agō, agere, ēgī, ēctus, trans., drive:

sublicas (drive down); vineas, turres, etc. (set in motion, move on, advance); act, treat, discuss, plead: conventum (hold); gratias (render, give, express); quid agit? what is one about? quid agitur? what is going on?

agriculūra, see cultura

alacer, -cris, -cre, adj., active, eager, spirited

alacritas, -ätis [alacer], f., eagerness, readiness

ālārius, -a, -um [ala, wing], adj. (belonging to the wings). — Masc. plur. as noun, allies, auxiliaries

albus, -a, -um, adj., white: plumbum album, tin

ālēs, -is, f., elk

aliās; adv., elsewhere. — Of time, at another time: alias . . . alias, now . . . now

aliēnus, -a, -um [cf. alius], adj., another’s, of others, other people’s: fines (others’). Hence, strange, foreign, unfavorable, foreign to the purpose. — *Superl.*, m. plur. as noun, perfect strangers

aliō, adv., elsewhere

aliquamdiū, adv., for some time

aliquandō, adv., at some time

aliquantus, -a, -um, adj., considerable. — *Neut.* as noun, a good deal, a considerable part. — aliquantō (as abl. of measure), by considerable, considerably, a good deal

aliquis (-qui), -qua, -quid (-quod), indef. adj. or pron., some, any;
ALTIQUO — AMPLOS

some one, any one, something, anything
ALTIQUO, indecl. adj., several, some
ALTER, adv., otherwise, differently.
— ALTER... AC, otherwise... than
ALIUS, -A, -UD, adj., another, other.
— Repeated (either in separate clauses or in the same clause),
one... another; one one (thing), another another: ALIUS ALIA CAUSA
INLATA, one giving one reason, another another, or alleging different
reasons
ALLOBRONGA, -UM, m. plur., a Gallic people, living between the Rhone,
the Isère, the Lake of Geneva, and the Alps
ALO, ALERE, ALUI, ALTUS, trans., feed, support
ALPES, -IUM, F. plur., the Alps
ALTER, -ERA, -ERUM, adj., the other (of two). — In plur., the other party.
— Repeated, one... the other; in plur., one party... the other. — Also, the second (of
more than two), another (the second of three): dies (the second)
ALTERNUS, -A, -UM [ALTER], adj., alternate, alternating
ALTITUDO, -INIS [ALTUS], F., height, depth, thickness (of a timber)
ALTUS, -A, -UM, adj., high. — From opposite point of view, deep. —
Neut. as noun, the sea, the deep
ALUTA, -AE, F., leather
AMBACTUS, -I, M., vassal
AMBARI, -ORUM, M. plur. of adj., a tribe of Gaul, on the Saône. They
seem to have been clients of the Hœdui, and are called Hœdui
AMBARI, -ORUM, M. plur. of adj., a Belgian tribe, whose chief town,
Samarobriva, is now called, from their name, Amiens
AMBIVALI, -ORUM, M. plur. of adj.,
a tribe on the Somme
AMBIVIRI, -ORUM, M. plur. of adj., a Belgic tribe west of the Meuse
AMICITIA, -AE [AMICUS], F., friendship
AMICUS, -A, -UM [AMO, love], adj., friendly, well-disposed. — Masc.
as noun, friend, ally
AMMUTAT, -MITERE, -MISI, -MISSUS,
TRANS., let go, let pass; lose, dismiss
AMOR, -ORIS [AMO, love], M., love, affection
AMPLUS, adv., widely, largely. — AMPPLUS, COMP., farther, more, longer
AMPLUS, -A, -UM, adj., large, wide, great: DIMISSIS AMPHIORIBUS COPIS
(the greater part of); prominent, splendid, noble, distinguished. —
AMPLUS, NEUT. COMP. AS NOUN (OF
PLUS), more, a greater number: AMPLOS OBSIDUM
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

an — Apollo

an, conj., introducing the second member of a double question, or, or rather. — Often with the first member only implied, or: quid venire, an speculantid causa ((or) was it)

Anartēs, -ium, m. plur., a people in Dacia
Anclalitēs, -um, m. plur., a nation of Britain
Anceps, -cipitis, adj., double-headed; double: proelium (on both fronts, of an army facing in two ways)
ancora, -ae, f., anchor: in ancoris, at anchor
Andebrogius, -i, m., a chief of the Remi
Andēs, -ium, m. plur., a tribe of Gaul, north of the Loire
Andī, -orum, the same as the Andes
angulus, -i, m., corner
angustē, adv., narrowly, in narrow quarters
angustiae, -arum [angustus], f. plur., narrowness: propter angustias (narrowness of the passage)
angustus, -a, -um, adj., narrow, confined: in angusto res est, the position is critical
animā, -ae, f., breath. — Plur., soul
animadverterē, -vertere, -vertī, -vertere [animus-advertero], trans., turn the mind to, attend to: animadvertere in, punish; observe
animal, -ālis [anima], n., animal
animus, -i, m., soul, mind, feelings, intellect, spirit. — Esp., constancy, courage, resolution; disposition;
bono animo esse, be well-disposed;
animi causa, for pleasure
annōtius, -a, -um, adj., last year's
annus, -i, m., year
annuus, -a, -um, adj., yearly: magistratus creatur (annually)
ānser, -eris, m., goose
ante, adv., before (of place or time), in front: paucis ante diebus, a few days before. — Prep. with acc., before (of place or time). — In dates, ante diem (a. d.) quintum, on the fifth day before
antēa, adv., before, previously, once
antecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus, trans. and intrans., go forward, advance, surpass (in size etc.)
antecursor, -ōris, m., courier
anteferē, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, irr., trans., place in advance, prefer
antemna, -ae, f., yard (for sails), spar
antepōnō, -pōnere, -pōsi, -positus, trans., think of more importance
antequam, conj., before
antiquītus, adv., from ancient times, from early times, long ago
antīquus, -a, -um, adj., old, ancient
aperīō, -perīre, -perīui, -pertus, trans., uncover, open. — apertus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., open, exposed, unprotected: lātus (the right side, not covered by the shield); impetūs marīs (unbroken)
apertē, adv., openly
Apollō, -inis, m., the son of Jupiter and Latona and twin brother of Diana; god of the sun, of
appellō — artus

divination, of poetry and music, and leader of the Muses. He is identified by Caesar with some Celtic divinity

1. appellō, see addello
2. appellō, āre, ārī, ātus, trans., call, name, address

Apr., abbr. for Aprilis

Aprilis, -e, adj., of April
aptus, -a, -um, adj., suited, adapted
apud, prep. with acc., at, among, with, before; in one's house (company, possession)
aqua, -ae, f., water
aquātīō, -ōnis [aqua], f., getting water
aquīla, -ae, f., eagle. — Esp., the standard of the Romans, consisting of an eagle on a staff
Aquītānia, -ae, f., a city of Cisalpine Gaul
aquīlīfer, -eri [aquīla-fero], m., standard bearer

Aquitānia, -ae, f., the part of Gaul between the Province, the Pyrenees, the Garonne, and the ocean

Aquītānus, -a, -um, adj., of Aquitania. — Mas. plur. as noun, the people of Aquitania

Arar, -aris, m., the Saône, a river of Gaul flowing into the Rhone
arbitrer, -trī, m., witness, arbitrator
arbitrium, -i [arbiter, judge], n., judgment, will, opinion
arbitror, -āri, ātus [arbiter, judge], dep., trans., think, suppose
arbore, -oris, f., tree
arcessō, -ere, -ivī, ātus, trans., summon, invite, send for

ārdeō, ārdēre, ārei, ārsūrus, intrans., be hot, be on fire; be excited
arduus, -a, -um, adj., high, steep, difficult
argentum, -i, n., silver; silverware
āridus, -a, -um, adj., dry. — Neut. as noun, dry land
ārīs, -etis, m., ram; battering-ram (a long timber armed at the end with metal for demolishing walls); buttress (piles driven down in a stream to brace a bridge)

Arlovistus, -i, m., a chief of the Germans
arma, -ōrum, n. plur., arms, equipment: armis ius exsequi, to maintain authority by force of arms
armāmenta, -ōrum [armo], n. plur., implements. — Esp., tackle, rigging
armātūra, -ae [armo], f., equipment: levis armāturae Nūmidae (light-armed)
armō, -āre, -āvi, ātus, trans., equip, arm. — Pass., arm (one's self). — armātus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., armed, in arms, equipped

Arpīnāius, -i, m., a Roman gentile name
ara, artis, f., skill, art. — Plur., the useful arts
artē, adv., closely, tightly
articulus, -i [artus, joint], m., joint
artificium, -i [artifex, artist], n., a trade (opp. to ara, a higher art)
artus, -a, -um, adj., close: silva (thick)
Arvernus, -a, -um, adj., of the Arverni (a tribe in southeastern Gaul).—Masc. plur., the Arverni

Arx, arcis [arceo, shut in], f., stronghold, fortress, citadel

Ascendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scensus [ad-scando, climb], trans. and intrans., climb up, climb, ascend

Ascensus, -ās, m., ascent, going up; means of ascent

At, conj., but, but yet, at least

Atque (ac), conj., and, and especially: simul atque, as soon as

Atrebās, -ātis, adj., Atrebatian, of the Atrebates (a people of Belgic Gaul).—Plur., the Atrebates

Ātrius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name

Attingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tactus [ad-tango], trans., touch upon, touch, border on

Attribūō, -were, -uī, -ētus, trans., allot to, assign

Attuli, see adfero

Auctor, -ōris [augeo], m., voucher, authority: auctore hoste, on the authority of the enemy

Auctōritās, -ātis [auctor], f., influence, prestige

Auctus, -a, -um, p.p. of augeo.—Comp., auctior, richer, greater

Audeō, audēre, ausus, semi-dep., trans., dare, venture.—ausus, -a, -um, p.p. in pres. sense, daring

Audiō, -Ire, -īvī, -ītus, trans., hear, hear of.—audiēns, -entia, pres. p. as adj., obedient (with dicto)

Audītīō, -ōnis [audio], f., hearing, hearsay, report

Augeō, augēre, auxī, auctus, trans., increase, magnify, add to (something).—Pass., increase

Aulercus, -a, -um, adj., of the Auleri (a widespread people of several tribes in the interior of Gaul).—Masc. plur., the Auleri

Aulus, -ī, m., a Roman prænomen

Aureus, -a, -um [aurum, gold], adj., golden

Auriga, -ae, m., charioteer, driver

Auris, -is, f., ear

Aurunculēus, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name

Auscī, -ōrum, m. plur. of adj., a tribe of Aquitania

Ausus, -a, -um, p.p. of audeō

Aut, conj., or. — Repeated, either ...

autem, conj., but (the weakest degree of opposition, cf. sed), on the other hand

Auxiliāris, -e [auxilium], adj., auxiliary.—Masc. plur. as noun, auxiliaries, auxiliary troops

Auxiliōr, -āri, -ātus [auxilium], dep., intrans., give assistance

Auxilium, -ī, n., assistance, aid, relief.—Plur., auxiliaries; reinforcements

Avaricum, -ī, n., a town of the Bituriges in central Gaul
avāritia — Bōī

avāritia, -ae [avarus, greedy], f., covetousness, greed, avarice
āvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, trans., turn aside, turn away.—
āversus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., turned away; in the rear
avis, -is, f., bird
avus, -i, m., grandfather
Axōna, -ae, f., a river of Belgic Gaul, now the Aisne

Bācenis, -is, f., with silva, a forest in Germany
Baculus, -ī, m., Publius Sextius Baculus, a centurion in Cæsar’s army
Balaēris, -e, adj., Balearic, (belonging to the Balearic Islands in the Mediterranean)
Balventius, -ī, m., Titus Balventius, a centurion in Cæsar’s army
barbarus, -a, -um, adj., foreign (not Greek or Roman), uncivilized.—
Masc. plur., barbarians, savages
Batavi, -ōrum, m. plur., the Batavi or Batavians, a nation living about the mouths of the Rhine
Belgae, -ārum, m. plur., the Belgæ or Belgians, a nation occupying the northern part of Gaul
Belgium, -ī, n., the country of the Belgæ
bellicōsus, -a, -um [bellum], adj., warlike
bellicus, -a, -um [bellum], adj., of war, in war
bellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [bellum], intrans., fight, make war

Bellovacī, -ōrum, m. plur., a Belgic tribe between the Seine, Somme, and Oise
bellum, -i, n., war: bellum gerere, wage war
bene [bonus], adv., well
beneficium, -i [bene-facio], n., well-doing, service, favor, often rendered by English plur.
benevolentia, -ae [bene-volo], f., good will, kindness
Bibracte, -is, n., the chief town of the Hāeduī
Bibrax, Bibractis, f., a town of the Remi
Bibroci, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe of southeastern Britain
biduum, -i [bis-dies], n., two days’ time, two days
biennium, -i [bis-annus], n., two years’ time
Bigerrīōnas, -um, m. plur., a tribe of the Pyrenees
bīnī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., plur., two each, two sets of, two (of things in pairs or sets)
bipartītō, adv., in two divisions
bipedālis, -e [bis-pes], adj., two feet (long, wide, etc.)
bis, num. adv., twice
Biturīgēs, -um, m. plur., a tribe of Celtic Gaul
Boduōgnātus, -i, m., a leader of the Nervii
Bōia, -ae, f., a town of the Boii
Bōii, -ōrum, m. plur., a Celtic tribe
LATIN–ENGLISH VOCABULARY

bonitās — Cantaber

bonitās, -ātis [bonus], f., goodness:
agrorum (fertility)
bonus, -a, -um, adj., good: bono
animo esse, to be well-disposed.
— Neut. as noun, good, advantage; plur., goods, property
bōs, bovis, c., bull, cow, ox.—Plur.,
cattle
braccium, -ī, n., arm
Bratuspantium, -ī, n., a fortified
town of the Bellovaci
brevis, -e, adj., short (of space or
time): brevi, in a short space
brevirtās, -ātis [brevis], f., short-
ness, short stature: brevis tem-
poris, want of time
Britanni, -ōrum, m. plur., the Britons
Britannia, -ae, f., Britain
brūma, -ae, f., the winter solstice
Brūtus, -ī, m., a family name at
Rome.—Esp., Decimus Junius
Brutus Albinus, a legatus of
Cæsar. He distinguished him-
self in command of Cæsar's fleet
off the coast of Gaul, and after-
wards in the Civil War on the side of Cæsar. But he joined the
conspiracy against Cæsar with
Marcus Brutus, and was one of
Cæsar's assassins

c., for centum, hundred
C., abbr. for Gaius, Caius
Caburus, -ī, m., Caius Valerius Cabu-
rus, a Gaul, made a Roman citi-
zen by C. Valerius Flaccus, and
father of C. Valerius Proculus
and C. Valerius Donnōtauрус

cadāver, -eris [cf. cado], n., corpse
cadō, cadere, cecidi, cāsūrus, intrans.,
fall, be killed
Cadūrcus, -a, -um, adj., of the Ca-
durci.—Masc. plur., the Cadurci
caedēs, -is [caedo], f., murder, mas-
sacre, slaughter
caedō, caedere, cecidi, caesus, trans.,
cut, slay, kill
caelētis, -e, adj., heavenly.—Masc.
plur., the gods
Caemānī, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe of
Belgic Gaul
camēmōnia, -ae, f., sacred rite
Caerōsī, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe of
Belgic Gaul
cauruleus, -a, -um [caelum, sky], adj.,
dark blue
Cæsar, -āris, m., a family name in
the gens Iulia.—Esp., C. Julius
Cæsar, the conqueror of Gaul and
author of the "Commentaries"
caespēs, -ītis, m., sod
caesus, -a, -um, p.p. of caedo
calamītās, -ātis, f., disaster, defeat,
misfortune
Caletī, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe of
northern Gaul
callidus, -a, -um, adj., shrewd, cunning, skillful
cālo,-ōnis, m., servant, camp follower
campestrē, -tris, -tre [campus], adj.,
of the plain: loca (level plains)
campus, -ī, m., plain
Cantaber, -bra, -brum, adj., of the
Cantabri (a warlike people in the
north of Spain).—Masc. plur.,
the Cantabri or Cantabrians
Cantium, -i, n., Kent (the southeast corner of Britain)
capillus, -i, m., the hair
capiō, capere, cēpi, captus, trans., take, capture, take possession of, get, acquire, seize; choose, select: locum; portum (arrive at, make); fugam (take to flight)
capra, -ae, f., goat
captīvus, -a, -um [capio], adj., captive. — Masc. as noun, captive, prisoner
captus, -a, -um, p. p. of capio
capitus, -ūs [capio], m., capacity, nature, idea
caput, -itis, n., head; person; mouth (of a river); life: poenam capitāris (of death); capitāris periculō (of life)
caraē, -ēre, -ui, -itūrus, intrans., be without, go without
carīna, -ae, f., keel
Carnūtēs, -ānum, m. plur., a Gallic people
carō, carnis, f., flesh, meat
carpō, -pere, -pei, -pēre, trans., pluck; find fault with
carrus, -i, m., cart
cārus, -a, -um, adj., dear, precious, valuable
Carvilius, -ī, m., a king of part of Kent
cāseus, -ī, m., cheese
Cassiō, -ōrum, m. plur., a British tribe
Cassīānus, -a, -ōrum, adj., of Cassius: bellum (the war in 107 B.C., in which L. Cassius Longinus was defeated by the Tigrini, near the Lake of Geneva, and killed)
Cassius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name. — Esph., L. Cassius Longinus, consul 107 B.C. (see Cassianus)
Cassivellaunus, -i, m., a British chief
castellum, -i [castrum], n., fortress, fort, outwork, redoubt
Casticus, -i, m., a chief of the Sequani
castrum, -i, n., fortress. — Plur., camp: castra ponere, pitch camp; castra movere, break camp, move
cāsus, -ūs [cado], m., accident, chance (good or bad): casu, by accident, by chance
Catamantālōeōdēs, -is, m., a chief of the Sequani
catēna, -ae, f., chain (for prisoners), cable: in catēnas coniciēt (into prison)
Caturiges, -um, m. plur., a people in Roman Gaul
Catuvolcus, -i, m., a chief of the Eburones
causa, -ae, f., reason, excuse, grounds, motive (for an act): satis causae, sufficient reason. Abl. after a gen., for the sake of, for the purpose of. Also, case (in law): causam dicere, plead one's cause, stand trial, be tried
cautus, p. p. of caveō
caveō, cavere, cāvi, cautus, trans. and intrans., be on one's guard: obsidibus cavere, give hostages as security
cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessūrus, intrans., give way, retreat, retire
celer — circiter
celer, -eris, -ere, adj., swift, quick, fast
celeritas, -ātis [celer], f., swiftness, activity, speed
celeriter, adv., quickly, speedily
cēlo, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., conceal, hide. — Pass., pass unnoticed
Celtae, -ārum, m. plur., a race in Gaul and Britain. — More particularly, the Celts occupying the interior of Gaul
Celtillus, -ī, m., one of the Arverni, father of Vercingetorix
Cēnabēnsēs, -īm, m. plur., the people of Cenabum
Cēnabum; -ī, n., the chief city of the Carnutes, north of central Gaul
Cēnimagnī, -ōrum, m. plur., a British tribe
cēna, cēnsēre, cēnsuī, cēnus, trans., reckon, estimate; think, advise, decree (of the senate), determine
cēnus, -ūs [censeo], m., numbering, count, census
centum (C), indecl. num. adj., hundred
centuriō, -ōnis, m., centurion (an officer commanding a century, originally a hundred men)
cernō, cernere, crévi, crétuā, trans., distinguish, see
certāmen, -inis [certo, contend], n., struggle, contest, rivalry
certē, adv., certainly, surely, at least
certus, -ā, -um (for crētus), p. p. of cerno as adj., determined, fixed,
certain: certiorem facere, inform, order; dies certa, appointed day
cervus, -ī, m., stag
(cēterus), -a, -um, adj., the rest of. Usually plur., the rest, the remaining, the others
Ceutronēs, -um, m. plur., a tribe in the Alps
Chēruscī, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe of the Germans
cibārius, -a, -um [cibus], adj., pertaining to food. — Neut. plur. as noun, provisions: molita (ground corn)
cibus, -ī, m., food
Cicerō, -ōnis, m., a name of a Roman family from Arpinum. — Quintus (Tullius), brother of Marcus the orator, in Caesar’s service in Gaul as legatus
Cimberius, -ī, m., a prince of the Suebi
Cimbrī, -ōrum, m. plur., a German tribe living in Jutland, who overran Gaul and made a successful inroad into the Roman dominions in the second century B.C. They were conquered by Marius and Catulus, 101 B.C.
Cingetorix, -īgis, m., a British prince in Kent
cingō, cingere, cīnxi, cinctus, trans., surround, encircle; man (occupy in a circuit, of walls)
circinus, -ī [cf. circum], m., a pair of compasses
circiter, adv., and prep. with acc., about, near, not far from
circuitus — clémentia

circuitus, -ás [circumeo], m., circuit, circuitous route, circumference: in circuitu, all around
circum, adv., and prep. with acc., about, around

circumclüdō, -clüdere, -clüśi, -clüśus [circum-claudo], trans., inclose, encircle
circumdō, -dare, -dedi, -datus, irr., trans., put around: murus circumdatus (encircling, thrown around); surround, encircle
circumdīcō, -dēcere, -dīxī, -ductus, trans., lead around; draw around
circumeō, -ire, -ii, -itus, irr., intrans., go around. — As trans., visit, make a tour of
circumfundō, -fundere, -fundi, -fundus, trans., surround. — Pass. or reflex., crowd around, surround
circumiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [circum-iacio], trans., throw around
circumitus, p. p. of circumdeo

circummittō, -mittere, -mītā, -miscus, trans., send around
circummüniō, -ire, -ivi, -itus, trans., throw fortifications around, fortify
circumaistō, -sistere, -steti (-stiti), no p. p., trans., stand around, surround, hem in, beset
circumspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus, trans., look about for, examine
circumvālō, -äre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., surround with walls, blockade
circumveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventus, trans., surround; impose upon, defraud
cis, prep. with acc., on this side of

cita, -ae, m., C. Fufius, a Roman knight
citātus, -a, -um, p. p. of cite

citer, -tra, -trum, adj. Usually citerior (comp.), nearer, hither (as adj.): provincia, Gallia (Gaul on the Italian side of the Alps)
citō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., urge on, hurry. — citātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., in haste: citatus fertur, runs very rapidly
citō, adv., quickly: citissimē, very rapidly
citā, adv., and prep. with acc., this side, within
citō, adv., to this side: ultro citroque, back and forth
civis, -is, c., citizen
civitas, -ātis [civis], f., citizenship, the citizens (as a body), a state (composed of citizens)
clam, adv., and prep. with abl., secretly; unknown to
clāmitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [clamo, cry out], trans., keep crying out
clāmor, -ōris, m., shout, outcry
clandestīnus, -a, -um, adj., secret
clārus, -a, -um, adj., famous; loud, distinct
classis, -is, f., fleet

claudō, claudere, clausi, clausus, trans., close, shut, fasten: claudere agmen, close the line of march, bring up the rear
clāvus, -ī, m., nail, spike
clémentia, -ae [clemens, kind], f.; kindness, gentleness, mercy
cîiens — commilitō

cliēns, -entis, c., dependent, vassal, retainer

clientēla, -ae [cîiens], f., vassalage:
magna clientela, many vassals;
Remis in clientelam se dicaverunt (surrendered themselves as vassals to etc.)

Clōdius, -î, m., a Roman gentile name

Cn., abbr. for Gnaeus

coacrēvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [con-accervus], trans., heap together, heap on top of (of others)

cōactus, -a, -um, p. p. of cogo

coāctus, -īs [cogo], m., compulsion

coagmentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., fasten together

Cocosātēs, -um, m. plur., a people of Aquitania

coēmō, -emere, -ēmi, -emptus [con-emō], trans., buy up

coōō, -āre, -īi, no p. p., irr., intrans., come together, unite, meet

coēpī, -isse, coeptus, defective, trans., began, undertook, started.—coeptus, -a, -um, p. p. used in same sense as the active with pass. infinitives

coērcēō, -ercēre, -ercui, -ercitus [con-arceo, shut up], trans., confine, keep in check

cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [con-agito], trans., consider, think over

cognātiō, -ōnis, f., connection by birth, family, clan

cognitūa, -a, -um, p. p. of cognosco
cognōscō, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, -gnitus [con-(g)nōsco, learn], trans., learn,

find out, investigate, inquire into.
—In perf. tenses, know

cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus [con-ago], trans., bring together, collect, assemble. Hence, force, compel, oblige: coāctus, by compulsion

cohōra, -hortis, f., body of troops, cohort (the tenth part of a legion)

cohortātīō, -ōnis [cohortor], f., an encouraging, encouragement

cohortor, -āri, -ātus, dep., trans., encourage, cheer up

collis, -īs, m., hill

colō, colere, colui, cultus, trans., cultivate: colendi causa, to till the soil; worship (divinities)

colōnia, -ae, f., colony

color, -ōris, m., color

com- (con-, co-), adv. in composition, with, together, up. Often intensifying the meaning without definite translation

combūrō, -ūrēre, -ussi, -ūstus [con-uro, burn], trans., burn up, consume

comes, -itēs, c., companion

commētus, -ūs [commeo], m., trip; supplies (of an army), provisions

commemorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., remind one of. Hence, speak of, mention, state (in a narrative)

commendō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-mando, commit], trans., intrust, commend, surrender

commēō, -āre, -āvī, -āturus, intrans., go back and forth.—With ad, visit, resort to

commilitō, -ōnis [con-miles], m., fellow soldier
comminus [con-manus], adv., hand to hand, in close combat
committo, -mittere, -misī, -missus, trans.; join: proelium (engage in, begin the engagement). — Also, trust: se barbaris committere (put one's self in the hands of etc.). — Also, admit, allow (to happen), commit (suffer to be done)
Commius, -ī, m., a leader of the Atrebates
 commodo, adv., conveniently, fitly, readily: satis commodo, to much advantage; non satis commodo, not very easily
commodo, -a, -um, adj., fitting, suitable, convenient, advantageous. — Ne ut. as noun, convenience, comfort, advantage, interest: commodo rei publicae, without prejudice to the public interests
commonefaciō, -facere, -fēci, -fectus [con-moneo-facio], trans., remind
commoror, -ārī, -ātus, dep., intrans., delay
commoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, trans., move, stir, agitate; disturb, alarm
commūnicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [communis], trans., share, communicate
commūnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., strongly fortify
commūnis, -e, adj., common, general, in common: res (the common interest)
commūtātiō, -onis, f., change: aestus (turn)
commūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., change, exchange: studium belli agri culturae (exchange the pursuits of war for agriculture)
1. comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., get ready, prepare, procure, gain, get together
2. comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., compare
compelli, -pellere, -puli, -pulsus, trans., drive together, drive in, force, drive
comperī, -perīre, -perī, -pertus, trans., find out, ascertain, discover. — compertus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., certain
complector, -pecti, -plexus, dep., trans., embrace, incluse, inclose
compleō, -plēre, -plēvi, -plētus, trans., fill up, fill; cover, man (of walls)
complurēs, -plūra, adj., plur., very many, a great many
comportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., bring together, collect
comprehendō, -hendere, -hendi, -hensus, trans., seize, catch, arrest, capture
compulsus, -a, -um, p.p. of compello con-, see com-
cōnātum, -ī [conor], n., attempt, undertaking
cōnātus, -a, -um, p.p. of conor
cōnātus, -ūs [conor], m., attempt, effort
cōnēdō, -cedere, -cessi, -cessus, trans. and intrans., allow, grant, permit, yield, make a concession
concessus, -ūs, m., concession, permission
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

concidō — cōnfusus

concidō, -cidere, -cidi, no p. p. [concado], intrans., fall down, fall
concidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cīsus [concado], trans., cut to pieces, cut down (kill), cut up (land by estuaries)
conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., bring together; win over, gain
concilium, -i, n., meeting; assembly, council, conference
concīsus, -a, -um, p. p. of concīdo
concitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., arouse, stir up
conclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, intrans., cry out, shout
conclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus [con-clua], trans., shut up, inclose: mare conclusum (inclosed, inland)
Conconnectodumnus, -i, m., a leader of the Carnutes
concrepō, -crepāre, -crepui, -crepitūrus, intrans., crash
concurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursūrus, intrans., run together, rush up: concursus est, there was a rushing together
concurso, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, intrans., rush to and fro
concursus, -ūs, m., a running together, a dashing together (collision); onset
condemnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [condamno], trans., condemn, find guilty
condiciō, -ōnias, f., terms, condition, terms of agreement
condōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., give up, pardon

Condrūsī, -ōrum, m. plur., a Belgic tribe on the Meuse
condūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductus, trans., bring together, bring up (soldiers), hire
cōnferciō, -fercire, -ferā, -fertus, trans., crowd together. — cōnfertus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., close, crowded, dense
cōnferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, irr., trans., bring together, get together, collect; charge; hold (a conversation). — With reflexive, betake one's self, remove, take refuge
confortus, -a, -um, p. p. of conferci
confrēstim, adv., in haste, immediately, at once
conācīdō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [confacīo], trans., accomplish, complete, finish, perform, dress (of skins); exhaust, wear out
confidō, -fidere, -fīsus sum, semidep., intrans., trust, trust to, have confidence in, rely on. — cōnfusus, -a, -um, p. p. in act. sense, trusting in
confīgō, -figere, -fixī, -fixus, trans., fasten together, fasten
confīnium, -i [confinis], n., neighborhood, common boundaries
confirmātiō, -ōnias [confirmo], f., assurance, confirmation
confirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., strengthen, establish (pacem), reassure, encourage, confirm, assure
confusus, -a, -um, p. p. of confido
cōnīteor — cōnscribō
cōnīteor, -ātērī, -āssus [con-fateor, confess], dep., trans., confess, acknowledge, admit
cōnīfixus, -a, -um, p.p. of cōnīgo
cōnīictōri, -āre, -āvī, -āitus [cōnīgo], trans., assail, harass
cōnīigō, -āligere, -ālixī, -ālictus, trans. and intrans., dash against, contend, fight
cōnīluēns, -entis, m., meeting of two rivers, confluence
cōngredior, -āre, -āssus [cōngradiō, step], dep., intrans., come together.—In peace, unite with. —Esp. in war, engage, fight
cōngressor, -a, -um, p.p. of cōngredior

cōngressor, -ās [cōngradiō], m., engagement, encounter
cōnicā, -ācere, -ācēī, -ācticus [cōnicācio], trans., throw together, hurl, cast: se cōnicere, throw one’s self, rush.—Less exactly (esp. in a military sense), throw (into prison), put (to flight), place, station (cf. military throw troops into etc.), force.—Fig., put together (of ideas)
cōniectus, -a, -um, p.p. of cōnicā

cōniūctum [cōniungo], adv., in common

cōniūctus, -a, -um, p.p. of cōniungo
cōniungō, -āunge, -āunxiī, -āunctus, trans., unite, connect, fasten together

cōniūnx, -iugis [cōniungo], f., wife
cōniūrātiō, -ōnis, f., conspiracy, confederacy

cōniūrō, -āre, -āvī, -āitus, trans., take an oath (together); conspire, plot
cōnīātus, -a, -um, p.p. of cōnfero

cōnlaudō, -āre, -āvī, -āitus, trans., praise (in set terms)
cōnlectus, -a, -um, p.p. of cōnīgo

cōnligō, -āre, -āvī, -āitus, trans., bind together, fasten together

cōnligō, -ligere, -ligēī, -lēctus [cōn-lege], trans., gather together, collect, acquire.—With reflexive, collect one’s self, recover

cōnocō, -āre, -āvī, -āitus, trans., place, set, station.—Esp. (with or without nuptum), give in marriage

cōnloquium, -ī [cōnloquor], n., conference, interview

cōnloquor, -loqui, -loquētus, dep., intrans., confer, hold an interview

cōnor, -āriī, -āitus, dep., trans. and intrans., attempt, try, endeavor

cōnquirō, -quīrere, -quisīvī, -quisītus [cōn-quaero], trans., search for, seek for, hunt up

cōnsanguineus, -a, -um [cōn-sanguis], adj., akin (by blood).—As noun, kinsman

cōnscendō, -scendere, -scendiī, -scenessus [cōn-sectīndō, climb], trans., climb, climb upon: naves (in naves) (go on board)

cōnsciscō, -sciscere, -scīvī, -scītus [cōn-scisco, decree], trans., resolve: sibi mortem (commit suicide)

cōnsicus, -a, -um [cōn-scio], adj., conscious, aware of

cōnscribō, -scribere, -scripseī, -scripsītus, trans., enroll, levy, enlist
cōnsector — cōnsuēscō

Hence, stop, halt, make a stand, hold one's ground, run aground (of ships), remain, stay.—With in, occupy, rest on; depend on, consist of
cōnsōlor, -ārī, -ātus, dep., trans., console, cheer.—cōnsōlātus, -a, -um, p.p. as pres., consoling
cōnspectus, -ūs, m., sight.—in conspectu, in one's presence
cōspicātus, -a, -um, p.p. of conspicor
cōspiciō, -spicer-, -spexi-, -spectus [con-spectio, look at], trans., catch sight of, see
cōspicor, -ārī, -ātus [conspicio], dep., trans., catch sight of, see
cōspirō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, intrans., conspire, league together
cōstanter, adv., steadily, firmly, consistently
cōstantia, -ae [constans, firm], f., firmness, constancy, courage
cōsternō, -sternere, -strāvī, -strātus, trans., strew over
cōstituō, -stituere, -stitui, -stitūtus [con-statuō], trans. and intrans., set up, raise, put together, make up; establish, station, arrange, draw up (aciem); determine, appoint, agree upon
cōstō, -stāre, -stītī, -stātūrus, intrans., agree; be established, appear, be evident: esp., constat, it appears; cost
cōsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētus, intrans., become accustomed.—In perf. tenses, be accustomed,
be wont.—consuetus, -a, -um, p.p., accustomed, wont, used
consuetudo, -inis, f., habit, custom, manners, practice: itineris (usual order of march)
consul, -ulis, m., consul (the title of the chief magistrate of Rome): M. Messala et M. Pisone consulibus, in the consulship of etc. (the usual Roman method of giving a date)
consulatus, -ūs [consul], m., consulship
consulō, -ulere, -sului, -sultus, trans. and intrans., deliberate, consult.
— With dat., take counsel for, look out for.—sortibus consultum (est), lots were drawn to decide consultō, adv., purposely, designedly
consultum, -i [consulum], n., decision, decree.—Esp., senatus consultum, an order of the senate
consūmō, -ēmare, -sūmpeī, -sūmp tus, trans., waste, destroy, spend, exhaust
consumgeo, -surgere, -surrēxi, -surrēcturus, intrans., rise, rise up.—Esp. of a session, break up
contafulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., build up (generally, as of a wall with towers)
contāgiō, -ōnis [con-tango], f., contact
contemptūtio, -ōnis [contemno, despise], f., contemt, scorn
contemptus, -ūs [contemno, despise]; m., contemt, scorn: contemptui est, is a matter of ridicule
contendō, -tendere, -tendi, -tentūrus, intrans., strive, try, endeavor; press on, hasten; fight, contend, wage war
contentiō, -ōnis [contendo], f., struggle, efforts.—Esp., contest, fighting, dispute
contentus, -a, -um, p.p. of contendō and contineō
contextō, -textere, -textui, -textus, trans., interweave, weave together
contigisse, see contingo
continēns, -entis, see contineō
continenter, adv., continually, incessantly
continēō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentus [contineō], trans., hold together; restrain, hold in check, hem in.—Pass. or with reflex., keep within, remain.—continēns, -entis, pres. p. as adj., continual, continuous.
—As noun, the continent.—contentus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., satisfied
contingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctus [con-tango], trans. and intrans., touch, reach, join.—With dat., happen
continuātiō, -ōnis [continuo, unite], f., continuation: continuatio imbrium, incessant rains
continuus, -a, -um [contineō], adj., continuous, successive: dies (successive)
contra, adv., and prep. with acc., opposite, contrary to, against: contra atque, contrary to what etc.
contrahō — Crassus

contrahō, -trahere, -träxi, -trāctus, trans., draw together, gather together, contract, make smaller
contrārius, -a, -um [contra], adj., opposite, contrary: ex contrario, on the contrary; in contrariam partem, in the opposite direction
contriversia, -ae, f., dispute, quarrel.
— Plur., grounds of quarrel
contumēlia, -ae, f., outrage, insult, af-front.— Fig., violence (of waves)
convallis, -is, f., valley (inclosed on all sides)
conveniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventus, trans. and intrans., come together, meet, assemble; agree upon.— With acc., meet, come to.— Also, of things, be agreed on, be fitting, be necessary
conventus, -ūs [convenio], m., assembly
convertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, trans., turn about, turn, change: signa (change front, wheel); conversa signa bipartito intulerunt, wheeled and charged the enemy in two directions; conversa signa in hostes inferre, face about and charge the enemy
convincō, -vincere, -vīcī, -victus, trans., prove, make good (a charge etc.): avaritia convicta, found guilty of avarice
convocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., call together, summon, call
coōrīor, -ōrī, -ortus, dep., intrans., arise, spring up, break out (of a war)
cōpia, -ae, f., abundance, plenty, supply.— Plur., resources, supplies, forces
cōpiōsus, -a, -um [copia], adj., well supplied, wealthy
cōpula, -ae, f., grappling hook
cor, cordis, n., heart: cordi esse, be dear
cōram, adv., and prep. with abl., face to face, present, in person, in the presence of
Coriosolītēs, -um, m. plur., a people of Aemoric Gaul
corium, -ī, n., hide, skin
cornū, -ūs, n., horn.— Fig., wing (of an army)
corōna, -ae, f., garland: sub corona, at auction (the garland being the symbol of a captive for sale at auction)
corpus, -oris, n., the body, the person.— Also, a body (dead)
cortex, -icis, m. (also f.), bark
Cōrūs, -ī, m., northwest wind
cōtēs, -is, f., rock, reef
cotidiānus, -a, -um [cotidie], adj., daily
cotidiē, adv., daily, every day
Cotta, -ae, m., a Roman family name.— Esp.: Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta, a legatus of Cæsar
Cotuātus, -ī, m., a chief of the Carnutes
crasstitūdō, -inis [crassus, thick], f., thickness
Crassus, -ī, m., a Roman family name.— Esp.: i. Marcus (Licinius) Crassus, consul with Pompey,
55 B.C.; one (with Cæsar and Pompey) of the combination called the First Triumvirate. —
2. Publius Crassus (called *adulescens*, the Younger, only as distinguished from his father), son of the triumvir, serving with Cæsar in Gaul as commander of cavalry.
— 3. Marcus Crassus, another son of the triumvir, quaestor, 54 B.C., in Cæsar’s army

*crātēs, -is, -f.,* wickerwork, fascine (*a bundle of sticks used to strengthen earthworks in fortification*)

*creātus, -a, -um, p.p. of creo*

*crēber, -bra, -brum, adj.,* thick, close, numerous, frequent

*crēdō, crēdere, crēdīdi, crēditus, trans. and intrans., trust, in¬trust, believe, suppose

*cremō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., burn, consume:* igni cremari, be burned to death

*creō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., create.* — *Esp., elect, choose, appoint*

*Crēs, Crētis, m., a Cretan. — As adj., Cretan*

*crēscō, crēscere, crēvi, crētus, intrans.,* grow, increase, swell (of a river), increase in influence (of a man), grow powerful

*crēvissēt, see cresco*

*cruciātus, -ūs [crucio, crucify], m., crucifying. *Hence,* torture

*crūdēlitās, -ātis [crudēlis, cruel], f., cruelty

*crūdēliter [crudēlis, cruel], adv., cruelly, with cruelty*

*crūs, crūris, n., leg*

*cubūle, -is [cubo, lie down], n., resting place, bed, lair*

*culmen, -inis, n., height, top, summit, roof*

*culpa, -ae, f., fault, blame, guilt*

*cultūra, -ae, f., cultivation: agri cultura, agriculture*

*cultus, -ūs [colo], m., cultivation; civilization, manner of life*

*cum, prep. with abl., with*

*cum, conj., usually with subjv. when, whenever, while, since, in asmuch as, though, although: cum . . . tum, while . . . so also, not only . . . but also; cum pri¬mum, as soon as*

*cumulus, -i, m., pile, heap*

*cunctātiō, -onis [cunctor], f., hesitation, reluctance, indisposition to fight*

*cunctor, -āri, -ātus, dep., intrans., hesitate: non cunctari quin, have no hesitation in etc.*

*cūntus, -a, -um [coniunctus], adj., all, all together*

*cuneātim [cuneus, wedge], adv., in the shape of a wedge*

*cuniculus, -i, m., burrow; mine*

*cupidē [cupidus], adv., eagerly, zealously, earnestly*

*cupiditās, -ātis [cupidus], f., desire, eagerness, greed*

*cupidus, -a, -um [cupio], adj., eager, desirous, fond of, ambitious (for)*

*cupiō, -ere, -ivi, -ētus, trans. and intrans., be eager (for), be anxious, desire (stronger than volo).*
cūr — dēcrētum

— With dat., wish well to, be zealous for
cūr, adv., why (interrog. and rel.)
cūra, -ae, f., care, anxiety, attention
cūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans. and intrans., take care, provide for.
— With gerundive, cause (to be done), have (done)
currus, -ūs, m., chariot (= essedum)
cursus, -ūs [curro], m., running, speed, a run, a course (space or direction run): cursum adequare, keep up with; cursu incitato or magno, at full speed
custōdia, -ae [custos], f., custody, guard (state of being guarded).
— Plur. (concretely), guards, keepers
custōs, -ōdis, c., guard, watchman, keeper, spy

D [half of CI, thousand], Roman numeral for five hundred
D., abbr. for Decimus
d., abbr. for diem
Dācus, -a, -um, adj., Dacian.— Masc. plur., the Dacians, a people living north of the lower Danube
damnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., find guilty, condemn
Dānuvius, -ī, m., the Danube, flowing from the mountains of Germany eastward to the Black Sea
dātus, -a, -um, p.p. of dō
dō, prep. with abl., from, down from, off from. Hence, qua de causa, for which reason.— Esp. in partitive sense, out of, of: pauci de nostris.— Also, about, of (about), in regard to, concerning, for.
— In expressions of time, just after, about: de tertia vigilia.— In composition, away, off, down, through
dēbō, -ēre, -ui, -itus [de-habéo], trans., owe, be bound, ought, must.— Pass., be due, be owing
dēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessūs, intrans., retire, withdraw, withdraw from.— Exp. (from life), die
decem, indecl. num. adj., ten
dēceptūs, -a, -um, p.p. of decipio
dēcernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētus, trans. and intrans., decide, determine, decree, order
dēcertō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans. and intrans., contend (so as to close the contest), decide the issue, carry on war, fight (a general engagement)
dēcessus, -ūs, m., withdrawal, departure: aestus (ebb, fall)
dēcidō, -cidere, -cidi, no p.p. [decado], intrans., fall (from a horse)
decimus, -a, -um [decem], adj., tenth
Decimus, -ī [decimus], m., a Roman prænomen
dēcipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [decapiō], trans., beguile, deceive
dēclārō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., make plain, declare
dēclīvis, -e [de-clīvus, slope], adj., sloping down, inclined.— Neu. plur. as noun, slopes
dēcrētum, -ī, n., decree, decision
dēcrētus — dēlectō

dēcrētus, -a, -um, p.p. of decerno
decumānus, -a, -um [decimus], adj.,
    belonging to the tenth: porta
    (the rear gate of a camp, where
    the tenth cohort was posted)
decurīō, -ōnis, m., commander (of
    a decuria of cavalry, a small
    squadron)
dēcurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursūrus,
    intrans., run down, run away,
    hurry off
dēdecus, -oris, n., disgrace, dishonor
dēditicius, -a, -um [dedo], adj., sur-
    rendered. — Plur. as noun, pris-
    oners (taken by surrender)
dēditīō, -ōnis [dedo], f., surrender
dēditus, -a, -um, p.p. of dedo
dēdō, -dere, -didi, -ditus, trans., give
    over, surrender, give up, devote.
    — In pass. or with reflex., sur-
    render one’s self, submit
dēducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductus, trans.,
    lead down or off, lead away, take
    away (of men). — Esph., launch
    (of ships); marry (of women)
dēfatigātīō, -ōnis [defatigō], f., ex-
    haustion
dēfatigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans.,
    wear out, exhaust
dēfectīō, -ōnis [deficio], f., falling
    away, revolt
dēfendō, -fendere, -fendi, -fēnsus,
    trans., ward off, defend one’s
    self against; defend, protect
dēfēnsīō, -ōnis [defendo], f., defense
defensor, -ōris [defendo], m., de-
    fender; means of defense, defense
deforō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, irr.,
    trans., carry down, carry away,
    bring, land (of ships). — Pass., be
    borne down or on, drift (of ships),
    turn aside. — Fig., report, lay
    before
defessus, -a, -um, p.p. of defetiscor
defetiscor, -fetisci, -fessus, dep., in-
    trans., crack open. — dēfessus, -a,
    -um, p.p. as adj., exhausted
deficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [de-
    facio], trans. and intrans., fail,
    revolt, abandon (with ab): animo
    (despond)
defigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixus, trans.,
    drive down, plant, set, fasten
defixus, -a, -um, p.p. of defigo
defluō, -fluere, -flūxi, -flūxūrus, in-
    trans., flow apart, divide (of a
    river)
defore, see desum
defōrmis, -e [de-forma], adj., un-
    comely, unshapely, ugly
defugīō, -fugere, -fugi, no p.p.,
    trans. and intrans., fly from,
    avoid, run away
deficiō, -icere, -īeci, -iectus [de-
    iacio],
    trans., cast down, drive out, dis-
    lodge, kill (pass., fall), deprive:
    ea spe delecti, disappointed in
    this hope
defiectus, -a, -um, p.p. of deicio
defiectus, -ūs [deicio], m., declivity,
    slope
definceps, adv., in succession
definde, adv., then, next
deflātus, -a, -um, p.p. of defrēō
deflectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., de-
    light. — Pass., take delight, delight
délectus, -a, -um, p.p. of deligo
(-ligere)
délectus, -ús [deligo], m., levy, con-
scription
déleō, -ère, -ēvi, -ētus, trans., blot
out, wipe out; annihilate, destroy
déléctus, -a, -um, p.p. of deleo
déliberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans. and
intrans., discuss, consult, deliber-
ate
délicitum, -i [delinquo, fail], n., failure,
offense
délīgātus, -a, -um, p.p. of de-
ligo (āre)
délīgō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [de-ligo, bind],
trans., tie down, moor, tie
délīgō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus [de-lege,
choose], trans., choose out, select.
— délectus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj.,
chosen, picked
délitēscō, -litēscere, -lituī, no p.p.,
intrans., hide away, hide
démentia, -ae [demens, crazy], f.,
madness, folly
démessus, -a, -um, p.p. of demeto
démētō, -metere, -measui, -messus,
trans., reap, cut down
démigrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, intrans.,
mov[e] away, emigrate
démīnuō, -vere, -uī, -ūtus, trans.,
diminish, lessen, detract
démittō, -mittere, -mīsi, -missus,
trans., let down.— In pass. or
with reflex., let one’s self down,
descend.— Fig., despond (se ani-
mo), be discouraged.— démissus,
-a, -um, p.p. as adj., bowed, low
démonstrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans.,
point out, show, state, speak of,
make known
demorō, -āri, -ātus, dep., trans.,
delay, retard
dēmum, adv., at last, at length
dēnegō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans. and
intrans., refuse
dēnī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj.,
plur., ten each, ten (on each side,
or in sets of ten)
dēnique, adv., at last; finally: multo
denique die, not till late
dēnsus, -a, -um, adj., thick, crowded,
dense
dēnūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans.,
declare, warn
dēpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus,
trans., drive off, drive away
dēperdō, -ere, -idī, -ītus, trans.,
lose, be deprived of
dēpereō, -perīre, -periī, -perītūrus,
irr., intrans., be lost
dēpōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positus,
trans., lay down, lay aside; lose,
abandon
dēpopulor, -āri, -ātus, dep., trans.,
ravage, lay waste
dēportō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans.,
carry off, carry away, remove
dēposco, -poscere, -possci, no p.p.,
trans., demand, call for
dēpositus, -a, -um, p.p. of depono
dēprecātor, -ōris, m., mediator: eo
deprecatore, by his mediation
dēprecor, -āri, -ātus, dep., trans.
and intrans., beg off, pray for
pardon, ask for quarter
dépugnō, -äre, -āvī, -ātūrus, intrans., fight it out, fight decisively
dépulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of dépulō
dérectē, adv., straight: ad perpendiculum (perpendicularly)
dérectus, -a, -um, p. p. of dérigō
dérigō, -rigere, -réxi, -rectus [de-rego], trans., straighten out: opera (set in order, arrange). — dérectus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., straight, perpendicular
dérogō, -äre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., take away, withdraw
déscendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scen-sūrus [de-scando, climb], intrans., descend, have recourse to, adopt (with ad)
désecō, -secäre, -secuī, -sectus, trans., cut off
déserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertus, trans., abandon, forsake. — désertus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., deserted, solitary
désertor, -ōris, m., deserter
désiderō, -äre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., feel the want of, desire, miss, lose. — Pass., be missing (lost)
désidia, -ae [deses, idle], f., idleness, sloth
désignō, -äre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., mark out, indicate, mean
désiliō, -siliēre, -siluī, -sultūrus [de-salio, leap], intrans., leap down, jump overboard, dismount
désistō, -sistere, -stifi, -stittūrus, intrans., cease, stop, desist from, abandon
déspectus, -a, -um, p. p. of despicio
déspectus, -ūs [despicio], m., a view
down, view (from a height): oppidum haberet déspectus (sheer precipices)
despērātiō, -onis [despero], f., despair, desperation
despērō, -äre, -āvī, -ātūrus, intrans., cease to hope, despair. — despērā-tus, -a, -um, as pass., despaired of. — Also as adj., desperate
despiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus [de-specio, look], trans. and intrans., look down, look down on; despise
despoliō, -äre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., strip, deprive
destinō, -äre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., fasten, make fast, make firm
destituēre, -stituī, -stitūtus [de-stautuō], trans., set down, abandon, desert
destīctus, -a, -um, p. p. of destringo
destīngō, -stringere, -strinxi, -stric-tus, trans., draw, unsheathe
dēsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, irr., intrans., be wanting, fail; lack, be without
dēsuper, adv., from above
déterior, -ius, adj., inferior, worse: deteriora vectigalia facere (impair)
déterreō, -terrēre, -terrui, -territus, trans., frighten off, deter, prevent
détineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus [deteneo], trans., delay, stop
dētrāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of detraho
dētrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -trāctus, trans., drag off, snatch (away), take away, take off, withdraw
dēsectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., avoid, shun
dētrimentum, -ī, n., loss, injury; defeat, disaster
dēurō, -ūre, -ussī, -ūstus, trans., burn off, burn up
dēus, -ī, m., a god
dēūstus, -a, -um, p. p. of deuro
dēvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectus, trans., carry away, bring along
dēveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, intrans., come
dēvōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of devoveo
dēvoveō, -vovere, -vōvī, -vōtus, trans., vow.—dēvōtus, -ī, m., p. p. as noun, a sworn follower
dexter, -tra, -trum, adj., right (on the right hand).—dextra, -ae (sc. manus), f., the right hand
Diablīntēs, -um, m. plur., a tribe in northwestern Gaul
dīcō, -ōnis, f., dominion, sway
dīcō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., adjudge, assign: se in clientelam (bind); se in servitutem (surrender)
dīcō, dicere, dīxi, dictus, trans. and intrans., say, speak, name; appoint, fix; ius (administer); sententiam (give)
dictō, -ōnis [dīco], f., a speaking, a pleading: causae (pleading one's cause, trial)
dictum, -ī [n. p. p. of dīco], n., statement, command: dicto audiens esse alicui (be obedient, obey)
dīducō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductus [dis-duco], trans., draw apart, separate, divide
dīēs, -ī, m. (rarely f. in some uses), day: in dies, from day to day; diem ex die ducere, put off a thing day after day; ad diem, on the day
differō, differre, distuli, dilātus [dis-fero], irr., trans. and intrans., postpone, defer; differ
difficilis, -e [dis-facilis], adj., not easy, difficult: iter (hard to pass over)
difficultās, -ātis [difficultis], f., difficulty, trouble
dificiliter [difficultis], adv., with difficulty
diffundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsus [dis-fundo], trans., spread out
digitus, -ī, m., finger: pollex (thumb); finger's breadth
dignitās, -ātis [dignus], f., worth, dignity, prestige, rank
dignus, -a, -um, adj., worthy
dilēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of diligo
diligenter, adv., carefully, with care, with exactness: parum diligenter, too carelessly
diligentia, -ae [diligens, careful], f., care, pains, diligence
diligō, -ligere, -lexī, -lēctus [dis-lego, choose], trans., love, be fond of
dimēnsus, -a, -um, p. p. of dimetior
dimētior, -mētiō, -mēnsus [dimetior], dep., trans., measure out (esp. of a camp).—dimēnsus, -a, -um, measured
dīmicō — distō

dīmicō, -āre, -āvī, -āturus [dis-mico, move to and fro], intrans., fight; risk an engagement
dīmidius, -ā, -um [dis-mediūs], adj., half. — Neut. as noun, a half
dīmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus
[dis-mitto], trans., let slip, let pass, let go, give up, relinquish, abandon; dispatch, disband, dismiss
dīreptus, -a, -um, p.p. of diripio
dīrimō, -imerē, -ēmi, -ēemptus [dis-emo, take], trans., break up (a conference)
diripio, -ripere, -ripui, -reptus [dis-rapio, seize], trans., plunder, pil- lage, ravage
dis-, di- (di-, dif-), adv. in compounds, apart, asunder, in different directions, not, un-

Dis, Dītis, m., Pluto (the god of the underworld, and so of death)
discēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessūrus, intrans., withdraw, depart, retire, leave (with ab), go away: ab officio (fail in one’s duty); a pes hostibus (forsake, fail)
dissessus, -ūs, m., departure, with- drawal
disciplīna, -ae [disco], f., instruction, a system (of doctrine etc.), a course of instruction
disclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus [dis-claudo], trans., keep apart, separate, divide
discō, discere, didiciī, no p.p., trans. and intrans., learn
disiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [dis-iacio], trans., disperse, tear off (yards).
— disiectus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., scattered, broken, in disorder
disiectus, -ā, -um, p.p. of disicio
dispār, -paris, adj., unequal, ill-matched
dispersō, -spargere, -spersi, -spersus
[dis-spargo, scatter], trans., scatter, disperse
dispersus, -a, -um, p.p. of disperso
dispōnē, -pōnere, -poosū, -positus, trans., station (variously), array (at several posts)
dispositus, -ā, -um, p.p. of dispono
disputātīō, -ōnis [disputo], f., discussion, dispute
disputō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans. and intrans., discuss, investigate
dissēnsiō, -ōnis [dissentio], f., disagreement, dissension
dissentiō, -sentīre, -sēnīs, -sēnsūrus, intrans., disagree (ab, with)
dissimulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [dis-, simulō, make like], trans. and intrans., conceal, disguise; dissemble
dissipō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., scatter, disperse: dissipati, strag- gling troops
dissuādeō, -suādere, -suāsī, -suāsus
[dis-suadeo, advise], trans., advise to the contrary
distinēō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentus [dis- teneo], trans., keep apart, cut off (in military sense), isolate
distō, -stāre [dis-stō], intrans., stand apart, be distant: quantum inunctura distabat, as far as the dis- tance between etc.
distrabhō — Druidēs

give, concede, assign, grant: mihi minus dubitationis datur, I have less hesitation; se vento (run before the wind); hostes in fugam (put to flight); negotium uti (employ one to etc., engage one to etc.)
doceō, docēre, docui, doctus, trans.,
teach, show, inform
documentum, -ī [doceo], n., warning, example
doleō, dolēre, dolui, dolitūrus, intrans., feel pain, suffer; be pained, grieve
dolor, -ōris [doleo], m., pain, distress, indignation: magno dolore ferre, be very indignant; magno esse dolori, be a great annoyance or sorrow; almost concrete, grievance
dolus, -ī, m., deceit, tricks, stratagem
domesticus, -a, -um [domus], adj.,
one’s own, at home: bellum (internal)
domicilium, -ī [domus], n., house, dwelling place, home
dominor, -āri, -ātus [dominus], dep.,
intrans., rule, be master
dominus, -ī, m., master, owner
domus, -ī (-ās), f., house, home: domī, at home; domum, home, to one’s home
dōnā, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [donum, gift],
trans., present, give: civitate aliquem donare, give a person the rights of citizenship
dōs, dōtis [do], f., marriage gift, dowry

Druidēs, -um, m. plur., the Druids, the priests of the Gallic religion
Dubis, -is, m., the Doubs, a river of eastern Gaul, flowing from the Jura Mountains

dubitatiō, -onis [dubitō], f., doubt, hesitation: minus dubitationis
datur, feel less doubt or hesitation
dubitō, -āre, -āvi, -āturus [dubius],
trans., doubt, have doubt, feel doubtful; hesitate
dubius, -a, -um, adj., doubtful: est
dubium, there is doubt
ducenti, -ae, -a, num. adj., plur.,
two hundred
dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductus, trans.,
lead, draw, bring; consider. — With or without in matrimonium, marry (of the man)
dum, conj., while, so long as; till, until
dumnorīx, -īgis, m., Dumnorix, a
leader of the Hædui, brother of
Diviciacus
duo, -ae, -o, num. adj., plur.,
two
duodecim, indecl. num. adj., twelve
duodecimus, -a, -um, num. adj.,
twelfth
duodēni, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj.,
plur., twelve each
duodēviginti [duo de viginti], indecl.
um. adj., eighteen
duplex, -plicis, adj., twofold,
double: acies (in two divisions)
duplicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [duplex],
trans., double
dūritia, -ae [durus], f., hardness,
hardship
dūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [durus], trans.,
make hardy
dūrus, -a, -um, adj., hard, severe,
difficult: si quid erat durius (any severe contest)

dūrus, -i, m., a Roman family name.
— Esph., Quintus Laberius Durus,
a military tribune in Cæsar's army, killed in Britain
dux, ducis [duco], c., leader, guide, commander

eā, adv., that way, in that direction
Eburōnēs, -um, m. plur., a Belgian tribe, living between the Meuse and the Rhine
Ebrovicēs, -um, m. plur., a division of the Aulerci
[ex-discō], trans., learn by heart, commit to memory
ēditus, -a, -um, p. p. of edō
eō, -dere, -didi, -ditus [ex-do (put)],
trans., put forth: exempla cruciatu
tsque (make an example by inflicting severe torture). — ēditus,
a, -um, p. p. as adj., elevated, raised, high
ēdoceō, -docēre, -docui, -doctus [ex-
doceo], trans., explain, inform, instruct
ēducō, -ducere, -duxi, -ductus [ex-
duco], trans., lead out, draw (a sword)
ēfarcīō, -farcire, -fari, -fertus,
trans., stuff out, fill in (solid)
ēffeminō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ex-femina],
trans., enervate, weaken: animos
(enfeeble)
efforō, efferre, extuli, ēlātus [ex-fero],
irr., trans., carry out, bring out,
carry away; spread abroad, make
known, puff up, elate

efficiō, -ficere, -fēci, -fectus [ex-facio],
trans., make, enable, cause, pro-
duce: ut praeeberent (make them
afford); ut sint laboris (make
capable of); ut possent (make
possible); classem (get together,
construct)
effodiō, -fodere, -fōdi, -fossus [ex-
fodio], trans., dig out, gouge out
effossus, -a, -um, p. p. of effodio
effugiō, -fugiere, -fugi, -fugitūrus
[ex-fugio], trans., escape, fly from
egēns, -entis, see egeo
egeo, egēre, egui, no p. p., intrans.,
need, be in want.—egēns, -entis,
pres. p. as adj., needy, destitute
egestās, -ātis [egens], f., poverty,
destitution
ego, mei, pron., 1st person, 1, me.
—Plur., nōs, we, us
ēgregior, -gregiō, -gressus [ex-gradier,
step], dep., intrans., march out,
go out, move beyond: nāve (land,
dismembark)
ēgregiō [egregius], adv., remarkably,
finely, extremely well
ēgregius, -a, -um [ex-grex, herd], adj.,
remarkable, superior, excellent
ēgressus, -a, -um, p. p. of egregior
ēgressus, -ās [cf. egregior], m.,
landing
ēciō, -icer, -iēci, -iectus [ex-iacio],
trans., cast out, drive out, cast up.
—With reflex., rush out, rush
eiusmodī, as adj. phrase, of this
kind, of such a kind, such
ēlābor, -lābi, -lāpsus [ex-labor, slip],
dep., intrans., slip out, escape
ēlātus, -a, -um, p. p. of effero
ēlectus, -a, -um, p. p. of eligō
elephantus, -i, m., elephant
ēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus [ex-lego,
choose], trans., pick out, select.—
ēlectus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj.,
picked (troops)
Elusātēs, -ium, m. plur., a people
of Aquitania
ēmigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [ex-migro,
deport], intrans., remove (per-
manently), emigrate
ēminus [ex-manus], adv., at a dis-
tance, at long range
ēmittō, -mittere, -missi, -missus [ex-
mitto], trans., let go, drop, send
out, throw, hurl.—Pass., or with
reflex., rush out
emō, emere, ēmi, ēmixtus, trans.,
buy, purchase
ēnāscor, -nāscī, -nātus [ex-nascor],
dep., intrans., spring out, grow out
ēnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of enascor
enim, conj., for, but, now, for in
fact
ēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-nuntio],
trans., report, disclose, reveal
ēō, ēre, ēri, itūrus, irr., intrans., go,
pass, march, advance, proceed
ēō, n. abl., see is
ēō [old dat. of ēs], adv., thither,
there, to that place
ēdēm, adv., to the same place, in
the same place
ephippiátus — exactus

ephippiátus, -a, -um, adj., saddled, caparisoned: equites (riding on saddles, as a less manly form of horsemanship)

ephippium, -i, n., a horsecloth, saddle

eques, -itis [equus], m., horseman, rider. — Plur., cavalry. — Esp. (as orig. serving on horseback), a knight (one of the moneyed class at Rome, next in rank to the senate). So also, a knight (of Gaul, of a corresponding class)

equester, -tris, -tre [eques], adj., of knights, of cavalry

equitátus, -ūs [eques], m., cavalry

equus, -i, m., horse

Eratosthenes, -is, m., Eratosthenes, a Greek philosopher and geographer of Alexandria, born 276 B.C.

ērectus, -a, -um, p.p. of erigo

ēreptus, -a, -um, p.p. of eripio

ērigō, -rigere, -rēxi, -rēctus [ex-rego], trans., set up straight, raise up. — ērectus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., high, high and straight

ēripio, -ripere, -ripui, -reptus [ex-rapiō, seize], trans., snatch away, deprive, take from, rescue: se eripere ne, save one’s self from doing a thing

ērumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus [ex-rumpo, burst], trans. and intrans., cause to burst out; burst out, make a sally

ēruptō, -gnis [erumpō], f., a breaking out, sortie, rush

essedārius, -i [essedum], m., chariot-fighter (a warrior fighting from an essedum)

essedum, -i, n., war chariot (of the Gauls)

Esuvii, -brum, m. plur., a tribe in northwestern Gaul

et, conj., and: et . . . et, both . . . and

etiam, adv., also, even, even now, yet: quin etiam, nay more

etāi, conj., even if, although, though

ēvādō, -vādere, -vāsi, -vāsūrus [ex-vado, go], intrans., escape

ēvello, -vellere, -velli, -vulsus [ex-vello, pluck], trans., pull out, pluck out

ēveniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventūrus [ex-veniō], intrans., come out, turn out, happen

ēventus, -ūs [veniō], m., result, issue, fate, success

ēvocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ex-voco], trans., call out, call forth, summon. — ēvocātus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj. and noun, reenlisted veteran

ēvolō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus [ex-volo, fly], intrans., fly out, rush out

ex (ē), prep. with abl., out of, out; from: una ex parte, on one side; ex itinere, on the march (starting from it); ex vinculis, in chains (doing something from them); so, ex equis, on horseback. — In composition, out, from, off, completely, up, after, un-

exactus, -a, -um, p.p. of exigo
exagitō — expediō

exemplum, -i, n., precedent, example
exeo, -äre, -iē, -itūrus, irr., intrans., go forth, go out, emigrate
exerceō, -ercēre, -ercui, -ercitus [ex-arceo, drive off], trans., train, practice, exercise; enforce (a law)
exercitātiō, -onis [exerceo], f., practice, exercise
exercitō, -äre, -āvī, -ātus [exerceo], trans., train, practice.— exercitātus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., trained
exercitus, -ūs [exerceo], m., army
exigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus [ex-ago], trans., pass, finish: aestas exacta erat (was ended)
exiguitās, -ātis [exiguus], f., scantiness, meagerness
exiguus, -a, -um, adj., narrow, scanty, small, meager
eximius, -a, -um [ex-emo, take], adj., exceptional, remarkable; very high (opinio)
existimātiō, -onis [existimo], f., estimate, opinion
existimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ex-aestimo], trans. and intrans., estimate, believe, think, suppose, imagine
exitus, -ūs [cf. exeō], m., end, last part; result, turn (of fortune), outcome
expediō, -ire, -iē, -itūs [ex-pes], trans., set free; arrange, station (of troops) — expeditus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., quick, active, light-armed (of troops), in light marching order
expeditio — faber

expeditio, -onis [expedio], f., expedition: misit in expeditionem (detached)

expellō, -pelle, -pulli, -pulsus, trans., drive out; dispel

experior, -perīrī, -pertus, dep., trans., experience, try: fortunam (risk, try)

explēō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētus, trans., fill out, fill up, complete

explūrātor, -ōris, m., scout

explūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., investigate, search, examine.—explūrātus, -a, -um, p.p., assured, certain: explorata victoria, being assured of victory; habere omnia explorata, know certainly

expōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positus, trans., place out, set forth: exercitum (disembark, also draw up, array)

exportō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., carry out, carry away

exposcō, -poscere, -posscī, no p.p., trans., demand

exprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressus [ex-premo], trans., force out; raise up

expugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., take (by storm, capture

expulsus, -a, -um, p.p. of expello

exquirō, -quirere, -quisīvī, -quisitus [ex-quaero], trans., search out, ask for

exquisitus, -a, -um, p.p. of exquirō

exsequor, -sequī, -secūtus, dep., trans., follow out, follow up: ius (enforce)

exsistō, -sistere, -stiti, -stitūrus, intrans., stand out, rise up, come out: malacia (ensue)

exspectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans. and intrans., look out for, wait to see, expect, anticipate; wait

exstinctus, -a, -um, p.p. of exstingo

exstinguō, -stinguere, -stīnxi, -stinctus, trans., extinguish, destroy

exstō, -stāre, -stīti, -stātūrus, intrans., stand out

exstrectus, -a, -um, p.p. of exstruo

exstruō, -struere, -strūxi, -strūctus, trans., heap up, build up

exter, -era, -erum, adj., outer, outside.—extrēmus, -a, -um, superl., farthest, extreme, last: extremi, as noun, the rear; ad extremum, till the last, at last

extimēscō, -timēscere, -timuī, no p.p., trans. and intrans., fear greatly, dread

extrā, adv. and prep. with acc., outside, out of

extrāctus, -a, -um, p.p. of extrahō

extrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -trāctus, trans., drag out, draw out

extrēmus, see exter

extrūdō, -trūdere, -trūsī, -trūsus, trans., shut out (by dikes)

exuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus, trans., strip off: armis exutis, deprived of arms

exūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ūstus, trans., burn up

faber, -bri [facio] (m. of faber, skillful), mechanic, engineer (in an army)
Fabiōs — fere

Fabiōs, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name. — Esp.: i. Quintus Fabius Maximus (Allobrogicus), who conquered the Allobroges and Arverni in 121 B.C. on the Rhone. — 2. Caius Fabius, a legatus of Caesar in Gaul. — 3. Lucius Fabius, a centurion

facilis, -e [facio], adj., easy, convenient. — facile, n. as adv., easily, conveniently

facinōs, -oris [facio], n., deed; misdeed, crime

faciō, facere, feci, factus, trans. and intrans., make, do, act. — Used in a great variety of senses as in English: coniurationem (form); sementes (do planting); iter (march, travel, proceed). — So in pass., happen, result, occur: non sine causa fit, it is not without reason; fit ut, the result is that. — factum, -i, n. of p. p., half noun and half participle, and to be translated by either; act, thing done, etc. — fiō, fieri, as pass. in all senses

factōris [facio], f., party, faction

facultās, -ātis [facilis], f., ease, facility; chance, opportunity; means, resources, supply

fāgus, -ī, f., a beech, beech (of the timber)

fallo, fallere, fefellēs, falsus, trans. and intrans., deceive: spes aliquid (disappoint). — falsus, -a, -um, p.p., deceived; false, unfounded

fālξ, falcis, f., sickle, pruning hook. — Also, hook (of similar form for demolishing walls)

fāma, -ae, f., speech, common talk, reputation; rumor, story

fames, -is, f., hunger, starvation: famem tolerare, keep from starving, appease hunger

familia, -ae, f., collection of attendants, household. — Applied to Gaul, clan, retainers

familīāris, -e [familia], adj., of the household: res (estate, property). — Esp. as noun, friend

fās, n., indecl., right (in conscience, or by divine law): non est fas (permitted, allowed)

fastigātēs, adv., sloping

fastigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., bring to a point. — Esp., fastigātus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., inclined, sloping

fātum, -i [fari, speak], n., fate, lot, destiny

faveō, favēre, favī, fautūrus, intrans., favor, be favorable to

fax, facis, f., torch, firebrand, fire

fēfellisse, see fallo

fēlicitās, -ātis [felix, lucky], f., good fortune, good luck

fēlicitēs, [felix, lucky], adv., luckily, successfully

fēmina, -ae, f., woman, female

femur, -oris, n., thigh

fērīx, -ācis [fero], adj., fertile

fere, adv., almost, about; usually, for the most part. — With negatives, hardly
ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus, irr., trans. and intrans., bear, carry, endure, tolerate: magno cum dolore ferre, be much pained or indignant at; moleste (graviter) ferre; be annoyed at, take hard, be indignant at
ferrāria, -ae [ferrum], f., iron mine
ferreus, -a, -um [ferrum], adj., of iron (made of iron)
ferrum, -i, n., iron, steel, sword
fertilis, -e [fero], adj., fertile, fruitful
fertilītās, -ātis [fertilis], f., fertility, productiveness
ferus, -a, -um, adj., wild, ferocious.
—Fem. as noun, wild beast, game
fervefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus, trans., heat, heat red-hot
fibula, -ae [figo, fasten], f., clasp, buckle
factus, -a, -um, p. p. of fingo
fidēlis, -e [fides], adj., faithful
fidēs, -eī, f., promise, pledge: fidem facere, give assurance.—Also, good faith, fidelity; belief; Caesarius fidem sequi (come under, surrender one’s self to); in fidem se permettere (venire), place themselves under the protection of etc.
fidūcia, -ae [fidus, trusty], f., confidence, reliance
figūra, -ae, f., shape, form
fília, -ae, f., daughter
filius, -i, m., son
fingō, fingere, finxi, fictus, trans., mold; invent, contrive.—fictus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj.; n. plur. as noun, fictions
finiō, -ire, -ivi, -itus [finis], trans., set bounds to, limit, measure
finis, -is, m., limit, end: quem ad finem, as far as.—Plur., territories, country
finitimus, -a, -um [finis], adj., neighboring, adjacent.—Masc. plur. as noun, neighbors
fiō, pass. of facio
firmiter [firmus], adv., firmly, steadily
firmitūdō, -inis [firmus], f., solidity, strength (of resistance)
firmus, -a, -um, adj., strong, firm, steady
fistula, -ae, f., pile driver
Flaccus, -i, m., a Roman family name
flāgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., demand earnestly
flamma, -ae, f., flame, fire
flectō, flectere, flexī, flexus, trans., bend, turn
fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētus, trans. and intrans., weep; weep for
flētus, -īs [fleus], m., weeping, lamentation
flō, flāre, flāvī, flātus, intrans., blow
flōrens, -entis [pres. p. of floreo, bloom], adj., blooming.—Fig., flourishing, prosperous, influential
fluctus, -ūs [fluo], m., wave
flumen, -inis [fluo], n., river
flōō, fluere, flūxī, fluxus, intrans., flow
fore, for futūrum esse; see sum
formō, for esse; see sum
fōrma, -ae, f., shape, form
fors — fungor

fors, fortis, f., chance. — forte, abl. as adv., by chance, as it happened
forte, see fors
fortis, -e, adj., strong, brave, courageous
fortiter [fortis], adv., bravely, stoutly, undauntedly
fortitudo, -onis [fortis], f., bravery, prowess
fortuitus, adv., by chance, accidentally
fortuna, -ae, f., fortune, chance, fate, lot (one’s fortune), chances (belli), success (good or bad)
forum, ī, n., market place
fossa, -ae [fodo, dig], f., ditch, trench
fovea, -ae, f., pitfall
fractus, -a, -um, p. p. of frango
frangēre, frangere, frēgī, frāctus, trans., break, wreck; break down, crush
frater, -tris, m., brother
fraternus, -a, -um [frater], adj., of a brother, fraternal
fremitus, -ūs [fremo, roar], m., murmur, confused noise, roar
frequēns, -entis, adj., crowded, numerous, in great numbers
frētus, -a, -um, adj., relying on
frigidus, -a, -um [frigeo, be cold], adj., cold
frīgus, -oris [frigeo, be cold], n., cold. — Plur., cold seasons
frons, frontis, f., front, brow: a fronte, in front
frēctuosus, -a, -um [fructus], adj., fruitful
fructus, -ūs, m., crops, interest (from money): victoriae (advantages of victory)
frumentarius, -a, -um [frumentum], adj., of grain: loca (fruitful in grain); res (grain supply, provisions)
frumentātīō, -ōnis [frumentor], f., foraging expedition
frumentor, -ārī, -ātus [frumentum], dep., intrans., forage, gather grain
frumentum, -ī [fruor], n., grain. — Plur., crops
fruor, fruī, fructus, dep., intrans., enjoy (abl.)
frustrā, adv., to no purpose, without effect, in vain
frūx, frugis, f., fruit. — Plur., crops
Fūfius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name. See Cita
fuga, -ae, f., flight: se fugae mandare, take to flight; in fugam dare, put to flight
fugiō, fugere, fugī, fugitūrus [fuga], trans. and intrans., fly from, run away. — Fig., shun, avoid
fugitivus, -a, -um [fugio], adj., run-away. — Masc. plur. as noun, runaway slaves
fūmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, intrans., smoke
fūmus, -ī, m., smoke
funda, -ae, f., sling
funditor, -ōris [funda], m., slinger
fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsus, trans., pour; scatter; rout
fūnebris, -e [funus], adj., of a funeral. — Neut. plur. as noun, funeral rites
fungor, fungī, fūctus, dep., intrans., perform, discharge (abl.)
fūnīs, -is, m., rope
fūnus, -eris, n., death, funeral
furōr, -ōris, m., madness, frenzy, fury
fūrōtum, -ī[fūr, thief], n., theft, a theft
fūsus, p.p. of fundo
futūrus, see sum

Gabīnius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name
gaesum, -ī, n., javelin
Gāius, -ī, m., Caius, a Roman prænomen
Galba, -ae, m., a Gallic and Roman family name
galea, -ae, f., helmet (usually of leather)

Gallia, -ae, f., Gaul, including all the country bounded by the Rubicon, the Alps, the Rhine, the ocean, the Pyrenees, and the Mediterranean, thus occupying all northern Italy, France, and Belgium

Gallicus, -a, -um, adj., of the Gauls, Gallic
gallina, -ae, f., hen
Gallus, -a, -um, adj., of Gaul, Gallic.
—Masc. as noun, a Gaul, the Gauls.—Also, a Roman family name

Garumna, -ae, m., a river of southwestern Gaul, now the Garonne

Garumnī, -ōrum, m. plur., a Gallic tribe in the Pyrenees

Gatīs, -īum, m. plur., a Gallic people of Aquitania

gaudeō, gaudère, gāvisus, semi-dep., intrans., be delighted, rejoice

gāvisus, -a, -um, p.p. of gaudeo
Genāva, -ae, f.; a city of the Allobroges, now Geneva
generātim [genus], adv., by tribes
gēns, gentis, f., tribe, clan, people
genus, -eris, n., race, family (stock); kind, sort, class.—Also, abstractly, kind, character, nature, method (pugnae)

Gergovia, -ae, f., a city in the land of the Arverni, in southeastern Gaul

Germānia, -ae, f., Germany, the whole country between the Rhine, the Danube, the Vistula, and the sea

Germānicus, -a, -um, adj., of the Germans, German

Germānus, -a, -um, adj., German.
—Plur. as noun, the Germans
gerō, gerere, gessi, gestus, trans., carry on, manage, wage (war), hold (a magistracy), do (any business).—Pass., be done, go on (of operations): res gestae, exploits, operations, campaign

gestus, -a, -um, p.p. of gero

gladius, -ī, m., sword
glēba, -ae, f., clod (of earth), lump

glōria, -ae, f., fame, glory

glōrior, -āri, -ātus [gloria], dep., intrans., glory in, boast of (abl.)

Gnaeus, -ī, m., a Roman prænomen

Gobannitūs, -onis, m., one of the Arverni, uncle of Vercingetorix

Gorgobina, -ae, f., a city in the territory of the Hædui
LATIN—ENGLISH VOCABULARY

Graecus — Hibernia

Graecus, -a, -um, adj., of the Greeks, Greek. — Masc. as noun, a Greek, the Greeks

Grāioceli, -ōrum, m. plur., a people of the Alps

grandis, -e, adj., large, of great size
grātia, -ae, f., gratitude, good will, favor. Hence, influence, friendship. — Esp.: gratias agere, thank; gratias habere, be grateful; gratias (gratiam) referre, pay off an obligation; gratiam inire, secure the gratitude of any one. — With gen., for the sake of, on account of

grātulātiō, -onis, f., congratulation, rejoicing

grātulor, -āri, -ātus [gratui], dep., intrans., congratulate

grātus, -a, -um, adj., pleasing, grateful

gravis, -e, adj., heavy. — Fig., serious, severe, hard: gravioris aetatis, of more advanced years; si gravius quid acciderit, if anything serious should occur; ne quid gravius statueret, that he would not pass any very severe judgment

gravitās, -ātis [gravis], f., weight. — Fig., importance, power

graviter [gravis], adv., heavily, with great weight, with force. — Fig., severely, seriously: graviter ferre, take to heart

gravō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [gravis], trans., make heavy. — Pass. as dep., be unwilling, object

gubernātor, -ōris [guberno, steer], m., pilot, helmsman
gustō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., taste, eat

habēō, habēre, habui, habitus, trans. and intrans., have, hold, keep, occupy, possess: castra (occupy); se habere, be; orationem (deliver).
— With p.p., have, hold, keep: redempta habere, buy up and hold. — Also, consider: rationem habere, have regard for

Haeduus, -a, -um, adj., of the Hāeduī, a powerful Gallic tribe between the Loire and the Saōne. — Masc. as noun, a Hāeduan, the Hāeduī

haesitō, -āre, -āvi, -āturus [freq. of haeréo, stick], intrans., get caught, stick, struggle (caught in a marsh)

Harūdēs, -um, m. plur., a German tribe originally from Jutland

Helvēticus, -a, -um, adj., Helvetian (see Helvetius)

Helvētius, -a, -um, adj., of the Helvetii (a tribe between Lake Geneva, the Rhone, and the Rhine). — Masc. plur. as noun, the Helvetii

Helviī, -ōrum, m. plur., a Gallic tribe in the Roman province

Hercynius, -a, -um, adj., Hercynian (the great forest embracing all the mountain country of Germany)

hērēditās, -ātis [herēs, heir], f., inheritance

Hibernia, -ae, f., Ireland
hibernus — iactō

hibernus, -a, -um [hiemis], adj., of winter, winter (as adj.). — Neut. plur. (sc. castra), winter quarters

hic, haec, hoc, dem. adj. and pron., this, these, he, they, this man (woman or thing). — Referring to things mentioned before (but with more emphasis than is): hic pagus unus, this one canton. — hōc, n. abl., used adverbially, in this respect, on this account, by so much. — Often hic . . . ille, the one . . . the other, this (near by) . . . the other (farther off)

hic, adv., here, in this place, there (of a place just mentioned)

hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [hiems], intrans., pass the winter

hiems, -emis, f., winter

hinc, adv., from here, hence

Hispānia, -ae, f., Spain

Hispānus, -a, -um, adj., Spanish

homō, -inis, c., human being, man (including woman)

honestus, -a, -um [honor], adj., respected, honorable

honor (honōs), -ōris, m., honor, respect: honoris causā, out of respect. — Also, honorable position

honōrīficus, -a, -um [honor-facio], adj., honorable

hōra, -ae, f., hour (of the day). — The Romans divided their day into twelve hours from sunrise to sunset, which were not of equal length at all times of the year, but were always one twelfth of the solar day

horreō, horrēre, horrui, no p. p., trans. and intrans., bristle; shudder at, dread

horridus, -a, -um [horreo], adj., bristling, horrible, dreadful, frightful

hortor, -āri, -ātus, dep., trans., encourage, urge on, address

hospes, -itis, m., host. — Also, guest, stranger. Hence, guest-friend

hospitium, -ī [hospes], n., the relation of host (or guest). Hence, friendship

hostis, -is, c., stranger, enemy (of the state)

hūc, adv., hither, here (in sense of hither), to this (place etc.; cf. eo, adv.).: huc accedebant, to these were added

huiusmodī, see hic and modus

hūmānitās, -ātis, f., civilization, cultivation, refinement

hūmānus, -a, -um [homo], adj., civilized, cultivated, refined

humilis, -e [humus, ground], adj., low, shallow. — Fig., humble, poor

humilitās, -ātis [humilis], f., lowness, shallowness. — Fig., humble position, insignificance

I, Roman numeral for one

iacē, -ēre, -ui, -iturus, intrans., lie, lie dead: iacentes, the slain

iacē, iacere, iēcī, iactus, trans., throw, hurl, cast: aggerem (throw up)

iactō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [freq. of iacio], trans., toss, bandy about (of talk), discuss, boast
iactūra — impellō

iactūra, -ae [iacio], f., loss, sacrifice (of men in war)
iactus, -a, -um, p.p. of iacio
iam, adv., now, by this time, at last, already, at length
ibi, adv., there
Icicius, -ī, m., a nobleman of the Remi
ictus, -ūs [ico, strike], m., stroke
Īd., abbr. for Īdus
īdem, eadem, idem [is-dem], dem. adj. and pron., the same; the same thing (things), the same
identidem, adv., repeatedly, again and again
idōneus, -a, -um, adj., fit, suitable, adapted
Īdūs, -uum, f. plur., the Ides (a day of the lunar month falling at the full moon, conventionally on the 15th of March, May, July, and October, and on the 13th of the other months)
ignis, -is, m., fire.—Plur., camp fires
ignobilis, -e [in-, not, (g)nobilis, known], adj., not famous, obscure
ignominia, -ae [in-, not, (g)nomen, name], f., disgrace
ignōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ignarus, ignorant], trans., not know, be ignorant of.—Pass., be unobserved
ignoscō, -noscere, -nōvī, -nōtus [in-, not, (g)nosco, know], intrans., overlook, pardon
ignōtus, -a, -um [in-, not, (g)notus, known], adj., unknown, strange
ille, -a, -ud, dem. adj. and pron., that (of something remote; cf. hic); as pronoun (opposed to some other emphatic word), he, she, it, they: hic . . . ille, this . . . that, the other; the latter . . . the former
illīc, adv., there (more remote; opposed to hic, near by), in that place
illō, adv., thither, there (in sense of thither), that way
Īlyricum, -ī, n., Illyria (the country east of Venetia and the Adriatic, and west of Macedonia and Thrace)
imber, imbris, m., rain storm, rain
imiter, -ārī, -ātus, dep., trans., imitate, copy
immānis, -e, adj., monstrous, huge, enormous
immittō, -mittere, -missī, -missus, trans., let in, let down (into), insert, throw (upon), send against
immolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in-mola, meal], trans., sacrifice
immortalis, -e, adj., immortal
immunitās, -ātis [immunis, free], f., freedom (from public burdens)
impedimentum, -ī [impedo], n., hindrance: esse impedimento, to hinder.—Esp. in plur., baggage, baggage train (including the beasts of burden)
impedīō, -īre, -īvi, -ītus [in-pes], trans., entangle, hamper, interfere with, hinder, embarrass, impede
impellō, -pellère, -puli, -pulsus, trans., drive on.—Fig., instigate, incite, impel
impendeō — in

impendeō, -ēre, intrans., overhang

impēnsus, -a, -um, adj., expensive, very high (of price)

imperātor, -ōris [impero], m., commander (in chief), general

imperātum, -ī [n. p.p. of impero], n., an order, a command

imperitus, -a, -um [in-peritus], adj., unacquainted with, ignorant, unversed in

imperium, -ī [impero], n., command, control, supremacy, power (military), rule (both sing. and plur.); order, command

imperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans. and intrans., demand; order (in military sense), rule, command

impetrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., accomplish (anything by a request), succeed in (obtaining), obtain (a request)

impetus, -ūs, m., rush, attack, violence, fury

impius, -a, -um, adj., impious (offending divine law)

implōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., implore, beseech

implōnō, -pōnere, -pōsuī, -pōsitus, trans., place on, mount (men on horses)

importō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., import

impositus, -a, -um, p.p. of impono

imprimis or in primis, adv., among the first, especially, particularly

improbus, -a, -um, adj., bad, wicked imprōvisus, -a, -um, adj., unforeseen: improviso (de improviso), on a sudden, unexpectedly

imprūdēns, -entis [in-prudens, foreseeing], adj., not expecting, incautious, off one's guard

imprūdentia, -ae [imprudens], f., ignorance, want of forethought

impūbēs, -ēris, adj., beardless; chaste, unmarried

impungō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans. and intrans., attack, invade, charge

impulsus, -a, -um, p.p. of impello

impūne [impunis, unpunished], adv., with impunity

impūnitās, -ātis [impunis, unpunished], f., freedom from punishment, impunity

imus, see inferus

in-, prefix, with the force of a negative; cf. English unin-
in, prep. (a) With acc., of motion, having its terminus within or on, into, on, within, to, against, among. — Of time, for, to, till.
— Often where English has a different conception, in, on: addere in silvas, hide in the woods; in eos exempla edere (visit on). — In adverbial expressions where no motion appears, in, according to, with, to: in eam sententiam, to this purport. — Esp.: in Cæsarrem incidit, happened to meet Cæsar; in fugam concitare, put to flight
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

inānīs — indūcō

(b) With abl., of rest, in, on, among, within.—Often, in the case of, in respect to: in eo, in his case, in regard to him.—Esp.: in ancīoria, at anchor; in primīs, among the first, especially

(c) In composition, as adv., in, on, toward, against

inānīs, -e, adj., empty, vain, idle

incētūs, adv., incautiously, carelessly

incendium, -i [incendo], n., a burning fire

incendō, -cendere, -cendi, -cēnsum, trans., set fire to, burn.—Fig., rouse, excite

incēnsus, -a, -um, p.p. of incendo

incēptus, -a, -um, p.p. of incipio

incertus, -a, -um, adj., uncertain, dubious, untrustworthy

incidō, -cider, -cidi, -cāsus [in-cado], intrans., fall upon, fall into; fall in with, meet, occur, happen

incidō, -cider, -cidi, -cīsum [in-caedo], trans., cut into

incipīō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus [in-capio], trans. and intrans., begin, undertake

incīsus, -a, -um, p.p. of incidō

incitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., set in motion, urge on, drive, impel, excite.—incitātus, -a, -um, p.p., angered, spurred on: incitato equo, at full gallop; incitato cursu, at full speed.—Esp., se aestus incitare (rush in)

incognitus, -a, -um, adj., unknown

incoliō, -colere, -colui, no p.p., trans. and intrans., inhabit, live, dwell

incolumis, -e, adj., unharmed, unhurt, safe

incōmodē, adv., inconveniently, unfortunately

incōmodus, -a, -um, adj., inconvenient, unfortunate.—incommo- dum, -ī, n. as noun, disadvantage, misfortune, defeat, disaster, loss

incrēdibilis, -e [in-, not, credo], adj., incredible, marvelous, extraordinary

incrēpitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., upbraid, taunt, revile

incursiō, -onis [incurro, run at], f., attack, invasion

incūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., upbraid, rebuke, chide

inde, adv., from there, thence, from the place (which etc.); then

indicium, -ī, n., information; indication, sign: per indicium, through an informer

indicō, -dicere, -dixi, -dictus, trans., order, proclaim, appoint

indignitās, -ātis [indignus], f., unworthiness, disgrace, outrage

indignor, -āri, -ātus [indignus], dep., intrans., be indignant

indignus, -a, -um, adj., unworthy

indiligenter, adv., carelessly, negligently

indiligentia, -ae [indiligens, careless], f., carelessness

indūcō, -dūcere, -düxi, -ductus, trans., draw on. Hence, cover: scuta
indulgeō — iniquitās

pellibus.—Also, lead on. Hence, induce, impel
indulgeō, -dulegēre, -duleī, no p.p., intrans., favor, treat with indulgence
induō, -duere, -duī, -dūtus, trans., put on
indūtiae, -ārum, f. plur., truce
Indūtiomārus, -i, m., a chief of the Treveri
ineō, -īre, -īi, -itus, irr., trans., enter on, go into, adopt, make, begin, gain, secure.—Esp.: initia aestate, at the beginning of summer; inire rationem, make a calculation; inire consilium, form a plan; inire numerum, enumerate
inermis, -e [in-, not, arma], adj., unarmed, defenseless
inerē, -ertis [in-, not, ars], adj., cowardly, sluggish, unmanly
infaôìa, -ae [infamis, infamous], f., dishonor, disgrace
infāns, -antis [in-, not, fans, pres. p. of for, speak], c., child, infant
infectus, -a, -um [in-, not, factus], adj., not done.—Esp., re infecta, without success
inferē, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, irr., trans., bring in, import, put on: in equum (mount one on horseback); bellum (make, of offensive war); signa (make a charge, advance).—Fig., cause, inflict, commit
inferus, -a, -um, adj., low: inferior pars, the lower end; ab inferiore parte, down below, of a river.—infimus (imus), -a, -um, superi,
lowest, the bottom of, at the bottom: infimus collis, the foot of the hill; ad infimum, at the bottom.—Neut. as noun, the bottom
inficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [in-facio], trans., (work into), dye, stain
infimus, see inferus
Infinitus, -a, -um, adj., unbounded, countless, endless
infirmitās, -ātis [infirmus], f., feebleness, inconstancy, fickleness
infirmus, -a, -um, adj., weak, feeble: naves (unseaworthy)
infectō, -flectere, -flexī, -flexus, trans., bend down.—Pass. or with reflex., become bent
inflexus, -a, -um, p.p. of infectō
inflūō, -fluere, -flūxi, -fluxurus, intrans., flow into, empty into
Infrā, adv., and prep. with acc., below, farther down, less than
ingēns, -entis, adj., huge, enormous
ingredior, -gredi, -gressus [in-gradior, step], dep., trans. and intrans., march into, enter, march in.
iniciō, -icerē, -iēcī, -iectus [in-iacio], trans., throw into, throw upon; place in, put on, embark; inspire
iniecētus, -a, -um, p.p. of inicio
inimicitia, -ae [inimicus], f., enmity, hostility
inimicus, -a, -um [in-, not, amicus], adj., unfriendly, hostile.—Masc. as noun, enemy (personal, or not in war)
iniquitās, -ātis [iniquus], f., inequality; unfairness, unfavorable
iniquus — insolenter

iniquus, -a, -um [in-, not, aequus], adj., uneven; unjust, unfavorable, unfair. — Comp., iniquior
locus, less favorable position
initium, -i [ineo], n., a beginning, the first of: initium capere or facere, begin, start
initus, p.p. of ineo
injuriam, -ae [in-, not, ius], f., injustice, outrage, wrong
inissus, adv., without orders
inlatus, p.p. of inferro
inligō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., bind on, attach, fasten to
inlōstris, -e, adj., distinguished, famous: inlōstriore loco natus, of distinguished ancestry
innāscor, -nāscini, -nātus, dep., intrans., be inspired, be excited
innitor, -niti, -nīxus or -nīsus, dep., intrans., lean upon. — innixus,
-a, -um, p.p. in present sense, leaning on
innocēns, -entis [in-, not, nocēns, pres. p. of noceo], adj., harmless, guiltless, innocent
innocentia, -ae [innocēns], f., blamlessness
inopia, -ae [inops, needy], f., scarcity, privation, want of supplies
inopināns, -antis, adj., unsuspecting, not suspecting
in prīmis, see imprīmis
inquam, defective, intrans., say
inrīdeo, -rīdeerē, -rīsī, -rīsus, trans. and intrans., ridicule, laugh at
inridiculē, adv., without humor
inrupō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptus, trans. and intrans., break in, break into, storm
inruptō, -ōnis [inrupō], f., attack, raid, incursion
insciēns, -entis, adj., not knowing, unaware
inscientia, -ae [insciēns], f., ignorance, lack of acquaintance with
inscius, -a, -um, adj., not knowing, unaware
insecūtus, -a, -um, p.p. of insequor
insequor, -sequi, -secūtus, dep., trans., follow up, pursue
inserō, -serere, -serui, -seruit, trans., insert, stick in
insidia, -ārum [insidea, sit in], f. plur., ambush, treachery, plot: per insidias, with deception, treacherously
insidior, -āri, -ātus [insidia], dep., intrans., lie in wait, make treacherous attacks
insignis, -e [in-signum], adj., marked, memorable. — insignis, -is, n. as noun, signal, sign, decoration (of soldiers)
insiliō, -siliēre, -siliui, -sultus [in-satio, leap], trans., leap on
insimulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., charge, accuse
insinuō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans. and intrans., slip in
insistō, -sistere, -stīti, no p.p., trans. and intrans., stand on, stand, keep one’s footing. — Fig., adopt (rationem pugnae)
insolenter, adv., insolently, arrogantly
inspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans. and intrans., look on: inspectantibus nobis, before our eyes
Instabilitas, -e, adj., unsteady
Instar, n., indecl., in the likeness of (with gen.)
Institūtum, -i [n. p. p. of instituo], 
n., habit, practice, custom
Instō, -stāre, -stītī, -stātūrus, in-trans., be at hand, press on; threaten, impend, menace
Instruēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of instruo
Instrumēntum, -i [instruo], n., furniture, equipment, tools and stores
Instruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctus, 
trans., build, fit up, fit out, set in order, arrange; draw up (of troops)
Insuēfactus, -a, -um, adj., trained
Insuētus, -a, -um, adj., unaccustomed, unused
Insula, -ae, f., island
Insuper, adv., on the top, from above
Integer, -gra, -grum [in-, not, tango, touch], adj., untouched, unwearied, fresh; as noun, fresh troops. — Esp., not entered upon (of business); re integra, before anything was done
Integō, -tegere, -tēxi, -tēctus, trans., cover over (turres coriis)
Intelligō, -legere, -lēxi, -lēctus [inter-lego, gather], trans., learn, know, find out, discover
Intendō, -tendere, -tendi, -tensus, 
trans., stretch, strain. — Esp. of the mind or eyes, be intent, be absorbed: animis intentis in eare, with their minds absorbed in this business
Inter, prep. with acc., between, among: arbitros inter civitates dat (to decide between); inter aciem, in the line. — Of time, within, for. — Often in a reciprocal sense: inter se, with (to, from, etc.) each other or one another; cohortati inter se, encouraging each other or one another; obsides inter eos dandas curavit, caused them to exchange hostages
Intercedō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, 
intrans., come between, go between, lie between, pass (of time): ipsis cum Haeduis intercedere, exist between them and the Haeudi
Interceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of interceptio
Intercipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus 
[inter-capio], trans., intercept, cut off
Interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus 
[inter-cludo], trans., cut off, shut off, block (roads): fugam (stop, cut off)
Interdicō, -dicere, -dixi, -dictus, 
trans., forbid, prohibit: Gallia
**latin—english vocabulary**

**interdiū — intrūrsus**

Romanis interdicere, exclude the Romans from Gaul

interdiū, adv., in the daytime

interdum, adv., for a time, sometimes

intereā, adv., meanwhile, in the meantime

intereō, -īre, -īi, -ītūrus, irr., intrans., perish, die, be killed

interficīō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [interfacio], trans., kill, put to death

intericiō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [interiacio], trans., throw in (between). — Pass., lie between, intervene:

spatio interiecto, intervening, i.e. leaving a short interval

interim, adv., meanwhile

interior, -iūs, adj., inner, interior. — Masc. plur. as noun, interiores, men in the interior, men in the town

intermittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus, trans. and intrans., leave off, discontinue, stop: neque diem neque noctem (not cease day or night);

spatiae intermissae, leaving intervals; nocte intermissa, a night intervening

interneciō, ōnis [cf. neco], f., extermination, annihilation

interpellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., interrupt, interfere with

interpōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positus, trans., put in between, interpose, allege: nulla suspicione belli interposita, no suspicion of war appearing to hinder

interpres, -pretis, c., mediator, interpreter

interpreter, -ērī, -ētus, dep., trans., interpret, explain

interrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., question, ask

interrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus, trans., break down (of bridges), destroy

interscindō, -scindere, -scidi, -scissus, trans., tear down

intersum, -esse, -suī, -futūrus, irr., intrans., be between, be in, be engaged in: non amplius intersit, there is an interval of not more than etc. — Esp., impera., it is of importance, it concerns

intervāllum, -i, n., distance apart, interval

interveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventūrus, intrans., come up, arrive

interventus, -ūs [intervenio], m., intervention, help

intexō, -texere, -texui, -textus, trans., weave in, weave together

intra, prep. with acc., into, within, inside

intrītus, -a, -um, adj., unwearied

intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., enter, go in

intrōducō, -ducere, -duxi, -ductus, trans., lead in, bring in, march in (troops)

introitus, -ūs [intro, within, eo, go], m., entrance, approach

intrōmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus, trans., send in; intromissus, rushing in

intrōrsus [intro, within, versus, p.p. of verto], adv., inside, within
intueor — iugum

intueor, -tuēri, -tuitus, dep., trans., look at
intuli, see infero
inūsitātus, -a, -um, adj., unaccustomed
inūtilis, -e, adj., of no use, unserviceable
inveniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventus, trans., find, learn
inventor, -ōria, m., discoverer
inventerāscō, -āscere, -āvī, -ātūrus, intrans., become established in
invictus, -a, -um, adj., unconquerable, invincible
invidēō, -vidēre, -vīdī, -visus, intrans., envy
inviolātus, -a, -um, adj., inviolate; sacred
invisus, -a, -um, p.p. of invidēō
invitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., invite, request, attract
invitus, -a, -um, adj., unwilling.—Often rendered as adv., against one's will
ipse, -a, -um, intens. pron., self, himself, etc. (as opp. to some one else; cf. sui, reflex., referring to the subject), he, etc. (emph.), he himself, etc.: ipsi inter se (reciprocal), each other
iracundus, -a, -um [ira, anger], adj., of a violent temper
is, ea, id, dem. adj. and pron., this (less emph. than hic), that (unemphatic), he, she, it: quae pars ea etc., the part which etc.—eo, n. abl., so much; eo magis,
all the more; eo gravius, so much the more severely
ita, adv., so, in this way, thus, as follows: ut . . . ita, as . . . so, though . . . yet, both . . . and; ita . . . ut, in proportion as, as; non ita, not so very, not very
Italia, -ae, f., Italy
itaque, adv., and so, accordingly, therefore
item, adv., in like manner, so also, in the same way
iter, itineris [eo, go], n., road, march, journey: in itinere, on the road; iter facere, march, travel; magnis itineribus, by forced marches
iterum, adv., a second time, again: semel atque iterum, again and again
Itius, adj. (with portus), the Gallic port where Caesar embarked for Britain the second time
iuba, -ae, f., mane
iubeō, iubēre, iussi, iussus, trans., order, command, bid
iūdicium, -i [iūdex, judge], n., judgment (judicial), trial, opinion; iūdicio, by design; often translated by court
iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [iūdex, judge], trans., decide, judge, think, consider: nihil gravius de civitate (think nothing harsh about etc.)
iugum, -i [iūgo], n., yoke: sub iugum mittere (an insult inflicted on a conquered army). Also, ridge
iūmentum — languor

iūmentum, -i [iugum], n., beast of burden

iūntūra, -ae [iungō], f., a joining, joint: quantum iunctura distabat, as far as the distance apart (of two things joined)
iūngō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnctus, trans., join, unite, attach together

iūnior, comp. of iuvenes
Iūnius, -i, m., a Roman gentile name

Iuppiter, Iovis, m., the god of the heavens, who was regarded as the supreme divinity of the Romans

Iūra, -ae, m., a chain of mountains in Gaul, running northeast from the Rhone to the Rhine

iūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, intrans., swear, take an oath

iūs, iūris, n., justice, right, law

iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī, n., oath

iussū, abl. used as adv., by order, by command

iūstitia, -ae [iustus], f., justice

iūstus, -a, -um, adj., just, lawful.—Also, complete, perfect, regular: populi Romani iustissimum est imperium, the Romans are best entitled to dominion

iuvenis, -e, adj., young.—As noun, a young man (not over forty-five), a youth: iuniores, the younger soldiers

iuventūs, -ūtis [iuvenis], f., the youth, the young men

iuvō, iuvāre, iūvi, iūtus, trans., help, aid, assist

iūxtā, adv., and prep. with acc., next, near, close by

Kal., abbr. for Kalendae and its cases
Kalendae, -ārum, f.plur., the Calends, the first day of the Roman month

L, Roman numeral for fifty

L., abbr. for Lucius

Laberius, -i, m., a Roman gentile name

Labiēnus, -i, m., a Roman family name.—Esp., Titus Atius Labienus, a violent partisan of Cæsar, a legatus under him in Gaul, but afterwards in the Civil War on the side of Pompey

labor, -ōris, m., toil, exertion; trouble, hardship

labūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [labor], intrans., toil, exert one's self; be hard pressed, labor

labrum, -i, n., lip; edge, rim

lac, lactis, n., milk

laciesō, -cessere, -cessivi, -cessitus, trans., attack, harass, assail, skirmish with

lacrima, -ae, f., tear

lacus, -ūs, m., reservoir, lake

laedō, laedere, laesī, laesus, trans., wound.—Fig., break (fidem)

laetus, -a, -um, adj., glad

languide, adv., feebly

languidus, -a, -um, adj., spiritless: languidior, with less spirit

languor, -ōris, m., weariness
lapis — liberē

lapis, -idis, m., stone
laqueus, -i, m., slip noose
largior, -iri, -itus [largus, abundant], dep., trans. and intrans., give lavishly; give bribes, give presents
largiter, adv., lavishly: largitē
possē, possess powerful influence
largitō, -ōnis [largior], f., lavish giving, bribery
lassitūdō, -inis [lassus, weary], f., weariness, exhaustion
lātē, adv., widely: latius, too far;
longe lateque, far and wide
lateō, latēre, latuī, no p.p., intrans., be concealed, pass unnoticed
lātitūdō, -inis [latus, broad], f., breadth, width
Latobrigiī, -ōrum, m. plur., a German tribe, neighbors of the Helvetii
latrō, -ōnis, m., robber
latrocinium, -i [latro], n., robbery, brigandage
lātus, lateria, n., side (of the body).
— Also, generally, side, flank, end (of a hill)
lātus, -a, -um, p.p. of fero
lātus, -a, -um, adj., broad, wide, extensive
laudō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [laus], trans., praise, commend
laus, laudis, f., praise, credit, glory
lavō, -āre (-ere), -āvi (lāvī), -ātus (lautus, lōtus), trans., wash.— In pass. used reflexively, bathe
laxō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., loosen, open out, extend
lēgātiō, -ōnis [lēgo, dispatch], f., embassy
lēgātus, -i [lēgo, dispatch], m., ambassador, envoy. — Also, lieutenant, legatus
legiō, -ōnis [legō, gather], f., legion
legiōnārius, -a, -um [legio], adj., of a legion, legionary
Lemanniūs, -i, m. (with lacus either expressed or implied), the Lake of Geneva, Lake Leman
Lemovīcēs, -um, m. plur., a tribe in central Gaul west of the Arvernī
lēnis, -e, adj., gentle, smooth
lēnitās, -ātis [lēnis], f., gentleness
lēniter, adv., gently
Lepontīi, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe of the Alps
lepus, -oris, m., hare
Leuci, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe of eastern Gaul
levis, -e, adj., light, unimportant; inconstant, fickle
levitās, -ātis [levis], f., lightness, fickleness
levō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., lighten; relieve
lēx, lēgis, f., statute, law
Lexovīliī, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe of northwestern Gaul
libenter, adv., willingly, with pleasure
liber, -era, -erum, adj., free, unrestricted
liberalītās, -ātis [liberalis, generous], f., generosity, liberality
liberaliter, adv., generously, kindly
(respondit): oratione prosecutus (addressing in generous language)
liberē, adv., freely, boldly, without restraint
liberi — magis

liberi, -ōrum [liber, free], m. plur., children
liberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [liber], free, set free, relieve (from some bond):
liberare se, secure one’s freedom
libertas, -ātis [liber], f., liberty, freedom, independence
liceor, licēri, licitus, dep., intrans., bid (at an auction)
licot, licēre, licuit (licitum est), intrans., impers., be allowed: id sibi etc. (that they be allowed); per te licet, you allow, you do not hinder; petere ut liceat, to ask permission
Liger, -eris, m., a river of western Gaul, now the Loire
lignātor, -ōris [lignum, wood], m., wood forager, woodcutter
linea, -ae, f., line
Lingonēs, -um, m. plur., a tribe of eastern Gaul
lingua, -ae, f., tongue. Hence, language
lingula, -ae [lingua], f., tongue of land
linter, -tris, f., skiff, boat
linum, -i, n., flax
Liscus, -i, m., a Haeduian magistrate, brother of Diviciacus
littera, -ae, f., letter (of the alphabet). — Plur., writing, alphabet, letter (an epistle), records
litus, -oris, n., shore, beach
locus, -i, m. (sing.), n. (generally plur.), place, spot, region (esp. in plur.), point, ground (in military language); rank; position, character; opportunity; situation, condition: obsidum loco, as hostages
locutus, -a, -um, p.p. of loquor
longē, adv., far, absent, distant: non longius mille (not more than); longe nobilissimus (far, altogether)
longinquus, -a, -um [longus], adj., long (of time and space), distant, long-continued
longituōs, -inis [longus], f., length
longurus, -i, m., long pole
longus, -a, -um, adj., long (of space and time): in longiorem diem, to a more distant day
loquor, loqui, locutus, dep., trans. and intrans., speak, talk, converse
Lūcānius, -i, m., a Roman gentile name
Lūcius, -i, m., a Roman prænomen
Lucterius, -i, m., a Gallic name
Lugotorix, -igis, m., a British prince
lūna, -ae, f., moon. Also personified, Luna, the Moon
lūx, lūcis [cf. luceo, shine], f., light, daylight: prima luce, orta luce, or luce, at daybreak
lūxurria, -ae, f., luxury, riotous living
M, Roman numeral for thousand
M., abbr. for Mārcus
māchinātiō, -onis [machina, machine], f., contrivance, engine, derrick
Magetobriga, -ae, f., a town in Gaul where Ariovistus defeated the Gauls
magis, adv., more, rather: eo magis, so much the more, all the more.
— maxime, superl.
magistratus, -us [magister, master], m., magistracy (office of a magistrate). — Concretely, magistrate

magnificus, -a, -um [magnus-facio], adj., splendid, grand, magnificent

magnitudo, -inis [magnus], f., greatness, size, stature, force (venti), severity (supplici)
magnopere, see opus

magnus, -a, -um, adj., great (in any sense, of size, quantity, or degree), large, extensive, important, serious (motus), heavy (portoria), high (aestus), loud (vox): magni habere, to value highly, make much account of; magni interest, it is of great importance. — maior, comp. in usual sense. — Also, maior (with or without natu), elder, older. — In plur. as noun, elders, ancestors. — maximus, superl., largest, very large, greatest, very great, etc.: maximis itineribus, by forced marches

maiestas, -atís [maior], f., majesty, dignity

maior, see magnus

malacia, -ae, f., a calm

male, adv., badly, ill, unsuccessfully. — peius, comp. — pessime, superl.

maleficium, -i [male-facio], n., harm, mischief

malo, malle, malui, no p. p. [mage (for magis), volo], irr., trans. and intrans., wish more, wish rather, prefer

malus, -a, -um, adj., bad. — peior, comp. — pessimus, superl.

málu, -i, m., mast, beam (upright)

mandatum, -i [n. p. p. of mando], n., command, instructions; message

mandó, -äre, -avi, -ātus, trans., instruct, instruct, commit: se fugae (take to)

Mandubracius, -i, m., a Briton

máne, adv., in the morning

maneó, manère, mánse, mánsurus, intrans., stay, remain, stay at home. — Fig., continue, stand by (in eo quod)

manipulus, -i [manus], m., handful; maniple (two centuries, a third of a cohort)

Mánlius, -i, m., a Roman gentile name

mánsuēfació, -facere, -feci, -factus, trans., tame. — Pass., mánsuēfíō, be tamed

mánsuētudó, -inis [mánsuetus, tame], f., gentle disposition, kindness

manus, -ūs, f., the hand: in manibus nostris, just at hand, within reach; dat manus, give in. — Also, company, band, troop

Marcomanni, -örum, m. plur., a supposed German tribe in the army of Ariovistus

Márcus, -i, m., a Roman prænomen

mare, -is, n., the sea: mare Oceanum, the ocean; nostrum (i.e. the Mediterranean)

maritimus, -a, -um [mare], adj., of the sea, maritime, naval, on the
Marius — méns

sea: aestus (in the sea); ora (the seashore)

Marius, -i, m., a Roman gentile name.—Esp., Caius Marius, the opponent of Sulla and the champion of the popular against the aristocratic party. He conquered the Cimbri and Teutones (101 B.C.) and freed Rome from the fear of a northern invasion

Mārs, Mārtis, m., Mars, originally probably a god of husbandry defending the sheep, but afterwards worshiped as the god of war.—See aequus

mās, maris, adj., male.—Noun, a male

matara, -ae, f., javelin (used by the Gauls)

māter, -tris, f., mother, matron: māter familiās (old gen. of familia), matron

māteria, -ae, f., wood, timber

mātrimōniun, -i, [mater], n., marriage, matrimony: in matrimonium ducere, marry

Matrona, -ae, m., a river of Gaul, joining the Seine near Paris, now the Marne

māturē, adv., early, speedily

māturō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [maturus], trans. and intrans., hasten, make haste

mātūrus, -a, -um, adj., early.—Also, ripe, mature

maximē, adv., most, very; in the highest degree, especially: ea maxime ratione, in that way more than any other; maxime confidebat, had the greatest confidence

Maximus, -i, m., a Roman family name

mediocris, -cre [medius], adj., middling, moderate: spatium (a little, no great); non mediocris, no little, no small degree of

mediocris, -cre [medius], adv., moderately: non mediocris, in no small degree

Mediometriis, -e, -i, m., a tribe of northeastern Gaul

mediterrāneus, -a, -um [medius-terra], adj., inland

medius, -a, -um, adj., the middle of (as noun in English), mid-: in colle medio (halfway up); locus medius utriusque (halfway between); de media nocte, about midnight

Meldī, -ērum, m., a tribe of Gaul between the Seine and the Marne

melior, comp. of bonus

membrum, -i, n., a part of the body

memini, -isse, defective, trans. and intrans., remember

memoria, -ae [memor, mindful], f., memory, recollection: memoria tenere, remember; nostrā memoria, within our memory, in our own time

Menapiī, -ōrum, m., plur., a Belgian tribe near the mouth of the Rhine

mēns, mentis, f., intellect, mind, state of mind: mentes animosae, minds and hearts
mēnsis — miror

mēnsis, -is, m., month
mēnsūra, -ae [metior], f., measure:
ex aqua mensurae, measures by the water clock
mercātor, -āris [mercor, trade], m., trader
mercātūra, -ae [mercor, trade], f., traffic, trade
mercēs, -ēdis [merx, merchandise], f., hire, pay, wages
Mercurius, -i, m., Mercury, the Roman god of gain, traffic, etc. Afterwards, identified with the Greek Hermes, he was considered also the god of eloquence as well as of trade, the messenger of the gods, and the god of roads, etc.
mercur, -āri, -itus (also meroe, active), dep., trans. and intrans., win, deserve, gain.—Also (from earning pay), serve: mereri de, serve the interests of, render service to
meridiānus, -a, -um [meridies], adj., of midday
meridiēs, -ēs [medius-dies], m., midday, noon.—Also, the south
meritum, -i [n. p. p. of mereor], n., service.—meritō, abl. as adv., deservedly: quo minus merito, (the) less by the fault
meritus, -a, -um, p. p. of mereor
Messāla, -ae, m., a Roman family name
mētor, mētrīri, mēnsus, dep., trans., measure out, deal out, distribute
Mētius, -i, m., a Gaul, in relations of hospitality with Ariovistus
metō, metere, messui, messus, trans., cut, reap, gather
mētus, -ūs, m., fear
meus, -a, -um, possessive pronominal adj., my, mine
mihi, see ego
miles, -ītis, m., soldier, legionary soldier (heavy infantry, as opposed to other arms of the service)
militāris, -ē [miles], adj., of the soldiers, military
militia, -ae [miles], f., military service
mille, indecl. adj. (rarely noun) in sing.; plur., milia, -īum, neuter noun, thousand: mille passus or mille passuum (cf. G. § 20, note), thousand paces, mile
Minerva, -ae, f., Minerva, the goddess of intellectual activity, and so of skill and the arts
minimē, adv., least, very little, not at all
minimus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of parvus, smallest, least.—Neut. as noun and adv., the least, least, very little
minor, -us, adj., comp. of parvus, smaller, less: dimidio minor, half as large.—Neut. as noun and adv., less, not much, not so: quo minus, that... not
minūō, -uere, -ui, -ūtus [minus], trans. and intrans., lessen, weaken, diminish: aetūs (ebb)
miror, -āri, -ātus [mirus], dep., trans. and intrans., wonder, wonder at.—mirātus, -a, -um, p. p. in pres. sense, surprised
mīrus — multitūdō

mīrus, -a, -um, adj., surprising, marvelous, wonderful
miser, -era, -erum, adj., wretched, pitiable, miserable, poor
misericordia, -ae [misericors, merciful], f., mercy, pity, clemency
miseror, -ārī, -ātus [miser], dep., trans., bewail, complain of
missus, -a, -um, p. p. of mitto
missus, -ūs, m., a sending: missu Caesaris, under Caesar's orders
mittō, mittere, missi, missus, trans., send, dispatch, discharge, shoot:
sub iugum mittere, send under the yoke
mōbilis, -e [moveo], adj., easily moved, movable, fickle, hasty
mōibilitās, -ātis [mobilis], f., mobility, inconstancy, fickleness
mōblītēr, adv., easily, readily
mōderor, -ārī, -ātus [modus], dep., trans. and intrans., control, regulate, restrain
modo, adv., only, merely, just, even, just now, lately: non . . . modo, not only
modus, -i, m., measure, quantity. Hence, manner, fashion, style, method
moenia, -iūm [munio], n. plur., fortifications, walls of a city
mōlēs, -is, f., mass; dike, dam
molestē, adv., heavily, severely: molestē ferre, take it ill, be vexed at
mōlimentum, -i [motor, strive], n., trouble, difficulty, exertion
mōlitis, -a, -um, p. p. of molo
mollis, -e, adj., soft; weak, feeble
mollitiēs, -ei [mollis], f., weakness
molō, -ere, -ui, -itus, trans., grind
Mona, -ae, f., the Isle of Man, off the coast of Britain
moneō, -ere, -ui, -itus, trans., remind, warn, advise, urge
mōns, montis, m., mountain, height
mora, -ae, f., delay, grounds of delay
morātus, -a, -um, p. p. of moror
morbus, -i, m., sickness, illness
mōribus, see mōs
Morini, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe of the Belgae
morior, morī, mortuus [mors], dep., intrans., die
moror, -ārī, -ātus [mora], dep., trans. and intrans., retard, check, delay
mors, mortis, f., death: sibi mortem consciscere, commit suicide
mortuus, -a, -um, p. p. of morior
mōs, mōris, m., custom, usage.— Plur., customs, habits, character
Mosa, -ae, m., a river in Belgic Gaul, now the Meuse
mōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of moveo
mōtus, -ūs [moveo], m., movement, disturbance, uprising: celer atque instabilis (changes, of the passage of events in maritime warfare)
moveō, movēre, mōvi, mōtus, trans., set in motion, move, remove: castra (move from a place to another; also, absolutely, break camp)
mulier, -eris, f., woman
multitūdō, -inis [multus], f., great number; the multitude, the common people
multō — nāvīgātiō

multō, see multus
multum, see multus

multus, -a, -um, adj., much, many:
multo die, late in the day; ad
multam noctem, till late at night.
—multum, neut. as noun and adv.,
much. — Also, plur., multa, many
things, much, a great deal.—Abl.,
multō, much, far: multō facilius.
—As comp., plūs, plūris, n. noun
and adv.: plur. as adj., more,
much, very; as noun, several,
many. — As superl., plūrimus, -a,
-part, most, very many, very much:
quam plurimi, as many as possible;
plurimum posse, have most power,
be very strong or influential; plurī-
mum valere, have very great weight
mundus, -i, m., universe, world
mūnimentum, -i [munio], n., a fortifi-
cation.—Plur., a defense
mūniō, -ire, -ivi, -itus, trans. and
intrans., fortify; defend
mūnitio, -onis [munio], f., a fortifica-
tion, works, defenses
mūnus, -oris, n., duty: munus mili-
tiae, military service.—Also, gift,
present
mūrālia, -e [murus], adj., of a wall,
wall—: pila (heavy javelins for
service in siege operations)
mūrus, -i, m., wall
mutilus, -a, -um, adj., mutilated:
cornibus (with short broken horns,
of the elk)
nactus, -a, -um, p.p. of nanciscor
nam, conj., for

Nammēius, -i, m., a Helvetian am-
bassador to Cæsar
Nammētēs, -um, m. plur., a tribe of
western Gaul
namque, conj., for (a little more
emphatic than nam)
nanciscor, -cisci, nactus, dep., trans.,
find, get, obtain
Nantuātēs, -um, m. plur., a tribe of
Gaul, near the Lake of Geneva
Narbō, -onis, m., a city of the Roman
province of Gaul, now Narbonne
nāscor, nāsci, nātus, dep., intrans.,
be born, arise, spring up, be raised
(of beasts), be found (plumbum).
—nātus, -a, -um, p.p., sprung,
born
Nasua, -ae, m., a leader of the Suebi
nātālis, -e [natus], adj., of birth:
dies natalis, birthday
nātiō, -onis [cf. nascor], f., race,
tribe, clan
nātivus, -a, -um [cf. nascor], adj.,
native, natural
nātūra, -ae [cf. nascor], f., nature,
character
nātus, -a, -um, p.p. of nascor
nātus, -ūs [cf. nascor], m., birth:
maiores natu, elders
nauta, -ae, m., sailor, boatman
nauticus, -a, -um [nauta], adj., of a
sailor (or sailors), naval
nāvālis, -e [navis], adj., of ships,
naval
nāvicula, -ae [navis], f., small vessel,
skiff
nāvīgātiō, -onis [navigo], f., voyage,
traveling by sea
navigium — nihilum
navigium, -i [navis], n., vessel (a general term), boat
navigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [navis], intrans., sail
navigia, -is, f., ship, vessel, boat: oneraria (transport); longa (war galley)
navō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., do zealously: operam (do one's best)
-ne (enclitic), adv. and conj., not?
(as a question, cf. nonne), whether, did (as a question in English), do, etc.—See also necne
nē, conj., lest, that . . . not, not to (do anything), from (doing anything), in order that . . . not, for fear that.—After verbs of fearing, that.—Also adv., ne . . . quidem, not . . . even
nec, see neque
necessarius, -a, -um [necessae], adj., necessary: tempus (critical).—Also, as noun, kinsman, close friend.—Abl. as adv., necessāriō, necessarily, unavoidably
necessae, indecl. adj., necessary.—With est, one must
necessitās, -ātis [necessae], f., necessity, constraint, compulsion
necessitūdō, -inis [necessae], f., intimacy, close relations
necne [nec-ne], conj., or not (in double questions)
nectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., put to death, kill, murder
neggō, -legere, -lēxi, -lēctus [nec-lemo, gather], trans., disregard, neglect
negō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans. and intrans., say no, say . . . not, refuse
negōtior, -āri, -ātus [negotium], dep., intrans., do business
negōtium, -ī [negotium, ease], n., business, occupation, undertaking: quid negoti, what business? dare negotium alicui, employ one, give in charge to.—Less definitely, matter, thing.—Also, difficulty, trouble
Nemetēs, -um, m. plur., a German tribe on the Rhine
nēmō [ne-homo], c., no one, nobody: non nemo, many a one
nēquāquam, adv., in no way, by no means
neque (nec), conj., and not, and yet . . . not, nor: neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor
nēquīquam, adv., to no purpose, in vain
Nervicus, -a, -um, adj., of the Nervii, Nervian
Nervius, -a, -um, adj., Nervian.—Masc. plur., the Nervii, a powerful tribe of Belgic Gaul
nervus, -i, m., sinew.—Fig., in plur., strength, vigor
neu, see neve
neuter, -tra, -trum [ne-uter], adj. and pron., neither.—Plur., neither party, neither side
nēve (neu), conj., or not, and not, nor nex, necis, f., violent death, execution nihil, see nihilum
nihilum, -i [ne-hilum, trifle] (also indecl., nihil), n., nothing: nihil
nisi — noxia

nōn, adv., not: non est dubium, there is no doubt
nōnāgintā, indecl. num. adj., ninety
nōndum, adv., not yet
nōnne [non-ne], interrog. adv., suggesting an affirmative answer, not?

nōn nōllus, -a, -um, adj., some
nōn numquam, adv., sometimes
nōnus, -a, -um, num. adj., ninth
Nōrēia, -ae, f., a city of the Norici
Nōricus, -a, -um, adj., of the Norici, Norican

nōs, see ego

nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus, trans., learn, become acquainted with.—In perf. tenses, know

nōsten-, tra-, trum, possessive pronominal adj., our, ours.—In plur., our men (the Romans), our forces
nōtātia, -ae [notus], f., acquaintance with, knowledge

nōtus, p.p. of nosco

novem, indecl. num. adj., nine

Noviodūnum, -ī, n.: 1. A town of the Bituriges, on the Loire.—2. A town of the Sueviones

novitās, -ātis [novus], f., novelty, strangeness

novus, -a, -um, adj., new, fresh: res novae, a change of government, revolution.—novissimus, -a, -um, superl., latest, last: agmen (the rear)

nox, noctis, f., night: prima nocte, in the early part of the night; multa nocte, late at night

noxia, -ae [cf. noceo], f., crime, guilt
nūbō — obśidiō

nūbō, nūbere, nūpsi, nūptus, intrans., marry (of the woman)
nūdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [nudus], trans., lay bare, expose, strip
nūdus, -a, -um, adj., naked, bare, unprotected, exposed
nūlūs, -a, -um, adj., not any, no. — As noun, no one. — nōn nūlūs, some. — Plur. as noun, some, some persons
num, interrog. adv., suggesting a neg. answer; no corresponding word in English
nūmen, -inis, n., will, power; divinity
numerus, -i, m., number: in hostium
numero habuit (in the place of, as, etc., euphemism for slaughtered)
Numīda, -ae, m., a Numidian (Numidians were employed in the Roman army as cavalry)
nummus, -i, m., coin
numquam, adv., never
nunc, adv., now
nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [nuntius], trans., send news, report, make known: nuntiatum est ei . . . ne, he was ordered not to etc.
nūntius, -i, m., messenger. Hence, news: nuntium mittere, send word; per eorum nuntios (agents)
nūper, adv., lately, recently, not long ago
nūptum, see nūbō
nūtus, -ūs [nuo, nod], m., a nod: ad nutum, at one’s command

reason, on this account. — In composition, towards, to, against, over
obaerātus, -a, -um [ob-aes], adj., bound in debt. — As noun, debtor, servant for debt
obdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductus, trans., lead towards, lead against: fossam (throw out, in a military sense, carry along)
obeō, -ire, -ii, itus, irr., trans., go to, go about, attend to
obiciō, -icere, -iēci, -iectus [ob-iacio], trans., throw against, throw in the way, present, set up, expose.
— obiectus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., lying opposite, lying in the way
obiectus, -a, -um, p.p. of obicio
obitus, -ūs [obeo], m., destruction, annihilation

oblātus, -a, -um, p.p. of offero
obliquē, adv., obliquely, slanting
obliviscor, -livisci, -litus, dep., trans. and intrans., forget
obsecrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ob-sacrum, sacred thing], trans., entreat, implore, beg
observō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., pay attention to: iudicium (follow, comply with); diem natalem (keep, celebrate)
obseō, -idis [cf. obsideo], c., hostage
obsessus, -a, -um, p.p. of obsideo
obsideō, -sidēre, -sēdi, -cessus [ob-sedeō, sit], trans., blockade, beset, guard
obsidiō, -ōnis [cf. obsideo], f., siege, blockade: obsidione liberare (from besetting enemies)
obsignō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., seal up, seal
obstinātē, adv., persistently
obstrictus, -a, -um, p. p. of obstringō
obstringō, -stringere, -strinxi, -strictus, trans., bind: habere obstrictas
(under obligation)
obtemperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūras, intrans., comply with, submit to
obtestor, -āri, -ātus, dep., trans., implore, call to witness
obtineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentus [obteneo], trans., retain, maintain, occupy, possess
obtuli, perf. of offero
obveniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventūrus, intrans., meet
obviam, adv., in the way of, to meet
any one: obviam venire, come to meet
occāsiō, -ōnis [occido], f., opportunity
occāsus, -ús [occido], m., a falling,
a setting (of the sun): solis (the sunset, the west)
occidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsūrus [obcaedo], intrans., fall, be slain, set:
sol occidentis, the west
occidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cisus [ob-caedo], trans., kill, massacre: occisi, the slain
occultātiō, -ōnis [ occulto ], f., concealment
occultō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [occultus], trans., conceal, hide
occultus, -a, -um [ p. p. of occulto, hide ], adj., concealed: in occulto,
in secret; ex occulto, from an ambush, in ambush
occupātiō, -ōnis [occupo], f., occupation, business affairs: occupationes
tantalurarum rerum, engagement in such trifling matters
occupō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., seize, take possession of: regna
(usurp); in opere occupati (engaged, employed)
occurrō, -currere, -curri, -curtūrus [obcurreo, run ], intrans., meet, come
on, find: eo (run, to meet an enemy)
Oceanus, -ī, m., ocean
Ocelum, -ī, n., a town in Cisalpine Gaul
octāvus, -a, -um [octo], num. adj.,
eighth
octingenti, -ae, -a, num. adj., plur.,
eight hundred
octō, indecl. num. adj., eight
Octodūrus, -ī, m., a town of the
Veragri
octōgintā, indecl. num. adj., eighty
oculus, -ī, m., the eye
ōdi, ōdias, defective, trans., hate,
detest
odium, -ī [cf. odi], n., hatred
offendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fensus
[ob-fendo, strike], trans. and intrans., dash against, hurt: animum
(hurt the feelings)
offensiō, -ōnis [offendo], f., offense:
sine offensione animi, without
wounding one’s feelings
offerō, offerre, obtuli, oblātus [obfero], irr., trans., throw in one’s way, offer:
se morti (expose one’s self to); quos sibi oblatoes (placed
in his power).
LATIN–ENGLISH VOCABULARY

officium, -i, n., service, performance of a duty; duty, allegiance, obligation: discedere ab officio, fail in one's duty

omittō, -mittere, -misit, -missus [ob-mitto], trans., let go by: consilium (leave untried, neglect); omnibus omissis rebus, leaving everything else

omnīnō [omnis], adv., altogether, entirely, in general, on the whole, only, utterly, in all, at all, whatever (with negatives)

omnis, -e, adj., all, the whole of. — In sing., every: omni tempore, on all occasions, always. — In plur., a short expression for all others

onerārius, -a, -um [onus], adj., for burdens: naves (transports)

onus, -eris, n., burden, weight. — Esq., tanta onera navium, ships of such weight

opera, -ae [opus], f., work, pains, attention: operam navare, do one's best; operam dare, devote one's self, exert one's self, take pains

opiniō, -ōnis [opinor, think], f., notion, expectation: celerius omni opiniōne, quicker than any one would suppose; idea, reputation

opertēt, -ēre, -uit, intrans., impers., it ought, it is best: poenam sequi (the punishment was to follow); frumentum metiri (he ought etc.)

oppidānus, -a, -um [oppidum], adj., of a town. — Plur. as noun, townspeople

oppidum, -i, n., stronghold, town

oppōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positus [ob-pono], trans., oppose

opportūnē, adv., opportunely, seasonably

opportūnitās, -ātis [opportumus], f., timeliness, fitness, good luck, favorable chance

opportūnus, -a, -um, adj., opportune, advantageous, lucky

oppositus, -a, -um [p. p. of oppono], adj., opposed, opposite

oppressus, -a, -um, p. p. of opprimo

opprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressus [ob-premo], trans., overwhelm, crush, overpower, overtake, surprise

oppugnātiō, -ōnis [oppugno], f., siege, attack

oppugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ob-pugno], trans., attack, lay siege to

ops, opis, f., help, aid. — Plur., resources, means, strength, wealth

optātus, -a, -um [p. p. of opto, wish], adj., desired

optimē, superl. of bene

optimus, -a, -um, superl. of bonus

opus, n., indecl., need, necessity: si quid ipsi a Caesare opus esset, if he needed anything of Caesar; si quid opus facto, if anything needs to be done

opus, operis, n., work, labor. — In a military sense, a work, works, fortifications: natura et opere munitus (by nature and art). — In abl., magno opere, very much, very, greatly; quanto opere, how
Öra — pär

much; tanto opere, so much, so, so earnestly; often as one word, magnopere, tantopere
Öra, -ae, f., shore, coast
Öratiō, -onis [oro], f., speech, address, discourse, argument
Örātor, -ōris [oro], m., speaker, ambassador, envoy
Orbis, -is, m., circle: orbis terrarum, the circle of lands, the whole world
Orcynia, -ae, f., see Hercynius
Ördō, -inis, m., series, row, tier, rank (of soldiers), grade (of centurions, as commanding special ordines of soldiers, also the centurions themselves), arrangement, order
Orgetorix, -igis, m., a nobleman of the Helvetii
Orior, orīrī, ortus, dep., intrans., arise, spring up: orta luce, at daybreak. — Fig., begin, start, arise, have its source. — oriēns, -entis, pres. p. as adj., rising: sol (sunrise, the east)
Örnamentum, -i [orno], n., an adornment; an honor
Örnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., adorn, equip, furnish. — Fig., honor. — Örnātus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., furnished, well-equipped, honored
Örō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans. and intrans., speak; pray, entreat
Ortus, -a, -um, p.p. of orior
Ös, ōris, n., the mouth, the face
Osismi, -ōrum, m. plur., a coast tribe of northwestern Gaul
Ostendō, -tendere, -tendi, -tentus [obs- (= od), tendo], trans., present, show, point out, make known, state, declare
Ostentō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., display, exhibit
Ötium, -ī, n., repose, inactivity, quiet
Övum, -ī, n., egg

P., abbr. for Publius
Pābulātiō, -onis [pabulor], f., a foraging, getting fodder
Pābulātor, -ōris [pabulor], m., forager
Pābulor, -āri, -ātus, dep., intrans., forage, gather fodder
Pābulum, -ī [cf. pasco, feed], n., fodder
Pācō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [pax], trans., pacify, subdue. — Pācātus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., peaceable, quiet
Pāene, adv., almost, nearly
Pāenītēt, -ēre, -uit, trans., impers., it repents (one), one repents, one regrets
Pāgus, -ī, m., district, canton
Palam, adv., openly, publicly
Palma, -ae, f., the palm (of the hand); palm tree
Palus, -ūdis, f., marsh
Paluster, -tris, -tre [palus], adj., marshy, swampy
Pandō, pandere, pandi, passus or pānus, trans., spread out: passus
Manibus, with outstretched hands; passus capillis, with disheveled hair
Pār, paris, adj., equal, alike, like
parçō, parcerē, peperci, parsūrus, in-trans., spare. — Esp., save alive:
parçendo, by economy, by frugality
parēns, -entis [pario, bear], c., parent
parentō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans.,
avenge
pārē, pārēre, pāruī, no p.p., in-trans., appear; obey, submit to
Parīsii, -ōrum, m. plur., a Gallic tribe in the district where Paris is now
parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., pro-
cure, provide, prepare, arrange.
— parātus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., ready, prepared
pars, partis, f., portion, part, share.
— Often of position or direction merely, side, direction, region:
una ex parte, on one side; ex utraque parte, on both sides. —
Fig., qua ex parte, in which re-
spect; omnibus partibus, in all respects.— Esp., tres partes, three
quarters (three parts out of four);
ex parte, in part. — partim, old acc. as adv., in part, partly, some
... others
partim, see pars
partior, -īri, -ītus, dep., trans., divide
parum, adv., not much, not suffi-
ciently: parum diligenter, too
carelessly
parvulus, -a, -um [parvus], adj.,
small, slight, insignificant
parvus, -a, -um, adj., small, slight, little
passim, adv., in all directions, all about
passus, -a, -um, p.p. of pando; also
p.p. of patior
passus, -ūs, m., step, pace (the
distance from the point where
the heel leaves the ground to the
point where the same heel again
touches the ground; really a
double step, about five Roman
feet): mille passūs or mille pas-
suum, a Roman mile, five thou-
sand feet
patefaciō, -facere, -feci, -factus
[pateo-facio], trans., lay open,
open
patefiō, -fieri, pass. of patefacio
pateō, -ēre, -ui, no p.p., intrans.,
be extended, lie open, spread, ex-
tend. — patēns, -entis, pres. p. as
adj., open, exposed
pater, -tris, m., father. — Plur., an-
cestors
patientia, -ae [patiens, suffering], f.,
patience, endurance
patior, patī, passus, dep., trans.,
suffer, endure, allow, permit
patrius, -a, -um [pater], adj., ances-
tral, of one’s fathers
patruus, -ī [pater], m., uncle (on the
father’s side)
paucitās, -ātis [paucus], f., small
number
paucus, -a, -um, adj., almost always
in plur., few, some few: paucis
(paucae) respondit (in a few words,
briefly)
paulātim, adv., little by little, a
little at a time, gradually
paulisper, adv., a little while
paulō — perequilō

paulō [abl. of paulus, little], adv., a little, slightly

paululum [paulum], adv., a very little

paulum [acc. of paulus, little], adv., a little, a short distance, somewhat

pāx, pācis, f., peace, favor

peccō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, intrans., go wrong, commit a fault.

pecūnia, -ae [pecus], f., money, wealth

pecus, -oris, n., cattle (esp. sheep and goats): pecore vivere (flesh of cattle). — Plur., cattle, flocks and herds

pedālis, -e [pes], adj., a foot thick

pedes, -itis [pes], m., footman, foot soldier. — Collectively, the infantry

pedester, -tris, -tre [pedes], adj., of infantry, of persons on foot:
copiae (the foot, the infantry)

pedītātus, -ūs [pedes], m., foot, infantry

Pedius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Quintus Pedius, a nephew of Cæsar and a legatus under him in Gaul

peior, see malus

peius, see male

pellis, -is, f., hide, skin (either on or off the body of an animal):
sub pellibus, in tents, i.e. in the field

pellō, pellere, pepulē, pulsus, trans., beat, drive, defeat, repulse

pendō, pendere, pependē, pēnusus, trans., weigh, weigh out; pay, pay out. — Also, pay (a penalty), suffer (punishment)

penitus, adv., far within: penitus ad extremos fines (clear to, all the way to)

per, prep. with acc., through, along, over, among, by means of. — In composition, as adv., very, exceedingly, completely

perāctus, -ā, -um, p.p. of perago

peragō, -agere, -ēgī, -āctus, trans., finish, accomplish

perangustus, -ā, -um, adj., very narrow

percipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [percapio], trans., learn, acquire, hear; reap: fructus victoriae

percontātiō, -ōnis [percontor, inquire], f., inquiry

percurrō, -currere, -cūrri, -cursus, trans. and intrans., run along

perdiscō, -disere, -didicī, no p.p., trans., learn thoroughly, get by heart

perditus, -ā, -um, p.p. of perdo

perdō, perdere, perdīdī, perditus, trans., destroy, ruin. — perditus, -ā, -um, p.p. as adj., ruined, desperate, abandoned

perducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductus, trans., lead through, lead along, bring over, make (fossam). — Fig., prolong, win over, bring

perendinus, -ā, -um, adj., of day after to-morrow: perendino die, day after to-morrow, in two days

pereō, -ire, -ii, -itūrus, irr., intrans., perish, be killed

perequitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans. and intrans., ride through (or around)
perexiguus — persist

perexiguus, -a, -um, adj., very small
perfacilis, -e, adj., very easy
perferō, -ferre, -tuli, -látus, irr., trans., carry through (or over): opinionem (spread among); consilium (carry over); famam (bring).
—Also, bear through (to the end), endure, suffer, submit to
perficiō, -ficere, -feci, -fectus [per-facio], trans., accomplish, complete, finish; cause to
perfidia, -ae [perfidus, treacherous], f., treachery, faithlessness
perfringō, -fringere, -frégi, -fractus [per-frango], trans., break through
perfuga, -ae [cf. perfugio], m., fugitive, deserter
perfugiō, -fugere, -fugi, no p.p., intrans., run away, escape to, desert
perfugium, -i [perfugio], n., place of refuge, refuge
pergō, pergere, perrēxi, perrēctus [perrego], intrans., keep on, advance
periclítor, -āri, -ātus [periculum], dep., trans. and intrans., try, make a trial, be put in peril
periculōsus, -a, -um [periculum], adj., dangerous
periculum, -i, n., trial, attempt.
Hence, peril, danger, risk
peritus, -a, -um, adj., experienced, skilled, skillful
perlātus, -a, -um, p.p. of perforo
perluō, -luere, -luī, -lūtus, trans., wash all over. —Pass. (as reflex.), bathe
permaneō, -manère, -mānsi, -mānsūrus, intrans., remain (to the end), continue, hold out, persist
permittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus, trans., grant, allow, give up, intrust
permoveō, -movère, -mōvi, -mōtus, trans., influence, affect. — permotus, -a, -um, p.p., much affected, much influenced, overcome
permulceō, -mulcère, -mulsi, -mulsus, trans., soothe, pacify
perniciēs, -ēī, f., destruction, ruin
perpaucus, -a, -um, adj., always in the plur., very few, precious few
perpendicularum, -ī, n., plumb line: ad perpendicularum, perpendicularly
perpetuus, -a, -um, adj., continuous, without interruption, lasting, permanent: in perpetuum, forever, permanently. — perpetuo, abl. as adv., forever, constantly, continually
perquirō, -quīre, -quisīvi, -quisitus [per-quaero], trans., search for, inquire about
perrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptus, trans. and intrans., break through, force one’s way through
perruptus, -a, -um, p.p. of perrumpo
persequor, -sequī, -secūtus, dep., trans., follow up, pursue, attack
perseverō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, intrans., persist
persolvō, -solvere, -solvi, -solūtus, trans., pay, suffer (punishment)
perspicīo, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus, trans., see through; understand, learn, observe, discover
perstō, -stāre, -stīti, -stātūrus, intrans., stand firm, persist
persuadeō — plērusque

persuadeō, -suādere, -suāsi, -suāsus, trans. and intrans., induce, persuade. — Pass. (impers.), be persuaded (dat. of person), be satisfied, believe

perterreō, -terrēre, -terrui, -territus, trans., terrify, alarm

pertinācia, -ae [pertinax, obstinate], f., obstinacy, stubbornness

pertineō, -tinère, -tinui, no p.p. [per-teneo], intrans., tend, extend; have to do with: eodem illo ut etc. (have the same purpose)

pertulī, see perfero

perturbātiō, -onis [perturbo], f., disturbance, alarm, panic

perturbō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., disturb, throw into confusion, alarm, terrify

perveniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventūrus, intrans., arrive at, reach, come, arrive: ad hunc locum (come to this point); pars (of property, come, fall)

pēs, pedis, m., the foot. — Also, as a measure, a foot. — Esp., pedem referre, draw back, give way

petō, petere, petivi, petitus, trans., attack, make for, try to get, seek, go to. Hence, ask, request: petentibus Haeduis (at the request of etc.); fugam (take to)

Petrosidius, -i, m., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Lucius Petrosidius, a standard bearer in Cæsar’s army

phasis, -ās, f., phalanx

Pictonēs, -um, m. plur., a Gallic tribe south of the Loire

pietās, -ātis [pius, loyal], f., patriotism

plum, -i, n., javelin

plūs, -i, m., century (of soldiers). — Also, centurion (of a particular rank): primi pili centurio (of the first century or rank)

piscis, -is, m., a fish. — Collectively, fish

Piso, -onis, m., a Roman family name. — Esp.: 1. Lucius Calpurnius Piso, a legatus in the army of Cassius which was defeated by the Helvetii in 107 B.C., and grandfather of No. 2. — 2. Lucius Calpurnius Piso Caesoninus, father of Calpurnia, Cæsar’s wife. — 3. Marcus Pupius Piso Calpurnianus, consul with M. Messala in 61 B.C. — 4. Piso, an Aquitanian.

pix, picis, f., pitch

placeō, -āre, -āui, -āturus, intrans., please. — Esp. in third person, it pleases (one), one likes, one determines

plācō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., pacify, appease

plānē, adv., flatly, clearly, entirely

plānitiēs, -ēi [planus], f., plain

plānus, -a, -um, adj., flat, level, even: carinae planiores (less deep, less rounding)

plēbs, -is (or plēbēs, -eī), f., the common people

plēnē, adv., fully, entirely, completely

plēnus, -a, -um, adj., full

plērusque, -aque, -umque, adj., only in plur., most of, very many.
plērumque, acc. sing. as adv., generally, usually, for the most part, very often
plumbum, -ī, n., lead.— plumbum album
plurimus, see multus
plūs, see multus
pluteus, -ī, m., screen, cover (mova-
| ble, for defense), bulwark, defense, breastwork
pōculum, -ī [cf. potus, drink], n.,
drinking cup
poena, -ae, f., penalty; punishment
pollex, -icis, m., the thumb
pollicior, -licēri, -licitus, dep., trans.,
offer, promise: liberaliter (make liberal offers)
pollicitātīō, -onis [polliceor], f., offer,
promise
pollicitus, -a, -um, p. p. of pollicior
Pompēius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile or family name.— Esp.: 1. Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus, the great rival of Caesar, consul with Marcus Crassus in 55 B.C.— 2. Gnaeus Pompeius, an interpreter of Quintus Titurius Sabinus
pondus, -eris, n., weight
pōnō, pōnerē, posuī, positus, trans.,
lay down, place, put: castra (pitch); praesidium (station, but see below).— Fig., place, lay, make depend on: in fuga praesidium and spem salutis in virtute (find, found, seek).— positus, -a, -um, p. p., situated, lying, depending on
pōns, pontis, m., bridge
populātiō, -onis [populor], f., a plun-
dering, raid
populor, -āri, -ātus, dep., trans.,
ravage, devastate
populus, -ī, m., people, nation, tribe:
populus Romanus (the official designation of the Roman state)
porrō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctus, trans.,
stretch forth: porrecta loca pertinent (stretch out in extent)
porrē, adv., furthermore, further, then
porta, -ae, f., gate
portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., carry,
bring, convey
portōrium, -ī, n., duty, toll
portus, -ūs, m., harbor, haven, port
poscō, poscere, poposci, no p. p.,
trans., demand, require, claim
positus, -a, -um, p. p. of pono
possessō, -onis [possideo], f., posses-
sion, occupation; possessions, lands
possideō, -sidēre, -sēdi, -sessus [por
(= pro), sedeo, sit], trans., occupy
(in a military sense), possess, hold
possum, posse, potui, no p. p., irr.,
intrans., be able, can, etc.: pluri-
| mum posse, be most powerful, have very great influence; tantum potest, has so much weight, power, influence; largiter posse, have
| great influence; multitudine posse, be strong in numbers; equitatu
| nihil posse, have no strength in cavalry; quicquid possunt, what-
| ever power they have; quid virtute possent, what they could do
post — praecipio
by valor; fieri posse, be possible; ut spatium intercedere posset (might intervene); quam maximum potest, the greatest possible post, adv., and prep. with acc., behind, after: post se, in their rear
postea, adv., afterwards
postquam, conj., after
posterus, -a, -um, adj., the next, later: postero die, the next day;
in posterum, the next day. Plur. as noun, posterity.—postrēmus, -a, -um, superl., last.—postrēmō, abl. as adv., lastly, finally
postpōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positus, trans., place behind, postpone: omnibus rebus postpositis, disregarding everything else
postquam, conj., after
postrēmus, see posterus
postrōdiēs [posterus-dies], adv., the next day: postrōdīē eius diei, the next day after that
postulātum, -ī [n. p.p. of postulo], n., demand, request, claim
postulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., claim, ask, request, require: tempus anni (make necessary)
potēs, -entis [pres. p. of possum], adj., powerful, influential
potentātus, -ūs [potens], m., the chief power, supremacy
potentia, -ae [potens], f., power, authority (not official or legal)
potestās, -ātis [potis, able], f., power (official, cf. potentia, and civil, not military, cf. imperium), control, ability, opportunity, chance: sui potestatem facere, give a chance at them, give an opportunity to fight them
potior, potīri, potitus, dep., intrans., become master of, get the control of (abl. or gen.)
potius, -us, -ōris, adj., preferable.—
potitus, acc. as adv., rather, preferably
potitus, -a, -um, p.p. of potior
praē, prep. with abl., before, in comparison with.—Esp. with words implying hindrance, for, on account of (some obstacle).—In composition, before others, very, before, at the head of
praecātus, -a, -um, adj., sharpened to a point, pointed
praebēō, praebēre, praebuī, praebitus [praeb-aheeō], trans., offer, present, furnish
praecaveō, -cāvere, -cāvi, -cautus, intrans., take care beforehand, take precaution, be on one’s guard
praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessua, trans., go before; excel, surpass praecēpa, -cipitis [praec-capit], adj., headlong, in haste: locus praecēpa, a steep incline, a precipitous place
praecipientum, -ī [p.p. of praecipio], n., an instruction, an order
praecipīō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus [praec-capio], trans., take beforehand, anticipate; order, give instructions
praecipitō — praesum

praecipitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [praec-cepst], trans., throw headlong: se (plunge headlong)
praecipuē [praecipuus, special], adv., especially
praeciūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus [praec-claudō], trans., shut off, barricade
Praecōninus, -ī, m., a Roman family name
praeda, -ae, f., booty, prey, plunder
praedicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., proclaim, assert, describe, boast
praedor, -āri, -ātus [praeda], dep., intrans., plunder, take booty
praefectus, -a, -um, p. p. of praeficio.
—as noun, see praeficio
praeserō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, irr., trans., place before, esteem above, prefer to (with quam): se alicui (show one’s self better than)
praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [praef-facio], trans., put before, place in command of, set over.—praefectus, -ī, m. of p. p. as noun, captain (esp. of cavalry), commander, officer
praefigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixus, trans., fix in front
praemittō, -mittere, -misī, -missus, trans., send forward, send on, send ahead
praemium, -ī, n., reward, prize, distinction
praecoccupō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., take beforehand
praeprotō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., choose rather, prefer
praeparō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., prepare beforehand
praepōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positus, trans., put in command, set over
praerumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus, trans., break off.—praeruptus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., precipitous
praescībō, -scribere, -scripti, -scriptus, trans., order, direct, give directions
praescriptum, -ī [n. p. p. of praescibo], n., an order, orders
praesēns, -entis, see praesum
praesentia, -ae [praesens], f., presence, the present moment: in praesentia, for the moment, at the moment
praesertim, adv., especially, particularly
praesidium, -ī [praesideo, sit before], n., a guard, garrison, a force; protection, safety: in fuga praesidium ponere, seek safety in flight
praestō, -stāre, -stītī, -stātus, trans. and intrans., stand before, excel, be superior: praestat, it is better.—Also, causatively, furnish, display: officium (discharge, perform)
presē, adv., on hand, ready: prae-sto esse, be waiting for, meet
praesum, -esse, -fūl, -futūrus, irr., intrans., be in front, be at the head of, be in command: magistratui (hold).—praesēns, -entis, pres. p., present, immediate: pluribus praesentibus, in the presence of many
praetor, adv., and prep. with acc., along by, past, beyond. — Fig., except, beside, contrary to praeterea, adv., furthermore, besides praetereō, -ire, -il, -itus, irr., trans. and intrans., go by, pass by, pass over. — praeteritus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., past. — Esp., praeterita, n. plur., the past praetermittō, -mittere, -missi, -missus, trans., let slip, omit, neglect praetor, -ōris [praeco, go before], m., commander. — Esp., prætor, one of a class of magistrates at Rome: legatus pro praetore (lieutenant in command, acting as a praetor) praetorius, -a, -um [praetor], adj., of a prætor (in all its senses): praetoria cohors, the bodyguard of a commander praecūrō, -ūrire, -ussi, -ūstus, trans., burn at the end premō, premère, pressi, pressus, trans., press hard, attack fiercely, harass, oppress: se ipsi (crowd, impede) prēndō, prēndere, prēndi, prēensus, trans., seize, take, grasp prētium, -i, n., price, cost, value † prex, precīs (sing. in dat., acc., and abl. only; plur. entire), f., prayer, entreaty, imprecation pridiē, adv., the day before primipilus [prīmus-pilus], m., the first centurion primō [abl. of prīmus], adv., at first primum [acc. of prīmus], adv., first, in the first place: cum primum, as soon as; quam primum, as soon as possible prīmus, see prior princeps, -ipis [prīmus-capio], adj., first, chief, foremost: locus (chief, highest); ea princeps persolvit (was the first to). — Often as noun, leader, chief: legationis (head) principātus, -ūs [prīceptus], m., foremost position, first place, leadership prior, -us, -ōris, adj., former, before: priores, those in front. — prīus, n. as adv., before (see also priusquam). — prīmus, -a, -um, superl., first: agmen (front); in primis, especially. — See primo and primum prīstīnus, -a, -um [prītus], adj., old, former: prīstīnus dies, the day before prīus, see prior priusquam, conj., earlier than, before. Often separated, prīus . . . quam privātim [privatus], adv., privately, as private persons privātus, -a, -um [p.p. of prīvō, deprive], adj., private, personal prō (prōd in some compounds), prep. with abl., in front of, before. Hence, in place of, instead of, for, as, on behalf of: pro explorato, ascertained, as certain. — Also, in view of, in accordance with, in proportion to, considering, in return for, for.
In composition, before, forth, away, for, down (as falling forward)
probō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., approve, test, prove; show, be satisfied with
prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, intrans., go forward, advance: longius (go to a distance)
Procillus, -ī, m., a Roman family name
prōcōnsul, -ulis, m., proconsul, ex-consul (during his term of service abroad)
procul, adīv., at a distance, afar, from afar
prōcūmbō, -cumbere, -cubui, no p.p., [pro-cumbo, lie], intrans., fall, sink down, lie down; incline, slope
prōcūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., care for, have charge of, attend to
prōcurrō; -currere, -currī, -cursūrus, intrans., run forward, charge, rush out
prōdeō, -ire, -iī, -itūrus [prod (see pro), eo], irr., intrans., go forth, come forth, come out, go forward
prōdītīō, -ōnis [prodo], f., treason, treachery
prōdītor, -ōris [prodo], m., traitor, betray
prōdītus, -a, -um, p.p. of prodo
prōdō, -dere, -dīdi, -dītus [pro-do, put], trans., give forth, publish, betray, transmit, hand down
prōdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductus, trans., lead out, bring out, draw up (troops); protract, prolong
proellor, -ārī, -ātus [proellium], dep., intrans., fight (in war)
proellium, -ī, n., battle, contest, skirmish: committere (engage, join battle, risk a battle)
profectīō, -ōnis [proficiscor], f., a setting out, departure
profectus, -a, -um, p.p. of proficiscor
prōfectus, -a, -um, p.p. of proficio
prōficio, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [profacīo], trans. and intrans., accomplish: satis ad laudem profectum est, enough has been done for glory
proficiscor, -fiscīscī, -fectus, dep., intrans., start, leave, depart, set out: ad proficiscendum pertinere (to a journey)
profiteor, -fītēri, -fessus [pro-fateor, confess], dep., trans. and intrans., declare publicly
prōflīgō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., dash to the ground; put to rout, rout
prōfluō, -fluere, -flūxi, no p.p., intrans., flow forth, rise
profugiō, -fugere, -fugi, -fugītūrus, intrans., flee, escape
prōgnātus, -a, -um [pro-natus, p.p. of nascor], adj., sprung from: prognati ex, descendants of
prōgredior, -gredi, -gressus [pro-gradior, step, go], dep., intrans., go forward, march forward; proceed, go
prōgressus, -a, -um, p.p. of progradior
probībō, -hibēre, -hibīul, -hibitus [pro-habeo], trans., keep off, repel, stop, prevent, forbid; protect
prūcīō — prūtūbō

prōcīō, -icere, -lōci, -iectus [pro-
locō], trans., throw forward, throw
away, abandon: se ex navi (leap)
proinde, adv., therefore, hence
prōmiscuē, adv., in common
prōmittō, -mittere, -mītī, -missus,
trans., let grow: promissō capillo
sunt, they wear long hair
prōmoveō, -movēre, -mōvi, -motus,
trans., move forward, advance,
push forward
prōmptus, -a, -um, adj., ready, quick,
active
prōmunturium, -i, n., headland
prōnē, adv., with a slope
prōnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans.,
make known, communicate, give
orders, declare, make proclamation
prope, prep. with acc., near.— Fig.,
almost, nearly.— propius, comp.,
adv., nearer: propius tumulum
(as prep.).— proximē, superl.,
adv., lately, last
prōpellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsus,
trans., drive away, repulse, rout,
dislodge, force back
properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, intrans.,
hasten, hurry
propinquitās, -ātis [propinquus], f.,
vicinity; propinquitates fluminum
(positions near).— Esp., nearness
in blood, relationship
propinquus, -a, -um, adj., near at
hand, near.— Esp. by blood, related.
— As noun in plur., relatives
propior, -ius, -ōris [prope], adj.,
nearer.— proximus, superl., near-
est, next, neighboring: bellum
(last).— With force of prep.,
proximi Rhenum, nearest the
Rhine
prōponē, -ponere, -posui, -positus,
trans., place before; offer, put
in the way, make known, state,
represent
prōprium, -ēs, -um [prope], adj., of
one’s own: fines (particular); hoc
proprium virtūtis (a peculiar prop-
erty, a mark)
propter [prope], adv., and prep.
with acc., close by.— Also, on
account of
propterea, adv., on this account.—
With quod, because
prōpugnātor, -ōris, m., defender
prōpugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, in-
trans., rush out (fighting), dis-
charge missiles (ex silvis)
prōpulsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans.,
repel, keep off, drive off
prūra, -ae, f., prow (of a ship)
prōruō, -ruere, -rui, -rutus, trans.,
dash down, overthrow, demolish
prōruitūs, -a, -um, p.p. of prōruo
prōsequor, -sequī, -secūtus, dep.,
trans., pursue, escort; address
prōspectus, -ūs [prospicio], m., out-
look, view
prōspiciō, -spicere, -spexi, -spectus,
trans., look forward, look out;
provide for, take care
prōtinus, adv., straightway, forth-
with, at once
prōturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans.,
drive in confusion, drive off, dis-
lodge
prōvēctus, -ae, -um, p. p. of proveho
prōvehō, -vehōre, -vexi, -vectus,
trans., carry forward.—In pass.,
be carried forth, sail: leni Africo
prōvēctus (sail with, be driven by)
prōvideō, -vidēre, -vidī, -visus, trans.,
foresee, take care, provide, ar-
range beforehand: satis est pro-
visum, sufficient provision has
been made
prōvincia, -ae, f., office (of a com-
mander or governor), province
(in general); also, a province
(governed by a Roman magis-
trate).—Esp., the Province (of
Gaul)
prōvisus, -ae, -um, p. p. of provideo
prōvōlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, intrans.,
rush out, fly out (of cavalry etc.)
proximē, see prope
proximus, see proplor
prōdentia, -ae [prudens, foreseeing],
f., foresight, discretion
Ptiānii, -ōrum, m. plur., a people
of Aquitania
pūblīcē, adv., in the name of the
state, publicly
pūblīcus, -ae, -um [populus], adj., of
the people, of the state, public:
reepublica, commonwealth, state
Pūblius, -ī, m., a Roman prænomen
pudor, -ōris, m., sense of shame,
sense of honor
puer, -i, m., boy.—Plur., children
(of either sex): a pueris, from
childhood
puerflīs, -e [puer], adj., of a child:
aetas (of childhood)
pugna, -ae, f., fight: ad pugnam,
for fighting
pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, intrans.,
fight, engage.—Often impers. in
pass., pugnatum est etc., they
fought, the fighting continued
pulcher, -cha, -chrum, adj., beauti-
ful; fine, noble, splendid
pulsus, -ae, -um, p. p. of pello
pulsus, -ūs [pello], m., stroke, beat:
pulsu remorum praestare (the
working etc.)
pulvis, -eris, m., dust
puppis, -is, f., stern
pūrgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, intrans., clean,
clear; excuse, free from suspi-
cion
putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, intrans., think,
suppose, consider
Pyrēnaeus, -ae, -um, adj., only with
montes, the Pyrenees mountains,
between France and Spain
Q., abbr. for Quintus
quā, rel. adv., by which (way),
where
quadrāgēnī, -ae, -a, distrib. num.
adj., plur., forty each, forty (each
being often omitted in English)
quadrāgintā, indecl. num. adj., forty
quadrēntī, -ae, -a, num. adj.,
plur., four hundred
quæror, quaerere, quaesīvī, quae-
sītus, trans., search for, look for,
inquire about, inquire, ask: eadem
(make the same inquiries)
quaeṣtiō, -ōnis [quaero], f., investi-
gation
Latin–English Vocabulary

quaestor — quiētus

quaestor, -ōris [quaerō], m., quaestor
(the Roman officer who had charge of the finances of an army)

quaestus, -ūs [quaerō], m., acquisition, gain

quālis, -ē, interrog. adj., of what sort? qualis ascensus (what is the nature of?)

quam, adv. and conj.: 1. Interrog., how? — 2. Rel., as, than: praefere quam (rather than) — Often with superlatives, as ... as possible: quam maximus, the greatest possible; quam maxime, very much

quamdiū (often written separately, see diū), adv.: 1. Interrog., how long? — 2. Rel., as long, as long as (with antecedent omitted)

quam ob rem, adv. phrase: 1. Interrog., why? — 2. Rel., on which account, for which reason

quamvis, adv., as you please, however, no matter how

quando, adv., at any time: si quando, if ever, whenever

quantus, -a, -um, adj.: 1. Interrog., how great? how much? quantum boni, how much good? quantae civitates (how important?) — 2. Rel., as great as, as much as: tantum ... quantum, so much ... as

quantusvis, -avis, -umvis, adj., as great as you please, however great

quā re, adv. phrase, wherefore, therefore, on account of which (circumstance etc.), why

quārtus, -a, -um [quattuor], num. adj., fourth: quartus decimus, fourteenth

quattuor, indecl. num. adj., four

quattuordecim, indecl. num. adj., fourteen

-quē, conj., and. — Sometimes connecting the general with the particular, and in general, and other

quem ad modum, adv. phrase, how, just as, as

queror, querī, questus, dep., trans. and intrans., complain, bewail, lament

questus, -a, -um, p.p. of queror

quī, quae, quod, rel. pron., who, which, that. — Often where a dem. pron. is used in English, this, that. — Often implying an antecedent, he who, etc.: ea quae, things which, whatever. — quō, abl. of measure of difference as adv., the (more, less, etc.)

quicquam, see quisquam

quicumque, quae-, quod-, indef. rel. adj. and pron., whoever, whichever, whatever

quidam, quae-, quod- (quid-), indef. adj. and pron., a certain, certain, a kind of: artificio quodam, a kind of trick; quidam ex militibus (one)

quidem, adv., indeed, at least, certainly: ne ... quidem, not even, not ... either

quiēs, -ētēs, f., rest, sleep, repose

quīētus, -a, -um [p.p. of quiesco, keep quiet], adj., at rest, quiet, peaceable
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

quīn — rādīx

quīn [qui (old abl.) -ne], conj.: 1. Interrog., how not? — 2. Rel., by which not: quīn etiam, nay even, in fact. — After negative verbs of hindrance and doubt, but that, that, from (doing a thing), to (do a thing): non dubito quīn, I do not doubt that

quīnam, quae-, quod-, cuius-, inter-rog. pron., who? etc. (emph.): quibusnam manibus (with what possible?)

quīndecim, indecl. num. adj., fifteen

quinquageāntā, indecl. num. adj., fifty

quinque, indecl. num. adj., five

quinquerēmis, -is, f., quinquereme (a vessel with five banks of oars)

quīntus, -a, -um [quinque], num. adj., fifth

Quintus, -i [quintus], m., a Roman prænomen


quīspiam, quae-, quid-, cuius-, indef. adj. and pron., any, any one, anything

quīsquam, no fem., quid- (quic-), cuius-, indef. adj. and pron., any, any one, anything

quīsequē, quae-, quid-, cuius-, indef. adj. and pron., each, each one, every

quīsquīs, quaequae, quicquīd, cuius-
cuius, indef. rel. adj. and pron., whoever, whatever

quīvīs, quae-, quid-, cuius-, indef. adj. and pron., any you please, any one, any whatever (affirmative), any (whatever)

1. quō, see quī

2. quō, adv.: 1. Interrog., whither? — 2. Rel., whither, into which, as far as. — 3. Indef., anywhere

3. quō, conj., in order that (with comparatives), that: magis eo quam quo (than that, than because). — Esp., quō minus, that not, so that not, from (doing a thing)

quoad, conj., as far as, until, as long as

quod, conj., because, insasmuch as, in that, as for the fact that: quod si, but if

quō minus, see 3 quo

quoniam [quom (= cum), iam], conj., insasmuch as, since, as

quoque, adv., following the word it affects, also, as well

quōqueversus or quōquōversus, adv., in every direction, all about

quot, indecl. adj.: 1. Interrog., how many? — 2. Rel., as many, as many as, the number which

quotannīs [quot-annus], adv., every year, yearly

quotīs, adv.: 1. Interrog., how often? how many times? — 2. Rel., as often, as often as

rādīx, -īcis, f., root. — Plur., roots (of a tree); foot (of a mountain)
rādō, rādere, rāsi, rāsus, trans., shave, scrape
raeda, -ae, f., wagon
rāmus, -I, m., branch, bough
rapidītās, -ātis [rápidus, swift], f., swiftness, rapidity
rapīna, -ae [rapio, seize], f., plunder.
— Plur., plundering
rārus, -a, -um, adj., scattered, in small bodies (of soldiers), few; rare, unusual
rāsus, -a, -um, p.p. of rado
ratiō, -ōnis [reor, think], f., a reckoning, an account. — Also, calculation, reason, prudence, terms, a plan, science, a reason, a manner, a method, a consideration: rationem habere, take an account, have regard to; omnibus rationibus, in all ways; rationem habere ut, take care that etc.; rationem habere frumentandi (take measures for etc.)
ratis, -is, f., raft
Rauraci, -rum, m. plur., a tribe on the upper Rhine
re-, red-, prefix, back, again, away
rebellīō, -ōnis [re-bellium], f., renewal of war, uprising
recēns, -entis, adj., new, fresh, late
receptāculum, -i [recepto, take back], n., retreat, place of refuge
receptus, -a, -um, p.p. of recipio
receptus, -ūs [recipio], m., retreat, way of retreat, refuge
recidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cāsūrus [recado], intrans., fall again, fall back, upon
recipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus [recipio], trans., take back, get back, recover, take in, receive, admit. — With reflexive, retreat, withdraw
reclinō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., with e or in the pass., lean: reclinatus, leaning
rēctē, adv., rightly
rēctus, -a, -um [p.p. of rego], adj., straight: recta regione, in a straight direction, parallel with
recooperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., get back, recover, regain
recūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [re-causa], trans. and intrans., refuse, reject, repudiate, object to; make objections; followed by quin or quo minus (refuse to); periculum (refuse to incur)
red-, see re-
redactus, -a, -um, p.p. of redigo
redditus, -a, -um, p.p. of reddo
reddō, -dere, -didi, -ditus [red-do (put)], trans., give back, restore, pay, render: supplicationem (offer)
redemptus, -a, -um, p.p. of redimo
redeō, -ire, -ii, -ittūrus, irr., intrans., go back, return, come down again: summa (be referred)
redigō, -igere, -ēgi, -āctus [red-ago], trans., bring back, reduce, render, bring under, make
redimō, -imere, -ēmi, -emptus [red-emo], trans., buy back, redeem, purchase, buy
redintegrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [red-integrō, make whole], trans., renew, restore, revive
reditū, -ōnis [redeō], f., return
reditus, -ūs [redeō], m., return
Redonēs, -um, m. plur., a tribe of northwestern Gaul
redūcō, -dūcere, -düxi, -ductus, trans., lead back, bring back, draw back, draw in, extend back
referō, referre, rettulī, relātus, irr., trans., bring back, return, report.
— Exp.: gratiam (make return, show one's gratitude); pedem (retreat, draw back)
reficīō, -ficere, -fēci, -fectus [re-facio], trans., repair, refresh: se ex labore (rest); exercitum (allow to recover)
refrāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of refringo
refringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctus [re-frango], trans., break away, break in (portas): vim fluminis (break)
refugiō, -fugere, -fugi, -fugiturus, intrans., run away, escape
regiō, -ōnis, f., country, district: recta regione, straight along, parallel regnum, -i [cf. rego], n., kingdom, royal power, throne.— Plur., royal power
regō, regere, rēxi, rēctus, trans., direct, manage, rule, have control of
reiciō, -icere, -iēci, -iectus [re-iacio], trans., throw back, hurl back, drive back, throw away, drive off
relanguescō, -languescere, -languī, no p. p., intrans., be weakened, be deadened
relātus, -a, -um, p. p. of refero
relēgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., remove, separate
relictus, -a, -um, p. p. of relinquo
religiō, -ōnis [re-īgo, bind], f., service of the gods, superstition, religion.— Plur., religious matters
relinquō, -linquere, -limī, -lictus, trans., leave behind, abandon, leave.— Pass., be left, remain
reliquus, -a, -um, adj., left, remaining, the rest, the others, future: nihil est reliqui, there is nothing left; nihil ad celeritatem sibi reliqui fecerunt, made the greatest possible speed
remaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsūrus, intrans., remain behind, remain, stay
remex, -igis [remus], m., oarsman, rower
Rēmī, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe of the Belgae about Rheims
rēmigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, intrans., row
remigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, intrans., move back, return
reminiscor, -miniscī, no p. p., dep., trans. and intrans., remember
remittō, -mittere, -missī, -missus, trans., let go back, send back, throw back; relax, cease to use, give up: remissioribus frigoribus (less intense)
remollēscō, -mollēscere, no perf., no p. p., intrans., soften, become feeble
removeō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, trans., move back, move away,
remüneror — respondeó

send away, remove. — remotus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., far away, remote
remüneror, -äri, -ätus [re-munus], dep., trans., repay, requite
rēmus, -i, m., oar
Rēmus, -i, m., one of the Remi
rēnō, -ōnia, m., skin, pelt
renovō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cf. novus], trans., renew
renǔntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., bring back word, report, proclaim
reppellō, repellere, repuli, repulsus, trans., drive back, repulse: ab hac aper repulsī, disappointed in this hope
repente, adv., suddenly
repentinus, -a, -um [repens, sudden], adj., sudden, hasty.— repentinō, abl. as adv., suddenly
reperiō, reperīre, reperī, repertus [re-pario, get], trans., find out, discover: reperti sunt multi, there were many
repetō, -petere, -petīvi, -petitus, trans., seek again, demand back, ask for: poenas (infllict, exact)
reportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., carry back
reposcō, -poscere, no perf., no p. p., trans., ask again, demand again, demand
repraesentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., make present, do at once
reprehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hensus, trans., blame, censure
repressus, -a, -um, p. p. of reprimō
reprimō, -primere, -pressi, -pressus [re-premo], trans., check
repudiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., spurn, refuse, reject
repugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, intrans., resist; be in opposition
repulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of repello
rēs, rel. f., property, business, affair, matter, thing (in the most general sense), fact, occurrence, event, case, action, act.— Often to be translated from the context.—
Esp.: imperitus rerum, ignorant of the world; commutatio rerum, change of fortune; res adversae, adversity; res secundae, prosperity; res publica, commonwealth; res familiaris, property; res miliaris, warfare; res frumentaria, grain supply; novae res, revolution
rescindō, -scindere, -scidi, -scissus, trans., cut away, break down, destroy
resciscō, -sciscere, -scivi, -scitus, trans., find out, learn, discover
rescribō, -scribere, -scripsero, -scriptus, trans., transfer (by writing)
reservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., keep back, reserve, hold in reserve
resistō, -sistere, -stīti, no p. p., intrans., stand back, stop, withstand, resist, remain
respičō, -spicere, -spexi, -spectus [re-specio, look], trans. and intrans., look back, look back at, consider, regard
respondeó, -spondere, -spondī, -spōn- sus, trans. and intrans., reply, answer
LATIN–ENGLISH VOCABULARY

respondum, -i [n. -p. p. of respondeo], n., reply. — Plur., reply (of several parts)

rēs pūblica, see res

respuō, -spuere, -spui, no p. p., trans., spit out; spurn, reject

restinctus, -a, -um, p. p. of restinguō

restinguō, -stinguere, -stīnxi, -stinctus, trans., extinguish

restituō, -stituere, -stītui, -stītūtus [re-statuo], trans., replace, restore, make anew

retentus, -a, -um, p. p. of retineō

retineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentus [re-teneo], trans., hold back, restrain (quin, from doing something): memoriam (preserve); Gallos (arrest)

retrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -trāctus, trans., drag back, bring back

revelle, -vellere, -velli, -vulsus, trans., tear away, pull away

revertō, -vertere, -verti, -versus, intrans., return (in perf. tenses). — Pass. as deponent in pres. tenses, return, go back, come back

revincio, -vincire, -vinxi, -vinctus, trans., make fast, fasten, bind

revocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., call away, call off, recall

rēx, rēgis, m., king

Rhēnus, -ī, m., the Rhine

Rhodanus, -ī, m., the Rhone

ripa, -ae, f., bank

rivus, -ī, m., brook, stream

rōbur, -oris, n., oak

rogō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., ask, request, ask for

Rōma, -ae, f., Rome

Rōmānus, -a, -um, m., Roman. — Masc. as noun, a Roman

rōstrum, -i [rodo, gnaw], n., beak.

—Esp. of a ship, beak, ram

rota, -ae, f., wheel

rubus, -ī, m., bramble

Rūfus, -ī, m., a Roman praenomen

rumor, -ōris, m., rumor, report

rūpēs, -is, f., cliff

rūrsus, adv., back, again, in turn

Rutēnī, -orum, m. plur., a tribe on the borders of Provence

Sabīnus, -ī, m., a Roman family name

Sabis, -is, m., a river of Belgic Gaul, flowing into the Meuse, now the Sambre

sacrificium, -ī [sacrum, sacred thing, facio], n., sacrifice

saepe, adv., often: minime saepe, most rarely. — saepius, comp., many times, repeatedly

saepenumerō, adv., oftentimes, many times

saepēs, -is [cf. saepio, hedge in], f., hedge

saevio, -īre, -ii, -ītūrōs [saevus, fierce], intrans., be angry, rage, be violent

sagitta, -ae, f., arrow

sagittārius, -ī [sagitta], m., archer, Bowman

salūs, -ūtis, f., health, well-being, welfare, safety

sanciō, sancire, sānxī, sāntus [cf. sacer, sacred], trans., make sacred, solemnly establish (by law). —
sanguis — Sedusii

sánctus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., holy, sacred, inviolable
sanguis, -inis, m., blood
sánitás, -átis [sánus], f., sound mind, good sense
Santonés, -um, m. plur., a tribe on the western coast of Gaul
Santonés, see Santones
sánus, -a, -um, adj., sane, discreet:
   nihil pro sano facere (nothing discreet)
sapió, -ere, -i, no p.p., trans. and intrans., be wise, understand (what to do)
sarcina, -ae [sarcio, sew up], f., pack.
   — Plur., baggage (soldiers’ packs)
sarmentum, -i, n., only in plur., fagots, brushwood
satis, adv., enough, sufficiently.—Often with partitive, equivalent to a noun or adj., enough, sufficient: satis habere, consider sufficient, be satisfied
satisfació, -facere, -feci, -factúrus, intrans., satisfy, make amends, excuse one’s self, apologize
satisfactió, -ónis [satisfacíó], f., apology
saucius, -a, -um, adj., wounded
saxum, -i, n., rock
scláce, -árum [scando, climb], f. plur., ladder, scaling ladder
scapha, -ae, f., skiff, boat
scleráteus, -a, -um [sclerus], adj., villainous, accursed
sclerus, -eris, n., crime, wickedness
scienter [scienś, pres. p. of scio], adv., knowingly, skillfully
scientia, -ae [scienś, pres. p. of scio], f., knowledge, skill
scindó, scindere, scidi, scissus, trans., cut, tear, tear up
sció, scire, scivi, scitus, trans., know
scópió, -ónis, m., scorpion (a machine for throwing darts)
scribó, scribere, scripts, scriptus, trans. and intrans., write
scítum, -i, n., shield
scít, see sui
sebum, -i, n., tallow
secó, secäre, secúi, sectus, trans., cut, reap
sécretó [secrétus, separate], adv., in private, privately
sectó, -ónis [secó], f., booty
sectúra, -ae [secú], f., mine, shaft
secundum, see secundus
secundus, -a, -um [sequor], adj., following, second; favorable, successful: secundiores res, greater prosperity.—secundum, neut. acc. as prep. with acc., along, in the direction of, in accordance with: secundum flumen, downstream
secútus, -a, -um, p.p. of sequor
sed, conj., but, but yet,
sedecim [sex-decem], indecl. num. adj., sixteen
sédés, -is [sedeo, sit], f., seat. Hence, abode, settlement
séditiosus, -a, -um [sedítio, sedition], adj., seditious, factious
Sedúni, -órum, m. plur., a tribe of the Alps
Sedusii, -órum, m. plur., a tribe of Germans
Sergonax, -actis, m., a British king
Sergontiaci, -orum, m. plur., a tribe of Britain
Segusiavi, -orum, m. plur., a people of Gaul west of the Rhone
semel, num. adv., once: semel
atque iterum, more than once, again and again
sementis, -is [semen, seed], f., a sowing: sementes facere, sow grain
sémila, -ae, f., path
semper, adv., all the time, always
senātor, -āris [senex], m., senator
senātus, -ās [senex], m., senate.—Esp., the senate (of Rome)
senex, gen. senis, adj., old.—As noun, old man
sēnī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., plur., six each, six
Semonēs, -um, m. plur., a Gallic tribe on the Seine
sententia, -ae [sentio], f., opinion, sentiment, feeling, purpose; a judgment, a sentence
sentō, sentire, sēnē, sēnus, trans., perceive, know, see, think, learn about, learn
sentis, -is, m., brier
sēparātum, adv., separately, privately
sēparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., separate.—Esp., sēparātus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., separate
septem, indecl. num. adj., seven
septentriōnēs, -um [septem-triones, plow oxen], m. plur., the seven plow oxen (the stars of the Great Bear).—Hence, the north
septimās, -ae, -a, num. adj., the seventh
septingenti, -ae, -a, num. adj., plur., seven hundred
septuāgintā, indecl. num. adj., seventy
sepultūra, -ae [sepelio, bury], f., burial, burying
Sēquana, -ae, f., the Seine
Sēquanae, -ae, -um, adj., of the Sequani (a tribe of Gaul on the Rhone).—Masc. plur. as noun, the Sequani
sequor, sequi, secūtus, dep., trans., follow, accompany: poena (be inflicted on); fidem (come under, surrender to)
Ser., abbr. for Servius
sermō, -onis, m., conversation, talk
serō, serere, sēvī, satus, trans., plant, sow
sērō, adv., too late
Sertorius, -i, m., a Roman gentile name
servilis, -e [servus], adj., of a slave, servile: tumultus (the servile revolt, the war of the gladiators under Spartacus in 73—71 B.C.)
servō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [servus], intrans., be a slave to: rumoribus (be blindly guided by, follow)
servītus, -ūtis [servus], f., slavery, servitude
Servius, -ī, m., a Roman praenomen
servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., keep, preserve: praesidia (hold, maintain)
servus, -ī, m., slave
sescenti, see sexcenti
sœsæ, see sui
sæsquipedàlis, -e [† sesquiped- (a foot and a half) + alis], adj., a foot and a half (thick)
sætius, adv., less: nihilo sætius, nevertheless
seu, see sive
severitäs, -ätis [severus, strict], f., strictness, harshness
sævocō, -äre, -ävi, -ätus [sē-, away, vocō], trans., call aside
sex, indecl. num. adj., six
sexägintä, indecl. num. adj., sixty
sexcenti (ses-), -ae, -a, num. adj., plur., six hundred
Sextius, -i, m., a Roman gentile name
si, conj., if. — Esp., to see if, whether: id si fieret, should this happen
sibi, see sui
Sibusätēs, -um, m. plur., a people of Aquitania
sic, adv., so, in this manner, in such a manner, thus: sic . . . ut, so . . . that, so well . . . that. — sicuti, as conj., just as, just as if
siccitäs, -ätis [siccus, dry], f., dryness, drought, dry weather
sicut (sicuti), see sic
sidus, -eris, n., star
signifer, -fēri [signum-fero], m., standard bearer
significātiō, -ōnis [significo], f., signal, warning
significō, -äre, -āvi, -ätus [signum-facio], trans., make signs, indicate, make known, show
signum, -i, n., sign, signal. — Esp., standard (for military purposes). — Phrases: signa inferre, advance to attack, charge; conversa signa inferre, change front and charge; se continere ad signa, keep the ranks; ad signa convenire, join the army; ad signa consistere, rally round the standard
silentium, -i [silens, silent], n., stillness, silence. — silentiō, abl., in silence, silently
Silius, -i, m., a Roman gentile name
silva, -ae, f., forest, woods
silvester, -tris, -tre [silva], adj., woody, wooded
similis, -e, adj., like, similar
simul, adv., at the same time: simul atque (or without atque), as soon as
simulācrum, -i [simulo], n., image, likeness
simulātiō, -ōnis [simulo], f., pretense, deceit
simulō, -äre, -āvi, -ätus, trans., pretend
sin, conj., but if
sincērē, adv., honestly, truly
sine, prep. with abl., without
signillātim [singuli], adv., singly, one by one
singulāris, -e [singuli], adj., solitary, single; unique, extraordinary
singulû, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., plur., one at a time, single, each, one by one. — Often to denote distribution, one to each:
Latin–English Vocabulary

sinister — statim

ab singulis legionibus singulos legatos discedere (each from his);
inter singulas legiones (between each two)
sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., left: sub sinistra (manu), on the left
sinistrorsus [sinister], adv., to the left
sinus, -i. m., situation, position
sive (seu), conj., if either, or if: sive . . . sive, either . . . or, whether . . . or
socer, -erī, m., father-in-law
socius, -i [cf. sequor], m., companion, ally, comrade
sōlīa, m., sun. — Also personified, Sol, the Sun
sōlāciōnum, -ī, n., consolation, comfort
soldurium, -i, m., follower
soleō, solēre, solitus, semi-dep., intrans., be wont, be accustomed
sōlitudō, -inis [solus], f. loneliness. Hence, wilderness
sollertia, -ae [sollers, skillful], f., skill, ingenuity
solllicitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., stir up, instigate, offer bribes to, tempt
solum, -i, n., soil, foundation, bottom, earth: solum agrī, bare ground
sōlus, -a, -um, adj., alone, only. — sōlum, n. acc. as adv., alone, only
solūtus, -a, -um, p.p. of solvo
solviō, solvere, solvi, solūtus, trans., unbind, loose. — Esp., with or without navis, set sail
soror, -ōris, f., sister: soror ex matre, half sister
sors, sortis, f., lot (for divination), chance
Sōtiātēs, -um, m. plur., a people of Aquitania
spatium, -i, n., space, extent, distance; time, space of time: quantum fuit diei spatium, as much as there was time for
speciēs, -ēī [specio, see], f., sight, show, appearance
spectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [specio, see], trans. and intrans., look at, regard; face
speculātor, -āris [speculor], m., spy, scout
speculatōrius, -a, -um [speculator], adj., scouting, reconnoitering (navigia)
speculor, -āri, -ātus, dep., trans. and intrans., spy, reconnoiter: speculandi causa, as a spy
spērō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [spes], trans., hope, hope for, expect
spēs, -ei, f., hope, expectation: summa in spem venire, have the greatest hope
spiritus, -ūs [spiro, breathe], m., breath. — Also, spirit. Hence, in plur., pride, arrogance, temper
spoliō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., rob, deprive
sponte (abl.), f., of one’s own accord, voluntarily
stabilitās, -ātis [stabilis, steady], f., steadiness, firmness
statim [sto], adv., at once, immediately
statio — subsistō

*statio*, -tis [sto], f., position, post, picket: in statione, on guard

*status*, -tis [statis], trans., set up; establish, resolve upon, determine, decide

*statura*, -ae [sto], m., stature, size

*status*, -tis [sto], m., position, condition, situation

*stipendiarius*, -ae, -um [stipendium], adj., tributary, under tribute

*stipendium*, -ii [stips, gift, pendo], n., tribute

*stō, stāre, stetī, stātūrus*, intrans., stand, abide by

*strepitus*, -tis [strepo], roar, m., noise, confused din

*studeō, studēre, studui, no p.p., [studium], intrans., be eager for, be devoted to, pay attention to, attend to, desire (with dat.)

*studiōse*, adv., eagerly, zealously

*studiium*, -ii, n., eagerness, zeal, devotion, fondness (for a thing), enthusiasm; a pursuit (to which one is devoted), an occupation

*sub*, prep. (a) With abl. (of rest in a place), under: sub oculis, before the eyes

(b) With acc. (of motion towards a place), under, close to. — Of time, toward, just before: sub vesperum

(c) In composition, as adv., under, up from; secretly; in succession; slightly

*subducō, -ducere, -duxi, ductus*, trans., draw up, lead up: naves (beach, draw up)

*subeō, -ire, -iī, -itus, irr., trans., go under, undergo, come up, approach

*subfodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossus*, trans., dig under, stab (underneath)

*subfossus*, -a, -um, p.p. of subfodiō

*subiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [subtractio], trans., throw under, place below, subject, expose to. — Also, throw up. — subiectus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., lying near

*subītō, see subitus*

*subitus*, -a, -um [p.p. of subeō], adj., sudden, quick, hasty. — subitō, abl. as adv., suddenly

*subiātus*, -a, -um, p.p. of tollo

*sublevō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus*, trans., lighten, raise, raise up, assist. — With reflexive, rise up. — sublevātus, p.p., supporting one's self

*sublica*, -ae, f., pile, stake

*subministrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus*, trans., supply, furnish, provide

*submittō, -mittere, -missi, -missus*, trans., send up, send to one's assistance, reënforce

*submoveō, -movēre, -movī, -mōtus*, trans., drive off, dislodge

*subruō, -ruere, -ruī, -ruetus*, trans., dig under, undermine

*subsequor, -sequī, -secutus*, dep., trans., follow on, follow, succeed to

*subsidium, -i [sub-sedeo, sit], n., reënforcement, help, relief, support, assistance

*subsistō, -sistere, -stiti, no p.p., intrans., stop behind, halt, make a stand: ancora (hold)
subsum, -esse, -ful, -futūrus, irr., intrans., be under, be near, be close by, approach
subtrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -trācticus, trans., take away, carry away
subvehō, -vehere, -vexi, -vectus, trans., bring up
subveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventūrus, intrans., come under, come to the support of, assist
succēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessus [sub-cedo], trans. and intrans., come up to, advance, succeed to, take the place of, come next; be successful, prosper
succeoscopicod, -cendere, -cendi, -census, trans., set on fire
successus, -ūs [succeedo], m., close approach
suciddo, -cidere, -cidi, -cissus [sub-ceedo], trans., cut under, cut down
sudia, -is, f., stake
Suēbi, -orum, m. plur., name of the tribes inhabiting a large part of Germany, Swabians
Suēbus, -a, -um, adj., Swabian.— As noun, a Swabian (man or woman)
Suessiōnēs, -um, m. plur., a tribe of the Belgæ
sufficiō, -ficere, -feci, -fectus [sub-facio], intrans., be sufficient, be adequate
suffragium, -ī, n., ballot, vote
sugambri, -orum, m. plur., a German tribe
sūl, sibi, sē, reflex. pron., himself, etc.— Often to be translated by the personal pron., he, etc.; also, each other.—Esp., inter se, from (with, by, etc.) each other
Sulla, -ae, m., a Roman family name.
—Esp., Lucius Cornelius Sulla, the great partisan of the nobility and opponent of Marius, called Sulla the Dictator
Sulpicius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name
sum, esse, fui, futūrus, irr., intrans., be (exist).—Also, with weakened force, be (as a mere copula).
—Phrases: sibi esse in animo, that he had in mind, intended; multum sunt in venationibus (much engaged)
summa, -ae, f., sum, total, main part: belliss (the general management, the chief control)
summus, see superus
sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus [sub-emo, take], trans., take, get, assume: sumere supplicium de, to inflict punishment on; laborem (spend)
sūmptūsus, -a, -um [sumptus], adj., expensive, costly
sūmptus, -ūs [sumo], m., expense
superbē, adv., haughtily, arrogantly
superior, see superus
superō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans. and intrans., overcome, conquer, defeat, be superior to, prevail; survive (vita)
supersedēō, -sedēre, -sedēi, -sessūrus, intrans., sit above. Hence, be above, decline, refrain from
supersum — Tamesis

capit. multum, -a, -um, adj., richer, being above (of space only). — Comp., superior, higher, upper, preceding (of time), superior, victorious. — Superl., suprēmus, highest. — Also, summus, highest, the highest part of, the top of. — Fig., greatest, most important, perfect, supreme, most violent

suptētō, -peterē, -petīvī, -petitūrus [sub-peto, aim at], intrans., be on hand, be supplied, hold out

supplex, -icis, c., suppliant

supplicātiō, -ōnis [supplico, supplicate], f., supplication; a thanksgiving (to the gods, decreed by the senate)

suppliciter, adv., as suppliants

supplicium, -ī [supplex], n., punishment (usually of death)

supportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [sub-porto], trans., bring up, convey, supply, furnish

suprā, adv., and prep. with acc., above, beyond

suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [subs (= sub), capio], trans., take upon one's self (sibi), assume, undertake, engage in, undergo

suspicātus, -a, -um, p.p. of supplicor

suspiciō, -ōnis [sub-specio, look], f., suspicion, an indication: neque abest suspicio, and suspicion is not wanting

suspicor, -āri, -ātus [cf. suspicio], dep., trans., suspect: p.p. as adj., under suspicion

sustentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [sustineo], trans. and intrans., sustain, hold out: aegre is dies sustentatur, with difficulty they hold out for that day

sustineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentus [subs (= sub), teneo], trans. and intrans., hold up under, withstand, endure, hold out, bear, stop; sustinere se, stand up

sustuli, see tollō

suum, -a, -um, possessive pronominal adj. (reflex., referring back to the subject), his, her, its, their, etc. — Often without a noun, sui, their (his) men, countrymen, their friends; sua, their (his) possessions; se suaque omnia, themselves and all they had

T., abbr. for Titus

tabernāculum, -i [taberna, hut], n., tent

tabula, -ae, f., record (written on a board covered with wax), document, list

taceō, tacēre, tacui, tacitus, trans. and intrans., be silent; keep secret, conceal. — tacitus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., silent, in silence

tālea, -ae, f., rod, bar

tālis, -e, adj., such, so great

tam, adv., so, so much

tamen, adv., yet, nevertheless, still, however

Tamesis, -is, m., the Thames, a river of Britain
tametās, -a, -um [temere], adj., reckless, rash, hasty
temere, adv., blindly, without reason; recklessly, hastily
tēmō, -ōnis, m., pole (of a wagon etc.)
temperantia, -ae [temperans, pres. p. of tempero], f., self-control, prudence
temperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [tempus], trans. and intrans., control; refrain, restrain one’s self from (quin). — Esp., temperātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., temperate, mild
tempestās, -ātis [tempus], f., season, weather. — Esp., bad weather, storm
temptō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., try, attempt, make an attempt on: iter (try to force)
tempus, -oris, n., a division of time, a time, time (in general), a crisis: tam necessario tempore, at so critical a moment; omni tempore, at all times, always
Tetectarī, -ōrum, m. plur., a branch of the Usipetes
tendō, tendere, tetendī, tentus, trans., stretch, stretch out. — Esp., stretch a tent, encamp
teneō, tenēre, tenui, no p. p., trans., hold, retain, keep, possess, occupy: se tenere, remain; memoriā tenere, remember
tener, -era, -erum, adj., delicate, tender, young
tenuitās, -ātis [tenuis, weak], f., weakness, poverty
tenuius — totidem

tenuius [tenuis, weak], adv., thinly, slightly

ter, num. adv., three times, thrice

tergum, -i, n., the back: terga venter, turn and fly; a tergo, in the rear

terni, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., plur., three each, three at once

terra, -ae, f., the earth. — Also, a land, a region. — Also, the ground. — Plur., the world

Terrasidius, -i, m., a Roman gentile name

terrenus, -a, -um [terra], adj., of earth

terreô, terrère, terrui, territus, trans., frighten, alarm, deter

territô, -äre, no perf., no p. p. [terreo], trans., frighten: metu (alarm with fears, keep alarmed)

terror, -ōris [terreo], m., fright, alarm, panic

tertius, -a, -um, num. adj., third (in order); paro (one third)

testamentum, -i [testor, testify], n., a will

testimonium, -i [testis], n., proof, evidence

testis, -ea, c., witness

testūdō, -inis, f., tortoise. — Esp., a covered column (made by lapping the shields of one rank over those of another)

Teutonês, -um (-i, -ōrum), m. plur., a great German people in Jutland, who, along with the Cimbri, overran Gaul in 113 B.C. They were defeated by Marius in 102 B.C. at Aquae Sextiae

tignum, -i, n., a log, a timber, a pile

Tigurinus, -a, -um, adj., of the Tigurini. — Masc. plur., the Tigurini, a division of the Helvetii

timeô, -ēre, -nī, no p. p., trans. and intrans., be afraid, fear. — With dat., be anxious for, be anxious about: nihil (have nothing to fear)

timidē, adv., with timidity: non timidē, fearlessly

timidus, -a, -um [timeo], adj., cowardly, frightened, timid

timor, -ōris [timeo], m., alarm, fear, dread

Titurius, -i, m., a Roman gentile name

Titus, -i, m., a Roman praenomen

tolerō, -ēre, -āvi, -āvus, trans. and intrans., bear, endure, hold out, support: famem (keep from starvation)

tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus, trans., raise, carry, carry off. Hence, remove, take away, destroy: conloquium (break off). — Esp., sublātus, -a, -um, p. p., elated

Tolosa, -ae, f., an important city in the western part of the Province, now Toulouse

Tolosātēs, -ium, m. plur., the people of Toulouse

tormentum, -i [torquœo, twist], n., torture. — Also, an engine (for throwing missiles)

tot, indecl. adj., so many

totidem, indecl. adj., just as many, the same number
tōtus, -a, -um, adj., the whole, the whole of, all, entire.—Often translated by an adverb, entirely, throughout trabe, trabis, f., a beam, a timber trāctus, -a, -um, p.p. of traho trādō, -dere, -dīdi, -ditus [trans-do (put)], trans., hand over, give up, deliver up, surrender, recommend. —Also, pass along, hand down, teach, communicate trādūcō, -ducere, -düxi, -ductus [trans-duco], trans., lead over, lead across, bring over, transport, win over, transfer trāgula, -ae, f., javelin trahō, trahere, trāxi, trāctus, trans., drag, drag along, drag in, draw in trāciō, -icere, -icēi, -iectus [trans-iocio], trans., throw across, throw over; cross; transfix, pierce trāiectus, -a, -um, p.p. of traiicio trāiectus, -ūs [traiicio], m., passage, route trānō, -nāre, -nāvī, -nātus [trans-no, swim], trans. and intrans., swim across tranquillitās, -ātis [tranquillus, still], f., stillness, calm trāna, prep. with acc., across, over. Hence, on the other side of.—In composition, as adv., over, across, through Trānsealpinus, -a, -um, adj., Transalpine trānscondō, -scendere, -scendi, -scensurus [trans-scando, climb], intrans., climb across, board (ships) trānsseō, -Īre, -Ī, -itus, irr., trans. and intrans., cross, pass over, pass through, pass by trānsferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, irr., trans., carry over, transfer, change the place of trānsfigō, -figere, -fixi, -fixus, trans., pierce through trānsgradiōr, -grēdi, -gressus [trans-gradiō, step], dep., trans. and intrans., step across, step over, cross trānslātus, -a, -um, p.p. of transfero trānsmarīnus, -a, -um [trans-mare], adj., foreign trānsmissus, -ūs, m., a crossing, distance across trānsportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., bring over, carry over Trānsrhēnānus, -a, -um, adj., living across the Rhine.—Masc. plur. as noun, the people across the Rhine trānstrum, -i, n., thwart, rib (of a ship) trānsversus, -a, -um [p.p. of trans-vertō, turn across], adj., oblique, transverse: fossa (a cross ditch) Trebius, -i, m., a Roman gentile name Trebōnius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name trecenti, -ae, -a, num. adj., plur., three hundred trepidō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [trepidus, restless], intrans., bustle about, hurry; tremble (with fear) trēs, trīa, gen. trium, num. adj., three
Tréveri, -ōrum, m. plur., a people in northeastern Gaul. — In sing.,
Trévīr, -erī, one of the Treveri
Trībōcēs, -um (-ī, -ōrum), m. plur.,
a German tribe on the Rhine
tribûnus, -ī, m. (with or without
militum or militaris), tribune of
the soldiers, military tribune
tribūn, -ūre, -ūlī, -ūtus [tribus, tribe],
trans., distribute. Hence, grant,
render, assign, attribute: magno-
pere virtuti (attribute it so very
much to valor)
tribūtum, -ī [n. p. p. of tribuo], n.,
tribute
trīdūum, -ī [tres-dies], n., three days’
time, three days
triēnium, -ī [tres-annus], n., three
years
trigintā, indecl. num. adj., thirty
trīnī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj.,
plur., three each, three sets of
Trinovantēs, -ūm, m. plur., a people
of southern Britain
tripartītus, -a, -um [ter-partītus], adj.,
divided in three. — Esp., tripartitūs,
abi. as adv., in three divisions
triplex, -icis [ter, cf. plico, fold],
adj., threefold: acies (triple, in
three divisions or lines)
triquētrus, -a, -um, adj., three-
cornered, triangular
trīrēmis, -īs, f., trireme (a vessel
with three banks of oars)
trītis, -e, adj., sad, gloomy, de-
jected
trīstitia, -ae [tristis], f., sadness
truncus, -ī, m., trunk
tū, tui, plur. vōs, pers. pron., 2d
person, you
tuba, -ae, f., trumpet
tueor, tuēri, tūtus, dep., trans.,
watch, guard, protect
tuli, perf. of fero
Tulingī, -ōrum, m. plur., a German
tribe, neighbors of the Helvetii
Tullius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile
name
Tullus, -ī, m., a Roman family name
tum, adv., then (at a time indicated
by the context), at this time: cum
. . . tum, not only . . . but also
tumultus, -ūs [tumulus], m., uproar,
confusion, commotion. — Esp.,
uprising, revolt
tumulus, -ī [tumeo, swell], m., hill,
mound
turma, -ae, f., squadron, troop (of
horse, consisting of thirty men)
Turōnī, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe of
Gaul on the Loire. Also called
Turones
turpis, -e, adj., ugly; unbecoming,
disgraceful, base, dishonorable
turpiter, adv., dishonorably
turpitūdō, -inis [turpis], f., baseness;
disgrace
turris, -is, f., tower
tūtus, -a, -um [p. p. of tueor], adj.,
protected, safe, secure. — tūtō,
abi. as adv., in safety, safely

ubi, adv. and conj., where, in which:
ibi ubi, in the place where. —
Also, of time, when: ubi primum,
as soon as
Utbiī, -ōrum, m. plur., a German tribe on the Rhine
ubique, adv., everywhere, anywhere
ulciscor, ulcisci, ultus, dep., trans., punish, take vengeance on, avenge
illus, -a, -um, gen. -īus, adj., a single, any. — Masc. as pronoun, anybody, any one
ulterior, -us, -ōris [ultra], adj., farther, more remote: ulteriores, those farther off. — Superl. ultimus, -a, -um, farthest, last: ultimi, those in the rear
ultrā, adv., and prep. with acc., beyond
ultrō, adv., to the farther side, beyond: ultro citroque, this way and that, back and forth. — Esp.: voluntarily, freely, besides ultus, -a, -um, p. p. of ulciscor
ululātus, -ūs [ululo, yell], m., a yell, loud cry
umquam, adv. (with neg.), ever: neque . . . umquam, and never
ūnā, adv., together, along with them, etc., at the same time, in the same place, also
unde, adv., whence, from which
ūndecimus, -a, -um [unus-decimus], num. adj., eleventh
undique, adv., from every side, from all quarters
ūniversus, -a, -um [unus-versus, p. p. of vorto], adj., all together, all (in a mass), entire
ūnus, -a, -um, gen. -īus, adj., one, a single, the same, alone
urbānus, -a, -um [urbs], adj., of a city. — Esp., of the city (Rome), in the city
urbs, urbis, f., city. — Esp., the city (Rome)
ūrus, -i, m., wild ox, aurochs
Usipecēs, -um, m. plur., a German tribe on the lower Rhine
ūsitor, -āri, -ātus [utor], dep., intrans., practice. — ēsītātus, -a, -um, p. p. in pass. sense, practiced, customary, much practiced
ūsque, adv., all the way, even to, to that degree (with eo ut), all the time, till, even till
ūsus, -a, -um, p. p. of utor
ūsus, -ūs, m., use, practice, experience; advantage, service. — Esp.: usus est, is necessary, it is necessary, there is need; also, ex usu, usui, of advantage, of service, advantageous, to the advantage; usu venire, happen, turn out, come to pass
ut (uti), adv. and conj.: (a) Interrog., how? — (b) Rel., as, so as, when, inasmuch as, considering that it was: ut semel, when once, as soon as. — Esp. with subjv., that, in order that, to, so that, so as to, although, granting that; after verbs of fearing, that not
utēr, -tra, -trum, gen. -trīus, adj. and pron.: (a) Interrog., which (of two)? — (b) Rel., whichever (of two), the one who or which (of two). — Neut., utrum, adv., whether
uterque, utra-, utrum-, gen. utrius-, adj. and pron., both: medium utriusque, between the two.—
Plur., of sets: utraque castra, both camps; utrique, both parties
uti, see ut
utilis, -e, adj., useful, of use, helpful
utilitās, -ātis [utilis], f., advantage, benefit, service
ūtor, ūtī, ūsus, dep., intrans., with abl., use, exercise, practice, employ, have (in sense of enjoy or employ), possess
utrimque, adv., on both sides
utrum, see uter
uxor, -ōris, f., wife

great influence; quicquid possunt pedestribus copiis valent, whatever strength they have is in infantry
Valerius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name
vallēs, -is, f., valley
vāllum, -ī, n., palisade, rampart
Vangionēs, -um, m. plur., a German tribe on the west bank of the Rhine
varītās, -ātis [varius], f., diversity, variety: pellium (different colors)
varius, -a, -um, adj., various, diverse
vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [vastus], trans., lay waste, devastate, ravage
vāstus, -a, -um, adj., waste; immense, vast
vāticinātiō, -ōnis [vaticinor, foretell], f., divination
-ve, conj., enclitic, or
vectīgal, -ālis [cf. veho, carry], n., tribute.—Plur., revenues
vectīgālis, -e [cf. veho, carry], adj., tributary: vectigales habent, make tributary
vectōrius, -a, -um [vector, bearer], adj., carrying: navigia (transports)
vehementer [vehemens, violent], adv., violently, severely, strongly, exceedingly
vel, conj., or: vel . . . vel, either . . . or.—As adv., even
Velānius, -ī, m., a Roman gentile name
Veliocassēs, -ium, m. plur., a tribe of western Gaul along the lower Seine
Vellaunodūnum, -ī, n., a town of the Senones
velocitās, -ātis [velax], f., swiftness, fleetness, speed
velociter, adv., swiftly, quickly
velox, -ōcis, adj., swift, quick
velum, -ē, n., curtain, veil; sail
velut, adv., even as, just as: veluti, just as if
venātiō, -ōnis [venor, hunt], f., hunting, the chase.—Plur., hunting, hunting excursions
venātor, -ōris [venor, hunt], m., hunter
vēndō, -dere, -didī, -ditus [venum, sale, do (put)], trans., put to sale, sell
Venellī, -ōrum, m. plur., a tribe on the northwestern coast of Gaul
Venetiī, -ōrum, m. plur., a coast tribe of western Gaul
Venetia, -ae, f., the territory of the Veneti
Veneticus, -a, -um, adj., of the Veneti
venia, -ae, f., favor, pardon
veniō, veniēre, vēni, ventūrus, intrans., come, go.—See also usus
ventītō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus [freq. of venio], intrans., come often, visit
ventus, -ī, m., wind: vento se dare, run before the wind
Veragriī, -ōrum, m. plur., a Gallic people on the upper Rhone
Verbīgenus, -ī, m., a canton of the Helvetii
verbum, -ī, n., word: pluribus verbis, at great length; facere verba, speak
Vercingetorīx, -īgis, m., king of the Arverni, who made a stout resistance to Caesar, but was finally overpowered
vereor, -ēri, -itus, dep., trans. and intrans., fear, be afraid, dread.—veritus, p. p. in pres. sense, fearing
vergō, -ere, no perf., no p. p., intrans., incline, slope
vergobretus, -ī, m., Celtic title of the chief magistrate among the Hādiī
vērisimilis, -e [verus-similis], adj., probable, likely
veritus, -a, -um, p. p. of vereor
vērō, adv., in truth, in fact, certainly.—With weakened force, but, on the other hand, however
versō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [vertō], trans., turn, deal with.—Esp., in the pass. as dep., engage in, be, fight (as indicated by the context)
versus, -a, -um, p. p. of verto
versus [p. p. of verto], adv., and prep. with acc., towards, in the direction of
versus, -ūs [vertō], m., a turning; a verse (of poetry)
vertō, vertere, vertī, versus, trans., turn: terga (turn and flee)
Verucloetius, -ī, m., a noble of the Helvetii
vērus, -a, -um, adj., true; right.—Neut. as noun, the truth
Vesontiō, -ōnis, m., the chief town of the Sequani, now Besançon
vesper, -ēri, m., evening
vester, -tra, -trum, poss. adj., your, yours
vēstigium, -ūs, n., footprint, track. — Cōd.: eodem vestigio, in the same spot
vestī, -āre, -ēvi, -ētus, trans., clothe, cover. — Pass., clothe one’s self with, wear
vestitus, -ūs [vestīo], m., clothing, garments
veterānus, -a, -um [vetus], adj., veteran
vetō, vetāre, vetui, vetitus, trans., forbid
vetus, -ēris, adj., old, former, of long standing: milites (old soldiers, veterans)
vēxillum, -ī, n., flag
vexō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., harass, annoy, overrun, ravage
via, -ae, f., road, way, route, march
viātor, -ōris [via], m., traveler
vicēnī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., plur., twenty (apiece)
vicēsīmus, -a, -um, num. adj., twentieth
viciēs, num. adv., twenty times: vicies centum miliarium passuum, two thousand miles
vicis (gen.), f., change, turn: in vicem, in turn
victimā, -ae, f., victim, sacrifice
victor, -ōris [vincō], m., victor. — Often as adj., triumphant, victorious
victōria, -ae [victor], f., victory
victus, -a, -um, p.p. of vincō
victus, -ūs [vīvō], m., life; means of living, food
vicus, -ī, m., village
videō, vidēre, vidi, visus, trans., see, observe, examine, take care. — In pass., be seen; seem, seem best
vigilia, -ae [vīgīd, awake], f., watch.
The Romans divided the night into four watches
vigintī, indecl. num. adj., twenty
vīmen, -inis, n., twig (flexible, for weaving)
vincīō, vincire, vīxi, vīctus, trans., bind, fetter
vincō, vincere, vici, vīctus, trans., and intrans., conquer, defeat, prevail: naturam (outdo)
vinctus, -a, -um, p.p. of vincō
vinculum, -ī [vincō], n., chain: ex vinculis, in chains
vindicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, intrans., inflict punishment
vinea, -ae, f., vine arbor; shed (defense, for a besieging party)
vīnum, -ī, n., wine
violō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, trans., abuse: hospites (injure)
vīr, virī, m., man, husband
vīrēs, see vis
virgō, -inis, f., maiden, virgin
virgultum, -ī, m., only in plur., shrubbery, thicket, bushes
Viridovix, -īcis, m., a prince of the Venelli
Viromandui, -ōrum, m. plur., a Belgic tribe near the Remi
virtūs, -ūtis [vīr], f., manliness, valor, courage. — Also, merit (generally), noble conduct, virtue
vis, vis, f., force, might, violence. — Cōd.: vi cogere (forcibly);
**LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY**

**visus — X**

**vim facere**, use violence. — *Plur.*, **vires**, strength, force, powers, bodily vigor

**visus**, -a, -um, *p.p. of video*

**vita**, -ae [*cf. vivo*], *f.*, life, the course of life

**vítō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., escape, avoid, dodge**

**vitrum**, -ī, *n.*, woad (*a plant used by the Britons for dyeing blue*)

**vivō, vivere, vīxī, victus, intrans., live: lacte (live on)**

**vīvus**, -a, -um [*vivo*], *adj.*, alive, living

**vix, adv., with difficulty, hardly, scarcely, barely**

**vōbis, see tu**

**Vocātēs, -ium, m. *plur.*, a people of Aquitania**

**Vociō, -onis, m., a king of Noricum**

**vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, trans., call by name, call, summon, invite**

**Vocontii, -ōrum, m. *plur.*, a tribe in southeastern Gaul**

**Volcae, -ārum, m. *plur.*, a Gallic tribe in the Roman province**

**Volcānus, -ī, m., Vulcan (*the god of fire and metals*)**

**volgus**, -i, *n.*, the crowd, the common people. — *volgō, abl. as adv., commonly, generally, everywhere*

**volnerātus, -a, -um, *p.p. of volnero**

**volnōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [volnus], trans., wound, hurt**

**volnus, -eris, n., wound**

**volō, velle, volui, no *p.p.*, *irr., trans. and intrans.*, wish, be willing, want: quid sibi vellent, what they wanted**

**voltus, -ūs, m., look, countenance, face: voltūs fingere, conceal one's feelings**

**voluntās, -ātis [volo], *f.*, willingness, consent, desire, will, approval**

**voluptās, -ātis [*cf. volo*], *f.*, pleasure, delight**

**Volusēnus, -ī, m., a Roman family name. *Esp.*, C. Volusenus, one of Cæsar's officers**

**Vosegus, -ī, m., the Vosges Mountains, in eastern Gaul**

**voveō, vovere, vōvī, vōtus, trans. and intrans., vow, make a vow**

**vōx, vocīs [*cf. voco*], *f.*, voice, word, expression, shout. — Collectively, cries, words, talk. — *Plur.*, talk, reports**

**X, Roman numeral for ten**
GRAMMATICAL INDEX

The numerals refer to sections of the Grammar (pp. 311 ff.) and of the Latin Composition (pp. 411 ff.). References preceded by L. C. refer to sections of the Latin Composition.

ablative
absolute, 117. a-f; L. C. 46
of accompaniment, 113
of accordance, 111
of agent, 104
of attendant circumstance, 112
of cause, 109
of comparison, 105
of description, 116
of duration of time, 119. note
of manner, 110
of material, 103
of means, 106
of measure of difference, 114
of origin, 102
of place from which, 101. a and note
of place in which, 120 and a
of respect, 115
of separation, 101
of time at which or within which, 119
of value or price, 108
of way by which, 120. note 1, 106. a
with special words, 107. a-c
accusative
adverbial, 99
as direct object, 91
as subject of infinitive, 92
of duration and extent, 96
of kindred meaning, 98
of place whither, 97
two accusatives — direct object and secondary object, 93; direct object and adjunct accusative, 94 with compounds, 95
adjectives
agreement of, 59, 62, 63
attributive, 61
comparatives, special meaning, 122
comparison, meaning, 121; regular, 14; irregular, 16
declension, first and second, 10; irregular, 11; third, 12; of comparatives, 15
denoting a part (medius, imus, summus), 125
numeral, 19
predicate, 60
substantive use, 127
superlatives, special meaning, 123; with quam, 124
with adverbial meaning, 126
adjunct accusative, 94
adverbs
comparison, 17, 18
negative, 146, 147
special meanings, 145
agreement, 58-69
aliquis, declension, 31; use, 31. a, 144. b
alius, declension, 11; used in pairs, 144. d; used twice in different cases, 144. 1
alter, declension, 11. a; used in pairs, 144. d
antecedent
in the relative clause, 140
omission of, 142
repetition of, 141
antequam, with indicative, 197. a; with subjunctive, 197. b
appositives, agreement of, 58; definition of, 54
attraction, subjunctive by, 214
base, definition of, 1. a

calendar, Roman, 227
Calends, 227. d

cardinal numerals, 19

causal clauses
with cum, 189; denoting time and cause, 195
with quod, quia, etc., with indicative, 188. a; with subjunctive, 188. b
relative clauses of cause, 190

clauses
definition, 56
coördinate, 56. b
subordinate, 56. a; moods in, 174-198

toepi, conjugation, 46. I

commands, with imperative, 173; with subjunctive, 172. b, c
comparatives, declension, 15; special meanings of, 122, 145
comparison, of adjectives, 14, 16; clauses of, 200
complementary infinitive, 217. c
concessive clauses, with indicative, 191; with subjunctive, 192

conditional sentences
future more probable, 199. II. a
future less probable, 199. II. b
past non-committal, 199. III. a
past contrary to fact, 199. III. b
present non-committal, 199. I. a

present contrary to fact, 199. I. b
in indirect discourse, 210-213
confidó, with ablative, 107. b

corjigation of verbs
defective (coepi, memini, ódi), 46. I
deponent (hortor, vereor, sequor, partior), 37
impersonal (licet), 46. II
irregular (sum, possum, prósum, véló, nólo, málo, feró, éo, fíd), 39-45
periphrastic (amátrurum sum, amandus sum), 38. I, II
regular (amó, moneó, regó, audió, capió), 32-36

conjunctions, coördinating, 151. a; subordinating, 151. b

copula, definition of, 48. II. b; position of, L. C. 4. e
cum, as enclitic, 150. a

cum clauses
causal, 189
concessive, 192
temporal, 194. a, b
denoting time and cause, 195
with the meaning 'whenever,' 196

dative
of apparent agent, 87
of indirect object, 82
of possession, 88
of purpose or end, 89
of reference, 85
of separation, 86
with adjectives, 90
with compounds, 84; explanation of, L. C. 62. note 2
with passive of special verbs, 83. a
with special verbs, 83; explanation of, L. C. 62. note 1

decensions
of adjectives, 10-15
of nouns, 2–9
of pronouns, 21–31
defective verbs (coeptē, meminī, ōditā), 46. I
deliberation, subjunctive of, 172. d; in indirect discourse, 207. II. b
demonstrative pronouns, declension, 25; uses, 134, 135
deponent verbs (hautor, vereor, sequor, partior), 37
descriptive clauses, 177 and a
direct discourse or direct quotation, definition, 202
domī, 'at home,' 120. a
dōnec, 'as long as,' 198. II; 'until,' 198. III. a, b
dūbitā, nōn dūbitā, with subjunctive, 186
dūm, 'while,' 198. I; 'as long as,' 198. II; 'until,' 198. III. a, b
duo, declension, 20
ego, declension, 21; in nominative, for emphasis, 129
ēō, conjugation, 44
etsī, in concessive clauses, 191
fearing, verbs of, 184
ferō, conjugation, 43
fidō, with ablative, 107. b
fiō, conjugation, 45
frētus, with ablative, 107. b
fruor, with ablative, 107. a
fungor, with ablative, 107. a
future conditions, more probable, 199.
II. a; less probable, 199. II. b
future perfect tense, 158
future tense
indictative, 155
infinitive, 166. b and 3
participle, 167
genitive, 72
objective, 75. b
partitive, 76
possessive, 73
subjective, 75. a
of description, 77
of material, 79
of measure, 77. b
of value, 78
with adjectives, 80
with verbs, 81. a–d
gerund, 223. a–d; expressing purpose, 225. a, b
gerundive, 224. a–d; expressing purpose, 225. a, b; in -ī with meī, tuī, suī, nostī, and vestī, 224. c
hic, declension, 25; uses, 134 and a, L. C. 56. a
hindering and opposing, verbs of, 185
historical infinitive, 218
historical present, 153. a
idem, declension, 25
vides, 227. d
ille, declension, 25; uses, 134 and a, L. C. 56. a
imperative, in commands, 173 and note; in indirect discourse, 205, 206
impersonal verbs, conjugation (licit), 46. II; definition, 66
implied indirect discourse, 208. b
indefinite pronouns, declension (quis, qui, quisque, quīdam, quisquam, alīquīs), 28–31; uses, 31. a, 144
a–d
indicative mood, 168
in causal clauses, 188. a
in concessive clauses, 191
in conditional clauses, 199. I, a, II, a, III, a
in questions, 170
in relative clauses, 178
in statement of facts, 169
in temporal clauses, 194. a, 196, 197. a, 198. I, II, III, a
indirect discourse
definition, 203
conditional sentences in, 210–213
declarative sentences in, 204 and a
imperative sentences in, 205
prohibitions in, 206
questions in, real, 207. I; rhetorical, 207. II, a, b
subordinate clauses in, mood of, 208; tense of, 209 and note
indirect questions, 201

infinitive mood
definition, 215
as object, 217. a—c.
as subject, 216. a, b
complementary, 217. c
historical, 218
in indirect discourse, 217. b, 204
tenses of, not in indirect discourse, 166. a; in indirect discourse, 166. b, 1–3

intensive pronoun, īpse, declension, 25; uses, 136. a, b
interest, with genitive, 81. c
interrogative particles, 170. a, 1–3, b, 1, 2
interrogative pronoun, quis, declension, 27
intransitive verbs, definition, 50; dative with, 83
īpse, declension, 25; uses, 136. a, b
irregular verbs, conjugation, 39–45
īs, declension, 25; uses, 135
īste, declension, 25; use, L.C. 56. a
licet, conjugation, 46. II
locative case, 120. a
mālō, conjugation, 42
memīni, conjugation, 46. I
memory, verbs of, 81. a
mille, declension, 20; use, 20. note
moods, in independent sentences, 168–173; in subordinate clauses, 174–201
-ne, in questions, 170. a, 1, b, I
nē, conjunction
general use, 147
with clauses of purpose, 174
with hortative subjunctive, 172. a
with optative subjunctive, 172. e
with subjunctive in prohibitions, 172. c
with substantive clauses, after verbs of fearing, 184; after verbs of hindering etc., 185
negatives, 146 and a, 147
neuter, declension, 11. a
nītor, with ablative, 107. b
nōli, conjugation, 42; use, 172. c. note 1, 173. note
nominative, as subject or predicate of a finite verb, 70; as subject of the historical infinitive, 71
nōn, 146 and a; with clauses of result, 179
Nones, 227. d
nōnne, 170. a, 2
nōs, declension, 21; in nominative, for emphasis, 129
nouns
first declension, 2
second declension, 3
third declension, 4–6
fourth declension, 7
fifth declension, 8
special declensions (deus, domus, viis, iter), 9
as predicates or appositives, 58
nullus, declension, 11. a
num, in direct questions, 170. a. 3;
in indirect questions, 201. note
numerals, 19
object, direct, 91; indirect, 82
objective genitive, 75. b
ōdi, conjugation, 46. I
optative subjunctive, 172. c. 1-3
opus est, with ablative, 107. c
order of words, L. C. 1-4, a-e
ordinal numerals, 19
paenitentia, with genitive, 81. b
participles
definition, 219
as nouns, 221
declension of present active, 13
equivalent to clauses, 220. a-e
in the periphrastic conjugations, 222
tenses of, 167; wanting, L. C. 45
passive voice, intransitive verbs in,
83. a; dative retained with, 83. a
past absolute, 156. b
past participle, with habēs, 156. b.
ote
past perfect tense, indicative, 157;
subjunctive, 159. c
past tense, indicative, 154; subjunctive,
159. b
perfect tense
indicative, 156. a, b
infinitive, not in indirect discourse,
166. a; in indirect discourse,
166. b. 2
participle, 167
subjunctive, 159. a
periphrastic conjugations, 38. I, II
active use, 222. I
passive use, 222. II
imperative use, 222. II. note, L. C. 52
personal pronouns
declension, 21
in the nominative, 129
of the third person, 130
with -cum as enclitic, 150. a
with gerundive, 224. c
phrase, definition, 51
place
from which, 101. a and note
in which, 120 and a
to which, 97 and note
plus, declension, 15
possessive pronominal adjectives, de-
clension, 23, 24; use, 131, 132
possessum, conjugation, 40
postquam, with indicative, 193
potential subjunctive, 172. f, L. C.
13. a. note
potior, with ablative, 107. a; with
genitive, 81. d
predicate, definition, 48. II and a
predicate adjective, 60
predicate noun, agreement, 58
prepositions
use, 148
with ablative, 150
with accusative, 149
present tense
historical, 153. a
indicative, 153
infinitive, not in indirect discourse,
166. a; in indirect discourse,
166. b. 1
participle, 167
subjunctive, 159. a
with dum, 198. I
primary tenses, 161


priusquam, with indicative, 197. a; with subjunctive, 197. b
prohibitions, 172. c and note 1; in indirect discourse, 206
pronouns, declensions, 21–31; uses, 128–144
prósum, conjugation, 41
purpose clauses
-adverbial, 174
-relative, 175; containing a comparative, 176
-substantive, 183

quam, with comparatives, 105. note 1; with superlatives, 124
quamquam, with indicative, 191
quamvis, with subjunctive, 192
quandó, in causal clauses, with indicative, 188. a; with subjunctive, 188. b
questions
deliberative, 172. d
double, 170. b
indirect, 201
rhetorical, 171
in indirect discourse, 207. I, II. a, b
introduction words, 170 (entire)
qui, indefinite, declension, 28; use, 31. a
qui, relative, declension, 26; uses, 137–143. See relative pronoun
quia, in causal clauses, with indicative, 188. a; with subjunctive, 188. b
quidam, declension, 29; use, 144. a
quin, after verbs of hindering and opposing, 185; after nón dubitó, 186
quia, indefinite, declension, 28; use, 31. a, 144. a
quia, interrogative, declension, 27; use, 170
quisquam, declension, 30; use, 31. a, 144. c
quisque, declension, 28
quó, with purpose clauses, 176
quod, with indicative, 198. II, III. a; with subjunctive, 198. III. b
quod, in causal clauses, with indicative, 188. a; with subjunctive, 188. b; in substantive clauses of fact, 182 and a
quó minus, after verbs of hindering and opposing, 185
quoniam, in causal clauses, with indicative, 188. a; with subjunctive, 188. b
quotations, direct, 202; indirect, 203

reflexive pronouns
declension, 22
direct, 132
indirect, 133
with gerundive, 224. c
relative clause
-antecedent in, 140
-antecedent repeated in, 141
-causal, 190
-descriptive, 177 and a
-of purpose, 175
-of result, 180
-preceding antecedent clause, 139
-stating a fact, 178
relative pronoun
-agreement of, 137
-agreement with predicate noun or appositive, 138
-beginning a new sentence, 143
declension, 26
reminiscor, with genitive, 81. a
result clauses
-adverbial, 179
-relative, 180
substantive, as subject or object of verbs of accomplishing etc., 187. I; as subject of certain impersonal verbs, 187. II

rhetorical questions, definition, 171; in indirect discourse, 207. II. a, b

Roman calendar, 227
Roman year, 228

secondary tenses, 161

sentences, kinds of, 47. a–c; forms of, 55. a–c

separation, ablative of, 101; dative of, 86

sequence of tenses, explanation of, 161; rule for, 162

si, with conditional clauses, 199

sōlus, declension, 11. a

stem, definition of, 1. a

subjunctive mood
after nōn dubitō, 186
after verbs of fearing, 184
after verbs of hindering and opposing, 185
by attraction, 214
in causal clauses, 188. b, 189, 190
in clauses of comparison, 200
in clauses of description, 177
in clauses of purpose, 174–176, 183
in clauses of result, 179, 180, 187
in commands, 172. b
in concessive clauses, 192
in conditional clauses, 199. I.b, II.b, III.b
in cum clauses denoting time and cause, 195
in exhortations, 172. a
in indirect discourse, in subordinate clauses, 208
in indirect questions, 201

in prohibitions, 172. c
in questions of deliberation, 172. d
in temporal clauses, 194. b, 197. b, 198. III. b

optative, 172. c, 1, 2, 3
potential, 172. f, L. C. 13. a, note

substantive clauses
after nōn dubitō, 186
after verbs of fearing, 184
after verbs of hindering and opposing, 185
of fact, 182 and a
of purpose, 183
of result, as subject or object of verbs of accomplishing etc., 187. I; as subject of certain impersonal verbs, 187. II

sum, conjugation, 39; use as copula, 48. II. b

supine, in -um, 226. a; in -ū, 226. b
suūs, sui
decension, 22, 23
as direct reflexive, 132
as indirect reflexive, 133
special use with gerundive, 224. c

temporal clauses
indicative uses
with antequam or prīiusquam, denoting a fact, 197. a
with cum in definitive clauses, 194. a
with cum meaning 'whenever,' 196
with dum meaning 'while,' 198. I
with dum, dōnec, or quōad meaning 'as long as,' 198. II
with dum, dōnec, or quōad meaning 'until,' denoting a fact, 198. III. a
with postquam, ut, ubi, etc., 193
subjunctive uses
with antequam or prīusquam, denoting anticipation, 197. b
with cum in descriptive clauses, 194. b
with cum denoting time and cause, 195
with dum, dōnec, or quoad, denoting anticipation, 198. III. b

**tenses**
of the indicative, 153–158
of the infinitive, not in indirect discourse, 166. a; in indirect discourse, 166. b. 1–3
of the participle, 167
of the subjunctive, in dependent clauses, 160; in independent clauses, 159. a–c
sequence of, 161, 162

tōtus, declension, 11. a
transitive verbs, 49; object of, 91
trēs, declension, 20
tū, declension, 21; in nominative, for emphasis, 129

ubī, with indicative, 193
ullus, declension, 11. a; use, 31. a, 144. c
ūnus, declension, 11
ūsus est, with ablative, 107. c
ut
with clauses of purpose, 174
with clauses of result, 179

with concessive clauses, 192
with temporal clauses, 193
uter, declension, 11. a
utīnam, with the optative subjunctive, 172. c. 1–3
ūtor, with ablative, 107. a
utrum . . . an, 170. b. 1

velut, velut si, with subjunctive, 200

verbs
agreement of, 65–69
defective, conjugation, 46. I
deponent, conjugation, 37
impersonal, conjugation, 46. II
intransitive, 50
irregular, conjugation, 39–45
moods, in independent sentences, 168–173; in subordinate clauses, 174–201
periphrastic conjugations, 38. I, II; uses, 222. I, II
regular, conjugation, 32–36
tenses, see tenses
transitive, 49

vocative, 100
volitive subjunctive, 172. c. note 2
volō, conjugation, 42
vōs, declension, 21; in nominative, for emphasis, 129

wishes, see optative subjunctive
words, order of, L. C. 1–4. a–e

year, the Roman, 228
This textbook may be borrowed for two weeks, with the privilege of renewing it once. A fine of five cents a day is incurred by failure to return a book on the date when it is due.

The Education Library is open from 9 to 5 daily except Saturday when it closes at 12.30.